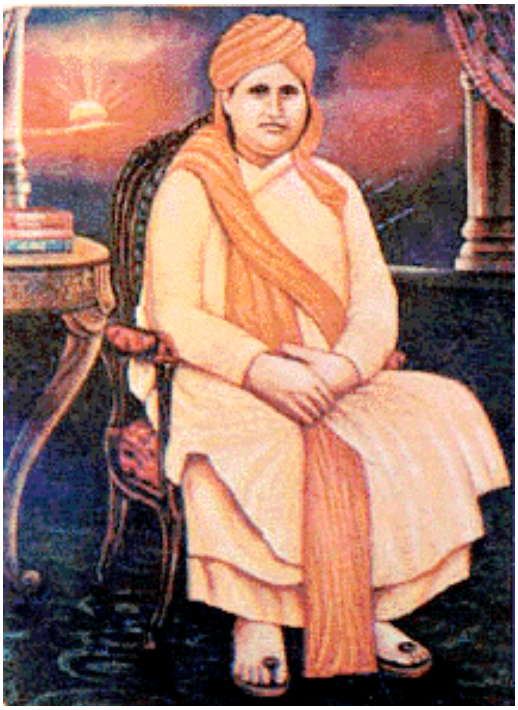
THE LIGHT OF TRUTH

(The Satyartha Prakasha)



By Maharishi Swami Dayanand Saraswati

"I have not come to preach any new dogmas or religion, nor to establish a new order, nor be proclaimed a new Messiah or Pontiff. I have only brought before my people the light of the Vedic wisdom which had been hidden during the centuries of India's thralldom."

Opening notes

The Satyartha Prakhash (The light of Truth) is the masterpiece of Swami Dayanand Saraswati. Some call it as Magnum Opus. No doubt, it is a great literary undertaking, as the lexicographic contents denote. But I go a step further. The lexicon (Oxford) says, Magnum, a bottle containing a certain quantity of wine. But as the great writer of this masterpiece Swami Dayanand was a symbol of ultimate morality and spiritualism and was a sage of standing, he never touched a drop of wine. And so his present work down not contain any such alcoholic impact. But one thing is undoubtedly true about it. This great, book is, indeed, and encyclopedia of the various contemporary social religious and political currents cross-currents and movements going on at the time of the writer's life. To go it further, the writer has not spared the past events and guiding philosophies, which has polluted the human mind and deteriorated the man's quest for true knowledge and right way of life.

When one analyzes this work for this angle, we have witnessed that this great masterwork of Swami Dayanand Saraswati positively mad w revolution in the socio-political fabric notonly of the Indians but of the whole mankind. It created a new flutter and awakening in the society, that made the various thinkers and followers and scholars of different faiths and sects to make drastic changes in their concepts, beliefs and interpretations contained in their Books of Faith. No doubt, much more crusading spirit was witnessed among the readers of this book who hailed from different races, communities and groups. The word Magnum, therefore, has no parallel like that in the context of this work.

Its repeated study, research and investigation have greatly contributed to the thinking of humankind, since it was written by the author, more than a hundred years ago.

The liberal angle which motivated the writer is summed up by him in the introduction, where he unfailingly disclaimed to start a new sect or religion and laid his firm faith in the oneness of human society. The introduction has Swami's following words:-<o:p></o:p></p>

“……..there is not the remotest idea to hurt the feelings of any person either directly or indirectly but on the contrary, the book proposes that men should distinguish truth from falsehood. Thus alone can the human race steadily advance on the path of happiness, since none but the preaching of truth is the cause of the improvement of the human family.”

Such a selfless exposition by the writer has found a distinct position for this author in the world literature of this kind. The English translation of his book was rendered by Dr. Chiranjiva Bharadwaja in the last century. It enjoys greater popularity and has already run into a number of reprints.

The Sabha has brought it out to meet the great and persistent demand and as a present on the sacred occasion of Swami Dayanand's Nirvan (Death) Centenary which being celebrated all over the world this year, under the Sabha's aegis.

Satyartha Prakash means the Light of Truth. In fact, it is a Light House in the ocean of knowledge, where human mind can anchor at safe point during the turmoil and tempest. That way, this book has weightage over other works numbering…… written by the Swami during his life time.

Ram Gopal Shalwale
President.
June 1984
Sarvadeshik Arya Pratinidhi Sabha
Dayanand Bhavan, Ramlita Ground
New Delhi -11002 (India)

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

'Satyarth Prakash' (Light of Truth) is the Magnum opus of Swami Dayanand Saraswati, the illustrious founder of the Arya Samaj. It occupies a prominent place in the classical Religious and Philosophical literature of the world. It is regarded as the Bible of the Arya Samaj and is as immortal as the truth is.

It is in fact the beacon light leading people from darkness to light, irrationality to rationality, irreligion to religion, and nescience to science. It embodies the teachings of Swami Dayananda Saraswati on all matters – religious, social, educational, political and moral, also his beliefs and disbeliefs and the way of life as envisage by the Vedas and the Vedic cultere, which prevailed throughout the whole World about 5000 years back, when enlightenment, peace and prosperity was at the Zenith of its glory.

It presents a charter of life at once sublime and noble. Ti contains principles and rules of conduct to all. In short it makes people mould and better their lives on the lines which were chalked out by the Vedas and the pattern laid down by what is the best in ancient Vedic heritage, whose living symbol was the Swami himself.

Author's comments on the tenets and working of various religious denominations were made in good faith and were not motivated, as the author has envisaged, for injuring the susceptibilities of their adherents. He meant to bring forth truth to light and prevent perpetration of 'Adharma' (unrighteousness) in the name of 'Dharma' (righteousness). In fact it gave the incentive specially to the divines of those faiths to revise their teachings and give them a rational tone. The object of the Maharshi in writing this volume, to quote his own words, is as under:-

> "……there is not the remotest idea to hurt the feelings of any person either directly or indirectly; but on the contrary , the book proposes that men should distinguish truth from falsehood. Thus alone can the human race steadily advance on the path of happiness, since none but the preaching of truth is the cause of the improvement of the human family."

It is widely read by the people living in India and Overseas. This treatise was written in Hindi so as to enable both classes and the masses to be benefitted by it and ahs been availed by crores of people. It ahs been translated in all the principal regional languages of India as well as in English, French, German, Chinese and Burmese.

The present is the new edition of the English Translation rendered by the late Shri Dr. Chrianjiva Gharadwaya. It enjoys greater popularity and has already run into a number of editions. The Sabha has brought it out to meet a great and persistent demand as a present on the sacred occasion of Arya Samaj Foundation Centenary which is being celebrated all over the world this year under the Sabha's aegis.

Our thanks are due to Dr. Satyakam Bharadwaja (son of the learned Translator) and his family, who have give cooperation in the publication of this volume and also th Shri Pandit Narendra, the Convener of the Sarvadeshik Arya Samaj Foundation Centenary Committee for his valuable assistance in making this edition attractive and worthwhile in all respects.

We very much appreciate the cooperation of Bharat Mudranalaya and its partner, Shri Bharat Bhushan, Chairman, Special Zonal Committee (Shahdara), Municipal Corporation, Delhi for the speedy and nice printing.

Omprakash Tyagi, M.P.,
Secretary,
Sarvadeshik Arya Printinidhi Sabha,
Maharishi Dayanand Saraswati Bhawan,
Ramlila Maidan,
New Delhi – 110001, India
Dated o2 – 04 – 1975

INTRODUCTION

Page I

How the second edition is an improvement upon the first

At the time when the first edition to this book, called the *Satyarth Prakasha*, was published and before that, we spoke Sanskrit and made use of the same in reading and writing, while our mother-tongue was Gujarati. For this reason we had a poor knowledge of the language (i.e. Arya Bhasha) in which this book is written.

Consequently the language of the first edition was very defective. Now that we have acquired fair practice in speaking and writing Bhasha, we have corrected the language in accordance with the rules of grammar and brought out his (second) edition. Emendations in words, idioms and the construction of sentences have been made here and there because it was found absolutely necessary to do so. But not alteration had been made in the subject matter, through some new matter has been added. The book ahs been carefully revised, and misprints, which had crept into the first edition, having been carefully corrected.

This book is divide into 14 chapters. Out these the first ten constitute the first part, while the remaining four form the second part. But the last two chapters and "A Statement of my Beliefs" were, through some cause, left out in the first edition and have been incorporated into this edition.

Contents of Book

- **Chapter 1** is an exposition of "Om" and other names of God.
- **Chapter 2** treats of the up-bringing of children.
- **Chapter 3** treats of Brahmacharya, the duties and qualifications of scholars and teachers, good and bad books and the scheme of studies.
- **Chapter 4** treats of marriage and married life.
- **Chapter 5** treats of Vanaprastha, (the Order of Asceticism) and of Sanyas Ashrama (the Order of Renunciation).
- **Chapter 6** treats of Raj Dharma (Science of Government).
- **Chapter 7** treats of the Veda and God.
- **Chapter 8** treats of the Creation, Sustenance and Dissolution of the Universe.
- **Chapter 9** treats of knowledge and ignorance, and emancipation and bondage.
- **Chapter 10** treats of Conduct – desirable and undesirable, and of Diet –permissible and forbidden.
- **Chapter 11** contains a criticism of the various religions and sects prevailing in India.
- **Chapter 12** treats of the Charvaka, Buddha (Buddhist) and Jain religions.
- **Chapter 13** treats of Christianity (the Bible).
- **Chapter 14** treats of Muhammadism (Qur'an).
- At the end of the book we have given a summary of the teachings of the Eternal Vedic Religion which we profess.

The aim of the author in writing this book.

My chief aim in writing this book is to unfold the truth. I have expounded truth as truth and error as error. The exposition of error in place of truth and of truth in place of error does not constitute the unfolding of truth.

To speak of, write about, and believe in a thing as it is, constitutes truth. He that is prejudiced tries to prove that even his error is truth, while the truth of his religions opponent is error. He cannot, therefore, know what the true religion is. Hence it is the bounden duty of truthful and learned men to unfold this right nature of truth and error before all men in their writings and speeches and then to leave them free to judge what promotes their welfare and what is prejudicial to their interests, and to embrace what is true and reject what is false.

This will lead to the happiness of the people at large. Though the human souls posses the capacity for ascertaining truth, yet through self-interest, obstinacy, wrong-headedness, ignorance and the like, it is led to renounce truth and incline towards untruth. We have freed ourselves from these influences while writing this book. It is not our object to hurt anyone's susceptibilities or to injure anyone. On the other hand, our aim is to further the advancement and advance the well-being

Page iii
to help (all) humankind in the attainment of what is right, and to enable them to accept truth and reject falsehood. In our opinion there is no other way of elevating the human race.

All errors or omissions, typographical or otherwise, on being pointed out to us, will be rectified, but no heed will be paid to anything that is said or written through prejudice with the object of unnecessarily criticizing this book. Of course, any suggestions made by persons actuated with the spirit of furthering the welfare of humanity, on being found good, will be most acceptable.

There are undoubtedly many learned men among the followers of every religion. Should the free themselves from prejudice, accept the universal truths – that is those truths that are to be found alike in all religions and are of universal application-,reject all things in which the various religions differ and treat each other lovingly, it will be greatly to the advantage of the world, for it cannot be denied that differences among the learned create bad blood among the ignorant masses. This leads to the multiplication of all sorts of sorrows and sufferings and destroys human happiness.

This evil, which is so dear to the heart of the selfish, has hurled mankind into the deepest depths of misery. Whoever tries to do anything with the object of benefiting mankind is opposed by selfish people and various kinds of obstacles are thrown away. But finding solace in the belief that ultimately truth must conquer and not error and that it is the path of rectitude alone that men and women of learning and piety have always trodden, true teachers never become indifferent to the promotion of public good and never give up the promulgation of truth.

It is our firm belief that everything calculated to the advancement of knowledge and righteousness is like poison to begin with but like nectar in the end. We have kept all this in view while writing this book. Let all those who read or hear it being read keep an open mind, enter into the spirit of the author and form and independent opinion.

The author has taken no sides in the way of jarring creeds.

We have incorporate into this book whatever is true in all religions and in harmony with their highest teachings but have refuted whatever is false in them. We have exposed to the view of men – learned for otherwise - all evil practices whether resorted to secretly or openly. This will help our readers to discuss
religious questions in a spirit of love and embrace the one true religion. Though we were born in Aryavarta (India) and still live in it, yet just as we do not defend the evil doctrines and practice of the religions prevailing in our own country – on the other hand expose them properly – in like manner we deal with alien religions.

We treat the foreigners in the same way as we treat our own countrymen in recognition of our common humanity. It behoves all the rest to act likewise. Had we taken the side of one of the prevailing religions of India; we would have but followed (blindly) the example of sectarians who extol, defend and preach their own religion and decry, refute and check the progress of other creeds. In our opinion, however, such things are beneath the dignity of man.

Should a man act like an animal, which if strong, oppresses the weak and even puts them to death, he is more an animal than a man. He alone can fitly be called a man who being strong protects the weak. He that injures others in order to gain his selfish ends can only be called a big animal.

A detailed statement of the contents of chapters dealing with religions other than Vedic.

In the first eleven chapters we have chiefly dealt with the religions of the people of **Aryavarta** (India). We believe in the religion that has been expounded in the first to 10th chapters as it is in harmony with the Vedic teachings, but we disbelieve in the false teachings of the *Puranas* (which are of a recent origin) the *Tantras* and the like books which we have condemned (in the 11th chapter).

In the twelfth chapter we have discussed the *Charvaka* faith aw well as the *Jain* and the Buddhist religions. The *Charvaka* greatly resembles the *Jain* and the Buddhist religions in being an atheistic creed and in many other respects.

It has greatly declined in our day but it is the most atheistic of all; hence it is absolutely necessary to check it s activity. If nothing be done to eradicate false ideas and practices, disastrous consequences are sure to follow. The *Buddhist* and the *Jain* religions are also dealt with along the *Charvaka* in the twelfth Chapter and we have set forth their pints of agreement and of difference with one other. The reader should consult that Chapter for further information on the subject. In our criticism of the

Buddhis religion we have quoted the most ancient and authentic books of the Buddhists, such as *Dipavansha, Baudhamata Sahgraha* and *Sarvadarshana Sangraha, etc.*

- ~ Four Sutra books:-
    1. Avaashyaka Sutra
    2. Vishesha Avashyaka Sutra
    3. Daha Vaikalika Sutra
    4. Pakshika Sutra.

- ~ Eleven Angas (Limbs):-
    1. Acharanga Sutra
    2. Sugadanga Sutra
    3. Thaananga Sutra
    4. Samavayanga Sutra
    5. Bhagvati Sutra
    6. Jnatadharma Katha Sutra
    7. Upasakadasha Sutra
    8. Antagada Dasha Sutra
    9. Anuttarovavai Sutra
    10. Vipaaka Sutra
    11. Prashnavyakarana Sutra
- Twelve Upangas (Sublims):-
    1. Upavai Sutra
    2. Rayapseni Sutra
    3. Jivabhigama Sutra
    4. Pannavana Sutra
    5. Jambudwipapannati Sutra
    6. Chandapannati Sutra
    7. Surapannati Sutra
    8. Niriyavali Sutra
    9. Kepyiya Sutra
    10. Kapabarhisaya Sutra
    11. Puppyyia Sutras
    12. papyachuliya Sutra
- ~ Five Kalpa Sutras:-
    1. Uttaradhayana Sutra
    2. Nishitha Sutra
    3. Kalpa Sutra
    4. Vyavahara Sutra
    5. ~ Jitakalpa Sutra
- Six Chhedas:-
    1. Mahabnishithav Rihadvachana
    2. Mahanishithala ghuvachana Sutra
    3. Madhyamavachana Sutra
    4. Pindianirukti Sutra
    5. Ougha nirukti Sutra
    6. Paryushana Sutra
- ~ Ten Payanna Sutras:-
    1. Chatussarna Sutra
    2. Panchakhans Sutra
    3. Tadulavaiyalika Sutra
    4. Bhaktiparijnana Sutra
    5. Mahapratyaknyana Sutra
    6. Chandavijaya Stura
    7. Ganivijanya Sutra
    8. Marana Samadhi Sutra
    9. Devendarstamana Sutra
    10. Sansar Sutra
    11. Nandi Sutra and Yogoddhara Sutra are also regarded as authentic.

Page vi

- ~ Four Panchangas:-
    1. Translations of the above books

2. Nirukti (Etymological explanations) of the above-mentioned books
3. Charani (Poetical expositions)
4. Bhashya (Commentaries).

These four constitute what are called Avayasas (parts).

All the books (mentioned under the above headings) are original.

The *Dhundia* sect does not believe in the *Avayasas*. There are many other books besides the above that are believed in by the *Jainis*. Their religion is discussed in detail in the twelfth chapter.

There are million of repetitions in the Jain books. It should be borne in mind that some of the Jainis are in the habit of disavowing books that fall into the hands of non-Jainis or are published. They are, not at all, justified in dong so since books that are believed in by some, though repudiated by others, cannot be said to be unauthentic. Of course a book that is not believed in by any Jaini nor has even been is unauthentic, but there not a single book (referred to by us in our criticism) which is not believed in by some Jainis at least; hence our criticism of Jain book will hold good for him who believes in that particular book.

But there are many Jainis who though they really believe in a book repudiate it in public controversy. The Jainis hide there books from non-Jainis and do not let other see them, because they are full of absurdities to such an extent that no Jaini could ever answer nay objections urged against them. The best answer, however, that one could give to an objection raise against false belief is to give it up.

How to judge the spirit of an author's teaching.

In the thirteenth chapter we have discussed Christianity. Its followers believe the Bible to be their Holy Book. For further information the reader is requested to consult the said chapter . Muhammadanism has been dealt with in the fourteenth chapter. Its followers hold the Qur'an to be their sacred book. The reader is advised to consult this chapter for detailed information on the subject. Then we have given a brief summary of the teachings of the Vedic religion. Whosoever will read this book with a biased mind will fail to understand what the author's aim (in writing this book) is,

Page vii
There are four elements necessary to convey a complete sense of a passage, viz:-

5. **Akankasha** consists in entering the spirit of the speaker or the author.
6. **Yogyata** in the fitness of compatability of sense. For instance, when it is said "water irrigates" there is nothing absurd in the mutual connection between the objects signified by the words.
7. **Asatti** consists in regarding or speaking words in proper sequence, i.e., without detaching them from their context.
8. **Tatparya** is to give the same meaning to the words of a writer or a speaker which he intended that they should convey..

There are many people who, through bigotry and wrong-headedness, misconstrue the meaning of the author. The sectaries are the greatest sinners in this respect because their intellect is wrapped by bigotry. Just as we have studied the Jain and Buddhist scriptures, the Puranas, the Bible and the Qur'an with an unbiased mind and have

accepted what is good in them and rejected what is false and endeavor for the betterment of all mankind, it behoves all good men to do likewise.

We have but very briefly pointed out the defects of these religions. The perusal of this book will help men to sift truth from error and to embrace the former and renounce the latter. It does not become wise men to mislead people. The ignorant are sure to misinterpret what we say, but if the willing will realize what our aim is in writing this book, we shall consider our labor amply rewarded.

We place this work before all men ins the hope that they will embrace the truth and make our labor fruitful. We consider it the first and foremost duty of every man to proclaim the truth without fear or favor. May the Omniscient, Omnipresent, Supreme Spirit Who is the true personification of Existence, Consciousness and Bliss through His grace diffuse this spirit and give it permanency.

A word to true seekers of truth

(Swami) DAYANANDA SARASWATI
Udeypur, 1939 Vikram,
Bhadarpud Shukula Paksh
(A.D. 1882).

CHAPTER 1

PRAYER

"Mayest Thou (AUM)* O God, Who art (Mitra), Friend of all, (Varuna) Holiest of all, and)Aryama) Controller of the Universe, be merciful unto us. Mayest thou (Indra) O Lord Almighty, (Brihaspati) the Lord of the Universe, the Support of all, endow us with knowledge and power. Mayest thou (Vishnu) O Omnipresent and (Urukrama) Omnipotent Being, shower Thy blessings all around us." RIG VEDA.
"We bow unto Thee (Brahma), O most Powerful Supreme Being. Thou alone art our Omniscient God whom we feel in the interior of our hearts. I will call Thee, Thee alone, my true God, Thy will, as truly revealed in the Vedas, will I obey and preach. I will be truthful in word, deed and thought. Thou art my shelter. Mayest thou protect me - Thy servant - who speaketh nought but truth, so that my understanding be firm in Thy Will, and never turn away from it. Thy Will is Truth and Righteousness. That which is contrary to it is Untruth and Unrighteousness. Mayest Thou again shelter and protect me.** O Lord, be merciful and

---

*Generally written and pronounced as 'OM'. I have, for brevity translated it into God, the detailed exposition of this word will follow later on. -Tr.

** This repetition is meant to emphasize the prayer for protection and shelter. Just as one, in ordinary language, says to another: "Go to the village go." By the repetition of the word 'go', he means to say - "go at once." Similarly, the devotee, by repeating this prayer for shelter and protection wishes to emphasize that he prays for immediate protection at His Hands, so that he may have firm faith in truth and righteousness and hate untruth and unrighteousness.

PAGE 2

grant this, my prayer, for which I shall feel grateful unto Thee for ever and ever. Peace! Peace!! Peace!!!*

(In other words) Mayest Thou free us from all pain and grief, and always guide us to the path of rectitude which leads to true happiness, because Thou alone art true Bliss. Thou showerth blessings on all and bestoweth beatutude on the truly righteous seekers after Emancipation.**

Mayest thou, O Lord! Thyself of Thy grace, reveal Thyself in the hearts of all men whereby all may avoid sin and vice, and follow truth and virtue, and consequently, be freed from pain and sorrow, and enjoy supreme bliss.

THE HIGHEST NAME OF GOD; AND OTHER NAMES

' is the highest name of God; it is composed of three letters, **A, U, M**. This one name comprises many other names of God. Thus, briefly:-
A stands for *Viraat, Agni and Vishwa, etc.* .
U stands for*Hiranyagarbha, Vaayu and Tajjas, etc.*
Mstands for *I'shwara, A'ditya and Prajnaa, etc.Vedas* and other true Shastraas, that whatever they treat of God; all these names stand for Him.

There are no gods. The multitude of names like Indra signify not different Divine Beings but different aspects of one Absolute Existence.

Objector*** - *Why not take them to stand for other object? Do they not also mean earth, heaven, devtaas as Indra,and, in the Medical Science drugs such as green ginger.*

Author.~ Yes, they do, but they also mean Gods.

Objector - *We believe that they only mean gods. Why do you not believe the same?*

---

* The word peace is repeated three times because the devotee prays unto God to rid him of all kinds of pin and sorrow which is threefold viz:-
Adhaymika - Pertaining to body and soul as ignorance, lack of true knowledge, passions and hatred, physical pain and disease (as fever).
Adhidaivkea - Arising from the outside world, animate or inanimate; as from one's enemies, tigers, and snakes, etc.
Adhidaivika - Arising from natural causes, such as excessive rains, extremes of heat and cold, or from mental worry or disquietude and distraction of the senses.

** The words *Emancipation, Liberation, Salvation, Final Beatitude and Supreme Bliss* are used synonymously in this book. -Tr.

*** Throughout this book wherever any subject is treated in the form of questions and answers , I have for various reasons, used the letters O and A instead of the customary Q and A. O in such places stands for Imaginary Objector while A for the Author. - Tr.

PAGE 3

Author ~ What proofs have you support of this assertion?

Objector - *They signify devataas* because the devtaas are manifest and also good.*

Author ~ Is not God also Manifest? Is there any one holier than, or superior to, Him? Why do you not believer that these names signify God as well? When God is Manifest and Incomparable, how can there be any one superior to Him? There are many objections against your belief. Suppose, a man placed food before another and requested him to eat. Now, if that man were to reject that food look for it elsewhere, he would not be considered wise; because he rejects what he has and runs after what he has not.

The same is true of your statement, because you refuse to accept that the names like *Virat*, signify God - Who is Real and Whose existence is proved by every possible evidence - as well as the real tangible universe, etc.; whilst you readily believe that they mean gods - who neither substantiate your statement by authority nor by argument.

The subject-matter should determine the meanings of these words. For instance, a man said to his servant; "Get me *saindhava*." Now that man in order to find out what his master wants, ought to take time and place into consideration; because *saindhava* means salt as well as a horse. It it be meal time, he ought to bring salt; while, if it be time for going out, he should bring the horse. If, however, he brings the horse at meal time and salt when his master wants to go out, his master wil get angry and will, most likely, say: "O you ignorant fellow! What was the object of your bringing the horse at meal time, and salt when I was going out; you are ignorant of the fitness of things.

You have ought to have taken time and place into consideration, and done what suited the occasion. You have filed to do that, you are, therefore, senseless. Get away from me." It is clear, therefore, that a word ought to be taken to mean what fits in with the occasion, circumstances, and the subject under discussion.

VEDIC AND OTHER HOLY TEXTS IN SUPPORT OF THIS VIEW

We quote the following authorities from the Vedas and the Upnihads in support of the statement of AUM and such other words, as *Viraat*, are names of God.

---

* Generally, though wrongly, translated into gods by the orthodox pundits and European scholars. -Tr.

PAGE 4

AUM is the Great God Who is omnipresent (like ether)." YAJUR VEDA 40: 17.

"He alone, whose name is **AUM**, Who is Immortal, is worthy of our adoration and none other." CHHANDOGYA UPANISHAD

"All the *Vedas* and the *Shastraas* declare **AUM** as the primary and natural name of God. All others are His secondary names." MANDUK UPANISHAD 1:1.

"He Whom all the *Vedas* declare worthy of homage, Whom all devotion and righteous actions lead to, and for Whose realization, the life of *Brahmacharya*(chastity) is led, is called **AUM**. KATH UPANISHAD 7:15.

"He , Who is the Teacher of all, subtler than the subtler tan the subtle, Resplendent, Who can be known through understanding begotten of *Samadhi*, i.e., 'superior condition' of the soul, when the mind is perfectly concentrated by means of psychical practices, is the Great Being."

"Being All-glorious, some call Him *Agni*. Being the Embodiment of all true knowledge, other call Him *Manu*. Other call Him *Indra*, being All-powerful and Protector of all. Others *Pranaa*, as the source of all-life. Others, again, call Him Brahma,* the Greatest of all beings." MANU 12: 122, 123.

---

* None of God's names are meaningless. They are all connotative, unlike what we see in the world, where a poor man is very often named *Dhanpati* - lord of riches.

PAGE 5

"He is called *Brahma* - the Creator* of the Universe; *Vishnu* - All-pervading; *Rudra* - Punisher of the wicked, whom he causes to weep; *Shiva* - Blissful and Benefactor of all; *Akshara* - Immortal, Omnipresent; *Swaraati* - Self-effulgent; *Kaalaagni* - Cause of the dissolution** of the world and Regulator of time; *Chandramaa* - the true Source of Hapiness." KAIVALYA UPNISHAD.

"He is One, but the wise call Him by different names; such as, *Indra, Mitra, Varuna, Agni,*** *Divya* - One who pervades all the luminous bodies, the source of light; *Suparnaa* - the Protector and Preserver of the Universe, Whose work are perfect; *Matrishwaa* - Powerful like wind; *Garutmaan* - Mighty by nature.**** " RIG VEDA MANDAL 1-22, 164.

"He is *Bhumi* - the abode of all, etc." YAJUR VEDA, 13: 18.

"He is *Indra*, etc." ATHARVA VEDA 11:2,2,1.

"We bow unto thee, O praana - who controls and governs the whole universe, just as the vital forces in the body control and govern the whole physical system, etc." SAMA VEDA 7:3, 8,16 - 2,3,2.

---

* The word Creator used in the sense of Maker as according to Vedic Philosophy there is no such thing as creation or the evolution of something out of nothing. - Tr.

** He reduces all this visible and invisible world into its primary elementary condition at the end of creation, or one cycle of evolutionary existence. -Tr.

*** The meanings of these names have been explained on the first page. - Tr.

**** Other names we shall explain later on. - Tr.

PAGE 6

SIGNIFICANCE OF THESE TERMS

From the consideration of the meanings of these quotations it must have become clear to the reader that **AUM** and such other names , as *Agni*, primarily only signify God as is evidenced by the expositions of the grammarians, philologists, etymologists, and with one of the primary, secondary and tertiary *Brahamnas*,* Sutrakras,** and other great teachers, sages and seers.

It, therefore, behoves us all to believe the same. But it should be borne in mind that **AUM** is the name of God only (and of no other object - material or spiritual), whilst the application of such names as *Agni* to God is determined by two factors, viz., the subject under treatment and the adjectives that qualify them.

In other words, these names signify God in prayers, meditations, communions, or where such , adjectives as Omniscient, Omnipresent, Holy, Eternal and Creator of the universe qualify them.

Whilst, where the things under discussion are mentioned as created, protected, or sustained, disintegrated or where such qualifying words as finite, visible are used, they cannot be taken to signify God; because He is neither subject to such changes as evolution or dissolution, nor is He finite or visible. Therefore such names as *Virat, Agni* (as in the following quotations) signify material objects of the universe:-
"Then was created *Virat*, etc."
"Thereafter was created *Bhumi* - earth." YAJUR VEDA 31.

---

* Commentaries on the Vedas by ancient sages. - Tr.
**Books on morals and domestic duties of man, etc. - Tr.

PAGE 7

"Then did the Supreme Spirit manifest *Akaasha.** From *Akaasha* proceeded *Vaayu* and *Agni* from *Vaayu*, etc." TAITREYA UPANISHAD.

"Thus it is clear that these words ought to be understood to mean God where they have such qualifying words as Omniscient, et.; but, where desires, passions, feelings or pleasure or pain, finite knowledge and activity are spoken of these words signify the soul; where such words, as created, dissolved material, dead, inert, are found, they mean material objects as the sun, the earth. Now, we shall give the etymology of such words as *Virat* and show how they signify God:-

AN ETYMOLOGICAL EXPOSITION OF THE VARIOUS NAMES OF GOD

A:

1. <VIRAT< b>(from the root Rajri to illuminate, with the prefix vi and suffix kwip added to it) signifies God, because He illuminates this multiform universe.
2. **Agni** (from the root anchu which signifies gati and worship. Gati means to know, to move or go, to realize) connotes God, because He is all-knowledge, Omniscient and worthy of adoration, fit subject to be known, sought after and realized.
3. **Vishwa** (from vish to reside) means God, because all the world and the worldly objects dwell in Him and He resides in all of them.

---

* See chapter 8, where this quotation is fully translated. -Tr.

PAGE 8

U:

4. **Hiranyagarbha** (Hiranya - light and garbha - source) means One who is the source and support of all light and luminous bodies such as the sun. This is also substantiated by *Yajur Veda*, which says :-
   " In the beginning was **Hiranyagarbha** - the One Lord of the creation. He sustains the sun and the earth. We adore Him - the all Blissful Being." YAJUR VEDA 13: 4.
5. **Vaayu** (from the root Va to move, to kill) means One who is the life and support of the Universe, the cause of its dissolution, mightier than the mightiest.
6. **Taijas** (from Teja to shine or enlighten) is One who is Resplendent and gives light to the sun and other luminous bodies.

M:

7. **Ishwar** (from Ish - power, knowledge) is One whose knowledge and power are infinite.
8. **A'ditya** (from a - not, do - to break, decay) is One who never dies or decays - is Immortal.
9. **Prajna** (from Pre - perfectly and Jna - to know) One whose knowledge is perfect, Who is Omniscient.
10. **AUM** (See the above).

Thus we have briefly described the meanings of the three letters **A, U, M** of the word **AUM**. Besides those already mentioned it also cover other names of God. Similarly *Mitra, Varuna,*, and other names occurring in the mantra quoted at the head of this chapter are all names of God, because He alone is worthy of homage and adoration, who is *Varuna* (good, pure and holy), i.e., superior to others, in nature, attributes, power and good works.

But God is called *Varuna*, because He greatest among the great; Holiest among the holy and purest among the pure. There is no one equal to Him, nor shall any one ever be. How can then any one be greater than Him? Neither

PAGE 9

matter nor soul possesses such infinite powers and attributes as Truth, Justice, Mercy, Omnipotence, Omniscience. A thing that is true and real, has nature, attributes and characteristics also true and real.

It behoves, therefore, all men to worship and adore God and God only, none besides Him, because, even the men of yore, saints and sinners as *Brahma, Vishnu, Mahaadeva, Daaitya, Daanava,* believed in and worshipped Him and Him only. They adored no other God. We shall take up this subject in detail in the chapters on 'Divine Worship' and 'Emancipation'.*

O. The words such like Mitra should be taken to mean friend, etc., and the words like Indra, etc., the well-known devas of this visible universe.**

A.~ No, not here (i.e., in the verses such as above, wherein prayers are addressed). A man, who is friend to one, is an enemy of another and indifferent to a third person. Hence *Mitra* her cannot be taken to signify an ordinary friend, but it here means God, because He is One Who is an absolute Friend of all, unfriendly or indifferent to none. No man can ever be like Him. This is the primary meaning of the word. But its secondary meaning is an ordinary friend.

11. **Mitra** (from nimid to love) means God, because He loves all and is worthy of being loved by all.
12. **Varuna** (from vri - good or vara - to desire) is One who is best, holiest of all and desired and sought after by all righteous, pious and learned men who are seekers after truth and salvation.
13. **Aryama** (from re to obtain, to go and ma to respect) is One who respects oar honors the good and, the just, and punishes the wicked - The Great Judge who gives souls the fruits of their deeds, good or evil.
14. **Indra** (from Idi - power) is One who is all - powerful.
15. **Vrihaspati** (pa - to correct or govern, Vriha - great) is One who is greatest among the great, and governs the entire universe.

---

* See Chapters seven and nine.

** Generally, though wrongly, translated into gods by the orthodox Pundits and European scholars. -Tr>

PAGE 10

16. **Vishnu** (Vishr - to pervade) is One who pervades all the universe, animate and inanimate.
17. **Urukramaa** (uru - great, krama - energy) is One who possesses infinite energy.
18. **Brahma** (brih or brihi - to lord) is One who lords over all.
19. **Bhumi** is One who is the abode of all and greater than all.
20. **Surya** is One who is the life and light of the universe, animate or inanimate.
21. **A'tma** (at - to pervade) is One who pervades the soul as well as the material universe.
22. **Paramaatmaa**) para - great, aatmaa see above) is One who is holier than the soul, subtler and more powerful than the soul and matter, who pervades and controls the soul.
23. **Parameshwar**(Param - great, I'shwara - powerful, see No. 7) is One who is All-powerful among the powerful, Almighty.
24. **Savita** (su - to create) is One who is the Creator of the Universe.
25. **Deva** (from the root div, which means to operate, desire to win, work, illuminate, praise, please, punish, sleep, desire and know) is One who operates in the universe and governs it and does all His works by His own powers without help from others; Who desires or helps the good and the righteous to win an is Himself invincible, gives all power and means to work; Who knows everything and is just and glorious, illuminates and enlightens all, is worthy of praise, All-blissful, bestows happiness on others, punishes the wicked and gladdens the hearts of the good and Himself enjoys perpetual bliss; who has ordained night for all to sleep and rest, in the indefinable, imperceptible, primeval elementary matter - prakriti; Whose will is holy and Whose is desired and sought after by the good, and Who pervades all and knows all.
26. **Kurvera** (kuvi - to cover or spread) is One who covers all or overspreads all.

PAGE 11

27. **Prithivi** (prithu - spread) One who has spread this extensive universe.
28. **Jala** (jala - to beat) One who beats or punishes the wicked and beats the atoms into shape, or beats them asunder in the Creation or Dissolution of the universe, respectively.
29. **Akaash** (kash - to illuminate or enlighten) is One who illuminates or enlightens the whole world.
30. **Anna and atta** (from ad to eat) is One who eats or absorbs into Himself or contains the universe, animate and inanimate. As grubs are born in the inside of a fruit of a fig tree, live and die in the same, so is the universe born, lives and perishes* in God. TAITREYA UPANISHAD 2: 10. VEDANT SHASTRA 1: 29.
31. **Vasu** (vas to abide or dwell) is the One who dwells in all things, and is the abode of all.
32. **Rudir** (Rudir - shed tears) is One who makes the wicked and the unjust shed tears. It is said in the Shatapatha Brahmana "Whatever a man thinks, he speaks; whatever he speaks, the same he acts; whatever he acts, he reaps". In other words, a man reaps whatever he sows. When the wicked suffer pain in consequence of their sins at the hand of Divine Justice, they wail and weep. He is, therefore, called **Rudra**
33. **Naaraayana** (Naraa - water and souls, aayana - abode) signifies, God, because He is the abode of souls and pervades them. MANU 1:10.
34. **Chandra** (chadi - to please) is the One who is All-bliss, and gives pleasure and happiness to others.

---

* i.e., reduced to its elementary condition. -Tr.

PAGE 12

35. **Mangala** (mang - has the same meanings as gati, see No. 2) is One who is All-blissful, and showers bliss on the soul.

36. **Budha** (budha - know) is One who is All-knowledge and endows souls with knowledge.
37. **Shukra** (shu -to purify) is One who is All-knowledge and endows souls with knowledge.
38. **Shanaishchara** (shanaish - with ease, char - to go, eat) is One who reaches or gains access to all with ease, and possesses great fortitude.
39. **Rahu** (rah - to avoid, reject) is He Who is one without admixture of anything else. Who rejects the wicked, and frees others from the hands of the wicked.
40. **Ketu** (kit - to abide or reside and cure disease) is One who is the abode of the universe, free from death and disease. He frees the emancipated souls from disease and suffering during the period of salvation.
41. **Yajna** (yaj - to shine, worship, combine, devise and give) is One who combines the different elements together and evolves this world and its objects out of them, Who is worthy of being worshipped by all the sages and seers from Brahma downwards and will always be. He is the Omnipresent God. "Yajna is the Omnipresent God", says the Shatapatha Brahmana.
42. **Hotaa** (hu - to give or take) is One who gives all that is worth giving to souls and takes from them what is worth taking.
43. **Bandhu** (bundha - to bind, connect) is One who keeps all the worlds bound by laws to Himself, and helps to keep them in order so that they cannot move out of their orbit or the laws of their constitution. He is like a brother unto all the world and supports, protects and gives happiness to all.
44. **Pitaa** (paa - to protect, rear) One who protects all. Just as a father, through paternal love and kindness always desires the good of His children, even so does God -is the Father of all - desire happiness for all.

PAGE 13

45. **Pitaamaha** - The father of fathers.
46. **Prapitaamaha** - The Great-Grandfather.
47. **Maataa** - God is named **mata** (mother), because He has happiness and prosperity of all souls at heart just as an earthly mother, out of extreme love and kindness, desires happiness and prosperity for her offspring.
48. **A'charya** (char - to conduct, move, go and, eat) God is called so because He is the source of all true knowledge and righteousness. It is through Him we receive knowledge, and live virtuous lives.
49. **Guru** (Gri - to speak) the Teacher of all true knowledge and learning Who revealed the Word of salvation (Vedas) in the beginning of the world, the Teacher of eve all the early teachers such as **Agni, Vayu, A'ditya, Angira** and **Brahma**.

    He is immortal, says Yogashastra. "He is the Teacher of even the most ancient teachers. He is Immortal. Time cannot influence Him." YOGASHASTRA SAMADHI 26.

50. **Aja** (aja - to combine, join, manifest or evolve) is One who combines the elements and atoms properly, and evolves the world out of them; unites bodies with souls, and brings them out into the world, which is called their birth. He is Himself never born.
51. **Brahma** (brihi - to develop, multiply) is One who has created the world and multiplies it.
52. **Satya** (sat - to exist) is One who is the true embodiment of existence among all existences.
53. **Jnaana** is One who knows all the world, animate and inanimate. "The Great God is **Satya Jnaana** and **Ananta**" - Taitiriya Upanishad.
54. **Ananta** is one who has no limitations, boundaries, end or dimensions.
55. **Anaadi** is One who has no beginning, nor a first cause.
56. **Ananda** is One who is All-blissful and endows happiness on the good and the righteous.

PAGE 14

57. **Sata** (asi - to be) is One who exists in all times, the past, the present and the future, and is not limited by time.
58. **Chit** is One who is a truly conscious Being and endows souls with true knowledge of right and wrong.
59. **Sachidaananda** (sata + chit + ananda) is One who is a truly conscious, blissful being.
60. **Nitya** Firm, Immortal, Eternal.
61. **Shudha** (shudh - to purify) is One who is Himself pure and purifies others.
62. **Mukta** (much - to free) is One who is always free from all sin and impurity, and frees souls from sin and suffering.
63. **Nitya shudha budha mukta subhaava** is One who is Eternal, Holy, Omniscient and Free.
64. **Niraakaara** (nir - no, akar - form) is One who has no form nor body nor is ever embodied.
65. **Niranjana** (Nir -no, anj - form, color, immorality, disorder) is One who is free from immoral conduct, disorders, etc., nor is He the object of senses such as the eyes.
66. **Ganapati** (Gana -host, pati - Lord) is One who is the Lord of host, i.e., of all the Material and Spiritual world, which He also protects.
67. **Ganesha** (Gana - host, Isha - Lord) Lord of Hosts.
68. **Vishveshwara** (Vishwa - universe, Ishwara - Lord), Lord of the Universe.
69. **Kutastha**, is One who pervades all, supports all, and yet Himself undergoes no transformation.
70. **Devi** has the same meanings as the word **Deva**, which is of Masculine gender, whilst **Devi** is of feminine gender. God has names in all the three genders.
71. **Shakti** (shak - power) is One who is powerful enough to create the world.
72. **Shri** (shri - to serve) is One who is served by all saints, sages and seers.
73. **Lakshmi** (Laksh - to see and mark) is One who sees all the universe and endows it with distinguishing

PAGE 15

marks or features, as bodies with eyes, ears, etc.; trees with leaves, fruits and flowers; liquids and solids with different colors as black, white, red, etc. earth with dust and rock, etc.; and sees them all. He is the most beautiful among the beautiful. He is the chief. Source of the Vedas, of the Yogis and wisemen.

74. **Saraswati** (sri - to achieve and know) is One who is possessed of infinite knowledge of the universe, of words, their objects and their relations.
75. **Sarvashatimaan**, One who does not require the assistance of another in accomplishing His works, Who by His Own innate power does all His work.
76. **Niyaayakaari**. Niyaaya is what is proved to be true by all the eight kinds of evidence such as, Direct Cognition, Inference, Analogy. It is the dispensing of justice without favor or partiality. **Niyaayakaari** is One who practices Niyaaya, i.e., truth, justice and righteousness.
77. **Dayaalu** (Daya - to give, take, go, know, protect injure) is One who makes you fearless knows all, protects the good, and punishes the wicked.
78. **Advaita** is One is only one, and indivisible without any admixture, either of the same kind (as man and man are of the same kinds from man), or made up of different parts. Consequently there is no relation of whole to its parts, as of body with its parts such as, eyes, ears.
79. **Nirguna** is One who is free from the (distinguishing) properties of matter such as **Satwa, Rajas, Tamas**,* color, taste, touch, smell and of the soul, such as finite power and knowledge, ignorance, passions and desires, and pain of all kinds. This definition is substantiated by the authority of Upanishada. "He is free from sound, touch, color, and such other qualities."
80. **Saguna**** is One who possesses such attributes, as perfect knowledge, perfect bliss, purity, infinite power.

---

* See Chapter eight, for their meanings. - Tr
**Possessed of certain specific attributes.

PAGE 16

Everything in this universe is **Saguna** (positive) and **Nirguna*** (negative). For instance, the material objects are called **Nirguna**, because they are void of the properties and powers of conscious beings, as will and feelings. Whilst they are also **Saguna** (positive), because they possess their own material properties. The same is true of God. He is **Saguna**, when He is looked upon as possessed of His own attributes, as Omniscience, Omnipotence, but He is also **Nirguna**, being free from the properties of matter and soul.

81. **Antaryami** is One who pervades the animate as well as the inanimate universe, and controls it.
82. **Dharma Raja** is One who is free from sin and evil, and rejoices in truth, justice and righteousness - The Great Judge.
83. **Yama** is One who governs all, administers justice to all and is the personification of Justice.
84. **Bhagwaan** (Bhag - to serve) is One who is possessed of all might and power, and is worthy of being served and worshipped.
85. **Manu** (man - to know) is One who is the true embodiment of knowledge, and worthy of being known and believed.
86. **Purusha** (pri - to fill, sustain) is One who counts and classifies the material objects and souls.
87. **Vaishwambhara** is One who sustains and preserves the world.
88. **Kaala** (Kal - to count) is One who counts and classifies the material objects and souls.
89. **Shesha** is One who undergoes no change during Creation or Dissolution. He is the one Unchangeable Eternal world.
90. **A'pta** (aap - to pervade) is One who pervades the universe, is filled with all true knowledge and righteousness, is the true Teacher of all, accessible only to the good and the righteous, and free from such bad attributes, as dishonesty, fraud, etc.

---

* Devoid of certain specific attributes.

PAGE 17

91. **Shankara** (sham - good, from kri - to do) is One who is the Benefactor of all, and Giver of happiness.
92. **Mahaadeva** (maha - great + deva) is One who is greatest among the great, the good, and the learned, and is the Light of the world.
93. **Priya** (pri - to please and desire) is One who gladdens the good, the righteous and the true seekers of salvation, and is worthy of being sought after - The embodiment of Love.
94. **Swayambhu** (swayam - self and bhu - to be) is One who is Self-existent, Uncreated.
95. **Kavi** (ku - word) is One who is all-knowledge and reveals true knowledge through His Word (The Veda).
96. **Shiva** is One who is all Bliss and he Giver of happiness to all.
97. **Swarat** - Self-effulgent.
98. **Suparnaa** - the Protector and Preserver of the Universe.

99. **Matrishwaa** - Powerful like wind.
100. **Garutmaan** - Mighty by nature.

We have her explained the meanings of only one hundred names, but there are million of other names of God besides these. His names are without number, because His nature, attributes and activities are infinite. One name stands for each of them. These hundred names are like a drop in the ocean.

In the **Veda** and **Shastras**, the infinite attributes, powers, characteristics of God, are described, and can be learnt by the study of those books. A perfect knowledge of even other subjects can only be gained by those who study them.

Why has this work not been commence with a benedictory and auspicious Prologue?

Objector - *How is it that you have set down nothing in the way of **manglacharana***, like other authors, who do it in the beginning, the middle and the end of a book?*

---

* The custom of writing set words and phrases, indicative of suspiciousness in the beginning, middle and end of a book by way of Prologue, Interlouge (I owe the reader an apology for coining this word) and Epilogue. -Tr.

PAGE 18

Author ~Because it is not right to do so. He who only writes good things in the beginning, the middle and the end of his book, would write bad things in the intervening parts of the book. Says the **Saankhya Shastra - Manglaacharana** consists in constantly obeying the Will of God by the practice of truth, and justice, without prejudice or partiality, as enjoined by the **Vedas**, under all conditions and circumstances."

Throughout his book, from beginning to end, an author, should write honestly and justly, what is true and only that. This is **manglaacharana**. it is not **manglaacharana** to write what are true things at one place, and those that are false at another. This practice of manglaacharana is nowhere to be found in the **Vedas** or the **Shastras** - books of sages and seers. They either begin with the word **atha** (now) or **AUM**. We quote the following as corroborative of our position:-

- "**(Atha)**, Now we shall discourse on the 'Science of language'" …Mahaabhashya.
- "Now we shall discuss the Science of morals", i.e., after the study of the **Vedas**……Purva Maimaansaa.
- "Now we shall describe in the chief features of religion", and so on….Vaisheshika Shastra.
- "Now we shall teach the science of Yoga."….Yoga Shastra.
- The Rig Veda begins with the word 'Agni'.

PAGE 19

- The Yajur Veda begins with the word ' It '.
- The Saama Veda begins with the word 'Agni'.
- The Atharva Veda begins with the word 'Ye trishapti'

In no case do the **Vedas** and the **Shastras** begin with" I bow unto Ganesha," etc. Wherever even Vedic scholars start with Hari Aum, they have contracted this pernicious habit from the

Pauraniks* and the Tantriks**. Nowhere in the **Vedas** and **Shastras** is the word 'Hari' written in the beginning. Hence a book ought start either with **Atha** (now), or **AUM**

We have, in this Chapter, briefly discoursed on the different names of God.

---

* Believers in the Puranas - books on Indian Mythology.
** Followers of Tantras - books on Vam Marg, a religious sect whose tenets are discussed in the 11th chapter of this book.

END OF CHAPTER 1

CHAPTER 2

PAGE 20

1. Parents and conception

Maatrimaan Pitrimaan A'charyavaan Purusho Veda - Shatapatha Brahmana.*

"Verily, that man alone can become a great scholar who has had the advantage of three good teachers, viz., father, mother, and preceptor." Blessed is the family, most fortunate is the child whose parents are godly and learned. The mother's healthy influence on her children surpasses that of everyone else. No other person can equal a mother inn her love for her children, or in her anxiety for their welfare.

this explains the use of the word *Matrimaan* in the above quotation, meaning thereby:-
"He alone is said to have a mother whose mother is devout and learned." Blessed is the mother who never ceases to impart to religious tone to the mind of her child from the time of conception till his knowledge is perfected.

It behoves both parents before, during, and after conception to avoid the use of such foods and drinks as are intoxicating, decomposed (Lit. - foul-smelling) non-nutritious, (Lit. dry), and prejudicial to the growth of the intellect; and use those articles that are productive of mental tranquility, health, strength, intellect, energy and good temper - qualities that go to make a man refined.

Such foods are milk, butter, sugar, cereals etc., - foods and drinks that help to make the reproductive element (both male and female) of the highest quality, free from all faults and imperfections. They should follow the rules of sexual intercourse, which are as follows:-
From the time of menstruation the 16th day following is the proper time for (sexual intercourse) barring the first four days and

---

*Maatrimaan Pitrimaan A'charyavaan Purusho Veda - Shatapatha Brahmana. In the text the word mata, i.e., mother precedes the word pita, i.e., father. In the Sanskrit language and all vernaculars derived from it, it is a invariable practice to use the word mata before the word pita whenever they happen to come together. -Tr.

Not only this but the word "wife" comes before the word "husband" and the name of the wife before that of the wife before that of the husband. We speak of Sitaram and not Ramsita. This shows in, what veneration the female sex was held by the ancients. - Rama Deva.

PAGE 21

the 11th and 13th of the (lunar) month; so that there are altogether left ten nights out of which it is best to choose one for sexual intercourse.

After the 16th day there should be no sexual intercourse till the return of the aforesaid period, or, in case of pregnancy for one year. At the time of sexual intercourse husband and wife should be perfectly healthy, mutually happy, and free from sorrow. In the matter of diet and dress they should follow the rules laid down by *Charak* and *Sushrut*,* and in the matter of keeping each other happy they ought to practice the system taught by Manu.

During conception the mother ought to be very careful as to her diet and dress. Till the birth of the child those articles only should be used as are productive of intellect, strength, beauty, health, energy and mental tranquility, and such other good qualities.

After the child is born and its cord had been tied, it ought to be bathed with scented water and *Homa*** performed with scented clarified butter. The mother should also be well looked after in the matter of bath, diet, etc., so that both mother and child may gradually gain in health and strength. The child's mother or wet-nurse should take such foods and drinks as are productive of good qualities in the milk.

The mother should suckle the child only for the first six days, thereafter the wet-nurse; but the parents should see that the wet-nurse gets good food and drink.

The mother should suckle the child only for the first six days, thereafter the wet-nurse; but the par4ents should see that the wet-nurse gets good food and drink. If the parents be too poor to afford a wet-nurse, cow's or goat's milk diluted with an equal quantity of water should be used; and such drugs as are productive of intellect, energy, and health should be added to the milk after being well soaked in pure water boiled, and strained.

After confinement the mother and the child should be removed to another room, where the air is pure, and which is well furnished with scented and beautiful things. They should move about in a pure atmosphere. When neither the wet-nurses nor milk (cow's or goat's) can e procured, the parents should do what they think best at the time; but they must remember the child's body is made up of the elements derived from the body of the mother, which fact accounts for the mother getting weaker after each confinement. It is best, therefore, for the mother not

---

*Two great authorities on Medical Science in Sanskrit.

**See chapter 3.

PAGE 22

to suckle her child. Plasters should be applied to the breast that will soon dry up the milk, by following this system the woman becomes strong again in about two months. Till then the husband should have thorough control over his passions, and thus preserve the reproductive element. Those that will follow this plan will have children of a superior order, enjoy long life, and continually gain in strength and energy so that all their children will be of a high mental calibre, strong, energetic, and devout. The woman should have her reproductive organs properly seen to, and the husband should practice continence.

2. The mother's instructions to a child.

A mother should so instruct her children as to make them refined in character and manners, and

they should never be allowed to misconduct themselves in any way. When the child begins to speak, his mother should see that he uses his tongue properly so as to pronounce letters distinctly in the right place and with the right amount of effort. For pronouncing the letter 'p' for example, that right place is the lips and amount of 'effort' required is what is called Full.

In speaking, vowels should be exactly timed- short, long, or prolonged as the case may be. She should try to cultivate a sweet, subdued and pretty voice in her child. In his speech, letters, syllables, words, conjoined words and stops should be distinctly discernible. When he begins to talk and understand a little, he should be taught how to address his superiors and inferiors, father, mother, king and a learned man, and how to conduct himself in their presence; so that he may never be slight in company, but be always treated with respect. Parent should endeavor to inculcate in the minds of their children and intense desire for the love of knowledge, elevating company, and control of the senses.

Children should avoid useless playing, crying, laughing and wrangling. They should not give way to excess of pleasures and sorrows, nor become completely engrossed in a thing. Jealousy and malice they should not harbor. They should never handle or rub the reproductive organs, as it causes the loss of the reproductive element and, consequently besides soiling the hand, leads to impotence.

The parents should try, in every possible way, to develop in their children such sterling qualities as truthfulness, heroism, patience, cheerfulness, etc. When children attain to the age of 5 years they should be taught the Sanskrit Alphabet, as well as that of foreign languages; thereafter the parents should make them

PAGE 23

understand and learn by rote such verses (Vedic), poetical pieces, aphorisms, prose passages, etc. as are full of good precepts, inculcate truth and virtue, love of knowledge and God; and give advice as to the general behavior towards father, mother, sister and other relatives, friends, teachers and other learned men, guests, king, fellow-subjects and servants, sot that they may not, as they grow up, be duped by any unprincipled person.

They should also counsel then against all things that lead to superstition, and are opposed to true religion and science, so that they may never give credence to such imaginary things as ghosts (Bhuts) and spirits (Preta).

Preta (in Sanskrit) really means a dead body, and *Bhuta* means who is deceased.

In support of this contention we quote Manu:-
"After his death, the pupil who helps in cremating his teacher's *Preta* is purified in ten days together with other people who carry the *Preta* in the crematorium." * MANU 5: 65.

It is clear, then, that *Preta* in the above quotation cannot mean anything else but the dead body. After the body has been cremated, the dead person is spoken of as *Bhuta* i.e. deceased - one who lived but does not live now. All those that are born and cease to breathe after having lived in the present are spoken of as *Bhutashth* i.e. deceased. Such has been the belief of all learned men from *Brahman* to the present day.

But we do not wonder that one, who is ignorance-ridden, superstitious, and associates with low people, is constantly troubled by all sorts of ghosts, spirits, and devils, in the shape of fear and doubt. When a person dies, his soul, by according to their nature, in pleasure and pain. Breathes there is man who can undo this eternal law of God.?

People ignorant of the principles of Medical and Physical Sciences look upon persons afflicted with the physical and mental diseases, such as high fever and lunacy, as possessed of devils (Bhut and Preta). But instead of having such persons treated medically,

---

*This verse from Manu had quoted by the author for the sole object of supporting his statement regarding the meaning of the word Preta. But it does not follow that the author believes in the superstition inculcated by the verse which is clearly and interpolation in Manu. -Tr.

PAGE 24

dieted properly, otherwise cared for, they trust them to such rogues, scoundrels, cheats, idiots, profligates and extremely low, selfish, despicable and dirty charlatans as victimized them by their trickery, quackery, so-called charms, and magic incantations. They waste their money and bring misery and suffering on their children by the increase of disease.

When these people who really have 'more money than brains' go to those ignorant, wicked and mean rascals and say to them "Sirs would you kindly tell us what is wrong with such and such a person or child"? They answered this:-He is possessed with a big devil or ghost, *Bhairava* (God of drink) or *Shitala* (goddess of small-pox). It will never leave him unless you adopt proper means for its removal. It may even take his life, but if you offer us a round sum, or give us a round sum, or give us a present, we will exercise the devil out of him by incantations, recitation of magical formulae and prayers, etc."

Then those ignoramuses and their friends say "Please Sirs, cure him thought it may cost us our last penny". On this the rogues feel triumphant and say " Well bring us such and such material, our fee, offerings to the God, and presents to ward off the influence of unlucky stars."

Then, they sing, beat upon drums play on castanels, cymbal, etc., in front of the man who is supposed to be possessed of a devil; by and by, one of those scoundrels begins to dance and skip about as if in a fit of madness and says" I will even take his life" and the ignoramuses fall at the feet of that mean rascal, saying "O! save him Sir! Save him. You shall have anything you like". Upon this the rogue says " I am Hanuman8; briing me my offerings - sweets, oil, a basket of loaves and a red dress." Or " I am God, or *Bhairava*, bring me five bottles of liquor, twenty fowls, five goats, sweets and clothes", and when these dupes answer " You shall have anything you like" - the rogue begins to skip about and dance still more. But if a sensible man were to give them an offering of a good thrashing or shoe-beating, kicking or smacking on the face instead, their *Hanuman* God or *Bhairava* is at once propitiated, and they immediately take their heels a all this quackery is simply meant for robbing the simpletons of their journey.

---

*In Hindu Mythology the monkey-God who helped Rama - the incarnation of Vishnu to defeat Ravana - the Rakshash king of Sri Lanka. He was a historic person who was afterwards defied. He was a brave and learned man - well read in the Vedas - who was commander-in-chief of Rama's forces. Rama Deva.

PAGE 25

Similarly, when these ignorant people go to an astrologer and say " O Sir! What is wrong with this person'? He replies "The sun and other stars are maleficent to him. If you were to perform a propitiatory ceremony, or have magic formulas chanted, or prayers said, or specific acts of charity done, he will recover. Otherwise I should not be surprised, even if he were to lose his life after a long period of suffering."

Inquirer ~ Well, Mr. Astrologer, you know, the sun and other stars are but inanimate things like this earth of ours. They can do nothing but give light, heat, etc. Do you take them for conscious being possessed of human passions, of pleasure and anger, that when offended, bring on pain and misery, and when propitiated, bestow happiness on human beings?

Astrologer ~ Is it not through the influence of stars, then, that some people are rich and others poor, some are rulers, whilst other are their subjects?

Inq. ~ No, it is all the result of their deeds….good or bad.
Ast. ~ Is the Science of stars untrue then?
Inq. ~ No, that part of it which comprises Arithmetic, Algebra, Geometry, etc., and which goes by the name of Astronomy is true; but the other part that treats of the influence of stars on human beings and their actions and goes by the name of Astrology is all false.

Ast. ~ Is then the horoscope of no value?
Inq. ~ No, and it should be named not horoscope, but death-knell of happiness; because the birth of a child gladdens every heart in the family, but this happiness lasts only so long as the horoscope is not cast, and the aspect of the planets is not read out to the parents.

When the priest, after the birth of the child, suggests the casting of a horoscope, his parents say to him. "Oh, Sir! Cast a ver good horoscope." Then the astrologer brings the horoscope, well bespangled with red and yellow lines if they be rich, or a plain one if they be poor. They ask him if the aspect is beneficent. He answers "I will read it out to you as it is; his stars of nativity are good, and so are the stars that govern the relation of social intercourse, consequently he will be a rich man and will make a name for himself; he will command respect among his associates; will have

PAGE 26

good health; and be a ruler among men." Upon hearing this, the parents say "Well done Sir! Well done! You are a very nice man."

The Astrologer things it would not pay him to say nice things only, so he adds "These are all his lucky stars, but there are others that maleficent. On account of the position of such and such stars he will meet with his death in his 8th year." On learning this, all their happiness is converted into great distress, and they to the Astrologer "Oh Sir! What shall we do? What shall we do now?" The astrologer answers " Propitiate the stars. They ask "How can we do it?" He says " Do such and such an act of charity, have the hymns relating to the stars chanted, fee the priests, and it is very likely that the maleficence of the stars will be warded off."

The qualifying words very likely have been used by the way of precaution, because, if the child died he could say " How could I help it? I cannot override the will of God. I did my utmost and so did you, but it was so ordained from the first on account of his misdeeds in the previous life." But, if the child lived he could say "Behold the power of our incantations, gods and priests; I have saved the life of your child." But really, if their incantations and prayers fail, and the child dies, these rogues should be made to pay double or treble the money given to them, and if the child lives, they should still be made to pay because, as they themselves say, there is not soul living that can undo the law of God or evade the consequences of one's deeds.

Parents can say to them "This child has survived in consequence of his deeds, and according to the laws of God, and not through your help." The same answer should be given to Gurus (so-called spiritual fathers or teachers), who prescribe certain acts of charity to their dupes and then appropriate the gifts themselves, as has been given to the astrologers above.

Lastly, a word about *Shitla** and Charms. These are nothing but downright frauds and quackery. Should any one say: "If I were to give a charmed bangle or locket to any person, my God or saint would ward off all evils from him through the power of the charm or of incantations." To such a person the following questions should be put: "Can you by your charms evade death, or the laws of God, or the consequences of your deeds? Many a child dies in spite of your charms and incantations; ay, even your own children die; why

---

*Small pox, -It is looked upon as a goddess by the superstitious people in India.

PAGE 27

can't you save them? Will you be able to save yourself from death?" These questions, that rascal and his fraternity can never answer, and they soon find that the game is not worth the candle.

Therefore, it behoves all to do away with all kinds of false and superstitious practices and do all in their power to promote, in return for their services, the welfare of those pious, learned men, who are devoted to their country and are altruistic teachers of humanity, teaching and preaching to all without the least amount of hypocrisy.

All alchemists, magicians, sorcerers, wizards, spiritists, etc. are cheats and all their practices should be looked upon as nothing but downright fraud. Young people should be well counseled against all these frauds, in their very childhood, so that they may not suffer through being duped by any unprincipled person.

They should also be taught that the preservation of the reproductive element begets happiness and its loss the reverse. He, in whose body, it is well preserved, gains in health, strength, energy and intellect; and consequently feels happy. The only way to preserve it is to keep aloof from hearing and reading obscene literature; associating with libidinous people, indulging in lascivious thoughts; looking upon women (with an eye of lust); engaging in conversation with them; embracing or having sexual intercourse with them. Children should be taught to lead a pure and virtuous life; and devote themselves to the acquisition of perfect knowledge and culture.

He, in whose body the reproductive element is nor preserved, becomes impotent, void of good qualities, and suffers from spermatorrhoea and such like diseases. He is, in fact, a ruined man, through loss of health, strength, intellect, courage, pluck, energy, patience and such other good qualities. Parents should not neglect to impress upon their children that, if they fail to acquire knowledge and wisdom, and preserve the reproductive element when young, they will never have again another chance like this in this life.

They must bear in mind that it is only so long as the parents are alive, and able to look after the household, that they can prosecute their studies, and perfect their bodies. Both the father and the mother should also advise them regarding other necessary matters. This is the reason the words, *Matriman* and *Pitriman*, appear in the quotation heading this chapter. The mother should instruct them from birth to the 5th year, and the father from the 6th to the 8th.

3. Tutoring and reprimanding.

PAGE 28

In the beginning of the 9th year *Dwijas** should, after their *Upnayan*** ceremony has been performed, send them to school (*Acharyakul*),*** where the teachers are thorough scholars, imbued with piety and well, versed in all the sciences. *Shudras* should also send their children to school, but without performing their *Upnayan*

Those children alone become well-behaved, refined, and scholarly, whose parents do not indulge them; but on the other hand, always reprimand them when necessary. Says *Patanjili*, in his *Mahabhashya*:-

"Those parents and tutors who are not slow to reprimand their children and pupils (when needed) are as if giving them a drink of immortality; but those who indulge them are , in fact, giving them poison, and are thus the cause of their ruin, because indulgence spoils children, whilst (occasional) reproof develops good qualities in them." MAHABHASHYA 8: 18.

Children should also feel pleased when reprimanded, and feel uneasy when fondled. But parents and teachers should never reprimand them out of malice or spite. Outwardly they should keep them in awe; whilst inwardly they should be tender hearted and kind to them. Likewise they should advise them to abstain from stealing, sexual abuse, contracting habits of indolence, arrogance, drunkenness untruthfulness, malevolence, wickedness, malice, jealousy, blind passion; and to cultivate good qualities, such as, truthfulness, virtue.

---

*Persons of the three upper classes are called Dwijas or the twice-born because of their rebirth through the acquisition of knowledge and culture. First is the physical birth, whilst the 2nd is their spiritual birth. The three upper classes are : Brahmans, Kshatryas and Vaishayas. The reader is referred to the 4th chapter, for detailed information regarding this subject. -Tr.

**The ceremony of initiation into knowledge; it is performed just before a student leaves home for the seminary: in this ceremony he has to take vows of living a chaste life, of truthfulness, of devotion to studies, etc. -Tr.

***A'charyakula is the academy for the education of the children of all Classes. In this institution the teacher is not a mere tutor, he also loco parentis.
This system of education has been revived after the author 's death by his followers. There are at present three Gurukulas or residential colleges for teaching the Vedas conducted on these lines. The biggest is at Kangri, Haridwar. It teaches up to the degree standard and has trained out many graduates. The second one is at Brindaban. It teaches up to the Degree standard. The third one is at Deolali in the Bombay Presidency. - Ram Dev.

PAGE 29

Once a person has committed theft or sexual abuse or has spoken an untruth in your presence you can never respect or trust him any more. A broken pledge injures a man's character more than anything else. Therefore, once you make a promise, keep it; suppose you say to a man; " I will meet you at such and such a place or time" or " I will give you such and such a thing, at such and such a time"; but always keep your promise; otherwise no one will ever trust you. All should, therefore, speak the truth and keep their word.

One should never be vain. Deceitfulness, hypocrisy, and ingratitude are painful even to the soul that harbors them. How much more so then to others? It is hypocrisy to believe one thing and say another, and thus mislead people in order to gain selfish ends. Ingratitude is that condition of mind in which you do not feel thankful to one who has been good and kind to you.

A child should not lose his temper, or say a rude word; he should rather cultivate a speech that is pacific and sweet. He should avoid useless talk, and speak only as much as is necessary, neither more nor less. He should respect his superiors. At their approach, a child should stand and salute them, and offer them the best seat available.

In an assembly, each person should occupy a seat in accordance with his rank and position, so that he may never have to suffer the indignity of having to yield his seat to another. He should

never bear malice towards any one. He should try to acquire virtues and shun vices; associate with the good and avoid the wicked. Father, mother and tutor, a child should serve with all his capabilities and resources, all his heart, and all his souls.

Says Taitreya Upnishad:-
"Fathers, mothers, and tutors should always give their children and students good counsel and they should also advise them to imbibe their virtues but avoid their vices." TAITREYA UPANISHAD 7:2.

Children should always speak the truth, and should never trust a hypocrite or a man of low character. They should obey their parents and tutors in all things that are good. Tutors should help their pupils to revise all that their parents had taught them at home, the Vedic mantras, aphorisms, poetical pieces and prose , passages, inculcating the love of righteousness, knowledge, and

PAGE 30

good character. They should understand the nature and attributes of God* and worship Him accordingly.

4.Conduct, dress and diet.

In the matter of dress and diet, they should so conduct themselves as to gain in health, strength and general behavior, and knowledge. They should eat a little short of their appetite, and abstain from animal diet and spirituous liquors. They should never enter deep water lest they be attacked by dangerous creatures (such as, crocodiles), or even drowned, if they be unable to swim. Therefore, says Manu - "Never bathe in water of unknown depth".

On the general conduct of life the same sage has said:-
"Look down while you walk. Filter your water before you drink it. Speak in accordance with truth. Think well before you act." MANU 6: 46.

Syas another poet :-

> "Parents who neglect the education of their child are his veritable enemies. In company, he is like a goose among swans."

To give their children the highest education possible, to instruct them in the ways of truth, to make them refined in character and manners, in short to devote all their resources, body and mind, to accomplish this object is the paramount duty, the highest virtue, and the glory of parents.

---

*As taught in the first chapter.

END OF CHAPTER 2.

CHAPTER 3

PAGE 31

HIGHEST DUTY OF PARENTS TO EDUCATE THEIR CHILDREN

It is the highest duty of parents, preceptors., and relatives to adorn children with good sound education, nobility of character, refinement of manners, and amiability of temper.

The wearing of jewelry (gold, silver, pearls, rubies, diamonds. etc.) adds no beauty to the soul. It only arouses vanity and other lower passions, gives rise to fear of robbery, and may even be the cause of death. Many a child has been known to lose its life at hands of cut-throats because of wearing jewelry.

"Blessed are the men and women whose minds are centered on the acquisition of knowledge; who possess sweet and amiable tempers; who cultivate truthfulness and other similar virtues; who are free from vanity and uncleanliness.; who enlighten the minds of those who are in ignorance; whose chief delight consists in promoting the happiness of others by the preaching of truth, by generous distribution of knowledge without fee or reward; and who are engaged in altruistic work as prescribed by the Vedas."

Yaiyopavita to be performed at the age of 8, both in the case of boys and girls.

Boys and girls, when they attain to the age of 8 years, should be sent to their perspective schools. In no instance, should they be placed under the tuition of teachers of low character. Only those persons are qualified to teach who are master of their art and are imbued with piety. *Dwijaas* (twice-born) should have the *Upnayan** of their children (both sons and daughters), done at home, before sending

---

*Initiation into student life of which the outward symbol is the sacred thread. - Rama Deva.

Page 32

them to their respective schools. The seminary should be situated in a sequestered place. The boy's school should be at least 3 miles distant from that of the girls. The preceptors and employees, such as servants, should, in the boy's school, be all of the male sex, and the girl's school fo the female sex. Not even a child of 5 years of the opposite sex should be allowed to enter the school. As long as they are Brahmacharis (students) they should abstain from the following eight kinds of sexual excitement in relation to persons of the opposite sex:-

The students of both sexes to be guarded against sexual excitement of all sorts.

1. Looking upon them with an eye of lust;
2. Embracing them;
3. Having sexual intercourse with them;
4. Intimately conversing with them;
5. Playing with them;
6. Associating with them;
7. *Reading or talking of libidinous subjects;
8. *Indulging in lascivious thoughts.

The principles underlying the Gurukula (seminary) system of Education

Teachers should see that they keep aloof from the above things, and thus perfect knowledge, cultivate amiable dispositions and manners, gain in strength both of body and mind, and thereby grow in happiness. The school must not be nearer than five miles to a town or a village. All scholars should be treated alike in the matter of food, drink, dress, seats, etc.

Be they princes and princesses or the children of beggars, all should practice asceticism.** They should be not allowed to see the parents, or hold any communication whatever with them. Being

thus feed from all worldly worries and cares, they should devote themselves heart and soul to their studies. Their teachers should accompany them in all their studies. Their teachers should accompany them in all their recreations, so that they may not fall into any mischief, get indolent

---

*The last two constitute a sort of mental intercourse with persons of the opposite sex. -Tr.

**By asceticism is here meant sever bodily and mental discipline - in other words simple living and high thinking should be the motto of the students. They should not solicit bodily comfort, instead bear all kind of hardships in order to wholly and solely devote themselves to the acquisition of knowledge, culture, etc. -Tr.

PAGE 33

or naughty. Manu says:-
"Both state and society should make it compulsory upon all to send their children (both male and female) to school after the 5th or 8th year. It should be made a penal offence to keep a child at home after that age." MANU 7: 152 (Free compulsory education).

THE GAYATRI MANTRA - A PRAYER FOR ILLUMINATION OF THE UNDERSTANDING

The first *Upanayana* ceremony should be performed at home, and the second in the school. Parents as well as teachers should teach *Gaitri Mantra** to the children with its meanings, thus:- "O lord! O personification of True existence, Intelligence and Bliss! Everlasting, Holy All-wise, Immortal, Thou art unborn, without any symbolical distinction and organization, Omniscient, Sustainer and Ruler of the Universe, Creator of all, Eternal, Protector and preserver of the Universe, O All-pervading Spirit! O Ocean of mercy! Thou art the Life of the Creation, Thou art an All-blissful, Being the very contemplation of Whom wipes off all our pains and sorrows; Thou

---

*Aum Bhur Bhuvah swah, Tat Savituh Varneyam Bhargo Devasya Dhimahi Dhiyoh Yah nah Prachodyaat.
The words and meaning of the Gayatri Mantra are:-

- Aum - See Chapter one
- *Bhur* - One Who is Life and Support of the whole Universe, is dearer than life itself and is Self-existent.
- *Bhuvah* - One Who Himself is free from all sorrows and pains, and Whose contemplation wipes off all over, pains and sorrows.
- *Swah* - One Who pervades this multiform universe and is the Support of all.
- *Tat* - Him.
- *Savituh* - Of One Who is the maker of the Whole World and from Whom all power proceeds.
- *Varneyam* - One Who is All-holy and worthy of our adoration.
- *Bhargo* - is One Who is Himself pure by nature and purifies others and Who is All-intelligence.
- *Devasya* - of One Who bestows happiness on all and is sought after by all.
- *Dhimahi* - May we contemplate.
- *Dhiyoh* - Understandings. (intellect).
- *Yah* - Who.
- *Nah* - Our.
- *Prachodayaat* - May guide

PAGE 34

art the Sustainer of the Universe,

Father of all; may we contemplate Thy holy adorable nature so that Thou mayest guide our understanding. Thou art our God, who alone art to be adored and worshipped. There is none beside, Thee, who is equal to Thee or above Thee. Thou alone art our Father, Ruler, and Judge. Thou alone bestoweth happiness." YAJUR VEDA 36: 3.

After they have learnt the above mantra with its meanings, they should be taught the method of 'Divine Worship' (Sandhyaopaasanaa)* with its preliminaries and accessories a Bathing. Achamana (Sipping of sanctified water) and Praanaayaama (Deep Breathing).

PRELIMINARY ACCESSORIES OF SANDHYA OR DIVINE MEDITATION

The preparatory, non-essential stages of worship are:-

1. *Bathing* - which effects bodily cleanliness, and ensures health. Manu says:-
   "Water washes off the impurities of the body. Truth exalts the mind. Knowledge and strict devotion to duty elevate the soul. Possession of ideas refines the intellect." MANU 5: 109.
   Every man should, therefore, bathe before his first meal.
   - *Achamana* - This consists in taking in as much water as can be held in the palm of one's hand by applying the lips to the root and centre of it. The quantity of water should be just sufficient to reach the lower part of the throat. Its object is to relieve irritation of the throat of dryness thereof it present.
   - *Maarjana* - is to sprinkle wate, with the points of the middle and index fingers, on the face and other parts of one's body. Its object is remove drowsiness. If a person be not drowsy, or if water be not obtainable, it can be dispensed with.

---

*Only the stages of 'Divine Worship' are her given. The author has treated this subject in detail in his book called "The Five Great Daily Duties." - Tr.

PAGE 35

THE ESSENTIAL STAGES OF DIVINE MEDITATION

The essential stages of (Sandhyaopaasanaa) are as follows:-

1. *Praanayaama* - or control of the breath. Says *Patanjali*, in his Yoga Shaastra :-
   "The practice of *Praanaayaama* gradually burns off all impurities and exalts the soul. The light of knowledge in the soul goes on continually increasing till the soul is emancipated." YOGA Shaastra Saadhanapaada, 28.

   Manu says:-
   "Just as a goldsmith, by blowing stronghly against a piece of impure gold, removes its impurities by oxidation, so does *Praanaayaama* burns off all impurities of the mind and senses." MANU 6: 71

   Method of *Praanaayaama* - "As in the act of vomiting all the contents of the stomach are violently expelled, so should the breath be expired forcibly, and hel out as long as possible by drawing up the epelvic viscera." YOGA Shaastra, Samadhipada, 38.

   When discomfort is felt, the air should be gently inspired. This process should be repeated according to one's desire and strength. This exalts the purity of the soul and develops concentration of mind. *Praanaayaama* is of four kinds:-

- *Baahya Vishaya* - It is the process desired above in which the breath is held out as long as possible.
- *A'Bhyantara* - In which the breath is held in as long as possible.
- *Stambha Vritti* - In which the breathing is suddenly stopped at any stage of respiration.
- *Baahyaabhyaantaraakshepi* - In which the ordinary course of breathing is reversed, expiration is forcibly begun

PAGE 36

when inspiration is going on, and vice versa. By thus reversing the course of respiration, both expiration and inspiration are in turn stopped, and thus the processes of respiration, and consequently and mind and senses come under the direct control of the Will.

By the increase of bodily strength and activity, the intellect becomes so subtle that it can easily grasp the most abstruse and profound subjects. It also helps to preserve and perfect the reproductive element in the human body, which, in its turn, produces self-control, firmness of mind, strength, energy, and acuteness of intellect.

Girls as well as boys, should practice *Praanaayaama*.

2. *Aghamarshana* - Repentance and intense desire to keep aloof from the even the thought of sin.
3. *Manasaa Prakrimana - Mental Rotation, i.e.,* - turning one's mind in all the six different directions of space - North, South, East and West, Above and Below - and feeling in each the presence of God.
4. *Upaastha* - Realization of God as the source of all Light, Life, Knowledge, etc.
5. *Stuti* - Glorification; *Praathnaa* --Prayer; *Upaasanaa* - Communion.

THE SITE SUITABLE FOR DIVINE MEDITATION

This *Sandhaopaasanaa* should be performed i some lonely spot, with a concentrated mind. Manu says:- "Seek some lonely spot, by the side of the water, concentrate your mind and perform your *Sandhyopaasanaa*. Never forget to recite* the *Gayatri Mantra* and contemplate its manifold meaning. act accordingly."MANU 2: 104.

---

*It is best to recite*Gayatri* mentally.

PAGE 37

Teachers should also teach all that is necessary regarding diet, dress and proper behaviour towards superiors and inferiors.

THE SECOND GREAT DAILY DUTY

Devayagna, the second Great Daily Duty, comprises (Agnihotra - the feeding of fire with clarified butter and aromatic substances for sanitary purposes - and associating with, and serving devout and learned persons.

These two duties – Sandhya and Agnihotra- are to be performed twice daily - morning and afternoon - it is only twice during 24 hours that day and night meet.

One hour, at least, should be devoted to Divine Contemplation, which should be practised with perfect concentration of mind, as *Yogis* practise *Yoga*.

The time for *Agnihotra* is twice daily, i.e., just after Sunrise and just before Sunset.

The vessels to be used are:-

1. *Vedi* - a vessel (earthen or metalic), having the shape of an inverted truncated pyramid, for making the fire in. It should have the following dimensions:- Depth and each side of the base being 9 to 12 inches, and each side of the apex 2-1/4 to 3 inches, i,e., each side of the base being four times the side of the apex.
2. Two vessels for containing water, which may be required for washing hands, etc.
3. A butter dish, to keep the clarified butter in
4. A spoon, made of wood, silver or gold.

Method:-
Let a few sticks of wood (*Sandal, Buica Frondosa or Mango*) in sound condition be laid at the bottom of the *Vedi*, fire

PAGE 38

be placed in the middle and similar pieces of wood on this again. Let the clarified butter be properly warmed, mixed with odoriferous substances and then poured over the fire in the *Vedi*, the *HOMA MANTRAS* being recited the while, one spoonful each time a *mantra* is recited.

Reasons for performing *Homa* are given below in Question and Answer form:-

Q. - *What is the good of doing Homa*?

A.~ It is a well-known fact that impure air and impure water are productive of disease, which, in turn, causes so much pain and misery, whilst pure air and pure water are productive of health, and consequently of happiness

Q. *I should think it would do people more good to apply Sandal locally as a plaster, and eat butter instead. Is it wise to waste these things by destroying them in fire?*

A.~ That only shows your ignorance of Physical Science, for it is one of its cardinal principles that nothing is really lost in this world. You must have noticed that, even when you are standing at some distance form the place where *Homa* is performed, you can smell a sweet fragrant odour in the air. That alone proves that an odoriferous substance put into the fire is not destroyed, but, on the other hand, being rarefied, fills the room, and is carried by the air to distant places where it rids the air of its foulness.

Q. *If this be the case, the keeping of such odoriferous things, as saffron, musk, camphor, scented flowers and attar, in the house will serve the same purpose.*

A.~ That scent has not the disintegrating power to rid the house of its impure air, and replace it by the fresh pure air. It is fire alone which possesses that power, whereby it breaks yp the impurities of the air, and reduces them to their component parts, which, getting lighter, are expelled form the house and replaced by fresh air from outside.

PAGE 39

Q. *What is the object of reciting mantras whilst performing Homa>?*

A.~ The objects are three:-

1. The *Mantras* explain the uses of *Homa*.
2. In this way Vedic texts are learnt by heart.
3. It helps the study of the *Veda* and preservation thereof.

Q. *Is the omission of Homa a sin?*

A.~ Yes, the amount of suffering, a man inflicts on his fellow-beings by polluting the air, and water with the waste products of his system and consequently bringing on disease, becomes the measure of his sin, to atone for which it becomes incumbent on him to perform *Homa* and thereby purify air and water to an extent, equal to, or greater than the mischief he has done.

As regards the internal use of these things, that are used in *Homa*, such as butter, that would benefit only the individual who takes them; but the same amount of material, used as directed above, benefits hundreds of people. If people were not to eat and drink such nutritious substances as butter and milk, they could never gain in strength, physical and mental. Therefore, it is only right, that they should do so, but more material should be used in *Homa* than as food and drink. It is, therefore, our bounden duty to perform *Homa* daily.

Q. *How many aahootis* (spoonfuls) should a man pour, and how much clarified butter should each aahooti contain?*

A.~ Sixteen *aahootis* and a dram and a half clarified butter in each *aahooti* at the least; but it is permissible to put more butter in each spoonful.

In the 'Golden Days' of India, saints and seers, princes and princesses, kings and queens, and other people used to spend a large amount of time and money in performing and helping others to perform *Homa*; and so long as this system lasted, India was free from disease and its people were happy. It can become so again, it the same system were revised.

---

*At the end of each *Homa mantra* a definite quantity of clarified butter is pured over the fire. This called *aahooti*. - Tr.

PAGE 40

We have described these two *Yajnaas* which, alone, are enjoined upon students (*Brahmacharis*)

Who is entitled to invest students with the sacred thread?

"A person can perform *Yajnopavita* of his own class, andof hte classes below his own. These he can also teach. Thus a *Brahmana* can perform it for *Brahmans, Kshatriyaas* and *Vaishyaas*. A *Kshatriaas*, for *Kshatriyaa* and *Vaishyaas* only; and a *Vaishyaa*, for *Vaishyaas* only. An intelligent, respectable *Sudra* should also be taught all the *Shaastraas* barring the *Veda*, but without performing his *Upnayana*. This view is held by many authorities." SUTRA Sthana, Chapter 2.

BRAHMACHARYA OR STUDENT LIFE
(Period of Celibacy)

Period for Brahmacharya - Maximum and minimum.

Says Manu:- " A student should observe *Brahmacharya* and study the *Vedas* with their subsidiary subjects for 9, 18, 36 years, or until they are completely mastered".* MANU 3: 1.

"***Brahmacharya*** is of three grades:- The lowest, the intermediate and the highest:-

- ***The lowest*** - "Man, who is composed of a body - formed out the elements derived form foods and drinks - and a soul that resides in the body, is verily a *Yajna*. He should be endowed with the most excellent qualities; and in order to accomplish gain , longevity, strength (physical and mental), and the like qualities, the shortest period for which a student should observe is 24 years, just as there are 24 letters in the *Gayatri* metre (*Chhanda*). He should, during this period, keep

---

*Thus after joining the school at the age of 8 years, if a student studies the *Vedas* with their subsidiary subjects for 36 years, (i.e., he devotes 12 years to the study of each of the three *Vedas*), he completes his education at the age of 36 - 8-44, if for 18 years, at the age of 8-18-26 years, if for 9 years, at the age of 8-9-17 years. (The last period of *Brahmacharya* is meant for a girl who wants to marry at the age of 17 years.-Tr.

PAGE 41

perfect control over his passions* and devote himself to the acquisition of the knowledge of the *Vedaas* and of culture, etc. By virtue of this *Brahmacharya*, vital forces, called *Vasus*, are fully developed and mature. These help to produce noblest qualities in his body, *manas*** and the soul.

Should anyone advise a *Brahmachaari* to marry or have sensual enjoyment before the age of 25, let the *Brahmachaari* answer him thus: "Look you her, my dear fellow! If my vital forces, mental faculties and physical organs were not fully developed and strong, I should not be able to observe *Brahmacharya* of the next grade (which lasts till one is 44 years old), as the observance of the lowest grade helps one to keep *Brahmacharya* of the intermediate grade.

Am I a fool like you that I should ruin my body, my vital forces, my mental faculties and even my soul - which, if properly looked after, endow one with a noble nature and produce sterling qualities and help one to perform great deeds, - waste my precious life, deprive myself of the fourfold fruit of human life, destroy my *Brahmacharya* which is the main spring of all *Ashramas* or Orders,*** the best of all good works and the source of all that is good and noble in life, and consequently sink to the lowest depths of misery and degradation?" CHHAANDOYYA Upanishad 3: 16.

"Since he that observes his *Brahmacharya*, acquires

---

*And even after marriage should not give a free license to his passions. - Tr.

**Under the term *manas* include the *principles of attention, thought, memory and individuality*. - Tr.

***Life is divided into 4 stages or Orders - . Brahmacharya or the period of student life. 2. *Grihasthi aashram* or married life. 3. *Vanaprastha* or spiritual Science, and divine contemplation. 4. *Sanyas aashram* or the period of Renunciation devoted to the preaching of truth and righteousness allover the world by abandoning all worldly connections. - Tr.

PAGE 42

- ***The intermediate*** - He, that observes *Brahmacharya*, for 44 years, - there are 44 letters in *Trishtup Chhanda* (metre) - by virtue of this *Brahamacharya* attains to that degree of *pranas* or vital forces called *Rudras*, in other words, he becomes a terror to the wicked and an asylum for the good. No rascal dare practise his rascality before him. Should anyone advise such a *Brahmachaari* to abandon his life of *Brahmacharya*, marry and enjoy himself, let him answer such a man, thus:-

  "The happiness that results form the observance of *Brahmacharya* of a higher degree, cannot even be dreamt of by one who has not led a life of *Brahmacharya* and even sensuous pleasures, are more keenly enjoyed by the former than by the latter.

  Since it is a *Brahmachaari* alone, who attains to success in worldly affairs, enjoys perfect unsensous and spiritual happiness, I will never destroy my *Brahmacharya* - the source of the highest happiness . On the other hand, by virtue of thorough observance of this *Brahmacharya* become learned, virtuous, strong in body and mind and enjoy and longevity and perfect happiness. I will never listen to the advice of such senseless creatures as you are, marry early, and briing ruin on myself and my family."

- ***The highest*** - He that remains a *Brahmachaari*, till he is 48 years of age, - there are 48 letters in the *Jagati Chhanda* (metre) - by virtue of this highest kind of *Brahmacharya* acquires perfect knowledge, perfect physical strength,* perfect wisdom, perfect development of

---

*And enjoys the full span of life which is 400 years.

PAGE 43

good qualities, nature and characteristics, shines like the sun, enlightening all, and is enabled to master all kinds of knowledge. Should anyone tempt such a *Brahmachaari* to destroy His *Brahmacharya* - which is really the highest virtue - let him answer thus:

O you, foolish wretch! Get away from me. I will never destroy this *Brahmacharya* of the highest order. May the Supreme Spirit, through His grace, help me to keep this holy vow so that I may be able to enlighten such fools as you and teach you and particularly your children, and thereby help you all to lead happy lives."

There are four stages of the human body:-

1. Period of Adolescence - from the 16th to the 25th year.
2. Period of Manhood - from the 25th year to the 40th year.
3. Period of maturity - about the 40th year, when the tissues, organs and secretions of the body reach their highest state of perfection. Thereafter comes the
4. Period of loss -in which excess of such secretions as reproductive element, begins to be lost, in sleep or through perspiration, etc.

The best time for marriage, therefore is the 40th, or rather the 48th year.

Q. Does this law of marriage apply equally to both sexes?

A.~ No. If a man were to remain celibate *(Brahmachari)* for 25, 30, 36, 40, 44 and 48 years, a woman should do so only for 16, 17, 18, 20 or 24 years, respectively.

PAGE 44

This rule applies only to those people who intend to marry, but those who intend not to do so, are welcome to remain celibates till death, if they can. But they must bear in mind that this is possible for those persons alone whose knowledge is perfect, who have full control over their mind and senses, and who are perfect *Yogis*, free from all vices. It is a most difficult task to be master of the senses, and restrain the flood of carnal desires. The following rules should be observed both by pupils and teachers:-

"Let them conduct themselves properly, and study and teach, be truthful in word, deed, and thought and study and teach, be indifferent to joy or sorrow, worldly applause or censure, walk in the path of righteousness, and study and teach (the *Vedaas* and the other true sciences), keep their senses under perfect control, and study and teach, restrain their minds from evil pursuits (such as the practice of injustice), and study and teach, learn the properties of heat, light , electricity, and other natural forces, and study and teach, perform *Homa* daily, and study and teach, serve *atithis*, and study and teach, fulfil their duties and obligations towards other men, and study and teach, protect their subjects and children, and study and teach, preserve and prefect the reproductive element, and study and teach, protect and educate their children and pupils, and study and teach." TAITREYA UPNISHAD 7: 9.

"A wise man would do well to practise both ***Yamaas**** and

**Yamas* are 5 in number:-
(a) Harmlessness; (b) Strict devotion to veracity; (c) Honesty in word, deed and thought; (d) Abstinence from sexual indulgence; and (e) abstinence from the headlong pursuit of worldly things and freedom from the prides of one's possessions (such as wealth and Power). YOGA SHASTRA Sadhanapada, 30. - Tr.

PAGE 45

Niyamaas* and He who practices one without the other, never makes any progress, on the contrary he simply degenerates, in other words, leads a degraded life in this world." MANU 4: 204.

"Neither inordinate desire nor its total absence is conductive to a man's happiness, since it would be simply impossible, either to lead a virtuous life, or to acquire (*Vedic*) Knowledge without desiring for the same."MANU 2: 2

"The study and teaching of all true sciences; observance of the vows 9 of *Brahmacharya*, and truthfulness; performance of *Homa*, as well as the acceptance of truth leading a virtuous life, as enjoined by the *Veda*, communion with God, and acquisition of the knowledge of the *Veda*; performance of seasonal *Homa*,** reproduction of good children, performance of the *Five Great Daily Duties*,*** and doing such other good actions as are productive of beneficial results to the community such as developing technical arts; all the eight things to go to make a *Brahman*, in

---

**Nyamaas* are also 5 in number:-
(a) Cleanliness (physical and mental); (b) Contentment - which does not mean contentedness with physical inertia, but which does mean that you do your utmost to attain your object, but are not carried away by the resulting profit and loss, joy or sorrow; (c) Devotion to duty regardless of consequences; (d) Acquisition and discrimination of true knowledge; (e) Resignation to the Will of God through extreme devotion to Him.
***Specials *Homas* are performed at the change of season, as well as on the occasion of full moon, etc. -Tr.
***

The Five Great Daily Duties

The five great daily duties are,

1. Worship of God;
2. Homa and duty towards the learned;
3. Service of one's parents and other learned and righteous persons;
4. Duty towards animals and the poor and helpless, and
5. Duty towards the altruistic teachers of humanity and ordinary guests, i.e., to show them proper respect and serving them to the utmost of one's power and means. -Tr.

PAGE 46

other words, his mind ought to be the repository of *Vedic* learning and devotion to God." MANU 2: 27. Without the practice of the these an individual is never entitled to be called a *Brahman*

"As skilful driver keeps his horses under control , even so should a wise man keep his senses - which are apt to lead both mind and soul into the pursuit of wicked objects - under complete control." MANU 2: 88.

"Verily, that man alone can achieve his heart's desire who is a master of his senses; he who allows himself to become their slave soon loses* his character." MANU 2: 93.

"A man of low character can never succeed in acquiring knowledge of the *Veda*; in keeping up his vows of celibacy, truthfulness, etc.; nor in fulfilling his duties towards duties towards man and God, keeping control over his passions and desires, being steadfast in his devotion to truth and righteousness, and performing good deeds." MANU 2:97

"There should be no omission in the study of the *Veda* and performance of the *Five Great Daily Duties* and other good works even on holidays, as there is no omission in the act of respiration without risk to life, so there can be no omission of one's daily duties; a good deed done even on an *Anadhayaaya* - so called day of exemption from study, etc., cannot but bear good fruit." MANU 2: 105, 106.

As it is always a sin to tell a lie, and always a virtue to speak the truth, a man should on all days shun vice and practise virtue.

---

*Literally, becomes addicted to great vices. - Tr.

PAGE 47

"He who has a sweet and amiable disposition and serves the wise and old with all his heart, continually gains in knowledge, reputation and strength and enjoys a long life." MANU 4: 121. Whilst he that is otherwise, never advances in knowledge, etc.

"Let a wise man bear malice to no living soul and let him show all men the path that leads to true happiness, let his speech be sweet and kindly, let him be truthful in word, deed, and thought. This alone can lead to the spread of truth and righteousness. Verily, he alone can have a true conception of the teachings of the *Vedaas* whose mind and speech are pure and well under control." MANU 2: 159, 160.

"That *Brahmana* alone is said to possess true knowledge of the *Veda* and God, who shuns the world's applause like poison and courts its censure like immortality." MANU 2: 162

"Thus let the twice-born students (male and female) who had there *Upanayana* performed go on gradually acquiring knowledge of the *Vedaas*, which is their highest duty." MANU 2: 164.

"A *Dwija* as well as his children who, instead of studying the *Veda*, wastes his time in doing other things soon goes down to the level of a *Shoodra*(lowest in character)." MANU 2: 168.

PAGE 48

"A *Brahmachaari* (male or female) should abstain from meat and alcohol, perfumes, garlands of flowers, tasty foods and drinks, the company of the opposite sex, sour articles and injury to all living things, from anointing the body and handling the reproductive organ unnecessarily, from the use of collyrium, from the use of boots and shoes and of an umbrella, or a sunshade, from harbouring low passions such as anger, avarice, carnal passion, infatuation, fear, sorrow, jealousy, malice , from singing, dancing, playing gambling, gossiping, lying and back-biting, from looking upon women (with the eye of lust), and embracing them, and from doing harm to other people, and indulging in such other evil habits. Let every student sleep alone and never lose his reproductive element. He who loses it through passion breaks his vow of *Brahmacharya*."MANU 2: 177 - 180.

PAGE 49

cultivation of any skill or talent you may possess. Never be indifferent to the acquisition of wealth, power, etc. Never neglect your duty to serve your father, mother, teacher, and all preachers of the true religion (atithi). Love virtue and shun vice. Imbibe our virtues, not our faults and imperfections. Always keep the company of those Brahmans (wise men) amongst us who are learned and imbued with piety; put your trust in them and them only. Be charitable. Give - in faith or without faith. For fame, or through shame, give. Give - whether through fear of public opinion, or simply for keeping your word.

Always give. If you are ever in doubt as to the truth of any practice of religion, or a doctrine, or mode of divine worship, follow the practice of those highly virtuous Brahmans, whether Yogis or not, who are free from prejudice, charitable in disposition, and well versed in philosophy and science (physical and spiritual), and extremely desirous of furthering the cause of righteousness. This the advice. This the commandment. This is the mandate of the Vedas. Aye, this is the Law. Follow this advice. Obey the Law." TAITREYA UPNISHAD 7, 11:1-4

Let all bear in mind that "even the most insignificant action, in this world, is impossible without a desire on the part of the doer. Therefore, whatever a man does is the outcome of his will." MANU 2: 4.

"Character or righteous living as taught by the Vedas, as well as, Smritis* in conformity with Vedas, is the highest virtue.

---

*Writings of Aptas in conformity with the Veda.
(An Apta is a pious, truthful, unprejudiced, hones and learned man.) - Tr.

PAGE 50

is the end-all and be-all of all reading and reciting, studying, teaching and preaching. Let a man, therefore, always walk in the path of righteousness. He that swerves from it can never enjoy true happiness - which is born of strict adherence to the conduct of life enjoined by the Veda. He alone enjoys, all true happiness, who requires, knowledge and leads a righteous life." MANU 1: 108, 109

"He is an atheist, and a slanderer of the Vedas, who disparages their teachings, as well as the writings of true teachers in conformity with the Vedas. He should be excluded from good society, aye, even expelled out of the country, (if necessary)."MANU 2: 11

"The Vedaas, the Smrities, the practice of men, good and true, in conformity with the Vedas - the **Word of God**, and the satisfaction of one's own soul - these undoubtedly, are the four criteria of true religion, which enable one to distinguish between **Right and Wrong**" MANU 2: 12.

Equitable dealings, the acceptance of truth and the rejection of untruth, under all circumstances, constitute the true conduct of life; or **Religion**,* and the reverse of this is **Irreligion**

"It is only those, who stand aloof form the headlong pursuit of both wealth and carnal pleasures, that can ever attain a knowledge of true religion. It is the duty of everyone, who aspires after this object to determine, what true

---

* word used in the text is *Dharma* which is a very comprehensive term. If translated into the guiding principle of all human activities, it may give some idea to the reader as to its meaning. - Tr.

PAGE 51

Teachers ashould instil the aforesaid teachings into the minds of their pupils. They should take care that they do not neglect the education of *Classes* other than *Braahmans*, viz,/ - Princes and other *Kshatriyaas, Vaishyaas*, and intelligent *Shoodras*. Because, if *Brahmans* only were to acquire knowledge, there could be no advance in knowledge, religion, and government, nor increase in wealth, for *Braahmans*, whose sole duty is to acquire knowldge and disseminate it, depend for their living on *Kshatriyaas*, etc., to whom they are law-givers.

Brahmans would be relieved of all restraint and fear from *Kshatriyaas*, who, being uneducated, would be quite incapable of judging the soundness or unsoundness of their teachings. They would thus gradually use their power for their own selfish ends, drift into hypocrisy and do whatever they lied and their example would be followed by other *Classes*. But when *Kshatriyaas* and other *Classes* are also well educated, *Brahmans* study still harder to keep ahead of the other *Classes* and walk in righteousness.

They could never then falsely teach and lead selfish, hypocritical lives. It follows, therefore, that it is in their own interest, as well as that of the community at large, to try their best to teach the *Veda* and other true sciences and philosophies to the *Kshatriyaas* and other Classes, that are thr real cause of advance in knowledge, religion, and government, and of increase in wealth, etc. They never live on alms, and, therefore, can have no reason to be partial in religious or scientific matters. When all Classes are well educated and cultured, no one can set up any false, fraudulent, and irreligious practices.

All this goes to prove that it is the *Brahmans*, and the *Sanyaasis*, who keep *Kshatriyaas* and others in proper order and vice versa. Therefore all persons of all Classes should be given good and sound education and be well instructed in the principle of true religion.

THE FIVE TESTS OF TRUTH

The truth of every thing that is learnt or taught should be carefully examined by the following five tests:-

1. ***The Veda and nature of God*** - All that conforms to the teachings of the *Vedas*, nature, attributes and characteristics of God is right, the reverse is wrong.

   PAGE 52

2. ***Laws of Nature*** - All that tallies with laws of nature is true, the reverse untrue; e.g., the statement that a child is born without the sexual union of its parents, being opposed to the laws of nature can never be true.
3. ***The practice and teachings of A'ptaas,*** -i.e., pious, truthful, unprejudiced, honest, and learned men. All that is unopposed to their practice and teachings is acceptable and the reverse is unacceptable.
4. ***The purity and conviction of one's own soul***. - What is good for you is good for the world. What is painful to you is painful to others. This ought to be the guiding principle of one's conduct towards others.

Eight kinds of evidence

- Direct Cognizance.
- Inference.
- Analogy.
- Testimony.
- History.
- Deduction.
- Possibility.
- Non-existence or Negation.

- **Direct Cognizance** (Praatyaksha) is that kind of knowledge, which is the result of direct contact of the five senses with their objects,* of the mind (faculty or organ of attention) with the senses, and of the soul with mind. NYAAYA Shaastraa 1: i, 4.
    1. But this knowledge must not be that of the relation of words with the things signified, as of the word "water" with the fluid called "water", For example, you ask your servant to bring you some water. He brings water, puts it before you, and says : 'Here is water, Sir.' Now, what you and your servant see is not the word "water" but the object signified by it. So ou have the **direct knowledge** of the object called water. But the knowledge

---

*As of eyes with light, or ears with sound, of olfactory sense with colors, of tongue or question sense with flavours, of tactile sense with objects tht give rise to the sensation of touch. -Tr.

PAGE 53

1. This knowledge must not be of **temporary or transient** character, i.e., not the product of observation under unfavourable circumstances; for example, a person saw something at night and took it for a man , but when it was daylight he found out his mistake and knew that it was not a man, but a pillar. Now, his first impression of the thing was of a temporary or transient nature, which gave place to permanent knowledge later on, when the true nature of the thing was revealed in the light.
2. It should be **free from all elements of doubt**, and be certain in character. For example, you see a river from a distance and say: "Is it water there or white clothes spread out to dry?" Or take another example, you see a man from a distance and say: Is it Deva Datta standing there or Yajna Datta?" Now, as long as you are in doubt and consequently not sure about a thing you observe, your knowledge cannot be called *Pratyaksha* (Direct Cognizance). To be that the element of doubt must be absolutely eliminated from it.

Briefly therefore, that knowledge alone is said to be Direct Cognizance, which is not the outcome of the relation of name with the object signified by it, nor gained under circumstances unfavourable for observation or experiment (Hence transient in character) nor into which any element of doubt enters.

PAGE 54

- **Anumaana - inference** - Literally it means that which follows ***direct cognizance***. Two things have been observed to exist together at some time and place, when on some other occasion, one of the woe is observed, the other, i.e., the unknown can be inferred.* For instance, you see a child and you at once infer that he must have had parents. Again, seeing the smoke issuing from behind a hill you infer the existence of fire. You infer the previous incarnation of the soul form observing unequal joy and sorrow in this world at the present moment.

  Inference is of three kinds:-

  1. **Purvavat** - is one , in which you reason from cause to effect, e.g., the inference of coming rain form the sight of clouds; or, again, you see a wedding and naturally infer that some day the wedded couple will have children. Or, again, you

see students engaged in the pursuit of knowledge and you infer that some day they will become men of learning.

---

* Note -- In order to make this point clear I subjoin the following quotation form "Evidences of Human Spirit" , by the Late Pundit Guru Datt Vidyarthi, M.A., bearing on the subject of Inference. - Tr.

" The known datum or data, from which the unknown something is inferred is called in Sanskrit Logic, the Linga and the something inferred is called the Anumeya. With reference to this question of Inference, says Kashayap the logician:- That alone is valid datum for inference (Linga) which has, firstly, been known to co-exist with the thing to be inferred at some time or place, secondly, is also known to be present wherever the like of the thing to be inferred exists, and thirdly, to be absent wherever the unlike of the thing to be inferred exists.

To take, for instance, a concrete example. From the fall of the barometer is inferred the decrease of the pressure of air. Let us see if such an inference can be a valid inference. The fall of the barometer is known. But we know, form a specific experience, i.e., an experiment conducted at a particular time and place, that the decrease of pressure produces the fall of barometer. This fulfils the first condition. Secondly, similar cases of the decrease of pressure, by whatsoever cause, are attended with the fall of barometer, but the third condition is not fulfilled. It is not true that wherever there is no fall in the barometer, there is no decrease of pressure, for, there may be no fall of barometer, although, the pressure may have been decreased.

The mercury, through rise of temperature expands and becomes lighter. Had the same pressure continued, the column of mercury would have rise higher up, but the fall of pressure compensated for the rise, and left the mercury conclusively proved that the fall of the barometer is not the linga of decrease of pressure. Similar reasoning will show that the decrease in the weight of the super-incumbent column of mercury is the linga (inference) of the decrease of pressure."

PAGE 55

- ***Sheshavat*** - inference is one, in which you reason from ***effects to causes***. Examples:- You see a flood in the river, and infer that it must have rained on the mountain from which the river issues. Again, you see a child and at once infer that the child must have had a father. Again, you see this world and infer the existence of the Spiritual cause - the Creator, as well as of a Material cause - the elementary matter. Or, again, take another example. When you se a man in pleasure and pain, you at once infer that he must have done a virtuous or sinful deed before, since you have noticed that the consequence of a sinful act is pain, and that of a virtuous deed, pleasure.

- ***Aaamaanyatodrishata*** - is that kind of inference, in which there is no relation of cause and effect between the known datum and the thing to be inferred, but there is some kind of similarity between the two. For example, you know that no one can get another place without moving from the first, and hence, if you find a person at a certain place, you can easily infer that he must have come to the latter place by moving from the first.

PAGE 56

- ***Upamaana - Analogy*** - is the knowledge of a thing from its likeness to another. The thing which is required to be known is called **Saadhya**, and tha which becomes the means of this knowledge from some kind of likeness between the two is called **Saadhana**

Examples: - a man says to his servant : "Go and fetch Vishnu Mittra." The latter answers that he does not know him, as he has never seen him before. Thereupon the master says :- You know Deva Datta, don't you?" Upon the servant's answering in the affirmative, his master continues: "Well, Vishnu Mittra is just like Deva Datta." So the servant went out to find Vishnu Mittra. As he was passing through a street, he saw a man very much like Deva Datta, and thought that, thta man must be Vishnu Mittra, and forthwith brought him to his master.

Or, take another example. You want to know what a Yak is. Well, some one tells you, it is just like an ox. Next time you go to a jungle and happen to see an animal very much like an ox, you at

once know that it is the Yak you asked your friend about. Now this kind of knowledge, i.e., knowledge of Vishnu Mittra from his likeness to Deva Datta and of a Yak from its likeness to an ox is called***Upamaana or knowledge by analogy***. The words Vishnu Mittra and Yak are called ***Saadhya***, whilst Deva Datta and ox are called ***Saadhana***, in the above two instances.

<>

- ***Shabda - Testimony (literally, word) -*** "The word of an A'pt (altruistic teacher) is called ***Shabda."*** NYAAYA Shaastra 1:,i, 7.

An A'pt is a person who is a thorough scholar, we versed in all the sciences and philosophies, physical and spiritual, is virtuous, truthful, active, free from passions and desires, imbued with love for others, and who is an altruistic teacher of humanity solely actuated with the desire of benefiting the world by his knowledge, experience and convictions. God being the truest and greatest of all A'ptas, HIs word the Veda is also included in ***shabda (Testimony)***.

- ***Itihaas - History*** - is that which tells us that such and such a person was so and so, he did such and such a thing. In other words, ***Itihaas*** is the ***history*** of a country or the ***biography*** of a person. NYAAYA Shaastra 2: 2,1.[The experience of the past recorded in history can be applied to solve many a difficult question of the day. - Tr.
- ***Arthaapatti - Conclusion or deduction.*** - It is a conclusion which naturally follows from the statement of a fact; for instance, one says to another: "Rain falls from clouds" or " and effect flows from a cause." The natural conclusion that can be drawn from the above statement is: "There can be no rain when there are no clouds," or "no effects follow when a cause does not exist."
- ***Sambhava - possibility***. - When you hear a thing, the first thing that enters your mind is whether such and such a thing is possible. Anything that runs counter

PAGE 58

to the laws of nature is not possible, and hence it can never be true; for example, if you are told that a child was born without parents, such and such a person raised the dead to life again, or made stones float on the sea, lifted mountains, broke the moon into pieces, was God incarnate, or saw horns on the head of a man, or solemnized the marriage of a couple born of sterile mother. You could at once know that it could not have possibly happened, being opposed to the laws of Nature. That alone is possible which is in conformity with the laws of nature.

- ***Abhaava - Absence or Negation.***- You infer the existence of a thing in some other place from its ***absence*** from the place where you were told you find it; for instance, a gentleman said to his man: "Go and bring the elephant from the elephant-house." He went there but found that the elephant was not there. He naturally conclude that he must be somewhere near about. So he went out and looked about for the elephant and found him not very far from its proper place and brought him to his master.

These eight kinds of evidence have been briefly described. Their number can be reduced to four fi History be included under Testimony, and Deduction, Possibility, and Negation under Inference.*

It is only by means of these five criteria that a man can ascertain what is right or wrong and not otherwise.

THE SIX ENTITIES

Supreme Bliss (Moksha) is obtained by living a truly righteous life and thereby getting the soul

purified and exalted, and gaining a true conception of the six entities, viz., ***Noumenon, Attribute, Action, Commonness, Dissimilitude, and inherent relation***,

---

*They van even be reduced to three, viz., Direct Cognizance, Inference, and Testimony if Analogy be included under Inference. - Tr.

PAGE 59

(as of cause and effect, of whole with its parts).

Drayvyaas (Noumena) are nine in number:- Prithivi (Solids), A'paah (Liquids), Teja (Luminous matter), Vaaya (Gases), and Akasha, Time, Space, Soul (human and Divine), and Manas (Principle of thought and attention). VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 1: i, 15.

Characteristices (Lakshana)* of a***Dravya (Noumenon)***:- It is something in which attributes and actions or attributes only reside, and which is capable of becoming a co-inherent** cause of an effect. A cause always precede its effect. Out of the nine Noumena, Solids, Liquids, Luminous matter (Ether), Gases, Manas and Soul possess both attributes and actions; whilst A'kaasha, Time and space possess attributes only but no action. VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: i, 1.

"Prithivi (Solids) is something, which excites the optic, gustatory, olfactory and tactile impulses. Colour,*** taste and touch are derived from liquids, Luminiferous, matter or ether, and Gases, respectively." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra2: i, 1.

"The power of exciting olfactory impulses is the natural inherent attribute of solids" VAISHEHIKA Shaastra 2: ii, 2., similarly taste is the attribute of Liquids, Light of Luminiferous matter (Ether), touch of Gases and Shabda,**** of A'kaash.

---

*A lakshana, is that by means of which, and object (to be known) is known, for example, colour is seen with the eyes. Eyes are therefore called a Lakshana.
**Co-inherent means capable of combining.
***i.e., the power of exciting visual, gustatory, and tactile impulses. These terms are used in this sense throughout this chapter.
****Shabda is erroneously translated into sound. Now shabda is not sound, though it is true that shabda is accompanied by sound, when it is spoken. It is very difficult to convey to the reader what the term shabda in the Sanskrit philosophy signifies. The Sanskrit philosophers hold that man being incapable of inventing language, the root-language must be inherent in nature itself. The root-language, which is the mother of human speech is called shabda. and is supposed to inhere in a noumenon called A'kaasha. This root-language is revealed to man by God in the beginning of each creation. - Tr.

PAGE 60

"***A'pah (Liquids)*** is something which excites the optic, gustatory, and olfactory impulses, and in which fluidity and moisture are to be found. The attribute of exciting gustatory sensation is naturally inherent in Liquids, whilst colour and touch are derived from Ether and Gases." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: i, 2.

"Coldness is also a natural attribute of Liquids." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: ii, 3.

"***Teja (Luminous matter)*** is something which excites the optic and tactile impulses." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2:i, 3. The former is its own inherent attribute, whilst the latter is derived from Gases.

"***Vaayu (gases)*** is something which excites tactile impulses." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: i, 4. Though heat and cold are also to be found in it but they are derived from Teja (Luminous matter and A'pah (Liquids).

"***Akaasha*** has not the attribute of exciting these impulses," VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: i, 5, i.e., of light, touch, taste, and smell. Shabda alone is the attribute of A'kaasha.

"Egress and Ingress are the linga* of A'kaasha." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: i, 20.

"***Shabda***, not being observed to be produced by solids and other substances, is not their attribute." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: i, 25. It resides only in A'kasha.

"***Time*** is that of which nearness, futurity, simultaneity, slowness and quickness are predicated."VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: ii, 6.

---

*i.e., the datum from which the existence of A'kaasha is inferred. - Tr.

PAGE 61

"It is an essential element in the production of effects, whilst causes are independent of it. Time is, therefore, spoken of as a cause." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: ii, 9.

Space - "That to which "this side" or "that side" i.e., North, South, East and West), above and below are applicable, is called ***space***."VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: ii, 10.

"That direction of space where the sun is first seen to rise is called East, where he sets, is West. A man facing the East has south on his right and North on his left." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: ii, 14.

"Other directions are South-east, South-west, North-east and North-west." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 2: ii, 16.

Soul - "That substratum, in which desire, repulsion, feelings of pleasure, feeling of pain, conscious exertion (will), and consciousness,* are found is called the ***Atmaa (soul)***."NYAAYA Shaastra 1: 10.

The Vaisheshika Philosophy defines soul thus:-

"That substance, in which respiration, nictitation, physical building and animation, movement, sensation, activity of the senses, organic feelings (such as hunger and thirst, fever, pain, etc.),** desire, repulsion, feeling of pleasure, feeling of pain, conscious exertion, and consciousness are found, is called *soul*". VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 3: ii, 4.

---

*Here only the voluntary functions of the soul are enumerated.

**So far the involuntary attributes and functions are mentioned, then follow the voluntary functions which are the same as in the foregoing definition. - Tr.

PAGE 62

Manas *(Principle of though and attention)*- "The existence of ***Manas*** (the mind or the organ of attention) is established from the fact that one is only capable of attending to one thing at a time."* NYAAYA Shaastra 1; i, 16.

"The powers of exciting impulses,** of colour, taste, smell, touch; number, measure, separableness, property of combining, divisibility, proximity, distance, consciousness, pleasures, pain, deire, aversion, conscious

---

*To give the reader a clearer idea of this substratum called Manas, I cull the following from "Evidences of Human Spirit":- "It is said fo a Greek Philosopher that he was engaged in solving a mathematical problem when and army passed by and he was altogether unconscious of it till a soldier effaced the circle, the philosopher had drawn on the earth, a fact which alone disturbed the attention of the philosopher. What followed may be left to history. Was the movement of an army entirely noiseless? Were no sound waves propagated when the philosopher was solving his mathematical problem? Did not the waves enter the cavity of his ear and put to vibration the tympanic membrane, the delicately placed steps and the grain filled liquid in the internal labyrinths of the ear, in fact the invisible medium of sensation upon the nerves, the indriyas? All this did take place but the philosopher was not attending to it.

There was in the philosopher a something which when engaged in thinking (i.e., solving the problem) was not in contact with the internal ear, a something whose contact with one indriya or faculty precluded its contact simultaneously with another. Its contact with an indriya and therefore with an organ is called what is called Attention; its separation from this cuts the cords of connection and the result is what we call Absent-mindedness. Nor is this Manas the conscious faculty, for who does not know that all the ideas, that our experience has acquired for us, lie for the most part in a latent state in the brain or more correctly in the manas but each and any of them is remembered whenever it is recalled.

**What is perceived by the eye called colour. What is perceived by the tongue is called taste, which is of different kinds, such a sweet, salt, etc.
What is perceived through the nose is called smell.
What is perceived through the skin is called touch.
What conveys the idea of one, two, etc., is called number.
What conveys the idea of lightness and heaviness is called measure.
Separableness is the quality of being separate from others.
Sanyoga - power of combining, explains itself.
Divisibility is the quality of being divisible.
Proximity is the immediate nearness either in place, time or relationship.
Distance (in time or place) explains itself.
Virtue - just conduct.
Sinfulness - unjust conduct.
Other term explain themselves. - Tr.

PAGE 63

exsertion, gravity, fluidity, oiliness, and love, impressibility, virtue and roughness, sinfulness and smoothness or laxity and Shabda (sound and language) are twenty-four ***attributes or qualities (Gunaas)***>"VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 1: i, 16.

"An ***Attribute (Gunaa)*** is that which is dependent upon or resides in a substratum which cannot itself possess an attribute, is not the cause of combination or of an attribute, is not the cause of combination or of division into parts, and is anaapeksha, i.e., independent on another attribute." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 1: i, 16.

"***Shabda*** is that, which is received through the ears, grasped by the intellect, expressed through speech, and resides in ***A'kaasha***."

"Ascent, descent, contraction, expansion, coming, going, and rotation, etc., are the different kinds of ***Karma (motion and action)***." MAHABHASHYA

"That which resides in a substratum, possesses no attributes, and is an absolute cause of a combination or a division, is called ***Karma (motion)***."VAISHESHIKA 1: I, 17.

"Among effects:- Substrata, attributes, motions (or actions) that which is the cause of all and is, therefore, common to all, is called ***Saamaanya (common-element)***." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra1: i, 18.

"Among effects of the same ***Dravya (Substratum)***, the ***Saamaanya (common-element)***, is the fact of their being all effects." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 1: i, 32.

PAGE 64

"Among ***dravyaas (Substances), dravyaaship,****** among gunas (attributes), Gunaship; among karmaas (actions) karmaship* are ***Saamaanya (common-element)***, as well as ***Vishesha (distinctive element)***." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra. 1: 4, 5. For example - dravyaahship i.e., the fact of being a dravyaa (substance), is common to all substances , but it also distinguishes them from attributes (gunaas). Therefore it (dravyaship) is ***Saamaanya (common-element),*** as well as ***Vishesha (distinctive element)***.**

"***Commoness and Dissimilituede*** are relative term." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 1: 4, 3. for instance, among human humanship,* i.e., the fact of being human, is the Common element (Saamaanya), whilst it also distinguishes human beings from animals, thus in this sense it is also the ***distinguishing-element (Vishesa)*** ; similarly, masculinity or feminity is common to all men and women respectively, but ***Braahmanism, Kshatryism, and Vaishyism*** are the ***distinguishing-elements*** among men and women, whilst ***Braahmanism*** is the ***common-element among all Braahmans, Kshatryism*** is the ***common-element*** among all ***Kshatriyaas*** and so on.

Samaavvaaya (Inherent relation) is the inseparable and eternal relation between the whole and its parts, between an action and its agent, between an attribute and its substratum, between genius and its species, and between a cause and its effect." VAISHESHIKA Shaastra 7: 2, 26.

The mutual relation of substrata with one another being in the nature of a combination (physical or Chemical -Tr.), is of a temporary character.

---

*I apologize - to my readers for coining such terms as these. For want of equivalent words in Englinsh I have been compelled to do so in order to make the text intelligible. - Tr.
**

---

*We take for example a cow:-
All that is common to all cows is called the common-element (Saamaanya). Now this common -element distinguishes every cow from the rest of the creation, hence it is alse the differentiating- element (Visheshha).

PAGE 65

The relation between substances, that they possess some attributes in common and can also be converted into different forms which are always essentially of the same nature as the substances out of which they were made, is called ***Saadharmya (similar)***. For example, take earth and water. Both are inanimate substances, both can be converted into different forms, as earth can be molded into a pot, etc., and water into a lump of ice, etc. Therefore, earth and water are ***Saadharmya (similar)*** in this respect.

The reverse of ***Saadharmya*** is ***Vaidharma (dissimilar)***, when the attributes are dissimilar, as in the case of earth and water, earth is hard, dry and excites* olfactory impulses, whilst water

possesses moisture, fluidity and power of exciting gustatory impulses.** These attributes are quite different from each other, hence earth and water are ***(Vaidharma)*** in this respect.

"An effect presupposes a cause>" VAISHESHIKA 4:,i, 3.

"Where there is no cause, there can be no effect." VAISHESHIKA 1: i, 2.

"Absence of an effect does not prove the non-existence of the cause." VAISHESHIKA 1: ii, 1.

"The effect only reveals whatsoever pre-existed in the cause. No new attribute can spring up." VAISHESHIKA2: I, 24. Small and great are relative term as a tetratomic molecule is smaller than a ***likshaa****** but greater than a diatomic molecule; or as a mountain is smaller than the earth, but greater than a tree.

Satt (existence) is the state of being whether of a substratum, an attribute or an action." VAISHESHIKA 1: ii, 7.

---

*As earth is a kind of Prithivi.
**As water is a kind of A'pah.
***i.e., a mote.

PAGE 66

"***Satt*** can be affirmed of everything that exists. Therefore ***satt is called the Greates Common Element (Mahaa saamaanya)***i.e., common to all the entites." VAISHESHIKA 1: ii, 4.

So far entities have been discribed. Now we shall briefly describe ***non-entities (non-existences or abhaavaa)*** which are of five kinds:-

1. ***" Praagaabhaava.***- That kind of non-existence which precedes the formation of a thing is called ***praagaabhaava."***VAISHESHIKA 9: 1: i, 1 For instance, a piece of clothe or a pot did not exist before either of them was made. This non-existence of a piece of cloth or a pot before its formation is called***Praagaabhaava.***
2. ***Pradhawansaabhaava.*** - "Non-existence following the existence of a thing is called ***Pradhwansaabhaava"***VAISHESHIKA 9: i, 2. As when a pot is broken it ceases to exist as a pot, its none-existence then is called ***Pradhwansaabhaava.***
3. ***Anyonyaabhaava.***VAISHESHIKA 9: i, 4. - "That which exists in relation to one thing and does not exist in relation to another is called ***Anyonyaabhaava.*** As a cow exists as a cow, or a horse exists as a horse, but a cow is not a horse, nor is a horse, a cow. That is, a cow in relation to itself exists, but a cow as a horse, or a horse as a cow, does not exist. This kind of non-existence is called ***Anyonyaabhaava***
4. ***Atyantaabhaava.*** - "That which is different form the aforesaid three kinds of non-existences, is called ***Atyantaabhaava.***VAISHESHIKA 9: i, 5. As the horns of a man, or an ethereal flower, or the child of a barren woman. This is impossible sort of non-existence is called ***Atyantaabhaava.***

PAGE 67

5. ***Sansarga Pratishedha.*** - "Non-existence of a thing in one place whilst it exists in another, is called ***Sansarga Pratishedha***"VAISHESHIKA 9: i, 10. - As, for example, a

person says: "the pot is not in the house", i.e., it is outside in some other place. Here the pot and the house are not related to each other in any way.

Ignorance (Avidyaa) is the result of defective faculties and education."* VAISHESHIKA 9: ii, 11.

"It is another name for ***incorrect knowledge."***VAISHESHIKA 9: ii, 12.

"The correct knowledge or the knowledge ofa thing as it exists, is called ***Knowledge (Vidyaa).***"VAISHESHIKA 9: ii, 12

All those substrata, as, ***Prithivi*** etc., and their attributes that are effects, are ***non-eternal***or ***transient (Anitya);*** whilst those that are causes are ***Eternal (Nitya)***." VAISHESHIKA 7:i, 2.

"That which exists and has no cause is called ***Nitya (Eternal)***; whilst that which has a cause or has been made is ***Non-eternal (Anitya)***." VAISHESHIKA 7: i, 3.

There are 6 kinds of Inferential knowledge, i.e., knowledge derived from the relation of a sign with the object signified:-

- When we proceed from ***causes to effects.***Example. A man at some distance sees a man clap his hands ans at once infers that sound will be produced.

---

*I have used the word Education in the widest sense possible, whether it be there result of direct teaching or of association with other people or of environments. The word used in the text is sanskara which means an impression made on the soul either subjectively or objectively. - Tr.

PAGE 68

- When we proceed from ***causes to effects***. Example. A person hears the sound (peculiar to the clapping of hands) and at once infers that there has been clapping of hand close by." VAISHESHIKA 9; ii, 1.
- ***Samyogi (Concurrent)*** knowledge is that which is obtained from the concurrence of one thing with another. Example. The mention of the word ***body*** at once suggests the existence of ***skin*** along with it.
- ***Samvaayi* (Inherent)*** knowledge is that which is obtained from the inherence of something (i.e., an attribute substance or an action) in another. Example. We know Extension inheres in Ether, therefore, from the mere mention of the word ***Ether, Extension*** is at once inferred.
- ***Ekaartha Samvaayi*** knowledge. When two things (such as attributes) reside in a substance, the knowledge of one at once suggests the other. This kind of inferential knowledge is called ***Ekaartha Samvaayi***. For example, we see the ***orange colour*** of an orange and at once infer that it must be smooth to ***touch*** or ***sweetish*** in taste.
- ***Viradhi (Antithetic)*** knowledge; is that which is gained from the natural opposition of ideas or things. ***White*** colour will suggest ***black*** colour; ***sweet***taste suggests ***bitter*** taste; hissing of a snake at once will suggest that its natural foe, the mongoose, must be close by.
- ***Vyaapti*** is the relation of two things (one of which is a ***known datum*** and the other not ***known***) which are related to each other in a definite, fixed relation so that either of them always accompanies the other, or only one accompanies the other; as an example of the latter we

---

*Samvaayi is the inseparable, inherent relation of a substance, an attribute on an action with another substance, just as the relation of fluidity with fluids, whoe with its parts, genus with its species, etc., see page 73.

PAGE 69

take ***fire*** and ***smoke***. Now in this case smoke is the datum ***(Saadhana)*** by means of which fire ***(Saadhya***, i.e., the thing ***inferred***) is known. Whenever you see ***smoke***, you naturally conclude that there is ***fire*** somewhere. The relation between the two is not an arbitrary one, but a natural, definite and universal one. You can nowhere find smoke without fire.

"The ***Saadhana (sign)*** sometimes exists temporarily by its own power", SAANKYA Pravaxhan, 5: 31, as smoke, caused by the disintegrating power of fire (from wood, etc.) when carried to distant places, is seen hanging by itself without the fire being found near it. This also called ***Vyaapti.***

"The relation of one pervading the other is also called ***Vyaapti*** just as the primeval matter (Prakriti)* pervades the ***principle of wisdom*** , whilst the latter is said to be pervaded by the former, i.e., the higher ***pervades*** the lower whilst the latter is ***pervaded*** by the former. In other words, the relation of the ***thing pervading*** this called ***Vyaapti***.

Teachers should examine everything they teach to their students with the help of the above criteria; so should the students. Other wise they can never be profound scholars. They will only be mere krammers. Teachers before teaching a book should thoroughly study it themselves and test the truth of its contents by the application of the aforesaid test. On finding it true they should teach it their scholars, otherwise not.

" It is only by their properties and the applications of (the aforesaid) tests that the true nature of things is ascertained."

THE SCHEME OF STUDIES

1. First of all comes ***Phonetics (shikshaa)*** by Panini. Parents and teachers should teach their children and pupils how to pronounce different letters in their right ***places***, with the right amount of ***effort*** and the right ***agent***. For example, take the letter ***P***. The

---

*Prakriti is held to be the subtlest form of matter, out of which all the visible and the invisible objects of the world are evolved. Prakriti being subtlest and the cause , next in the stage of evolution - a little less subtle than it - comes what is called Mahaatatwa (the principle of wisdom), a stage lower still comes Ahankaara (the principle of Individuality) and so on. - Tr.

PAGE 70

right ***place*** to pronounce it is the ***lips***, the proper amount of ***effort*** is what is called ***full*** and the right ***agent*** is the ***tongue***.

2. Then comes ***grammar.*** It includes ***Ashtaadhayayi***; ***Dhaatupaath*** (Book of roots), ***Ganapath*** (book of groups), ***Unaadikosh*** (Book of prefixes and suffixes, etc.). Last of all comes ***Mahaabhaashya*** (Exposition of the above four books of ***Panini*** or ***Patanjali***.

   If the teachers and their scholars be intelligent, energetic, honest and extremely anxious to advance their knowledge, the pupils can master the Science of Grammar in three years, and thus become profound Grammarians thoroughly acquainted with the construction of every word - ***Vedic or Laukika*** (i.e., of ordinary Sanskrit literature)>

Other sciences are easier to learn. The amount of labour that is required to learn the Science of Grammar is greater than that required to master any other subject; and the amount of knowledge acquired by the study of the above books on Grammar in three years cannot be gained by the study of such books as ***Saarswata Chandrikaa***, ***Kaumadi,*** and ***Manormaa,*** in fifty years.

The reason is that the great sages have expounded the most abstruse subjects in their books in such an easy way that it is entirely impossible or ordinary ment to approach it. The aim of those great souls in writng their books was to make the subject so easy as to be readily grasped in the shortest possible time; whilst the object of little minds has always been to clothe their subject with such a difficult-round -about style as would necessitate great labour and waste of time, on the part of the student, to comprehend it, whilst he would profit but very little.

We can liken this to digging up a whole mountain and finding a penny-worth of gold; whilst the study of the books of the great sages can be well likened to the diving of a man into the sea and finding most valuable pearls in one plunge.

3. Then let them read ***Nighantoo*** and ***Nirukta*** (books on Vedic Vocabulary and Philology) by Yaska in six to eight months, but not waste years of their valuable time over ***Amarkosha*** and other such books written by atheists.
4. Thereafter they should study ***Chhandograntha*** (Prosody)< by Pingala, so that they may thoroughly master the rules that govern versification - ***Vedic*** and ***Sanskrit*** - an be able to compose poems of their own. This can be done in four months. They

PAGE 71

should not waste their time over ***Vritratnaakar*** and the like books written by mean scholars.

5. Then they should study the ***Manu Smriti***, the ***Vaalmiki Raamaayana***, the ***Vidurniti*** and other selections like this from the ***Mahabhaarat.*** The tutor should teach these as poetry ought to be taught. The study of these books tends to eradicate evil habits and bring culture. It should not take the students more than a year to finish them.
6. Then they should study the six ***Shaastraas*** (commonly called the six schools or systems of philosophy) with the expositions of ***Rishis*** - the enlightened great souls, the true seers of nature - as far as possible, or in the absence of these, with the help of the true commentaries of other honest scholars. But before taking up ***Vedant Shaastraa*** They should learn the ten ***Upnishads***.** All these books should be finished in two years.
7. Thereafter, they should study the four ***Vedas****** with their four ***Braahmanaas******** with proper accent meanings, (and finish this course in six years). The ***Vedaas*** should be both taught by example and precept.

Says Nirukta on this subject:-

"He, who reads the ***Vedaas*** even with proper accents, but does not know their meanings, is like a tree weighed down by its fruit, branches, leaves and flowers, or like a beast of burden carrying on its back grain which it cannot eat. But he, who understands their meanings and acts up to their teachings by avoiding sin and leading a virtuous life, enjoys perfect happiness in this world and ***eternal (extreme) bliss*** herafter in consequence thereof." NIRUKTA 1: 18.

*Poorva mimansaa, Vaisheshika, Nyaaya, Yoga, Saankhya and Vedanta.
**I'sh, Kena, Katha, Prashna, Moonduka, Aitreya, Taitreya, Chhandogya and Vrihadaaranyka.
***Rig, Yjur, Saama andAtharva Veda.
****Aitreya, Shatapatha, Saama and Gopatha.

PAGE 72

Says the ***Rig Veda***:-
"An ignorant man has eyes to see but sees nothing, has ears to hear but hears nothing, has a tongue to speak but speaks nothing. The ignorant can never understand the hidden mysteries of knowledge. But it is to the learned alone that knowledge reveals its true nature, just as a woman longing to meet her husband, dresses in her best and puts on her finest jewelry, so as to display her charms to him." RIG VEDA 10: 17.4.

"What good can the ***Vedaas*** do unto him who does not know that Great Being, who is All-pervading and Eternal, Holiest of all, Who sustains the Sun and the Earth, and is the support of the learned, the method of Whose realization is the chief aim of Vedic teaching? But they alone enjoy ***eternal bliss*** who study the ***Vedaas,*** live a righteous life, become perfect ***Yogis*** and realize God. RIG VEDA 1: 164. 39.

8. After the study of the ***Vedaas*** they should learn the ***Upavedaas*** (or sub-Vedaas) which are four in number:-
    - ***Ayurveda - Medical Science*** - Herein are included the works of ***Charak*** and ***sushrut,*** and other sages. They should learn both theory and practice, including Medicine, Therapeutics, Materia, Physiology and Pathology, Hygiene with Dietetics and Climatology and the sciences of Temperaments, Anatomy and Surgery with the proper use of instruments in different operations, etc., in four years.

      <LI***Dhanur Veda - Science of Government*** - It consists of two parts:-
      (i)***Civil part*** - is the art of governing people, protecting their lives and property, developing the wealth and resources of the country, making the people happy and contented by the right administration of justice - protecting the good and punishing the wicked, etc.

      PAGE 73

      (ii) ***Military part,*** comprises organization of the army, use of fire-arms and the knowledge of different kinds of drill, tactics and strategy, etc. The should learn both branches of the ***Science of Government*** in two years.

    - ***Gandharva Veda - Science of Music*** - They should learn all the different parts of music, such as tunes, modes, modifications of modes, time, harmony, refrain. They should also learn singing, playing, and dancing, etc., properly, but chiefly singing and playing of the ***Saama Veda Mantraas*** on musical instruments. But they should never sing amorous songs like Nauch-girls nor bray like sensual Vairaagees..*

      The books on this subject are ***Naarad Sanhitaa,*** etc., composed by ***Rishis***.

    - ***Artha Veda - science and practice of mechanical arts -***also called ***Shilpa Vidyaa.*** They should study the laws of matter and motion. They should also know how to make various kinds of machines, etc.

In short, they should learn theoretically and practically, the nature and properties of all substances from solids to ***A'kaashka***. This is the science that helps to increase the wealth and prosperity of a country.

Thereafter, they should thoroughly study the ***Jyotisha Shaastra*** - which includes ***Arithmetic, Algebra, Geometry, Geography, Geology*** and ***astronomy*** in two years. They should also have practical training in these Sciences, learn the proper handling of instruments, master their mechanism, and know how to use them. But they should regard ***Astrology*** - which treats of the influence of stars and constellation on the destinies of man, of auspiciousness and non-auspiciousness of time, of horoscopes, etc. - as a fraud, and never learn or teach any books on this subject.

Both the teachers and their scholars should so endeavour as to be able to master all the sciences and arts, and become highly cultured in twenty or twenty-one years, and thus accomplish the object of their lives and live in happiness.

The knowledge that can be acquired by following the aforesaid schemes in twenty or twenty-one years cannot be gained in any other way even on one hundred years.

---

*A sect of mendicants.

PAGE 74

BOOKS APPROVED AND BOOKS CONDEMNED

We have recommended only the books of Rishis for students to study, because they were men of great learning, masters of all the sciences, and also imbued with piety. but the books of mean scholars we have condemned, because they had only a smattering of knowledge, and were not free from prejudice either. How could their writings, then, be free from the faults of their authors?

Out of all the above-mentioned books (we have recommended the student to study), - the ***Vedaas*** , ***Angaas*** (Limbs),* ***Upangaas***,** (sub-limbs), ***Braahmans***** and ***Upvedaas***** (sub-Vedaas) - the ***Vedaas***> alone are held to be Divine in origin, the rest were made by Rishis - seers of the ***Veda*** and Nature.

Should anything be found even in their writings contrary to the teachings of the ***Vedaas***, it is to be rejected, for the ***Vedaas*** alone, being of Divine in Origin, are free from error and aximatic ***Swataah Pramaana)***, in other words the ***Vedaas*** are their own authority; whilst other books such as the ***Braahmanaas*** are ***Prartaahpramaana***, i.e., dependent upon the ***Vedaas*** for their authority. They stand or faoll according to their conformity or conflict with the ***Vedaas***.***** The books to be avoided are:-

1. Grammar:-a.Katantra, b. Saaraswata, c. Chandrika, d. Mugdhabodha. e. Kaumudi, f. Shekhar, g. Monorma, etc.
2. Dictionary - Amarkosha, etc.
3. Prosody - Urittaratnakar, etc.
4. Shiksha is the Science which teaches the proper pronunciation of words and laws of euphony.
   Atka Shiksham Pravakshyami Pranamyan matam yatha.
5. Jotisha (astronomy) - Shighrabodha, Mahurta, Chintaamani, ettc. books on astrology.
6. Poetry - Naya ka bheda, Kuvabja nand, Raghuvansha, Maagha, Kiratarjunira, etc.
7. Mimansa - Dharmasindhu, Vratarka, etc.

8. Visheshika - Tarkasangraha, etc.
9. Nyaya -Yogdishaa, etc.
10. Yoga - Hathapradipka
11. Saankhya - Yagavashishtha, Pancha dashi
12. Medical Service - Sharangdhar.
13. Smriti - all Smritis except the Manu Smirit arring the interpolated verses.
14. all Tantras, Puranaas, Upapuraanaas, Ramaayaana by Tulsi Das, Rukmani Mangala, etc., and all books 9of this kind) written in Bhaashaa.

They ought to be looked upon as snares; once caught in them a student can never know the truth.

Is there no truth to be found in these books?

A.~ There is a sprinkling of truth mixed with a large amount of rubbish, myths and fabrications; but as even the best food mixed with poison is to be avoided, so should these books.

Do you not believe in the Puraanaas, Ithihaasa, etc.?

A.~ Yes, we do; but only in the true ones, not in the forged ones.

Q. Which of them ar ture and which forged of false?

A.~ " ***Ithihaasa, Puraana, Kalpa, Gaathaa*** and ***Naaraashansi*** are five names given to ***Braahmanaas*** (that have been mentioned before). The ***Bhaagvat*** and the like books ar not the real ***Puraanaas***.

---

*There are six in number:- Phonetic sciences of morals and duties, Grammar, Philology, Music and astronomy.

**They are also six in number. They ar the so-called six Schools of Philosophy, see page 71.

*** & ****They are four in number, and have been enumerated before, see page 71.

*****or further elucidation of this subject see Chapter 7 of this book as well as our book called "An Introduction to the exposition of the four Vedas.

PAGE 75

Why do you not accept whatever truth there is to be found in the condemned books?

truth is to be found in them is of the ***Vedaas*** and other true ***Shaastraas***, whilst whatever is false in them is of their own invention. With the acceptance of the ***Veda*** and other ***Shaastraas*** the whole truth is accepted. He, who tries to extract truth from these false books, will have to unavoidably swallow untruth as well. Therefore even truth, which is adulterated with untruth, should be avoided like food adulterated with poison.

What is your faith?

A.~ ***Vedic***. We believe that the ***Vedaas*** alone are the supreme authority in the ascertainment of true religion - the ***true conduct of life***. Whatever is enjoined by the ***Vedaas*** we hold to be right; whilst whatever is condemned by them we believe to be wrong. Therefore we say that our religion is ***Vedic***. All men, especially the Aryas, should believe in the ***Vedaas*** and thereby cultivate unity in religion.

Are the Rishis in contradiction with one another?

Q. Even the Shaatraas written by Rishis - contain truth mixed with untruth, and contradict one another like other books. Take for ezample, the subject of Creation. Now all the six Shaastraaas contradict one another on this subject. The Mimaansaa, for instance, gives application a the cause of the world; the Vaisheshika, time; the Nyaaya, atoms; the yoga, activity; the Saankhya, primeval matter, and the Vedant, God. Are not their teachings mutually contradictory?

A.~ Firstly, barring the ***Vedaant*** and the ***Saankhya*** these ***Shaastras*** do not teat of the subject of ***creation*** directly. It is only indirectly mentioned. ***Secondly***, there is no contradiction in their teachings. It only shows that you have no knowledge of contrariety ad conformity. Now tell me pray, do you call it a contradiction when different statements are made on the same subject or when made on different subjects?

Q. When different statements ae made on the same subject. Here, too, the subject is the same, viz., *creation*.

A.~ Is knowledge one thing or more than one?

Q. One.

A.~ If it be one, why then are there so many divisions of this knowledge, such as Grammar, Medicine, and Astronomy. As in the

PAGE 76

case of one science, its different branches are treated of separately, so are the six branches of the ***Science of Creation*** treated of separately in the six ***Shaastraaas***. You can never call it a contradiction, can you? Just as six different causes take part in the formation of a pot, viz., application, time, clay, intellect, labour (required for mixing or separating different materials), the properties of matter, and thereafter, similarly six different causes of the world have been discussed by the six ***Shaastraas***, thus ***application*** by ***Mimaansa***, ***Time*** by the ***Vaisheshika***, ***material cause*** by ***Nyaaya***, ***Divine activity*** by ***Yoga, atoms and the gradual formation of the different substances*** of the world out of them by the ***Saankhya*** and the efficient cause ***God*** by the ***Vedaant***.

There is no contradiction in it. Or take for illustration the Medical Science. Its six different branches, Pathology,* Medicine and Therapeutics, Materia Medica, Hygiene and Surgery,* are separately treated, but all these aim at curing disease. Likewise six different causes have operated in the formation of this world; on cause having been discussed by each ***Shaastra*** there is no contradiction in them **

Both the teachers and their scholars should void all those things that act as hindrances in the way of the acquisition of knowledge, such as the company of the wicked and lascivious people, contraction of bad habits (such as the use of intoxicants), fornication, child-marriage,*** want of perfect ***Brahmacharya***, want of love on the part of the rulers, parents and learned men for the dissemination of knowledge of the ***Veda*** and other ***Shaastraas***,.

Over eating, keeping late hours, sloth in learning, teaching, examining or being examined, or performing these duties with dishonesty, not regarding knowledge s the highest thing in the world, want of faith in ***Brahmacharya*** as the source of health, strength, intellect, courage, political pwer and wealth, leaving off the worship of one true God, and wasting time in going about from place to place for the purpose of seeing and worshipping images made of stone, and other inanimate

objects, absence of the worship of the five true living gods - father, mother , teacher, ***altruistic teachers of humanity (atithis)*** and other great men, - neglect in the performance of the

---

*Physiology is included under Pathology, and Anatomy under Surgery. -Tr.
**We shall discuss this subject more fully in the Chapter on Cosmogony.
*** i.e., marriage under 16 years in the case a girl, and under 25 years in the case of a man.

PAGE 77

duties of their ***Class***and ***Order***, and instead, wearing different marks of sectarian distinction on the forehead and other parts of the body.* Chaplets and rosaries, etc., observance of fasting days as the 11th and 13th of each month, having faith in the forgiveness of sins by pilgrimage to such sacred places, as Benares, and by constant recitation of the names of gods and goddesses such as ***Rama, Krishna, Naaryaaa, Shiva, Bhawati and Ganesha,*** indifference towards the acquisition of knowledge through the wicked advice of hypocrites, believe in the possibilities of obtaining salvation simply through hearing such books as ***Puraanas*** and (Bhaagvat and the like) read, and thus neglecting the study of the true philosophies of and sciences, the living of good and righteous lives, the practice of ***Yoga***, and communion with God - which alone can lead to *eternal bliss* - want of love for knowledge through greed of gold, and loafing about, etc.

People (of India), at the present day, who are involved in the aforesaid false practices, remain destitute of the advantages of *Brahmacharya* and education, are consequently sunk in ignorance, and afflicted with diverse diseases.

The sectarian and selfish *Braahmans* of the present time prevent other people, through their false teachings, from acquiring knowledge and association with men of learning, ensnare them in their own nets and thus ruin them physically, mentally, and materially. They want to keep the *Khatriyaas* and other classes illiterate, since they are afraid that if they acquired knowledge and become enlightened, they would expose their hypocrisy, get out of their selfish grip, and become disrespectful towards them.

Both the rulers and the ruled should see that these obstacles are removed from the path of the students (male and female) of all classes. In order to give their children sound education, they should exert themselves to their utmost with all their hearts, all their souls and all their wealth.

Are even women and Shoodraas (low-caste) allowed to study the Vedas?

What shall we do if they take to reading? Besides, there is no authority for their doing so. On the other hand, is condemned by the Vedas thus - Shruti "Never should women and the Shoodraas study."

---

*such as Oordhava pundra - a single perpendicular line on the forehead;
Tripundra- three lines made across the forehead and other parts of the body;
Tilak - a coloured mark on the forehead made with ashes, etc.

PAGE 78

A. ~ All men and women (i.e., the whole of mankind) have a right to study. You may go and hang yourselves. As for the text you have quoted, it is of you own fabrication, and is no where to be

found either in the *Vedas* or any other authoritative book. On the other hand, here is a verse from the *Yajur Veda* that authorizes all men to study the *Veda* and hear it read:-
God says:- "As I have given this Word (i.e., the four Vedas) which is the word of salvation* for all making [Here some one might say that by the word *Jana*, which we have translated into all mankind, only *Dwijas* are meant, as in the *Smritis*** (so-called) they alone are allowed to study the *Veda* but not women and *Shoodraas*, the other half of this verse answers this objection by adding] - *Braahmans, Kshatryas, Vaishyaas, Shoodraas,* women, servants, aye, even the lowest of the low, so should you all do, i.e., teach and preach the *Veda* and thereby acquire true knowledge, practise virtue, shun vice, and consequently being freed from all sorrow and pain, enjoy true happiness." YAJUR VEDA 26:2.

Now sir, shall we believe your word or God's ? God's, certainly. He who will still refuse to believe, (that women and *Shoodraas* are entitled to Veda learning) shall be called a *Nastika* (an infidel) because Manu has said, "He is an infidel who is a reviler and disbeliever of the *Veda*." Does not God desire the welfare of the *Shoodraas*? Is God prejudiced that he should allow the study of the Veda to *Dwijas* and disallow it to *Shoodraas*?

Had God meant that the *Shoodraas* should not study the Veda or hear it read, why should He have created the organs of speech and hearing in their bodies? As He has created the sun, the moon, the earth, the water, the fire, the air, various food and drinks, etc., for all, so has He revealed the Veda for all. Wherever it is declared (in the books of Rishis) that the *Shoodraas* are debarred from the study of the Veda,

---

*i.e., Happiness here and after.
**Books written by Rishis on the conduct of life. -Tr.

PAGE 79

the prohibition simply amounts to this that he, that does not learn anything even after a good deal of teaching, being ignorant and destitute of understanding, is called a *Shoodraa*. It is useless for him to learn, and for others to teach him any longer. As for you debarring women from education, that only shows your ignorance, selfishness and stupidity. Here is an authority from the Veda entitling girls to study:-
"Just as boys acquire sound knowledge and culture by the practice of *Brahmacharya* and then marry girls of their own choice, who are young , well educated, loving and of like temperament, should girl practice *Brahmacharya* study the Veda and other sciences and thereby perfect her knowledge, refine her character, give her hand to a man of her own choice, who is young, learned and loving." ATHARVA VEDA 11, 14:3, 18.

It follows, therefore, that girls should also practise *Brahmacharya* and receive education.

Should even women read the Veda?

A. ~ Certainly. Here is an authority from the *Shraut Sutra*: "(In the Yajna) let the wife recite this mantra."

Were she not a scholar of the Veda as well as of other *Shaastraas*, how could she in the *Yajna* receive the *Vedic Mantraas* with proper pronunciation and accent, as well as speak *Sanskrit*?

In ancient India, *Gaargi and other ladies, - jewels among women - were highly educated and perfect scholars of the Veda. This is clearly written in the Shatpatha Brahmana.*

Now if the husband be well-educated and the wife ignorant or vice versa, there will be a constant state of warfare in the house. Besides of women were not to study, where will the teachers, or Girls' schools come from? Nor could ever the affairs of the state, the administration of justice, and the duties of married life, that are required of both husband and wife [such as keeping each other happy, the wife having the supreme control over all household matters] be carried on properly without thorough education (of men and women).

PAGE 80

The Kshatriyaas women in ancient India, used to be well-acquainted even with the military science, or how could they have gone with their male relations and fought side by side with them in battle-fields, as Kekai did with her royal husband Dasharatha. Therefore it behoves Braahman and Kshatriyaa women to acquire all kinds of knowledge, and Vaishya women to learn trace, and the mechanical arts and the like, and Shoodraa women, the art of cooking, etc.

As men should, at the very least, learn the science of Grammar, Dharma and their profession or trade, likewise should women learn Grammar, Dharma, Medical Science, Mathematics and the mechanical arts at the least, for without a knowledge of these, ascertainment of truth, proper behaviour towards their husbands and other people, bearing of good children, their proper up-bringing and instruction, proper management of the household affairs, preparation of foods and drinks in accordance with the requirements of Medical Science, (so that they may act on the system like good medicine and keep the whole family free from disease and thereby make them happy), can never be effected.*

Without a knowledge of mathematics, they can never keep accounts of their household properly; and without a knowledge of true religion, as taught by the Veda and other Shaastraas, they cannot know what God and Dharma are, and can never, therefore, escape going astray from the path of rectitude.

Verily, those parents have done their duty and, therefore, a thousand thanks to them, who have their best to make their children practise Brahmacharya, acquire knowledge, and perfect their character, which al help to develop both their bodies and minds to the fullest extent, so that they may accord a just and righteous treatment to all - parents, husbands, wives, fathers -in-laws, mothers-in-laws, their king and fellow subjects, neighbours, friends and offspring, etc.

Knowledge alone is the inexhaustible treasure; the more you spend it, the more it grows. All other treasures run out by spending, and the claimants inherit their shares as well. Thieves cannot steal this treasure, nor, can anyone inherit it.

**comprises righteousness, justice, honesty, proper discharge of one's duties, etc. - Tr.*

PAGE 80

It is the chief duty of the rulers, as well as of the ruled, to protect and augment this treasure.

Manu says:- "The State should make it compulsory for all to send their children of both sexes to school at the said period and keep them there for the said** period till they are thoroughly well-educated. It should be made a penal offence to break this law. In other words, let no child - whether a girl or a boy - be allowed to stay in the house*** after the 8th year; let him remain in the seminary till his Samaavartana time, [i.e. the period of Return home****] and let no one be allowed to marry before that." MANU 7:152.*

Again says Manu:- "Of all gifts (that one can bestow on another) - water, food, animals (as cows, and buffaloes), sesamum seeds, land, clothes, gold, and butter, etc. - that of the knowledge of the Veda is the best and the noblest." MANU 4:233

Let all, therefore, try their utmost to disseminate knowledge with all their heart, with all their soul, and with all the material resources at their command.

That country alone prospers where Brahmacharya is properly practised, knowledge is keenly sought after, and the teachings of the Vedic religion followed.

END OF CHAPTER 3

CHAPTER 4

PAGE 82

Brahmacharya or student life

Back to contents

"Let a student* who has not violated his vows of *Brahmachaarya*(student-life), and has conducted himself, righteously according to the advice of his preceptor, enter married life after he has studied with their subsidiary sciences, the four Vedaas, three Vedas, two Vedas, or one Veda only." MANU 3: 2.

"Let him, who has faithfully discharged his duties towards his preceptor and received from his father, - natural or spiritual (i.e., the teacher), the gift of the knowledge of the Veda, sit on an elegant bed, decked with a garland of flowers; and let his father (natural or spiritual) honor him with the present of a cow." MANU 3: 3. A female student possessed of the aforesaid qualification should also be honored in the same way by her father.

"Let a twice-born man (Braahman, Kshatriya, and Vaish) after having obtained the consent of his teacher and taken the bath (prescribed for the ceremony of Return Home from the seminary), return home and espouse a maid, of his own Class, endowed with excellent qualities." MANU 3: 4.

---

*Male or female

PAGE 83

"A girl, who is not descended on his mother's side within the sixth degree and does not bear the same family name (Gotra) as his father's. is eligible for marriage." MANU 3: 5.

It is a fact that "we do not love or value a thing, that we are familiar with, so much as one that is hidden from our view." SHATHAPATHA BRAAHMANA. For instance, if a person has heard a great deal about the sweetness of sugar, but never tasted it, his mind is taken up with the desire of tasting it. Or when we hear a person, who is not known to us, highly extolled for his excellent qualities, it makes us very eager to make his acquaintance. For the same reason, a man should marry a girl, who comes from a distant country and is not a near relative either on his mother's side or father's side.*

The advantages and disadvantages of distant and near marriages

The advantages and disadvantages of distant and near marriages respectively are:-

1. Any two persons who have, in their childhood, lived near each other, played and quarreled together, loved one another, noticed each other's faults, imperfections, ebullitions of temper

---

*At Washington city before the National Medical Association long since in the session there, Dr. S.M. Bewis made the following shocking statement: "My researches give me authority to say that over ten per cent of the deaf and dumb, and over five percent of the blind , and nearly fifteen percent of the idiotic in our State institutions for subject of these effects, are the offspring of kindred parents."

PAGE 84

and misbehaviors, and perhaps sometimes, even each other undressed, if married to each other, can never love each other to the extent desired.

2. The marriage of near relatives does not improve the race from want of interchange of fluids and essences (such as blood) of the body, it rather deteriorates it,. This is analogous to the addition of water to water, no new quality being produced.
3. As the addition of sugar and such medicines as ginger, improves the taste and quality of milk, so does the marriage of people, who are not related to each other (either on father's or on mother's side), improve the race.
4. As in the case of an invalid, change of climate and diet very often effects a cure, so does marriage with foreigners or distant people improve the health of the parties and prove beneficial in every other respect.
5. When the parties are nearly related to each other and live amongst their people, the sorrows and joys of one family will

PAGE 85

affect the other and there will be many occasions for family disputes to arise; while marriages among distant people and consequent separation from relatives lengthen the thread of mutual love. This is not the case when they live near their people.

6. When marriages are contracted with people of foreign or distant countries, things and news from those countries can be easily obtained (and consequently relations between different countries become closely established). This not possible when people marry near relatives or persons living near their homes, or, in their own country.

   In Sanskrit a daughter is called *duhitri* (from Du - distant, Hit - good), because the marriage of a girl to a man who comes from a distant country or distant part of the same country is productive of good.

7. If the bride's people do not live very far from her husband's home, there is a possibility of her parents becoming poor, as whenever she visits her parents, they will have to give her something or other by the way of a present.
8. If their people live near at hand, on any slight friction taking place between the husband and the wife, she, feeling assured that her people will support her, will at once leave her husband and go to her parents. That may become the cause of mutual reviling and wrangling, for, women, as a rule, are so easily offended and pleased.

Choosing a spouse

"In connecting himself with wife, let a man studiously avoid the following ten families, be they ever so great in political power or rank, or ever so rich in cows, goats, horses, elephants, gold or grain."* MANU 3: 6.

---

*Similarly, while choosing a husband, let a girl avoid a man from the aforesaid families.

PAGE 86

"The family which is not religious, that which is destitute of men of character, that in which the study of the Veda is neglected, that the members whereof have long and thick hair on the body and that which is subject to such diseases as Piles, consumption, Asthma, Bronchitis, Dyspepsia, Epilepsy, Leprosy, and Albinism; because all these faults and diseases are transmitted to the offspring.* Therefore both husband and

---

*A good example is given by Sir Alfred Garrod, who writes:- "A few years since, I was consulted by a gentleman laboring under a severe form of gout with chalk stones, and although not more than fifty years old, hea had suffered from the disease for a long period. On inquiry, i ascertained that for upwards of four centuries the eldest son of the family had invariably been afflicted with gout when he came into possession of the family estate." (Gout and Rheumatic Gout, by H.A. Garrod, M.D., F.R.S.) - (Marriage and Disease, by S.A. Strahan, P.220.)
As to advice respecting marriage, it may at once be said that those already suffering from any form of tubercular disease should not marry. Neither should anyone marry a member of a family in whicn consumption or other form of tubercular disease is common. - (Marriage and Disease, by S.A. Strahan, p. 212).

PAGE 87

wife should come from good (physically, morally and intellectually) families." MANU 3: 7.

---

*Epilepsy is, in fact, one of the most strongly hereditary of all diseases. In this respect, it is on a footing with the suicidal impulse, melancholia, drunkenness, and gout. Dr. Russell Renolds found heredity well marked in 31 per cent of his cases, and says, " I am therefore, led to believe that an hereditary tendency of epilepsy is much more common that it is generally represented to be by recent writers on the subject." Echeverria said 28 per cent of all cases coming under his notice were hereditary. Webster in England, and Esquirol in France, declared that a third of all cases of epilepsy depended on family taint, while Dr. Gowers, one of the greatest authorities on the subject, asserts that no less than 36 per cent of all epilepsy has hereditary transmitted predisposition as a foundation.

I myself have records of 143 consecutive cases of epilepsy, as they appeared for admission into an asylum for the insane. There were 93 males and 50 females. Of the males, 344 per cent were members of families in which either epilepsy or insanity of some description had already appeared; of the females, 50 per cent belonged to the same classes; while in 398 of the total of both sexes there was positive evidence of hereditary taint. I would also remark that in a considerable number of my cases, no history of any kind could be obtained.- (Marriage and Disease, by S.A. Strahan, p - 134-135)

PAGE 88 - 89

"Let a man never marry one who is pale and anaemic, nor one who is altogether a bigger and stronger person than himself or has a redundant member,* nor one who is an invalid, nor one either with no hair or too much hair or too much hair,** nor one immoderately talkative, nor one with red*** eyes." MANU 3: 8.

---

*All families in which diabetes occurs should be looked upon with suspicion, and should epilepsy, idiocy, insanity, or deaf-mutism also have appeared in the family, it is a very grave question whether marriage should be ventured upon. -(Marriage and disease, by S.A. Strahan, p.131).
**Here we do at times find cases to support the theory, but it is amongst those less grave characters which, while unmistakably marked, do not so rapidly go to extinction of the family that we must find our strongest proof, among such characters are hore-lip, cleft palate, club-foot squint, cataract supernumerary fingers or toes, color-blindness, premature baldness, or greyness, deaf-mutbifida, and the like; or on the other hand, where the characters physiological. Instances of repeated transmission of any or all

of the above-mentioned characters can be found everywhere around, and , doubtless, cases will present to the mind of the reader.. -(Marriage and Disease, by Dr. S.A. .Strahan, p.63).

A still more peculiar case was that of Edward Lambart, "the human porcupine", as he was called; this man's skin was covered by warty projections which were periodically moulted. He had six sons and two grandsons similarly affected, while the females of the family escaped; the two grandsons mentioned having seven sisters who were free from the peculiarity. (Dr.S.A. Strahan's Marriage and Disease, p. 71).

"In the village of Koshilovo (Grodno Government) there are over 50 peasants who have more than usual number of fingers. According to interesting particulars published in the Novoe Vremye, they are all descendants of a peasant who married in the first half of the last century, and who had extra fingers on one of his hands. In the present generation this abnormality is reported to the extent of 2, 3, 4, and 5 even additional fingers. Some cases simply show a thumb duplicated from the first joint. As the result of intermarriage the deformity is spreading to neighboring villages. It dispenses the young men from military service, however sound they may be constitutionally." - (the Eugenics Review, London.).
***The word in the text is Bhura or brown. But I think this is not right. Very likely there has been a slip of the pen here. The word in the verse which has been translated into Bhura (brown) is Fingalaa which has been rendered into Pilaa or yellow in the author's book called Sanskaar Vidhi. Here however, it seems that the word means red. -Tr.

PAGE 90

"Nor one with the name of star,* of a tree,** or of a river,*** or of a mountain,**** nor one bearing a name denoting low origin,^ or servility,^^ nor one named after a bird,+ , a snake, ++ nor one whose name inspires terror." MANU 3: 9. These names are despicable and belong to other things as well.+++

"Let him choose for his wife, a girl who has a graceful figure without any deformity, who has a pretty name, who walks gracefully like a swan or an elephant, who has fine hair and lovely teeth, and whose body is exquisitely soft." MANU 3: 10.

O. ~ **What is the best time for marriage and which is the best form?**

The best time and form of marriage

A. ~ The best time for marriage, for a girl, is from the sixteenth to the twenty-fourth year of her life and for a man, from the twenty-fifth to the forty-eighth year. The marriage of a girl of sixteen to a man of twenty-five years is called Inferior marriage. Of a girl of eighteen or twenty with a man of thirty-five or forty is called medium marriage. Of a girl of twenty-four with a man of forty-eight is called superior marriage.

The best form of marriage is that by choice (Swayamvara), after the education of the contracting parties is finished and their Brahmacharya for the aforesaid period completed. Happy is the country wherein the people devote themselves to the pursuit of knowledge, live chaste lives, and adopt the aforesaid form of marriage. Down into the depths of misery sinks that country wherein the people do not practice Brahmacharya, nor acquire knowledge, where early

---

*As Ashvini, Rohni, etc.
**As Rose, etc.
***Such as Ganges, etc.
****Himdlyd.
^Kali (Black), etc.
^^Chaandali (an outcast), etc.
+ Mend, Parrot, etc.
++ As Naagi (snake), etc.
+++ The idea of the sage Manu seems to be that the people should not give ugly name to their children. -Tr.

PAGE 91

marriage and marriage between the unsuitable, are prevalent, for, marriage preceded by the practice of Brahmacharya and perfection of knowledge is the basis of all true reform and the source of all true happiness; the reverse of it brings on the absolute ruin of people who follow it.

O. ~**Says Paraasara, the Law giver:-**
"A girl at the age of eight is called Gauree,* at nine, Rohinee, at ten, Kanya,*** thereafter she is called**
Rajaswalaa.**** If she is not married before she becomes Rajaswalaa (i.e., till the tenth year), her father, , mother and elder brother, all of them shall go to hell.

A. ~ Says the **Brahma Puraana** (that has just been composed by us) "In one second after birth, a girl is called **Gauree**, in two seconds she becomes **Rohinee**, in three, **Kanya**, and thereafter **Rajaswalaa**. If she be not married till she become Rajaswalaa, her father, mother, brother, sister and maternal uncle, one and all shall go to hell."

O. ~ **The verses, you have quoted, are not authoritative.**

A. ~ Why are they not authoritative? If Brahma's verses are not authoritative how could yours be?

O. ~ **Well! Well! Do you not hold even Parasaasara and Kashi Naath as authorities?**

**Gauree means fair and is also the name of the wife of Mahaadeva one of the incarnations of the deity mentioned in the Puraana.
**Rohinee means red, it is also the nme of the wife of Vasudeva, a Puranic God.
***Kanya, a maid.
**** One that mentruates. (This has been just composed by us).

PAGE 92

A.~ Do you not hold **Brahmaa** an authority? Is Brahma not greater than Paraasara and Kaashi Naath? If you do not believe in **Brahma**, we reject your Paraasara and Kaashi Naath.

O. ~**Your quotation cannot be held authoritative, because it teaches an impossibility. One thousand seconds are taken in childbirth alone, how could a girl , then, be married when she is only one, two or three seconds old; nor can any good result from a marriage at such and impossible age.**

A. ~ If our verses convey an impossible meaning, so do yours; because a marriage even at the age of eight, nine, or ten years is useless, for it is only at the age of twenty-five year, that a man's body is properly developed and the reproductive element perfected, and it is at the age of sixteen, that a woman's body is strong enough and her reproductive organs sufficiently developed to bear good and healthy children.*

The reproduction of children in a girl of eitht years is an impossibility. Besides naming girls, as, **Gauree** (fair) and **Rohinee** (red), is simply absurd, because a girl may be dark as well as fair. Again Gauree wa sthe wife of Mahaadeva and Rohinee of Vasudeva, whom you Puranics (Hindus) regard as mothers. You imagine your girls as representing Gauree and Rohinee, how could you then be justified in marrying them to do so? How could it ever be in conformity with the dictates of true religion?

It follows, therefore, that both your verses and ours are absolutely wrong and devoid of authority. Just as we composed a few verses and palmed them off as Brahma's, so have other people forged those verses and in order to stamp them with authority have passed them off as the

*In his book Sushruta, the great surgeon, Dhanwantri forbids sexual connection between persons who are under the aforesaid ages thus:- "If a girl under sixteen conceive of a man under twenty-five years, she very often miscarries but if she does not miscarry and the child is born at full time he does not live long, but if he does live long, he is nothing bu a weakling; never should, therefore, a man have sexual intercourse with a girl of a very tender age." SUSHRUTA Sutra sthana 10:47, 48. The perusal of the principles (of Sexual Physiology) laid down in scientific books observation of the laws of nature and reasoning on this subject cannot but lead one to the irresistible conclusion that a man and a woman, undertwenty-five and sixteen years respectively, are not fit for discharging reproductive functions. All those who violate the above principles come to grief.

PAGE 93

writings of **Paraasara** and other sages. It is best, therefore, to reject all these so-called authorities and recognize the **Veda** alone as the proper authority in all matters and set accordingly.

"It is better that men and women should remain single till death rather than marry unsuitables; i.e., persons of mutually unsuitable qualities, characteristics and temperaments should never marry each other." MANU 9: 89

Says Manu:- "Let a maid wait for three years after she has begun to menstruate and then let her choose for herself a husband, who is her equal." MANU 9:90. A girl menstruates once a month and, therefore, it is after she has menstruated thirty-six times in three years that she becomes marriageable but not before.

All this goes to prove that it is not right or proper that marriages before aforesaid period, or of unsuitables, should ever take place.

O. ~**Should marriage be under the control of parents or the contracting parties themselves?**

A. ~ It is best that it should be under the control of the contracting parties. Even if parents ever think of arranging a match, it should, under no circumstances, ever be done without the consent of the parties for when people choose their partners for life themselves, there is less likelihood of mutual disagreement and the children born of such a union are also of a superior order.

There is nothing but trouble in store for those whose marriage is not of their own choice - they having been simply forced into it. The real factors in marriage are the bride and the bridegroom, and not their parents. It is they who will be happy if they agree well together and they alone will suffer if they disagree.

PAGE 94

"In whatsoever family the husband is contented with his wife, and the wife with her husband, it is there and there only that happiness, wealth and honor dwell permanently." MANU 3: 60. And wheresoever the husband and the wife disagree and squable, there is nothing but misery, poverty, and disgrace.

The **Swaymvara** marriage, i.e., marriage by choice - the most ancient form of marriage in India - is the vest form of marriage. Before a man and a maid think of marrying, they should see that they suit each other in point of knowledge and disposition, character, beauty, age, strength, family,* stature, and built of body and the like. Until they suit each other in all these things, no happiness can result from marriage. Nor can marriage in early life ever lead to any beneficial result.

"That man alone, who, after having taken the vows of **Brahmacharya** at the time of his initiation (Upnayana) into it and observed them strictly in student life, has perfected his knowledge, refined

his character, and who is well-dressed and enters married life in the full bloom of youth is as if born again (in knowledge and wisdom).

He makes a name for himself and enjoys happiness. He is firm and courageous; his mind is centered on the increase of knowledge and attainment of wisdom. Men or learning and piety give him their helping hand to elevate him. He is thus honored amongst them. Those who marry without having previously practiced **Brahmacharya** and acquired knowledge and culture, or who do so at an early life, are absolutely ruined, nor are they ever respected by the wise and the learned." RIG VEDA 3:8: 4.

---

*Vide Page 85 where the list of families with whom no marriage connections should be formed is given. -Tr.

PAGE 95

"Let girls, who are virgins, resembling cows that have never been milked before, who have passed the period of childhood and are about to leave single lives, are well-educated and cultured, fit to bear all the responsibilities of married life, and are in the full bloom of youth, who, by the practice of **Brahmacharya**, have reached a state of excellence and wisdom, which only those of great learning and high virtues can attain, marry husbands of mature age and bear children by them." RIG VEDA 3:55: 16.Never should they think of men even in their dreams in early life. This alone can give them happiness in this world and herafter. Early marriage i even more harmful to a woman than to a woman.

"Just as men, quick on perception and action, energetic, in full youth, strong in body and capable of discharging reproductive functions marry maidens, who are young, dear to their hearts, and enjoy life to a good old age(a hundred years or more), and are well-blessed with children and grand-children, so should all men and women do. Since seasons, mornings and evenings, days and nights, all tend to take away the beauty and strength of the body and bring on old age, I (whether a man or a woman), should practice **Brahmcharya**, acquire knowledge, perfect my character, gain in strength of body and soul and attain full youth before I get married." RIG VEDA 1:178: 1. All those who violate these principles of marriage do so against the teachings of the Vedas, hence they never can be happy.

As long as in this country (India), sages and seers, emperors and kings and other people followed the aforesaid system of marriage by choice (Swamvarivivah) precede by a life of **Bramacharya** devoted to the acquisition of knowledge and culture and perfection of the body, it continually progressed and prospered. Since its inhabitants have neglected **Brahmacharya** and the pursuit of knowledge,

PAGE 96

and have instead, taken to child-marriage - and that too under the control of the parents, - India has been steadily declining. It, therefore, behoves all good and sensible men to do away with this pernicious system, and introduce instead, marriage by choice in accordance with the divisions into Classes, (Varna Vyavasthoo) which should be based on the qualifications, accomplishments and character of the individuals.

Marriage of the highest Class

O.~ **He, whose parents are Brahmans, is a Brahman indeed. But can a person, whose parents are not Brahmans ever become a Braahman (the highest class).**

A. ~ Yes. Many, in the past, have become **Braahmans** many in the present do and many in future, will. Here are some of the historical proofs. In the **Chhaandogya Upnishad** we read that the sage **Javaal** of an unknown Class became a **Braahman**. In the **Mahaahaarata**, it is written that **Mishwaamitra**, Kshatriya (second class) became a **Braahman**, so did the sage **Maatang** an outcast by birth. Even at the present day, he who possesses the qualification, character and knowledge of a **Braahman** is respected as such and the ignorant are treated as **Shoodraas** (lowest class). So will it be in the future.

O.~ **How can the body formed out of the reproductive elements - male and female - change in character and assume a new form suitable for another Class.**

A. ~ A man does not become a **Braahman** because his body was the product of the reproductive elements derived from the bodies of **Braahman**parents. Says Manu, "The study of the true sciences, the practice of **Brahmacharya**, the performance of **Homa**, the acceptance of truth and rejection of untruth the dissemination of true knowledge leading a virtuous life as enjoined by the **Veda**, the performance of seasonal **Homa**, the reproduction of good children, faithful discharge of the **five Great Daily Duties**, and doing such other good works as are productive of beneficial results to the community, such as developing technical arts, association with the good and the learned, truthfulness in word, deed and thought, and devotion to public good and the like, all these things go make a **Braahman**" MANU 2: 28.

PAGE 97

Now do you not believe in this verse?

O.~**Yes, I do.**

A. ~ Well, then, why do you believe that the division into Classes is based on the accident of birth?

O.~ **It is not I alone who think so. There are many others who believe with me, it being the most ancient usage from time immemorial. Do you oppose even the most ancient customs?**

A. ~ No! But on account of your perverted understanding we do.

O.~**How is it that our understanding you call perverted, whilst you think yours is rightly directed?**

A. ~ Simply because you call a usage, which is only six or seven generations old, as the most ancient custom, whilst we call that custom ancient which has been in vogue from the time of the revelation of the **Veda** or that of Creation of the world to the present day.

Do you not see in this world that good parents some-time get wicked children, and good children have wicked parents, at other time both are good or bad? Why cannot the **Braahman** children then become **Shoodraas** or vice-versa? You people are sunk in doubt and ignorance. Se, what the great sage Manu says:-
"Let children walk in the footsteps of their forefathers, but only if they be good, not otherwise; since by treading the path of good and pious men, no one ever comes to grief." MANU 4: 178. Do you believe this?

O.~**Yes, I do.**

A. ~ Besides, whatever has been revealed in the **Veda** by God is ancient, but whatsoever is opposed to it can never be called ancient. Should all people believe like this or not?

O.~**Certainly they should.**

A.~ He who refuses to believe in it should be asked. "If a person's father be poor and he grows rich, should hem therefore, through the pride of his father's poverty, throw away his wealth? If a man's father be blind, should his son also pluck his eyes out?

PAGE 98

If a man's father be of low character, should his son also be do wicked deeds'? No, never. On the other hand, it behoves all men to imbibe their parents' virtues only, not their vices. He who believes that one's Class is determined by the accident of his birth, not by his own character, accomplishments and acquisitions, should be asked do it is that he does not recognize a man a **Braahman**, even when he has left his Class and become an outcast, or has turned a Christian or a Muhammadan.

The only answer he can give is that he has left off the performance of duties required of a **Braahman**. If proves, therefore, that only those who faithfully discharge the high duties of a **Braahman**, can be called **Braahmans**. even if a low-born man were to possess qualifications, accomplishments and character of a superior **Class**, he should be recognized as such; and if a man, high-born though he be, were to act like a man of an inferior **Class**, he should be relegated to it.

O.~**The Yajur Veda says "Braahmans were born of His - God's - mouth, Kshatriyaas, out of His arm, Vaishayaas, out of His thighs, and Shoodraas, out of His feet." Now just as the mouth can never become an arm, nor can an arm become the mouth, so can never a Braahman become a Kshatriya, etc., nor, can the latter become the former.**

A. ~ Your translation of the aforesaid mantra is wrong. The word His has reference to the word **Purusha** , the Formless All-pervading Being, in the preceding mantra. Being Formless He could not have such organs as the mouth. Were He to possess these organs, He could never be Omnipresent, nor therefore Omnipotent, no could He then create and sustain this universe and resolve it into the elementary condition, nor dispense justice to the souls according to their deeds good or bad, nor could He be Omniscient, Unborn, Immortal and the like.

The true meaning, therefore, of this mantra is that it this universe created and sustained by the Omnipresent God, he who is the (mukh) head, leader among men, is called a **Braahman**, he in whom power and strength (Baahu*) reside preeminently in a Kshatriya. He who travels about from place to place

---

*Baahu, verily is strength, verily Baahu is power." Shatpatha Braahman.

PAGE 99

for the purposes of trade, etc., and obtains all things (for the community) on the strength of his thighs (i.e. is the support of the community just as the thighs are that of the human body) is called a **Vaishya**, lastly a **Shoodra** is like feet, the lowermost part of the body, because he is ignorant.*

Other authorities translate this mantra in the same way; as for instances, the **Shatapatha Braahman** says, "These (Braahmans) are said to be born out of the head as they are the heads -

leaders". Just as the head is the highest organ in the body, so is that man the nobles and the best in the body of politic whose knowledge is perfect and whose acquisitions, accomplishments and character are of the highest order amongst men. He is, therefore, called a **Braahman**.

Besides, it is as impossible for any thing to be born out of the mouth of God (Since being without a body, He has no mouth nor any other organ) as the marriage of the son of a barren woman. Had **Braahmans** been born out of the mouth of God, it being their material cause, their bodies ought to have been round, like the mouth, in shape. Likewise the bodies of **Kshatriyaas, Vaishayaas**, and **Shoodraas** ought to have been like arms, thighs and feet respectively in shape, but they are not so.

Besides, even supposing some were born in the manner you speak of, those who were born out of the mouth and other organs might have justly been entitled to be called **Braahmans**, etc., but not you who were born, like other men, out of your mother's womb. Why should you then pride yourselves on being **Braahmans** when you did not come out of the mouth of God? We have proved, therefore, that you translation of the aforesaid mantra is wrong, whilst ours is right.

The sage Manu holds the same view. Says he " "As the son of a **Shoodraa** may attain the rank of a **Braahman**if he were to possess his qualifications, character and accomplishments, and as the son of a **Braahman** may

---

*And therefore fit for menial service only.

PAGE 100

become a **Shoodraa**, if he sinks to his level in his character, inclinations and manners even so must it be with him who springs from a **Kshatriya**; even so with him who is born of a **Vaishya**. In other words, a person should be ranked with the Class whose qualifications, accomplishments and character he possesses." MANU 10: 65. It is written in the **A'pastambha Sootraas** that "A low Class man may, by leading a virtuous life, rise to the level of a higher Class man and he should be ranked as such. In like manner a high Class man can by leading a sinful life, sink down to the level of a Class low than his, and should be considered as such." Apastambha Sootraas,

The same law applies to women in determining their Class.

By the application of this law, each Class, being comprised of individuals who possess all the qualifications that are necessary for admission into it, is kept in a stage of unadulterated purity, that is to say, no **Kshatriya, Vaishya** or **Shoodraa** is allowed to enter into or remain in the **Braahmana Class**. Similarly, **Kshatriya, Vaishya** and **Shoodraa** Classes also remain unadulterated. In short, there can be no admixture of Classes, hence no class will be disgraced or become the subject of reproach in the public eye.

O.~**Supposiing a family has only one child and that enters into a different Class, who will then look after the old folks? Besides, the family line will die out. How would you provide for such cases?**

A. ~ Neither will the old people be neglected nor will the family line come to an end, because the State - Political and Education Assemblies* - will provide them with children of their own Class in exchange for their own children, hence, there will be no confusions or chaos in the society.

Classes of all persons should be determined according to their qualifications, accomplishments and character in the twenty-fifth on the sixteenth year, according as they are males or females.

They should also marry persons of their own Class, namely, A **Braahman**, a **Braahman** woman; **Kshatriya** a **Kshatriya** woman: A **Vaishya**, a **Vaishya** woman, and a **Shoodra**, a **Shoodraa** woman. It is then and then only that the people will faithfully discharge the duties of their respective Classes and secure, thereby, perfect harmony.

---

*See Chapter 6 of this book for the composition and powers of these assemblies. - Tr.

PAGE 101

QUALIFICATIONS AND DUTIES OF THE FOUR CLASSES

"Studying and teaching, performing , Yajna* and assisting others in doing it, giving alms, and receiving gifts - these six are duties of a **Braahman**." MANU 1: 88. But should be borne in mind that "The receiving of gifts is a mean thing."

1. "Restraining the mind from entertaining sinful thoughts.
2. Keeping the senses from the pursuit of unrighteousness and directing them, instead, in the path of rectitude.
3. Living a pure, chaste life by the practice of life**Brahmacharya**.
4. Attaining purity (of mind and body)**.
5. Having firm faith in the power of truth and righteousness and being perfectly indifferent to the applause or censure of the world, pleasure or pain heat or cold, hunger or thirst, profit and or loss, honor or disgrace, and sorrow or joy, in the discharge of one's duties.
6. Cultivating tender heartedness, humility, straightforwardness and simplicity of character.
7. Acquiring a profound knowledge of the **Veda** and other **Shaastraas**, attaining the ability to teach others, the power to discriminate between right and wrong, and the knowledge of all things (animate or inanimate) as they really are.
8. Possessing a perfect knowledge of all entities - from earthly things to God - and

---

*Yajna is the application of the knowledge of the physical, chemical and physiological and the like properties of material substances and of psychological ones of mental substances. It, therefore, generally requires the association of men and objects. "The word Yajna which originally indicates any action requiring association of men and objects, productive of beneficial results is always translated by European Scholars, as sacrifice. The notion of sacrifice is a purely Christian notion and has no place in the Vedic philosophy. It is foreign to the genuine religion of India. Hence all translations in which the word sacrifice occurs are to rejected as fallacious." - The terminology fo the Vedaas and European Scholars.

** Manu says: "Water washes off the impurities of the body, truth exalts the mind, knowledge and strict devotion to duty elevate the soul and possession of ideas refines the intellect."

PAGE 102

the proper application thereof.

9. Having perfect faith in the **Veda**,
10. God,
11. and salvation,
12. belief in the past and future life of the soul,
13. love of righteousness and knowledge and
14. association with the good and the learned,

15. always cheerfully serving the father, mother tutor, and the altruistic teachers of humanity and never maligning these.

These fifteen characteristics and accomplishments must be found in a person, before he or she can be called a **Braahman** or a **Braahmani** (female)." Bhagvat Gita.

1. "To protect people by the administration of perfect justice without fear or favor, i.e., by showing due respect to the good and punishing the wicked.
2. To spend money in furthering the cause of truth and justice and in advancing knowledge and serving the deserving.
3. To perform **Homa**and other **Yajnaas**.
4. T0 study the **Veda** and other **Shaastraas**
5. To shun the allurements of sensual gratification by perfect control of the senses and thereby constantly augment the powers of the body and the soul." MANU 1: 89.
6. To be fearless in fighting with enemies though they be in thousands and he be single handed.
7. To be bold, and dignifies and fee from all weakness.
8. To be firm of resolution and cool under difficulties.
9. To be clever in the discharge of public duties and in the pursuit of studies and never to run away as to ensure victory.*
10. To be liberal-minded.
11. To be just in dealings with all and always to keep his word." GITA.

These eleven are the duties and qualifications of a **Kshatriya**.

---

*If the field could be won by running away or putting the enemy on a false track or through strategem, he should do so

PAGE 103

1. To keep herds of cattle, breed, improve and multiply them.
2. To spend money, etc., in the advancement of knowledge and truth.
3. To perform **Yajnaas**, such as **Homa**.
4. T study the **Veda** and other **Shaastraas**
5. To lend money on interest.*
6. To cultivate land,.

These are the duties and qualifications of a **Vaishya**>

"It behoves a **Shoodraa**to earn his living by faithfully serving **Braahmans, Kshatriyaas** and **Vaishyaas**, without showing and disrespect, jealousy and conceit. This one thing alone is a **Shoodraa's** duty and qualification." MANU 1: 91.

The duties and qualifications of all the four Classes have thus briefly been described. All individuals should be placed in different Classes according to their qualifications, accomplishments and character. By adopting this system all will advance in every respect, because the higher Classes will be in constant fear of their children being degraded to the **Shoodraa** Class, if they are not properly educated. The same fear will also make the children acquire knowledge and culture. Whilst the lower Classes will be stimulated to exert themselves for admission into the Classes above them.

To recapitulate, the education of the community and the preaching of religion should be entrusted to **Braahmaans**, because they, being men of profound learning and exemplary character, can

discharge those duties most satisfactory. By entrusting the affairs of the State to **Kshatriyas**, a country never suffers through misrule or mismanagement.

Tending the cattle, business, etc., should be entrusted to **Vaishyaas**, as they can do this work properly. A **Shoodraa** is to do menial service, because being ignorant through lack of education, he is fitted for nothing higher, but can minister to the physical requirements of the community.

---

*The rate of interest should range from 3 to 16 per cent, per annum and should never exceed this. When the debtor has paid back double of what was lent to him, even the principal must be considered as paid off. The debtor should never pay at rates exceeding the above limit. Nor should any one lend money at a higher rate.

PAGE 104

It is the duty of the ruler and other responsible persons to see that all the four Classes discharge their duties faithfully.

CHARACTERISTICS OF MARRIAGE

Marriage is of 8 kinds:-

1. **Brahma**.
2. **Deva**.
3. **A'rsha**.
4. **Praajaapatya**.
5. A'sura.
6. **Gaandharva**.
7. **Raakhasa**.
8. **Paishaacha**.MANU :3: 12.

1. **Brahma**.~ The marriage, by mutual consent, of two such persons as have, through the regular practice of **Brahmacharya** acquired perfect knowledge, righteousness, and culture, is called **Brahma**.
2. **Deva**.~ The giving away of a beautifully dressed daughter (by her father), to one, who officiates at a great **Yajna**, is called **Deva**.
3. **A'rsha** is that kind of marriage, solemnized in lieu of consideration received from the bridegroom.
4. **Praajaapatya** is the marriage relation into which both parties enter with sole object of furthering the cause of righteousness.
5. .**A'sura** is a form of marriage solemnized after both the bride and the bridegroom have been bribed.
6. **Gaandharva** is the reciprocal (sexual) congress of a youth and a maiden with a mutual desire proceeding from lust, in which (all social) laws have been utterly disregarded.
7. **Raakhsasa** is the forcible or fraudulent abduction of a maiden from her home.
8. **Paishaacha** is the forcible deduction of a girl, while she is sleeping, intoxicated or disordered in intellect.

PAGE 105

Of all these 8 kinds of marriage, **Brahma** is the best, **Deva** and **Praajaapatya** are middling quality, **A'rhsa, A'sura** and **Ghaandharva** of inferior quality, **Raakhssa** is base, whilst **Paishaacha** is the lowest and most wicked.

It should be borne in mind that the bride and the bridegroom should not before marriage be allowed to meet each other in retirement, since, such a meeting of young people may lead to bad consequences.

When boys and girls become of a marriageable age,* in other words, when only 6 or 12 months are left in the completion of their **Brahmacharya** and education, let the photographs or picture of boys be sent to the teachers of Girls' schools, and those of girls, to those of Boys' schools.

Let the teachers then send for the diaries** of those who are alike in outward appearance, and study them carefully. When they find any two students (one male and the other female), resemble each other in disposition, temperament, character, and accomplishments, and consider them suited to each other for marriage, let them place the photo and the diary of one in the hands of the other, and ask them to inform them of their intention (i.e., whether they would care to marry each other or not).

If the be quite willing to marry each other, let the Return home ceremony of both be performed simultaneously. They should be allowed to converse with each other or hold a discussion (on any subject to test each other's knowledge and ability) in the presence of their tutors, parents and other respectable people.

Whatever questions or answers, on any confidential subjects, one would like to put, or give to the other, should be done in writing before the assembly. As soon as they feel that their love for each other is strong enough to entitle them to marry and have, consequently, made up their minds to do so, the very best arrangement should be made with regard to their diet so that their bodies, that had weakened through the practice of rigid

---

*Minimum marriageable age for a girl is 16 years, while that for a boy 25 years. -Tr.
**These diaries should be kept even since children are born, first by parents, and then by tutors when they have left home and joined their schools. In these books should be recorded whatever the parents and tutors have noticed in their children or pupils with regard to their dispositions, temperaments, general behavior, habits, character, physical ailments, as manifested in sport, everything in connection with the development of their bodies and gradual unfolding of their minds.-Tr

PAGE 106

discipline and hard life of **Brahmacharya**, and strict devotion to studies, may soon, gain in muscles and strength just as the new moon grows into the full moon. Afterwards, on the day, the bride has ceased to menstruate and taken her bat of purification, let a **Vedi** be made and a pavilion erected* and **Homa** performed with clarified butter and odoriferous substances, etc. Let the bride and the bridegroom invite learned men and women on this occasion and honor them properly.

Let them then do all that is necessary, for the occasion in accordance with the directions given in our book called the **Sanskaara Vidhi**, on the day which has been previously decided upon for the purpose of generating a new life and most cheerfully go through the ceremony of joining hands before all, and finish the whole marriage ceremony by 10 pm or 12pm and retire.

Let the husband follow the proper method of discharging semen and the wife that of drawing it up. As far as possible, they should never waste their reproductive elements

perfected and preserved by the practice of **Brahmacharya**, because, the children born of the union of such reproductive elements (male and female) are of a very superior order.

When during the act of sexual intercourse the semen is about to be discharged, let them be quite still, let the nose of one be quite opposite to that of the other, and the eyes of one to those of the other and so on; in other words, their bodies should be straight, and their minds perfectly happy. Their bodies should not bend one way or the other.

Let the husband relax his body, and the wife, as soon as the semen enters her vagina, draw up her breath, pull together her genitals and draw up the semen, so that it finally rest in the uterus.** an enlightened woman will know at that very moment if she has conceived.

In any case non- appearance of menses at the end of the month will make it clear to all if conception has taken place. Let them both then have a bath in clean water. Let them take as much milk as they desire,*** and go to sleep in their respective beds. This plan should be followed whenever they wish to generate a new life. When after one month the menses do not appear, and they are consequently

---

*Should the bride and the bridegroom care to have their marriage celebrated in the presence of their tutors, let it be done there (i.e., in the seminary), otherwise the house of the bride's parents is the proper place for it.
** This is a very delicate subject. It would not be proper to dwell on it any further. These few remarks should suffice to suggest all that my be necessary.
*** It should be first boiled with dry ginger, satton, cardamom and then cooled down before it is taken.

PAGE 107

convinced that conception has taken place, the husband should not approach his wife for one year, for, by following this advice, a child of a very superior order is born and the children that follow are also as good as the first-born; whilst on the other hand, by violating this law the reproductive element is uselessly lost, the lives of the husband and the wife are shortened and they are afflicted with diverse diseases. But they should, by no means, cease to treat each other most lovingly.

Let the husband preserve his reproductive element and the wife take care of her child in utero. They should conduct themselves in the matter of diet and dress in such a manner that the husband may not lose his reproductive element even in sleep, while the body of the child in utero is ell nourished and grows in beauty, loveliness, strength and energy, and the child is born during the 10th (lunar) month (of pregnancy).

The wife should particularly take care of herself from the 4th month but more particularly from the 8th. She should never use purgatives, dry, non-nutritious articles, intoxicants and other substances that are prejudicial to the growth of intellect and physical strength. On the other hand she should use such articles of food and drink as good rice, wheat, lentils and other pulses, clarified butter, and milk.

She should also vary her diet intelligently according to the climate of the locality (she lives in) and the season of the year.* There are two Sanskaars to be performed during conception, viz., one in the 4th month called **Punsavana**** and the other in the 8th called **Simantonayana**.*** These should be performed in a fitting manner.

After confinement the mother and her child should be most carefully looked after. About 2 inches from the navel the cord should be tied with a stout but soft ligature, and then cut off in front of it. It should be tied in such a manner that not a drop of blood escapes from the child's body. The mother and the child should then be given a bath with warm and scented water. The room should be well cleansed and **Homa** performed with clarified butter and odoriferous substances. The father should, then, utter "thy name is **Veda**" in the right ear of the child and dip a gold pencil in a mixture of honey and

---

*Shunthipaaka and Saubhagya Shunthipaaka should be kept ready before hand for use (These preparations are considered as highly invigorating to the system). Such nutritious substances as milk ad butter, and condiments and medicine as ginger enter into their composition.-Tr.
/* The object of these Sanskaars is to influence the physical and mental development of the child n utero by publicly charging the enviente woman to carry out certain instructions relation to her physical and intellectual well-being. Be it noted that this is the most impressionable period during pregnancy.-Tr.

PAGE 108

clarified butter and write (the syllable) **Aum** on it tongue, and let it also lick a little of this mixture off the pencil, and then hand over the child to its mother. Let her suckle it if it be inclined to take the breast. If there be no milk in its mother's breast let it be suckled by some other woman who has been thoroughly examined (as to her general health, the quality and quantity of her milk, etc.).

Let the child and its mother be then removed to another clean, capacious and well-ventilated room wherein they should be kept, and **Homa** performed with clarified butter and odoriferous substances daily, morning and evening. Let the child be suckled for the first six-days by its mother who should be fed on a variety of light and nourishing foods. She should also have her private parts seen to.

On the sixth day let the lying-in-woman leave her room and engage a wet-nurse for her child. He wet-nurse should be fed on good and wholesome foods and drinks. She should suckle the child a well as nurse it. The mother should keep a watchful eye over her child so that it is not neglected in any way. Let her also apply some plaster over her breasts in order to check the flow of milk. She should also diet herself properly.

Let the parents of the child perform the **Naming** ceremony (on the 11th day of its birth) and other **Sanskaars** in due course of time. When the wife menstruates again and takes her bath of **purification**, let them both (i.e., her husband as well as herself) follow the plan of generating a new life that has been set forth above>

The sage Manu says on the subject:-
"He that is contented with his own wife and avoids conjugal embraces on the eight forbidden nights and is .**Ritugaami*** is a **Brahmachari** a married man though he be." MANU 3: 50

"Wherever the husband is quite contented wit his wife, and the wife with her husband, in that family alone all prosperity, fortune and happiness perpetually dwell. And wherever they disagree and squabble there poverty, ill-fortune and misery are assuredly permanent." MANU 3"60.

---

*i.e., follows the plan of generating a new life as has been laid down. -Tr.

PAGE 109

"Certainly if the wife do not love and please her husband, being unhappy he will not be sexually excited, and, consequently no offspring will be produced. But even if the children are born, they are very wicked and of a low type." MANU 3: 61.

"If the husband does not please his wife, she being unhappy, the whole family is unhappy and miserable; but if the wife be quite contended with her husband, the whole family enjoys felicity." MANU 3: 62.

"Let women be always propitiated (worshipped) by their fathers and brothers, by their husbands and the brothers of their husbands, in other words, they should speak sweetly to them and provide them with good food, nice clothes and ornaments, and thereby keep them happy. Those who seek great prosperity and happiness should never inflict pain on women." MANU 3: 55.

"Where women are honored (worshipped), in that family great men are born; but where they are not honored, there all acts are fruitless. Where women pass their days in misery and sorrow because of the misdeed (such as adultery) of their husbands that family soon entirely perishes, but where they are happy because of the good conduct of their husbands, the family continually prospers." MANU 3: 56, 57.

PAGE 110

"Let women, therefore, be always honored by being given presents of clothes an ornaments, and supplied with good food at festivals, jubilees and he like occasions, and thereby made happy by those men who are desirous of wealth and prosperity." MANU 3: 59.
In these quotations the word worshipped, of course, means duly honored. Let the husband and the wife whenever they separate from or meet each other for the first time during the day or the night, greet each other with **Namastay** which means , **I respect you**.

"Let a woman attend to her household work most cheerfully and with great dexterity keep her utensils and apparel clean, her house tidy, her furniture free from dust, all eatables pure clean, and free from dirt. Let her never be lavish in expenditure. Let her cooking be done so nicely that the food may act on the system like a good medicine and keep away disease (bodily and mental). Let her keep a proper account of her (income and) expenditure, and show it to her husband (if necessary), use her servants properly and see that nothing goes wrong in the house. MANU 5: 150.

"Let a man accept (the hand of) a good woman, precious stone of different kinds, knowledge, truth purity, gentle speech and various technical arts from all men and from all countries." MANU 2: 240.

"Let a man utter what is true; but let him say what is pleasing, i.e. good for others. Let him not speak a disagreeable truth (e.g., let him never call a one-eyed man, one-eyed). Not to let him speak an agreeable falsehood. This is the Eternal **Dharma** (true conduct of life). Let him speak

PAGE 111

kindly, i.e., what is good for others, but let him not maintain fruitless enmity and altercation wit any." MANU 4: 138-139. Let him say what is good for another, even though it may offend him. In the **Mahabhaarat** the sage **Vidur** says: "In this world, O Dhritraashtra, there are many people who would say sweet things to please and flatter others; but rare is the man who would say or hear a truth which is unpleasant to his ears but really conducive to his good." Mahaabhaarat, Udyoga Parva, Vidur Niti.

It behaves all good men to point out one's faults and shortcomings to one's face and her their own (from others). But the way with the wicked is that they talk of one's merits to one face, whilst they speak of his demerits behind his back. So long as a man does not reveal his defects to another, he cannot get rid to them nor can be acquire good qualities. Let a man never speak ill of another. Detracting from one's merits or as his merits, and of his demerits as demerits constitutes **Nindaa** or misrepresentation; whilst speaking of a man's merits as his merits, and of his demerits as demerits constitutes **Stuti**, whilst untruthfulness in speech constitutes **Nindaa**.

"Let the husband and the wife daily read and recite the **Veda** and other **Shaastraas** that give increase of wisdom, teach the means of acquiring wealth, and promote their welfare. Let them also carefully revise what they had studied during their student life and teach the same. Since as far as a man thoroughly understands the **Shaatraas**, so far can his knowledge and wisdom advance, and so far his love for them grow." MANU 4: 19, 20.

PAGE 112

"Let him constantly perform the **Five Great Daily Duties**, viz., Brahmayajna, Devayajna, Valivaishwadevayajna, Pitriyajna and Atithiyajna, to the best of his power. Out of these five **Yajnas** we have already described the first two in the preceding chapter. To recapitulate:-

9. **Brahma Yajna**. it comprises studying and teaching the **Veda** and other **Shaatraas**, morning and evening devotions and practice of **Yoga**.
10. **Devayajna**. it comprises the feeding of fire with clarified butter and odoriferous substances, association with the learned and the good, cultivation of purity, truthfulness and similar other good qualities, and the advancement of knowledge. These two **Yajnas** should be performed daily (during the twilights).

"It is said in the Atharva Veda, "The **Homa** substances (such as clarified butter, musk, camphor, saffron) used in the morning **homa** keep the air pure and wholesome till the next morning, while those burnt in the evening **Homa** keep the air pure till the evening and thereby promote health, strength and intellect.." ATHARVA VEDA 19:7: 3, 4.

"A **Dwija** should, therefore, perform his **Sandhya upaasanaa** (devotioins) and Agnihotra (Homa), daily at sunrise and sunset." SHADYINSHA BRAHMANS 4: 5.

PAGE 113

"He who neglects these two duties daily in the morning and in the evening, should be excluded from the society of **Dwijaas**, (the three upper classes of regenerates) in other words, he should be treated as a **Shoodra**."MANU 2: 103.

The perfomance of Homa and Sandhya

O ~.**Why should not Sandhyaa be performed three times a day?**

A~. Day and night do not meet three times a day. Light darkness meet but twice in 24 hours, i.e., in the morning and in the evening. Should a man refuse to believe this and persist in midday, he should be asked to perform his **Sandhyaa** at midnight. Should he be willing to do so, let him also do it at the union of a **prahara**,* of an hour with an hour, of a minute with a minute, of second with a second. This he would find impossible to do.

Besides, not a single authority of any **Shaastraa** is to be found in support of this practice. Hence, it is right to perform **Sandhya** and **Homa** only twice a day, not three times . time is no doubt divided in to three periods - past, the present, and the future, - but **Sandhya**has nothing to with this division.

11. **Pitriyajna** consists in serving learned men, great teachers, scholars, one's father, mother, old people, great men, and great yogis.

This **Yajna** is divided into 2 parts:-
1.**Shradhaa** is derived from shrat - truth. That by which truth is accepted is called shradhaa whilst that which is done with Shradha; i.e., with the object of embracing truth, is called Shradha.

---

*A Prahara is equal to 3 hours,-Tr.

PAGE 114

2. **Tarpana** is anything done to please one's father, mother and other elders (who are alive). And make them happy.*
Tarpana is again sub-divided into three parts:-
A ~ **Deva Tarpana**. "We serve **Brahma**** and the like **Devaas**. We serve **Brahma's**wife and the like **Devis**. We serve **Brahma's** sons, disciples and the like. We serve **Brahma's** companions and assistants."

The **Shatapatha Brahmmana** says:-
"Verily, the learned are **Devaas**."

- **Brahman** is one who has mastered the four **Vedaas**, along with their subsidiary sciences. Even those who are a little less learned than a **Brahma** are called **Devaas**. the wives of a **Brahma** and other **Devaas** who are also learned men like their husbands, are called**Devis**.
- ~ **Rishi Tarpana**. This consists in serving and honoring learned men like **Marichi**, the great grandson of **Braahmaa**, who teaches boys, learned women, like the wives of **Marichi** and other great teachers, who teach girls, their learned sons, daughters and pupils , comppanions and assistants (who are also teachers).
- ~**Pitri Tarpana**consists in thoroughly satisfying **Pitars** by offering them most regularly good food, clothes, beautiful conveyances, etc.; in other words, it consists in lovingly serving them the doing everything in one's power to keep their bodies healthy and their souls happy.

The following are the different kinds of **Pitars**:-

4. A **Somasada** is one who is well-versed in the spiritual and physical sciences.
5. An **Agnishwaata**is one who is well-versed in the science of **Agni**, i.e., heat, light, electricity and the like (forces).

---

*It should be borne in mind that this yajna is meant for the living and not for the dead. (The author condemns the practice of offering oblations to the manes, which is in vogue at present throughout India.
** Since Brahma was the first man to master all the four Vedas, this word has come to mean master of the four Vedas. It is title like Vyaasa, literally diameter and therefore, one whose intellect has penetrated the subtle meaning of the Vedas.

PAGE 115

6. A **Barhishad**is one who is engaged in advancing knowledge and doing other useful works.
7. A **Somapaa**is one who is the guardian of health and strength, who uses essences of powerful herbs, etc., and thus frees himself as well as others from disease. In other words he is a doctor.
8. A **Havirbhuja** is a learned man who lives on foods and drinks other than meat and spirituous liquors.
9. An **A'jypa** is one who protects highly useful objects, and eats and drinks butter, milk, and the like articles.
10. **Sukalina**is one who employs his time in furthering the cause of truth and righteousness.
11. A **Yama**, (a judge) is one who administers justice and thereby protects the good and punishes the wicked.
12. A**Pitaa** (father) is one who provides food for his children, honors and protects them. He is also the author of their being.
13. **Pitaamahaa** - Grandfather.
14. **Maataa** (mother) is one who honors her children by giving them food and doing other useful things for them.
15. **Pitaamahi**- the mother of one's father.
16. **Prapitaa mahi** - the grandmother of one's father.
17. **Wife**>

PAGE 116

18. Sister and other relations.
19. People of the same stock of bearing the same surname, and other old men and women.

4. **Vaishwadeva Yajna**, consists of three parts:-

- When the meal is ready, let the householder take all kinds of cooked food other than sour, salt and alkaline, such as contain sugar, butter and milk, fetch fire out of the hearth, and throw oblations of the food into it reciting the **mantraas** beginning with **Om Agnaye Swaha** all the while. The sage**Manu** holds the same view. "Let a **Dwija** perform **Homa** in the (kitchen) fire with whatever has been cooked in the kitchen for the purpose of purifying its air in the following manner." MANU 3: 84.

- Let him place some food on a (ordinary) plate or leaf-plate after reciting each of the specific **Mantraas** in all directions of the compass beginning with the east. Let this food be offered to an **atithi**, and in his absence thrown into the fire.
- Then let him place salt food, such as pulses, rice, vegetables and bread in 6 parts (on a plate) on the ground reciting the specific **mantraas** at the time. Here is an authority from **Manu** for this act.

PAGE 117

"Let him gently place on the ground some food for dogs, fallen wretches, outcasts, those afflicted with terrible diseases (such as lepers), birds (as crows), insects (as ants.") MANU 3: 92.

Let him the give this food to one who is hungry, distressed, diseased, or to dogs, crows and other such creatures. The object of performing **Homa** is to purify the kitchen air, whilst that of offering food is to atone for the unintentional injury done to various living creatures.

5. ~ **Atithi Yajna**. An **Atithi** is one whose date of coming is not certain or fixed. Whenever a **Sanyaasi**, who is virtuous and a preacher of truth, itinerates for the good of all, is a perfect scholar, is a **Yogi** of the highest order, happens to visit a house-holder let him offer him water to wash his feet and face, and to sip, and then offer a comfortable seat respectfully, give him good food and drink and other good things (such as clothes), and thus serve him most diligently and make quite comfortable.

Then let him benefit himself by his good company by learning such things in Physical and Spiritual Science, and would help him in acquiring virtue, wealth (worldly possessions), in gratifying legitimate desires, and obtaining salvation. Let him conduct himself in accordance with his good advice. On suitable occasions, even a house-holder and a king can be honored as **atithis**, but

"Let him never honor even by a greeting those that revile the **Vedaas** or conduct themselves against their teachings, those that lead anti-Vedic lives, tell lies, practice frauds and live like cats, [Just as cats hide themselves and keep staring at rats and then in a moment pounce upon them, kill them and fill their stomachs; likewise are such men as gain their selfish ends by lying , cheating and acting in other ways like cats. They are, therefore, called cat-like] those that are obstinate, stubborn and vain, do not know anything themselves nor would they follow the advice of another, (i.e., those who follow the dong-in-the-manger policy,) those that are sophists and talk

PAGE 118

nonsense like the **Vedaantists**of the present day who declare that they are **Brahma**, the world is a delusion, the **Vedaas** and **Shaastraas** and even God are fictitious and spin similar other yarns, those that live like herons)Just as a heron stands quietly on one leg as if in deep meditation but really keeps a watchful eye on some fish all the time to whose life it soon puts an end , and thereby accomplishes its selfish end, so do the **Vairaagees** and **Khaakis** of today who are very stubborn, obstinate and enemies of the **Veda**, such men are, therefore, called heron-like)." Such men if honored multiply, increase sin and unrighteousness in the world, they are not only themselves do such works as bring about their degradation but also sink their followers to the lowest depths of ignorance and misery.

FIVE GREAT DAILY DUTIES

The uses of these 5 Great Daily Duties (Yajnas) are:-

12. **Brahmayajna** is the cause of advancement in knowledge, culture, righteousness and refinement of manners, etc.
13. **Agnihotra** causes the purification of air, rain and water, and thereby conduces to the happiness of the world. The use of pure air for respiration, pure water, and pure food promotes health, strength, energy and intellect, which in their turn help men to acquire virtue, wealth, gratify (righteous) desires, and attain salvation. Since **Agnihotra** purifies the air, water, etc., it is also called **Devayajna**.
14. **Pitri Yajna**. -
    0. The service of father , mother , other learned persons and great souls, leads to the increase of knowledge and wisdom which help a man to discriminate between Right and Wrong. The acceptance of what is right and the rejection of what is wrong makes him happy.<.li> It is also right to serve our father, mother, tutor, in return of the services they rendered us while we were young. The faithful performance of this **Yajna** saves us from the charge of **ingratitude**.
15. **Valivaishwadeva Yajna**. Its uses are the same as have been mentioned before. [Briefly speaking, they are as follows:
    0. Purification of the kitchen air.
    1. The discharge of our obligations towards the sick, the needy, the fallen and towards those faithful and useful animals and birds, etc. which are dependent on us for sustenance.

       PAGE 119

    2. It is also a kind of atonement for the pain and suffering we unknowingly inflict on the lower creation in the daily routine of our lives. -Tr]
16. **Atithi Yajna**
    0. As long as there are no **atithis**of the highest order in this world, progress cannot be made.
    1. as they go about in all countries (of the world), teaching and preaching truth, no hypocritical and fraudulent practices can flourish.
    2. The house-holders can also easily attain true spiritual knowledge in all places.
    3. One religion prevails among all men.
    4. Unless there are **atithis**, doubts cannot be dispelled, and without the removal of doubts, there can be no firm faith. How can then there be any happiness without firm faith?

"Let a man wake up early in the morning at (about 4 A.M.), having relieved the necessities of nature (and taken a bath), let him think upon the means of acquiring virtue and wealth, and upon the causation of his bodily diseases (if any) and contemplate God." MANU 4: 92.

He should never lead an unrighteous life. Unrighteousness practiced in this world does not go unpunished, nor does it immediately produce its fruit (like a cow). This is the reason why the ignorant do not fear sin, but it must be borne in mind that the practice of unrighteousness advancing slowly cuts off the very root of your happiness." MANU 4: 174.

The worker of iniquity crosses the bounds of righteousness just as water in a tank breaks as under its banks and runs in all directions,

PAGE 120

so does he, through the practice of untruthfulness, deceit, and fraud, in other words through transgressing the commandments of the **Vedas** that are true guardians (of human happiness), and through hypocrisy, take possession of other people's wealth and property, and prospers for a while, next with this wealth he obtains nice foods and drinks, good clothes, jewelry, houses and carriages, and wins social position and fame, even conquers his enemies through foul means, but at last he soon perishes like a tree whose root has been cut off."

Let a learned man always honestly instruct his pupils in the ways of truthfulness and righteousness, as taught by the **Veda** (viz., freedom from prejudice and partiality, the practice of truth and justice, and the rejection of untruth) and in nobility of character and purity." MANU 4: 175.

"Let him never quarrel or wrangle with one who officiates at a **Yajna**, with a teacher of truth and unrighteousness, with a maternal uncle, an **atithi** and a dependent., with children, ages and sick men, with a doctor of medicine, with people springing from the same paternal stock or belonging to the same **Class** as he, connects by marriage (such as a father-in-law) and friends, with his wife, and his daughter, and with his servants." MANU 4: 171, 181.

A **Dwija**, who does not practice **Tapaas**such as the practice of **Brahmacharya**, truthfulness, one who dos not study (the Veda), one who is eager to accept gifts; these three sink into the greatest depths of misery and rain on account of their wicked deeds, just as he who attempts to

PAGE 121

cross an ocean in a boat made of stone sinks down" MANU 4: 190
They no doubt sink but they also carry the donors down with them, for, "Wealth although earned by righteous means, given to the aforesaid three, ruins the donor in this very life, and the recipient in the next." MANU 4: 193.

"As he who attempts to cross the water in a boat of stone, sinks to the bottom, even so an ignorant donor and an ignorant donee sink low; in other words are afflicted with misery and pain." MANU 4: 194

CHARACTERISTICS OF IMPOSTER

Imposters should neither be trusted nor served. They are of the following 11 types:-

- **Dharmadwaji**, (Literally one who displays the flag or virtue), is one who does not practice any virtue, but defrauds others in the name of virtue. MANU 4: 195

.

- **Sadaalubdha** - a covetous wretch.
- **Chhadmika** is a deceitful person.
- **Lokadambhaka**is one who brags of his greatness before others.
- **Hinsra** is one who does injury to living creatures or bears malice to others.
- **Sarvaabhisandhaka** is one who mixes with all kinds of men - good or bad - such a person should be considered a rogue and a mean fellow like a cat.
- **Adhodrishti** is one who always looks down (whilst walking) in order to be considered a very virtuous person.

PAGE 122

Naishkritikais one who is of a cruel, vindictive nature, even ready to take one's life, if one has happened to do him a slight injury in order to revenge himself. MANU 4: 196.

- **Swaartha Saadhantatpara** is one who is solely intent on attaining his selfish end, even through fraud, injustice, and hypocrisy.
- **Shatha** is one who persists in his obstinacy even though he knows he is in the wrong.
- **Mithia Viniti** is one who id falsely demure and puts on a saintly appearance (to deceive) others). He should be considered a low wretch like a heron.

It is therefore, behoves all me and women "to accumulate virtue by degrees for obtaining happiness in the next world by giving pain to no living creature, just as the white ant gradually raises its hill." For, "in the next world, neither father, nor mother nor wife, nor sons, nor relations, can befriend anyone. Virtue alone helps him there. Single is each soul born; single it dies; single it enjoys the reward of its virtue - happiness; single it suffers the consequence of its sin - pain." MANU 4: 238 - 240.

It should be borne in mind. "A man commits a sin and thereby obtains something which he brings home, where all his family members enjoy it, but they do not suffer the consequences of his sin, it is he alone, who committed the sin, that reaps the consequences thereof." MAHABHAARAT PAAJAGAR PARVA.

PAGE 123

"When a man dies, his relations leave his corpse like (like a log or) a lump of clay on the ground, and retire with averted faces.. No one accompanies him. It is 9his) virtue alone that bears his company." MANU 4: 241.

"let a man, therefore, continually practice virtue for the sake of securing happiness in the next world, since it is through the help of virtue* alone that the soul can cross the ocean of misery and sorrow so hard to cross. A man who regards, virtue alone as the highest thing (in the world), and whose sins have been destroyed through the practice of righteousness, attains to that All-glorious Being whose body is **A'kaash** ~ the most Beautiful Supreme Spirit ~ by virtue of **Dharma** alone." MANU 4: 242, 243.

He who is preserving, gentle in disposition, subjugates passions, shuns the company of cruel and wicked men, injures no sentient creature, lives a virtuous life, keeps his mind under thorough control, bestows on others the gift of knowledge, etc., attains happiness." MANU 4: 246 *The word which I have translated into virtue, is Dharma. I have already noted that this word is most difficult to translate. No single word in the English language can express its manifold meaning. Sometimes, I have translated it into virtue, sometimes into justice, at other times into truth etc. Briefly, it is the practice of truth, justice and righteousness, devotion to duty, freedom from hatred, malice and anger, etc., and love towards all living creatures. Its ten characteristics will be described in the next Chapter. ~ Tr.

PAGE 124

"But it should also be borne in mind that " All things have their nature ascertained by speech; in speech they have their basis and from speech they proceed; consequently he that falsifies his speech is guilty of theft and like sins." MANU 4: 256.

"Let a man, therefore, always avoid sins, such as untruthfulness in speech, and practice virtue, since through virtuous conduct, in other words, the practice of **Brahmacharya** and subjugation of passion, etc., he obtains long life, through virtuous conduct good offspring, through virtuous conduct imperishable wealth, virtuous conduct destroys all vices. For a man of bad character sinks to contempt in the eyes of all good men, is afflicted with misery, suffers from diverse diseases, and is short-lived." MANU 4: 156, 157.

"Whatever act depends on another, that let him studiously avoid but whatever act depends upon himself, that let him diligently pursue." MANU 4: 159.

Because "Dependence is pain, whilst independence is happiness. Let him know this to be the brief definition of happiness and pain." MANU 4: 160.

But whatever is (in its very nature) dependent upon both should be done with each other's approval, because the relation between the husband and his wife is such that they cannot be independent of each other, in other words, they should treat each other most lovingly and live harmoniously. They should never quarrel with each other, nor commit adultery. The wife, subject to her husband's control, should be supreme in the house, whilst all

PAGE 125

affairs other than those relating to the household should e under the control of the husband. They should prevent each other from contracting vices, in other words, it should be borne in mind that after marriage, the husband and the wife entirely belong to each other, that is, their hearts, their feelings and their bodies from top to toe (reproductive-elements and all included), become subject to each other's control.

Let them never do anything against each other's wish. Of all things likely to upset their happy relations, the worst are adultery and fornication, etc. Let them avoid these. Let the husband always remain contented with his wife, and the wife with her husband. If they belong to the **Brahman Class**, let the husband teach boys, and his wife, if she be well-educated, teach girls.

Let them make them learned by preaching and lecturing to them on various subjects. The husband is the adorable God for the wife, and the wife is the adorable goddess for the husband. As long as boys and girls remain in their respective seminaries, let them look upon their teachers as their parents, whilst the teacher should consider their pupils as their children.

Qualifications of Teachers (male and female)

"He alone is a wise man, who is never idle nor lazy, nor affected by pleasure or pain, profit or loss, honor or dishonor, public applause or censure, has always a firm faith in **Dharma**, and cannot be tempted by sensual object." MAHAABHAARAT VIDURPRAJAAGAR, 32.

To practice virtue and avoid sin, abstain from speaking ill of God, of the Vedas, and of righteous living, have unbounded faith in God, verily these are the duties of a wise man. The first qualification of a wise man is that he should be able to grasp the most abstruse subject in a very short time, should devote years of his life to the study of the **Shaastras** (true sciences) and thinking over them, apply his knowledge for the good of others, never do anything for his selfish gain, should not give his opinion unasked or interrupt another in his speech.

PAGE 126

"He alone is a wise scholar who does not desire for the unattainable, nor broods over his losses nor loses his head in misfortune.

He alone is a wise scholar who is well-versed in all kinds of knowledge, is a very clever debator, can speak on any subject, is a good logician, has a good memory, can easily give a true exposition of the **Shaastras**.

Verily he alone is entitled to be called a wise man whose intellectual up-building is in conformity with truth (as he knows it), who hears the **Shaastras** read that are in harmony with reason, who never steps beyond the bounds of good, righteous men.

Wherever such teachers (make and female) exist, knowledge, righteousness, and good conduct advance and thereby continually increases.

Characteristics of undesirable teachers and fools

"He who has neither read a **Shaastra**, nor heard it read, is extremely vain, builds castles in the air though poor, wishes to obtain things without any exertion on his 0part, is called a fool by the wise." MAHAABHAARAT VIDURPRAJAAGAR 35.

He who enter an assembly or another man's house in-invited and occupies a seat above his rank, jabbers a great deal without being asked (to speak), is very credulous -i.e. trust s the untrustworthy or believes that ought not to be believed, is verily a fool and the lowest of the low.

PAGE 127

Wherever such men occupy the positions of teachers, preachers, and preceptors, and are honored, there ignorance, unrighteousness, band manners, discord, strife and disunion grow and thereby misery and sorrow increase.

VICES OF STUDENTS

VICES OF STUDENTS
"Physical mental inertia, use of intoxicants, infatuation, idle gossip, neglect of studies, vanity, and want of **Brahmacharya**, these seven vices are to found among students." MAHAABHARAT VIDURPRAJAAGAR, 39. Such students can never acquire knowledge.

How can a pleasure-hunter acquire knowledge? And how can a student enjoy sensuous pleasures (and yet acquire learning)? Let a pleasure-hunter bid farewell to knowledge and let a seeker after knowledge bid farewell to sensuous pleasure; since without doing this, no man can ever acquire knowledge.

QUALIFICATIONS OF GOOD STUDENTS

They alone who practice virtue, subjugate their passions and never lose their reproductive element, are true **Brahmacharis** and become learned men." MAHAABHARAT VIDURNITI.

It follows, therefore, that the teachers and students should possess excellent qualities. The teachers should so endeavor as to produce in their scholars such good qualities as truthfulness in word, deed and thought, culture, self-control, gentleness of disposition, perfect development of mind and body, so that they may become well-versed in the **Vedas** and **Shaastras**. the teachers should always be diligent in eradicating the evil habits of their scholars and in imparting knowledge. The scholars should always cultivate

PAGE 128

self-control, mental tranquility, love for their tutors, thoughtfulness and habits of diligence. They should so exert themselves as to acquire perfect knowledge, perfect **Dharma**, perfect development of body (to enable them to live to the fullest age allotted to man), and learn to labor.

Such are the duties of **Brahmans**
The duties of **Kshatriyaas** will be described in the chapter on Government.

The duties of **Vaishyaas** are to learn the languages of various countries, the methods of different trades, the (current) prices or rates (of different articles) the art of buying and selling, to travel in different countries (for the purposes of trade, etc.,, engage in profitable business, rear cattle and other animals, improve agriculture, augment wealth and spend it for the advancement of knowledge and **Dharma**, to be truthful in speech and free from hypocrisy, conduct business with honesty, and look after all things in such a way that nothing is wasted or lost.

The duties of a **Shudra** are to be clever in all kinds of manual* service, expert in cooking, to serve the twice-born with love, and make his livelihood by it. The twice-born should provide him with board and lodging, clothes and pay all the expenses of his marriage, etc., or pay him a monthly salary. All the four **Classes** should work harmoniously and be of one mind in doing public good and promoting righteousness, and share each other's joys and sorrows, pleasure and pain and further the good of their country and of their people with all their heart, with all their soul, and with all the material resources at their command.

The husband and the wife should never live apart from each other, since the "use of animal food and intoxicants such as spirituous liquors, association with the wicked, separation from the husband, wandering about uselessly by herself from place to place with object of visiting so-called saintly persons (who are all really imposters), sleeping and dwelling in another man's house (through wantonness) are the six vices that are apt to contaminate a woman's character." MANU 9: 13. These very vices contaminate a man's character as well.

---

*This is what erroneously called menial service. ~ Tr.

PAGE 129

Two kinds of separation of spouse

Separation between the husband and the wife is of two kinds:
Firstly, that caused by one of the parties going abroad on business and , secondly, that caused by the death of one of them. Separation of the first kind can be avoided if the husband takes his wife along with him whenever he goes abroad. The object of this injunction is that the husband and the wife should not live apart from each other for long.

Q. ~Should a man or a woman marry more than once?

A ~ Not when the other party is alive.

Q ~Can one party re-marry when the other is dead?

A. ~ Yes. Says the sage Manu on this subject. " A man or a woman, who ahs simply gone through the ceremony of joining hands* but whose marriage has not been consummated, is entitled to re-marry." MANU 9:179

But re-marriage is absolutely prohibited in the case of a twice born man or woman (i.e., one belonging to a **Brahman, Kshatriya or Vaishya Class** who has had sexual intercourse with his or her consort.

Q. ~What are the evils of re-marriage (in the case of such persons)?**

A. ~ The following are the principal evils:-

- Diminution of love between the husband and the wife, since either of them can desert the other whenever he or she so desires, and marry another person.***
- On the death of one party, the other will take away the property of his or her deceased consort when he or she marries again. This will give rise to family disputes.
- If a widow re marries, many a noble family will be blotted out of existence, and its property destroyed (by constant alienation).

---

*Joining hands is the chief element in the Vedic ceremony of marriage.
** Re-marriage includes Polygamy and Polyandry.
***This arrangement seems to apply to marriage after divorce. ~ Tr.

PAGE 130

- Re-marriage involves loss of true conjugal love and infraction of duty towards the departed husband or wife.

For these reasons, re-marriage, polygamy and polyandry are prohibited in the case of the twice born.

Q. ~ If one of the parties dies leaving no male issue, even then the family line will become extinct. Besides, if re-marriage be not allowed, the widows and widowers will resort to adultery and fornication, procure abortion, and will commit wicked deeds of a kindred nature. For these reasons re-marriage is desirable.

A. ~ No. If the widows and widowers desire to practice **Brahmacharya**, no such evil consequences will accrue. Again, if the widow or widower adopts a boy of her and his Class, the family line will be continued and there will be no danger of adultery being restored to. Those, however, who cannot control their passions may beget children by having recourse to **Niyoga**.

The difference of re-marriage and Niyoga

Q. ~ What are the differences between re-marriage and Niyoga?A. ~

1. After marriage the bride leaves her paternal roof, lives with her husband, and her relations with her relations with her father's family cease to be very close; on the contrary. The widow (in case she contracts Niyoga) continues to live in her deceased husband's house.
2. The children begotten of marriage inherit the property of their mother's husband, whereas, offspring begotten of Niyoga on a widow are not regarded as children of the begetter and consequently they don't take his surname, nor can they be claimed by him. They are spoken fo as the children of their mother's deceased husband, take his surname, inherit his property and live in his house.
3. Married people are required to serve and help each other, while those that contract Niyoga have to abandon all relations (after the stipulated period).
4. the relation of marriage is life-long, while the contract of Niyoga ceases to be operative after the desired object has been attained.

PAGE 131

5. The husband and the wife help each other in the performance of their house hold duties, while those that have that have contracted Niyoga discharge the duties of their respective households.

Q. ~ Do the same laws apply to Niyoga and marriage, or are they different in each case?

A. ~ They are little different. A few differences have already been enumerated, and here are some more:-

- A married couple can produce children up to the limit of ten, while that connected by Niyoga cannot produce more than two or four.
- Jus as marriage is allowed only in the case of a bachelor and a maid, likewise only a widow and a widower can enter into the relation of Niyoga, but never a bachelor and a maid.
- A married couple always lives together but not that connected by Niyoga. Such persons should come together only when they intend to generate a new life. Whether Niyoga is contracted for the benefit of the widow or of the widower, the relation is dissolved after the second conception.

  Let the widow rear the children for two or three years and hand them to her husband by Niyoga, in case it has been entered into for his behalf. In this way a widow can give birth to two children for herself and two for each of the four husbands by Niyoga. Similarly a widower can beget two children for himself and two for each of the four wives by Niyoga. Thus ten children in all can be produced by means of Niyoga.

This is what the Veda declares:-
"O thou who art fit to procreate and art strong, do thou raise upon the married wife or upon these widows, with whom thou hast contracted Niyoga, good children, and make them happy. Do thou beget with on thy married wife ten children, and consider her the eleventh (member

PAGE 132

of the family). O woman! Let ten children be raised on thee by the married husband or thy husbands by Niyoga and do thou consider thy husband as the eleventh (member of thy family)." Rig Veda 10: 85, 48.

The **Vedic** injunction requires that among Braahmannas, Kshatriyaas and Vaishyaas a couple should in no case produce more than ten children, other wise the offspring are sure to be weak, both physically and intellectually, and short-lived. Even such parents grow feeble, do not live long, are afflicted with disease and consequently endure untold sufferings.

Q. ~ But Niyoga looks like adultery.

A.~ Just as sexual connection between persons that are not married is called adultery, so is sexual congress between widows and widowers not connected by Niyoga is an adulterous relation. Form this it follows that just as marriage solemnized according to the law is not fornication, even so Niyoga contracted according to the law cannot be termed fornication.

If one's virgin daughter co-habits with a bachelor after the marriage ceremony, enjoined by the **Shaastras**, has been duly performed, this act is not regarded as adulterous or sinful, nor does it inspire shame, for the same reasons, Niyoga performed according to the Vedic injunction should not be regarded sinful, nor should it inspire a feeling of shame.

Q. ~ This is alright but it looks like prostitution.

A. ~ No. A prostitute sticks to no particular man, nor is she governed in her sexual relation by any specific laws, while Niyoga marriage is governed by definite laws.. Just as one does not feel any shame in giving away his daughter in marriage to another person, in like manner there ought to be no shame in contracting Niyoga. People who are given to illicit intercourse do not give up this wicked habit even after marriage.

Q. ~ To us it seems that Niyoga is a sinful practice.

A. ~ If you think that Niyoga is sinful, why don't you regard marriage also as sinful? The sin rather consists in preventing people from contracting Niyoga, for according to the Divine laws of Nature, natural appetites cannot be controlled unless one be self-abnegating, profoundly learned, and a **Yogi** of the highest order. Don't you consider it a sin to procure abortion, destroy the fetus and inflict great mental suffering on widows and widowers (by preventing them from contracting Niyoga). For, so long as they are

PAGE 133

young, desire for children and sexual enjoyment will drive people to the necessity of forming secret relations, if the laws of State or Society disallow lawful gratification. The only proper way of preventing adultery and illicit intimacies is to let those, who can control their passions, do without Niyoga or even marriage, but those who do not possess so much self-restraint must marry, and in case of emergency contract Niyoga, so that the chances of illicit intercourse may be greatly minimized, love between the husband and the wife enhanced, and consequently good children born, the human race improved, and the practice of feticide put a stop to.

Marriage and Niyoga will do away with such wicked practices as illicit intimacy between a low Class man and a High class woman, or between a High class man and a Low Class woman (such as a public woman), contamination of noble families, extinction of the family line, mental anguish of bachelors and maids, of widows and widowers, feticide and the like crimes. For these reasons, contraction of Niyoga is desirable.

Q. ~ What conditions should be observed in the performance of the Niyoga ceremony?

A. ~

1. Niyoga is solemnized publicly even as marriage is.
2. Just as in marriage, the consent of the bride and the bridegroom and approval of good men are essential, even so it is in Niyoga, in other words, when a man and a woman have agreed to contract Niyoga, they should declare before an assembly of their male and female relations that they ent4er into the relation of Niyoga for begetting children, they will have sexual congress for generating anew life once a month, in case conception takes place they will not co-habit for one year. If they should go against that declaration they should be considered sinners and should be liable to punishment by the State and the Society.

Q. ~Should the relation of Niyoga be entered into with a member of one's own Class or with that of a different Class as well?

A. ~ A woman should contract Niyoga with a member of one's own Class or with that of a higher Class, that is, a Vaishaya woman with a Braahman, a Kshatriya or aVaishaya; a Kshatriya woman with Kshatriya or a Braahman; a Brahman woman with a Braahman. The object of this is

that the spermatic fluid should always be of a man of the same Class as the woman or of a higher Class, never

PAGE 134

of a lower one. The object (of God) in creating man and woman is that they should produce children in accordance with the dictates of true religion as enjoined by the Veda.

Q. ~ Why should a man contract Niyoga when he can marry again?

A. ~ We have already said that according to the injunctions of the Veda and the Shaastra among the twice-born a man or a woman may marry only once, never a second time. Justice demands that a bachelor, should be married to a virgin. It is unjust and therefore wrong for a widower to marry a virgin, and for a widow to marry a bachelor. Just as a bachelor does not like to marry a widow, so no virgin would like to marry a widower. If no virgin will marry a widower, and no bachelor will marry a widow, men and women will feel the necessity of contracting Niyoga. Moreover, dharma consists in mating likes alone.

Q. ~ are there any Vedic and Shaastric authorities in favor of Niyoga, as there are in support of the marriage institution?

A. ~ "O man and woman (connected by Niyoga), just as a widow, co-habits with her husband by Niyoga and produces children for him, and a wife co-habits with her husband by marriage and produces children for him, likewise (it may be asked) where both of you were during the day and during the night, and where you slept, who you are, and what your native place is." RIG VEDA 10: 40, 2.

This indicates that man and wife should always live together whether at home or abroad, and that a widow may also take unto herself a husband by Niyoga and obtain children, even as a virgin takes unto herself, a husband by marriage, who raises upon her.*

---

*Q. ~ Supposing the deceased husband of a widow had no younger brother, with whom should she contract Niyoga?

A. ~ With her devar, but the word devar does not mean what you think. For the Nirukta says "The second husband by Niyoga of a widow, be he the younger borther of her deceased husband or his elder brother, or of a man of her won Class or of a higher Class, is called Devar.

PAGE 135

"O widow! Dothou give up thinking of they deceased husband and choose another from among living men. But thou must understand and remember that if thou should contractest Niyoga for the benefit of thy second husband with whom thou are united by performing the ceremony of joining hands, the child resulting from this union shall belong to him; but if thou interest into relation of Niyoga for thy benefit, the child shall be thine. Do thou bear this in mind. Let thy husband by Niyoga also follow this law." RIG VEDA 18,8.

"Do thou O woman that givest no pain to thy husband or devar (husband by Niyoga), art kind to animals in this Order of householders, walk assiduously in the path of righteousness and justice, art well-versed in all the shaastraas, hast children and grandchildren, givest birth to valiant the brave boys, desirest a second husband (by Niyoga), and bestoweth happiness on all, accept a man of they choice as thy husband or devar , and always perform the Homa which is the duty of every householder." ATHARVA VEDA 14:, 2, 18.

The sage Manu also sanctions the marriage of virgin widows. Says he "A virgin widow may marry the younger or the elder brother of her deceased husband." MANU.

Q. ~ How many times can a man or woman enter into the relation of Niyoga? What are the husbands, by marriage or by Niyoga, of a woman, called?

PAGE 136

A. ~ "O woman! Thy first husband with whom thou art united by marriage is named **Soma**, called so because hw was a chaste bachelor (before marriage). Thy second husband with whom thou art connected by Niyoga is named Gaandharva, called so because he had already lived with another woman (to whom he had been united by marriage). Thy third husband, (by Niyoga) is named Agni (fire), called so because he so very passionate. All thy other husbands from the fourth to the eleventh are called men."

A man may also contract Niyoga with eleven women (one after the other), just as a woman may enter into the relation of Niyoga with eleven men (one after the other), as sanctioned by the Veda in the following text:-

"…….take unto thyself the eleventh husband by Niyoga." RIG VEDA 10: 85, 45.

Q. ~ Why should not the world eleven be taken to refer to ten sons and the husband as the eleventh (member of the family)?

A. ~ Such an interpretation will not even sanction a second husband and therefore go against such Shaatric injunctions as have been quoted above (We reproduce some of them here).

"Just as a widow takes into her self a devar, etc." "The second husband by Niyoga of a widow, etc." "So thou O woman that givest no pain to…..devar (husband by Niyoga)", etc. "Thy second husband…is named Gaandharva."

The sage Manu also declares:-

"on failure of issue (by her deceased husband), a widow may contract Niyoga with a widower (if bothe of them be desirous of getting children), who may be her deceased husband's younger or elder brother or his cousin within the sixth degree or a man of her Class or of a higher Class.

PAGE 137

An elder brother, who approaches the wife of the younger, and a younger brother, who approaches the wife of the elder, when the necessity of getting children has ceased to operate, even though united by Niyoga, shall be degraded (from their Class). In other words, Niyoga lasts only so long as two or four children are not born according as it has been contracted for the benefit of one of the parties, or of both. They should not approach each other after this. In this way ten children may be produced by successive Niyogas.

Sexual congress after this is regarded as proceeding from lust. Hence, those who resort to it are degraded (from their Class). Even if married people co-habit with each other after they have produced ten children, they are considered lustful and held in great contempt, because marriage and Niyoga are entered into for the object of getting children but not for the gratification of passions like animals.

Q. ~ Can a woman contract Niyoga only after the death of her husband or even when he is alive?

A. ~ This relation can be entered into even in the lifetime of the husband (or of the wife). Here is Vedic text n support of this view.

"When a man is incapable of producing children, let him address his wife as follows:- O thou that art desirous of getting children do not expect me to raise offspring upon thee. Do thou, therefore, seek another husband." RIG VEDA 10: 10, 10. The woman seeking to contract Niyoga, should, however, continue to serve her husband by marriage; similarly when a woman on account of some chronic disease is rendered incapable of bearing children, let her address the following words to her husband. "My lord! Do not expect me to bear any children. Do thou, therefore, contract Niyoga with a widow." Here are some historical proofs as well in support of this doctrine:-

Kunti and Maadri, wives of king Pandu had recourse to Niyoga. Vyas, on the death of his brothers, Chidraangad and Vichitravirya

PAGE 138

contracted Niyoga with their wives and begot Dhritraashtra on Ambikaa, Paandu on Ambaalika and Vidur on a Shoodra woman.

The sage Manu declares:-
"If a husband has gone abroad in furtherance of some righteous cause, let his wife wait for eight years; if for he acquisition of knowledge and glory, for six years; if for the pursuit of material ends, for three years. If after the expiry of the prescribed periods he does not turn up, she may contract Niyoga and obtain children." MANU 9: 76.

Should the husband (by marriage) return, the contract of Niyoga shall become null and void. Similarly it is enjoined in case of the husband that " if the wife be sterile, let the husband wait for eight years after marriage; if all of her children die, for then years, if she bears only daughters and no sons, for eleven years, if she be a termagant, let him forsake her immediately, and enter into Niyoga with another lady and beget children upon her." MANU 9: 81.

Likewise if the husband be very cruel, let his wife forsake him, and bear children by Niyoga who will succeed to the property of her husband by marriage.

All these authorities and arguments go to prove that it is the duty of each man to preserve and perpetuate his family line and thereby improve the race by emans of Swayamvar Vivah - marriage by choice - and Niyoga.

"Just as an Aurasa, a son born of marriage, is entitled to inherit the property of his father, so is a Kshestrajna - a son born of Niyoga." MANU.

Men and women should always bear in mind that the (male or female) reproductive element is invaluable. Whosoever wastes this invaluable fluid in illicit intercourse with other people's wives, prostitutes, or lewd men, is the greatest fool, because even a farmer or a gardener, ignorant though he be, does not sow the seed in a field or a garden that is not his own. When it is true in the case of an ordinary seed and of an ignorant peasant, why

PAGE 139

should not that wastes the human see - the best of all seeds - in an undesirable soil, be regarded as the greatest fool, since he does not reap the fruit thereof. It is written in the Braahman Granth, "A son is part of his father's self." The Saama Veda also declares:- "O son! Thou art sprung out of my spermatic fluid which is drawn from all the bodily organs and from the heart. Thou art, therefore, my own self. Mayest thou never die before me. Mayest thou live for a hundred years." SAAMA VEDA. It is a sin of the deepest dye to sow the seed, out of which great souls and distinguished men have sprung, in a bad soil (such as a prostitute) or to let a good soil be impregnated with a bad seed.

Q. ~ What is the good of the institution of marriage? This relation restricts the liberty of people and entails great suffering on them. Therefore it is desirable that a couple should continue to live as man and wife as long as they love each other, and separate when they are tired of each other.

A. ~ This is what beast and birds do. It does not become men to act like this. If the institution of marriage did not exist, all the amenities of domestic life would come to an end. None will serve another. Downright adultery and illicit connections will increase, all men and women will be afflicted with disease, physically and mentally, an will consequently die young, no one will fear another or be controlled by public opinion. Families upon families will be blotted out of existence in consequence of disease, physical and mental degeneration and premature death due to downright adultery and fornication.

No one will have a title to succeed to another's property, nor will any person be able to retain possession of anything for any great length of time. All these evils can be best avoided by marriage.

Q.~ Monogamy being the rule (i.e., if one man be allowed to have only one wife, and one woman only one husband) what will a person do, if the wife be encienti ir afflicted with some chronic disease, or if the husband be a valetudinarian and either of them cannot control himself or herself on account of extreme youth?

PAGE 140

A. ~ We have answered this objection while treating of Niyoga. If a man be not able to control his passions while his wife and she is pregnant, he may contract Niyoga with a (widow) and beget offspring on her, but let him never misconduct himself with a prostitute or commit adultery. Let a man, as far as possible, desire for what he has not got, preserve what he has got, try to increase what he has preserved, and spend it in doing good to his country.

Let every man perform the duties of his Class and Order, as set forth above, mot faithfully, assiduously and zealously, and apply himself heart and soul so the attainment of righteous ends, and expend his wealth in the pursuit thereof. Let him diligently serve his father, mother, father-in-law, and mother-in-law, and maintain loving relations with friends, neighbors, the king, learned and holy men.

Let him treat the unrighteous and the wicked with non-chalance, in other words, bear them no malice and endeavor to reform them. Let him ungrudgingly spend his wealth in securing for his children the benefits of wide culture and liberal education, and try his best to make them perfect scholars and men of culture. Let him do righteous deeds, and thereby try to attain salvation so that he may enjoy eternal (extreme) bliss.

Verses like the following should never be regarded as authoritative.
["Even a degraded twice-born man is superior to Shudra who has conquered his lower self, just

as a cow that does not yield milk is worthy of worship, a she-donkey is not worshipped even though she yields milk. The following are prohibited in Kaliyuga (iron age) :-

1. Horse sacrifice.
2. Cow sacrifice.
3. Initiation into Sanyaas (the Order of Renunciation).
4. Offering flesh balls in a ceremony relating to the manes.
5. Raising of issue on a widow by her husband (by Niyoga)

PAGE 141

The scriptures enjoin that a widow may take unto herself a second husband in the following cases:-

1. If the husband has gone abroad and cannot be traced.
2. If he be dead.
3. If he has turned a Sanyasi
4. If he be impotent
5. If he be excommunicated."]

PARAASHAR SMRITI.

The above verses are from the apocryphal Parashar Smriti. It is downright prejudice, sheer injustice, and a great sin to regard a wicked twice-born man better than a virtuous Shudra. If a cow, whether it yield mil or not, is cared for by the milkman, the she-donkey is equally an object of care for the potter.* Even the illustration is defective, since the twice-born man and the Shudra belong to the human species -bovine and asinine. Should even an illustration from the animal kingdom be partly applicable to human beings, this verse cannot be regarded as true by learned men, it being oppose to the reason.

Horse-sacrifice and cow-sacrifice not being enjoined by the Vedaas, their condemnation in the Kaliyuga (iron age) alone must surely be regarded as opposed to the Vedaas. If it is thought necessary to condemn these wicked practices in the Kaliyuga, it follows that they are permissible in the other three Yugas (viz., Golden, Silver, Bronze ages); but is absolutely impossible that such wicked practices should prevail during ages** when righteousness reigned supreme.

Again initiation into the Order of Sanyaas finds sanction in the Vedas another Shaastras, therefore it is foolish to interdict it. If indulgence in flesh foods is interdicted (which it undoubtedly is), then the prohibition should apply equally to all ages. Why should the author of these verses be barking like a dog, i.e., indulging in puerile

---

*Donkeys are very often used by potters in India for carrying pottery from place to place. Tr.

** The period covered by Creation is called Brahmadina (God's day), while the period covered by Dissolution is called Braahmaratri (God's night): Brahmadina (God's day) is divided into 1,000 Chaturyugis, each of which is again divided into 4 Yugas or ages, these are:-

1. Sat Yuga or Golden age = 1,728,000 years.
2. Dwaapur Yuga or Silver age = 1,296,000 years
3. Treta Yuga or Bronze age = 864,000 years
4. Kaliyuga or Iron age = 432,000 years

The orthodox believe that these Yugas influence the conduct of the human race for good or for evil, hence they have given these Yugas the names of Golden, Silver, Bronze and Iron respectively. The author does not share this view. - Tr.

PAGE 142

Nonsense, when Niyoga is clearly allowed by the Veda. If the husband has gone abroad and during his absence the wife contracts Niyoga, whose wife will she be regarded if the husband (by marriage) returns? It may be replied that she would belong by right to him who married her. This is perfectly right, but this provision is not laid down in the Paraashar Smritti. Are there only five occasions of emergencies on which a woman may find it necessary to have recourse to Niyoga? These occasions are more than five in number. Here are some others:-

- Prolonged illness of the husband
- Serious differences with the husband, etc.

The verses like these are, unworthy of belief.

Q. ~ Well sir! Have you no faith even in what the Parashar says:

A. ~ Nothing that is opposed to the Vedas ought to be believed in, no matter who has taught it. Moreover, these are not the words of Parashar. People write books in the name of eminent men like Brahma, Vasishtha, Rama, Shiva, Vishnu and Devi so that these books, being stamped with the authority of universally esteemed great men and women, may be acceptable to the whole world, and the real authors and their successors) may be pecuniarily benefited to a great extent.

It is for this reason that they write books replete with foolish and mythical stories. Among the Smrities, the Manu Smriti alone is authentic, the interpolated verses being excepted. What has been said about the Smrities applies with equal force to all apocryphal books.

Q. ~ Is the Order of householders the highest or the lowest of Orders?

A. ~ Each of the orders is noble in its own place. Says Manu:-
"Just as all rivers and rivulets meander till they find a resting place in the ocean, so do men of all Orders find protection with householders. The men of no Order can properly discharge their duties without the help of householders." MANU 6: 90.

PAGE 143

"A all living creatures subsist by receiving support from air, even so do the men of all Orders subsist by receiving support from the householder. Because men of the three other Orders - Brahamcharya, Vaanaprasth and Sanyaas - are daily supported by the house holder with gifts of food, &c., the Orders of householders is the most excellent Order, In other words, it is the pivot upon which the entire A'shram (Order) system turns."

MANU 3: 78.

The duties of this Order, which cannot be practiced by men who are cowardly and possess a poor physique, must be faithfully discharged by those who desire uninterrupted happiness in this world and imperishable bliss hereafter." MANU 3: 79

All the concerns of life are, therefore, dependent on the Order of householders. If this Order did not exist, the human species would not be propagated, the consequently the **Orders of Brahmacharya Vaanaprasth** and **Sanyaas** could not be called into existence. Whosoever speaks ill of this Order is himself worthy of contempt, but whosoever speaks well of it deserves all praise.

But be it remembered that this Order can be fruitful of happiness only when both the husband and the wife are contented with each other, are learned and energetic, and fully know their duties. The chief causes which contribute to the happiness of householders are **Brahmacharya** and marriage by choice of which we have already treated.

We have thus briefly discoursed on Return Home, Marriage and Married Life in this Chapter. We shall treat of the orders of Vanaprasth and Sanyaas in the next.

THE END OF CHAPTER FOUR

CHAPTER 5

VAANPRASHTH AND SANYAAS
Study and Renunciation

PAGE 144

THE ORDER OF RENUNCIATION

"Having completed his Brahmacharya , let a man enter Grihastha (married life), and thereafter, Vaanprasth*, and last of all become a Sanyaasi."** This is the consecutive order of the different stages of life. SHATPATHA BRAAHAMAN, 14

"Having thus remained in the Order of householders, let a twice-born man, who had before completed his Brahmacharya, live in a forest with his faith firm and his senses well under control."MANU 6: 1

"When a householder perceives that his muscles have become flaccid and his hair gray and even his son has become a father, let him then repair to a forest." MANU 6: 2

"Let him renounce all the good things of town such as tasty dishes, fine clothes, commit his wife to the care of his sons, or take her with him and dwell in a forest." MANU 6: 3.

---

*The third stage of life, in which a man leaves off home and his relations, etc., lives in a forest or some other such secluded place, engaged in contemplation of God and in devotional exercises and the study of higher subjects. -Tr.
** The fourth stage of life when tht man begins to preach the gospel of truth from place to place. -Tr.

PAGE 145

"Let him take with him all the materials, utensils, etc. of Homa, depart from the town, and live in a lonely wood with his senses perfectly subjugated." MANU 6:4

Lt him discharge his **Five Great Daily Duties*** with various kinds of food (such as Soma, etc.) green herbs, roots, flowers, fruits and tubers, and offer the same to atithis** and himself subsist on the same." MANU 6: 5

"Let him constantly devote himself to studying and teaching, retain a calm mind, be a friend to all, conquer his passion, bestow upon others such gifts as knowledge, and be kind to all living beings. Let him not receive gifts from others. Thus should he conduct himself." MANU6: 8

"Let him not be very solicitous for bodily comfort, let him be a Brahmachari, that is, abstain from sexual indulgence even if his won wife be with him, sleep on the ground, have no inordinate love for his dependents and for his belongings, and dwell under a tree." MANU 6: 26

"Learned men of calm minds, living righteous lives in retirement, imbued with keen desire of knowing and embracing the truth, free from all impurities, subsisting on alms, realize the Unchangeable, Immortal, Omnipresent spirit by the practice of Yoga and thereby enjoy true happiness." MUNDAKOPANISHAD 1-2: 11.

---

*As described in the last Chapter. -Tr.
**Missionary guests - the altruistic teachers of humanity. -Tr.

PAGE 146

Thus should a Vaanaprasthi pray "May I, O Lord of Truth! Having been initiated (into this Order) with the performance of Homa, be able to keep my vows, i.e., be truthful in word, deed and thought, and have firm faith in Thee." YAJUR VEDA 20: 24

It behoves a Vaanaprasthi, therefore, to be truthful in speech and to cultivate other virtues, associate with devout, learned men, and thereby acquire knowledge, particularly divine - and attain purity of mind by the practice of **Yoga** and meditation.

Thereafter, when he feels desirous of entering the fourth Order, i.e., of Renunciation (Sanyaas Ashram), let him send his wife* back to his sons and become a Sanyasi.

This subject of Vaanaprasth has thus been briefly described, we shall now discourse on Sanyaas or the Order of Renunciation.

THE ORDER OF RENUNCIATION

SANYAAS ASHRAM or THE ORDER OF RENUNCIATION

"Having thus passed the third stage of life - i.e., from the fiftieth to the seventy-fifth year - as a Vaanaprasthi in a forest, let a man in the fourth stage renounce all connections and become a Sanyaasi." MANU 6: 33

Q. ~ Is it a sin to become a Sanyaasi without going through the intermediate stages of Grihasth and Vaanaprastha?

A. ~ It is and it is not.

Q. ~ How can it be both?

A. ~ Because he who enters into Sanyaas in early life, i.e., direct from Brahmacharya, and then falls into sensuality. Is the greatest sinner; but he that falls not is the greatest saint.

---

*If she does not want to enter the Order of Renunciation. -Tr.

PAGE 147

"Let a man become a Sanyaasi on the day he feels free form all worldly desires and affections, not matter whether he is a Vaanaaprasthi, Grihasthi or even a Brahmachari." BRAAHMAN GRANTH

Thus there are there ways of becoming a Sanyaasi. The first is the consecutive order that has been described before, (i.e., by passing through the first three stages successively). The second is that of becoming a Sanyaasi from Grihasthi. The third alternative is that of entering Sanyaas directly from Brahmacharya, and should be resorted to only if the man be one of perfect knowledge with his senses and mind under through control, free from all sensual desires and imbued with extreme desire for dong public good.

In the Vedas also, the practice of Sanyaas, is allowed in the following words:- "Let a Brahman become a Sanyasi, etc."
"But he whose character is low, who is not free from passions, is not a yogi and whose mind is not contented, can never know God and commune with Him, a Sanyaasi though he be." KATH UPANISHAD 2:23.

Therefore, "Let a wise Sanyaasi restrain his mind and speech from all that is sinful, and apply them to the acquisition of knowledge and the realization of his inner Self. Let him use his knowledge, and then devote his enlightened soul to the realization of the All-Calm Supreme Being, and find rest in Him." KATH UPANISHAD 3: 13.

"let a Braahman, who is a Sanyaasi, seeing that all the enjoyments of this world depend upon deeds, and that the Supreme Spirit being unattainable by deeds, mere deeds can never lead to His realization, abandon love of the world and repair with some kind of present in his mind

PAGE 148

to a preceptor well-versed in the Vedas and wholly devoted to God for the acquisition of Divine knowledge and the removal of all doubts." MUNDAK UPANISHAD 2:12

but let him shun the company of "those ignorance-ridden people who arrogantly consider themselves to be wise and learned, and being puffed up with vain knowledge go about the world as the blind to the great misery of others and themselves," MUNDAK UPANISHAD, and of other again who being ignorant believe themselves to have attained the object of their lives by mere deeds. But since, mere acts or deeds do not lead to the realization of God, such people immersed in the worldliness are afflicted with pain and sorrow, and suffer from misery consequent on continual births and deaths." MUNDAK UPANISHAD 2: 9

Therefore, "those Sanyaasis who are fully convinced of the existence of God by the knowledge of the Vedic Mantraas relation to Him and live godly lives, whose intellects are pure by virtue of the renunciation of all worldly enjoyments who are perfect yogis with thorough control over their senses and minds, enjou immortality and resume the concatenation of births and deaths after a paraant cycle* (i.e., when the period of salvation expires)." MUNDAK UPANISHAD 2:6

"The embodied soul can never be free from pleasure or pain, but when the disembodied soul, being purged of all its impurities, lives in the All-pervading God in the state of Emancipation, pleasures or pains of this world can effect it no longer." CHHANDOGYA UPNISHAD 8: 12

---

*Paraant cycle = 311,040,000,000,000, years.

PAGE 149

"Let a Sanyaasi renounce all love of fame, love of wealth and power and the enjoyments thereof, and love of his kith and kin, live on alms, and devote himself, day and night, to all those things that lead to Eternal Bliss." SHATAPATH BRAHMANA 14: 2, 1

"Let a Braahman, who has mastered the Veda, perform Prajaapati Yajna - the object of which is the realization of God - let him abandon all signs of his Class.* Let his vital forces be in place of the five fires, and let him renounce all his wealth, and possessions, and thereafter, leave his home and become a Sanyaasi." SHATAPATH BRAHMANA 6:38

"He, who grants exemption from fear to all living beings, leaves his home and become a Sanyaasi, and thereafter devotes himself to the dissemination and preaching of the divine religion of the Vedas and of other Shastraas attains to the state of Eternal Bliss called Mukti." MANU 4: 39

Q. ~ What is the Dharma - duties - of Sanyasis?

A. ~ Dharma, i.e., the practice righteousness, devotion to justice, the acceptance of truth, and the rejection of untruth, obedience to the Will of God as revealed in the Veda, and promotion of public good, is the same for all Classes and Orders, that is, for all mankind; but the following are the special duties of Sanyasis:-

---

*Such as a tuft of hair on the top of his head, and Yajnopavita - the sacred thread worn across one shoulder and under the opposite arm-pit. These are the two external distinctive signs of a twice-born man to show that he has been born second time through knowledge and spirituality, the first birth being the physical birth. Shoodras - the people belonging to the fourth Class are destitute of these two signs particularly the second. -Tr.

PAGE 150

"Let a Sanyaasi keep his eyes to the ground and never look hither and thither while he walks; let him filter* his water before he drinks it; let him always speak the truth, and let him think well before he acts, and thus embrace truth and reject falsehood." MANU 6: 46.

"If in the course of a discourse or a discussion a man be angry with him, let him not in his turn be angry. Even though abused, let him say kindly what is good for him; let never falsify his speech - which pervades the seven openings in the human system, i.e.. of the mouth, the nostrils, the eyes and ears."** MANU 6: 48

"With his soul composed and centered on the supreme Spirit, let him be indifferent to pain and pleasure, abstain from meat and intoxicants, seek only spiritual happiness, and go about preaching the gospel of truth and enlightening the world with the light of knowledge." MANU : 49.

"With his hair, nails, beard and moustache clipped, carrying a suitable water-jar and a staff, wearing ochre-colored garments, let him go about with a tranquil mind, harming no living being." MANU 6: 52

"Let him restrain his senses from wicked pursuits, renounce affection and hatred, bear no malice to any living creature, and wok for Immortality (extreme bliss)." MANU6: 60.

---

*Literally strain it through a piece of cloth. - Tr.
** all sensuous impressions reach the sensorium through these seven gateways of knowledge, and whenever it is intended to express to to others anything about these impressions, it is done through the organ of speech. For this reason the speech is said to pervade these seven openings. _Tr.

PAGE 151

"Whether maligned or praised, let a Sanyaasi be impartial towards all, practice virtue himself and strive to make others virtuous. He must bear in mind that the staff, the water-jar and the ochre-colored garments -signs of his Order - do not by any means constitute and effective discharge of his duty. To elevate the human race by the preaching of truth and the imparting of knowledge and wisdom is the paramount duty of a Sanyaasi." MANU 6: 66.

"Though the seeds of a clearing-nut clear muddy water when well-powdered and mixed with it, the mere pronouncing or hearing the name fo that nut can never do so." MANU 6: 67. This shows that professions without practice are useless.

"Let a Sanyaasi, therefore, practice systematically , as many praanaayaamas* as he can meditating on AUM - the highest name of God - and the vihararitis,** and the while, but let him never practice less than there praanaayaamas. This alone is his highest devotion." MANU 6: 70.

"Just as a goldsmith, blowing strongly against a piece of impure gold, removes its impurities by oxidation, so does praanaayaama the blowing of the lungs - remove all the impurities of the body and bodily organs by oxidation." MANU 6: 71

"Let a Sanyaasni, therefore, burn away impurities of his senses, mind and soul by the practice of pranaayaama, destroy sin by Dhayaana, sensual attachments by pratyaakaara, and qualities contrary to the nature of God, as joy and sorrow, and ignorance by Dhyaana.

---

*Prayaahaara, Dha naa Dhayaana are stages in yoga - a system of concentration of mind and of meditation. -Tr
**Vihaaritis have been explained in the first Chapter. -Tr.

PAGE 152

"By the practice of yoga let him then observe the workings of the Omnipresent Omniscient Spirit in all things (low and high), and also of his own soul - which are hared to be discerned by the ignorant and by those who are not yogis." MANU 6: 73.

"It is Sanyaasis alone who can attain final beatitude in this world, by abstinence from malice towards all sentient creatures, and renunciation of all sensual enjoyments, by doing righteous deeds ordained by the Vedaas, and by devotion, and none others." MANU 6: 75.

"Only when a Sanyaasi gives up all desire for earthly things, and is pure in thoughts and feelings towards all things, subjective and objective, he obtains true happiness that endures after death." MANU 6: 80

"It therefore, behoves, all - Brahmachaaris, Grihasthis, Vaanaprasthis and Sanyaasis - to follow assiduously the right conduct of life which has ten chief characteristics:-

1. The cultivation of firmness of mind and contentment.
2. The cultivation of the spirit of forgiveness under all circumstances - whether one be censured or praised, honored or dishonored, etc.
3. Devotion of mind to virtue and abstinence from sin and vice, that is, refraining from the entertainment of sinful thoughts even for one moment.

PAGE 153

4. Honesty - The acquisition of a thing without he permission of its owner, or through fraud, hypocrisy, or breach of faith, or by teaching falsely, or in any other way that is condemned by the Vedaas, is called dishonesty or theft; the reverse of it is called honesty.
5. Purity or cleanliness - bodily and mental. Mental purity consists in freedom from inordinate love or hatred, from prejudice or injustice, etc. Bodily cleanliness consists in keeping the body clean with water, earth, etc.
6. Direction of the senses in the path of rectitude and freedom from sin.
7. Development of one's intellect by abstaining from intoxicants and other articles that are prejudicial to its growth, from the company of the wicked and from sloth, negligence, etc., and by using things possessing healthful properties, associating with men of noble character, and by the practice of yoga.
8. The acquisition of correct knowledge of all things -from earth** to God - and its proper application. In other words, to know a thing as it is, to speak of it as it is in the mind, and to act upon what is spoken, constitutes correct knowledge; and reverse of it is ignorance. <.li> Truthfulness is the harmony of thought, word and deed.
9. Freedom from wrath and other evil habits, and the cultivation of calmness of mind and other good qualities.

Let all follow this ten-fold right conduct of life justly and impartially. It is the duty of Sanyaasis in particular, to follow this right conduct of life as enjoined by the Vedaas, and help others to do the same through teaching and preaching." MANU 6: 92.

"Thus having freed himself, by degrees form all evil associations, the from joy and sorrow and the like, a Sanyaasi rests in the all-pervading God." MANU 6: 81

---

*Dry clay is a very popular disinfectant with the Indians of all classes. -Tr.
**The earth the grossest form of matter, while God is the subtlest of all; therefore, the expression from earth to God is used to include all entities material and spiritual. - Tr.

PAGE 154

Let all Sanyaasis, therefore, enlighten minds of Grihasthis and others on all questions, remove their doubts, free them from (the fetters of) all kinds of unrighteous conduct, and help them to follow the path of rectitude. This alone is the bounden duty of Sanyasis.

What class have the right to Sanyas?

Q. ~Have Braahmans the exclusive right to entering into Sanyaasa, or can other Classes Kshatriyas and others also do the same?

A. ~ Brahmans alone have this privilege. He alone among all the four classes is called a Brahman whose knowledge is perfect, who is most virtuous, and who is bent on doing public good. To enter into Sanyasa, without the acquisition of perfect knowledge and firm faith in Truth and God, and without the renunciation of all earthly things, cannot be productive of any good to the world.

Hence it is that it is common saying that a Brahman alone enjoys the privilege of entering into Sanyaasa and not others, here is the testimony of the sage Manu on this point. Says he, "O Rishis (sages)! This fourfold duty* of a Brahman has been made known to you. It leads to true happiness in this life and to eternal bliss in the next. Next hear from me the duties of Kshatriyaas - the governing class," MANU 6: 97. It is clear then that to enter in Sanyasa is the chief privilege of Brahmanas, whilst entering into Brahmacharya and other Orders that of Kshatriya and other Classes as well.

Where is the necessity of Sanyaasa?

A. ~ As the head is necessary for the body, so is Sanyasa for other Orders, since without it there can be no advancement in knowledge and righteousness. Persons belonging to other Orders, being engaged in house-hold work and in devotional practices cannot have much leisure.

Besides it is very difficult for people belonging to other Orders to be altogether impartial in their dealing, nor can they equal a Sanyasi, he being free from all worldly ties, in doing public good. Men of other Orders cannot get so much time as a Sanyasi who possesses a true knowledge of all things to elevate the people by enlightening them on all subjects. But the amount of good that those who enter into Sanyasa directly

---

*That is of Bramhacharya, Grihasth, Vanaprasht and Sanyasa.

PAGE 155

from Brahmachary can do by the teaching and preaching of truth can never be done by those who enter into it from Grihasth or Vaanaprasth.

Is not Sanyaas against he design of God

Back to contents

Q. ~ Is not Sanyaas against he design of God, because He intended men to multiply? Sanyasa being the Chief Order were all men to enter into it, the whole human race would become extinct.

A. ~ Well, do you not see many people childless even though married? Are not children lost through death? This would also be against the intention of God. But if you say 'A man is not to blame if he does not achieve his end even after trying his best,' we answer that many young men in Grihasth fight with each other and get killed. What a heavy loss is this to the community? The perversion of intellect is the cause of many a quarrel.

When a Sanyaasni, by the preaching of the right conduct of life as enjoined by the Vedas, will create harmony and love among people and nations hostile to one another, he will be the savior of hundreds and thousands of lives, and thus will, like thousands, of Grihasthis, be the cause of

the increase of population. Besides, al men can never enter into Sanyaassa, because al can never be free from sensual desires. The people, converted by a Sanyaasi from wickedness into living righteous lives, may justly be considered his children.

Sanyasis say that they have no duties to perform

Q. ~ Sanyasis say that they have no duties to perform. They accept necessaries of life as food, clothes, etc., from house-holders and enjoy the pleasures of the world. Why should they 'bother their heads' with this world of ignorance? They believe themselves to be Brahma (God) and are contented. If another person ask a question on the subject, the tell him the same thing, i.e., that he also is God, that sin and virtue cannot influence the soul, because, the perception of heat and cold is the function of the body, hunger and thirst that of the nervauric forces, and pleasure or pain that of the mind. The world is but an illusion and so are the affairs of the world. Therefore it i not wise to be entangled in them. Virtue and vice are the functions of the senses and mind, not of the soul. They teach these and similar other things, whilst you have taught differently on the duties of Sanyaasis. Which of these shall we believe to be true and which is false?

PAGE 156

A. ~ Is it not their duty to do even good deeds: Mare! What Manu says. "By doing virtuous deeds, ordained by the Veda, Sanyasis enjoy Eternal (extreme) Bliss." It is clear then that according to Manu, the Vedic deeds - the practice of righteous conduct - are indispensable even by Sanyasis. Can they do without and clothing (and such other necessaries of life?) If they cannot, why is it not a degrading and sinful act on their part to leave off the practice of virtuous deeds?

They accept food and dress and other necessaries of life from house-holders, while they do them no good in return. Are they not the greatest sinners them? Just as it is useless to have eyes and ears, if you cannot see or hear with them, likewise those Sanyaasis who do not preach the truth, nor study nor teach the Vedas and other Shaastras are a mere burden to the community. Those who say and write, that they cannot be troubled with this world of ignorance, are themselves mendacious and ignorant.

They are the cause of the increase of sin and are, therefore, the greatest sinners. Whatever act is done by the body and the bodily organs, is prompted by the soul which alone, therefore, suffers or enjoys the fruits thereof. Those, who declare that the human soul is one with God, are sleeping the heavy sleep of ignorance, because the human soul is finite, and possesses limited knowledge, whilst God is Infinite, Omnipresent and Omniscient. Again God is Eternal, Holy, All-intelligent and Free by Nature, whilst the human soul is sometimes free, at other times not. God, being the Omnipresent and Omniscient, cannot be subject to doubt or ignorance, whilst the human souls is sometimes ignorant, at other times wise. God, again, does not suffer from birth and death, whilst the human soul does. Their teachings are, therefore, false.

Should they accept expensive gifts?

Q. ~ Sanyaasis are those who have renounced all deeds, they are never to touch fire and precious metals. Is this true or not?

A. ~ No. He, who is in communion with God and possesses that holy nature by which all wicked deeds are renounced is called aSanyaasi, in other words, he who practices good deeds and eradicates sin and vice is a Sanyaasi.

Q. ~ Teaching and preaching are done by house-holders, where then is the necessity for Sanyaasi.

A. ~ let all men and women in all Orders or stages of life teach and preach as much as they can, but house-holders cannot

PAGE 157

get as much time nor be as impartial as Sanyaasis. It is true that it is the duty of Braahmans to teach and preach - men to teach men, and women to teach women. It is simply impossible for a Grihasthi to get the time a Sanyaasi can, to ravel about. Besides it is Sanyaasi who restrain Braahmans from deviating from the path of rectitude as declared by the Vedas. Sanyaasis, therefore, are a necessity.

Q. ~ A Sanyaasi should not stay more than one night at one place. Is this true?

A. ~ It is true in one sense; because by staying altogether in one place. A Sanyaasi cannot do much public good. He is liable to get attached to a place and begin to love and hate (things and persons therein). But if a Sanyaasi can do more good by staying at one place, let him do so, as in the past, such Sanyaasi as Panchshikha stopped with the king Janak for even four months, and others for years. As about this rule of not staying long in one place, it has also been framed by hypocritical sectarians, for (they are afraid that). If a Sanyaasi would stay long at one place, he would expose their fraud, and thus put a stop to its further increase.

Q. ~ "Whosoever gives gold to a Sanyaasi shall go to hell." Now what do you say to this?

A. ~ This again is the invention of extremely selfish, orthodox, sectarians - the enemies of Classes and Orders. They know that were a Sanyaasi to get money, it would greatly help him to expose their fraud. They would thus suffer and consequently no longer be able to keep him under their jurisdiction. Should charity remain under their control, Sanyaasi would naturally fear them. When it is considered good to give gifts to the ignorant and selfish people, how can there be any harm in giving them to the learned altruistic Sanyasis? Says Manu, "let a man give Sanyaasis present of precious stones and gold." MANU 2: 6. Besides, the verse quoted above by you is absurd, because, if by giving gifts of gold to a Sanyaasi the donor goes to hell, by giving silver, diamonds and precious stones, he may go to heaven.

PAGE 158

Q. ~ *The aforesaid verse was wrongly quoted by mistake, it runs like this that ' by putting gifts in the hands of a Sanyaasi, the donor goes to hell.*

A. ~ This is again the invention of an ignorant mind. "If a man goes to hell by placing gifts in the hands of a Sanyasi, should he put them on his feet or offer in a bag; he may go to heaven. Let no man, therefore, believe in such fabrications. It is true though that if a Sanyasi keeps more money that he needs he will be troubled by the fear of thieves and be liable to get greedy and so on.

But whosoever is learned and wise would do nothing objectionable, nor would he get engrossed in worldly possessions, because, whilst in married life or in student life, he has enjoyed all these pleasures or has observed them, and found them of no substantial good. If he has become a Sanyaasi directly from student life and is free from all worldly desires, he would never allow himself to be infatuated by these things.

Q. ~ It is said that if a Sanyaasi be invited to a shraadha, the spirits of the forefathers of the host run away from the place and fall into hell. Is this true?*

A. ~ In the first place, the coming of the spirits of the dead to a Shraaadha or receiving the foods and drinks that are offered to the priests, is an impossibility, being opposed to the teachings of the Vedaas, as well as to reason. Who will run away then when they do not come to the Shraadha? How can the coming back of the manes be possible when all souls after death are reborn according to the nature of their deeds and the laws of God? This false doctrine again is the invention of selfish orthodox priests and Vairaagees.** It is true though that wherever Sanyaasi will go, this fraud of the Shraadha of the dead, which is opposed to the Veda, will immediately disappear.

Can a Brahmacharya enter into Sanyas?

Q.~ He who enters Sanyaas directly from Brahmacharya will never be able to control himself as it is a very difficult thing to keep the sensual desires under restraint. Therefore, it is best to enter the Order of Sanyaasa in old age when a man has passed through the Order of householders and of Vaanaprastha.

---

*It is a feast given annually to the priests who claim that the spirits of the forefathers fo the host partake of what is offered to them through their media -Tr.
**A sect of religious mendicants. -Tr.

PAGE 159

A. ~ Let him not, who cannot control his passions, enter into Sanyaas from Brahmacharya. But why should not he who can restrain them? He, who has thoroughly realized the evils of sensual gratification and the advantage of the preservation of the reproductive element, can never be lascivious. His reproductive element serves as fuel to the fire of thought.

In other words, it is used up in carrying on intellectual processes. As the healthy can dispense with doctors and drugs, so should a man or woman, who9se one object in life is to disseminate knowledge, advance true religion and do good to the world at large, dispense with married life like Panchshikha and Gaargi of yore.

Therefore, those alone are entitled to become Sanyaasis who are fit for this high office, and no others. If an unfit person were to enter Sanyaasa, he would sink himself and drag others down with him.

As a Saamraat Raja is a universal sovereign, so is a Sanyaasi Pariviraat, i.e, a universal teacher or the teacher of humanity. But a sovereign is only respected in his own country and amongst his won kinsmen, while a Sanyaasi is honored everywhere. Says Bridh Chanik, "There can be no comparison between a king and a man of learning, since the one is respected in his own country, whilst the other is respected everywhere."

THE FOUR ORDERS

To recapitulate briefly the duties of the four Orders:-

Brahmacharya (or the 1st stage of life) is meant for perfecting one's body and acquiring knowledge and culture.

Grihastha (or the 2nd stage of life) is for the pursuit of useful occupation and professions, marriage, etc.

Vaanaprasth (or the 3rd stage of life) for meditation, concentration of mind on abstruse subjects, perfection of character and acquisition of divine knowledge.

Sanyaasa (for the 4th stage of life) is meant of disseminating knowledge of the Veda and the Shaastras practicing virtue and renouncing vice, preaching the gospel of truth and dispelling doubts and ignorance of the people. but all those who do not discharge the most important duties of

PAGE 160

Sanyaasa, such as the preaching of truth and righteousness, are the most degraded wretches, and will go to hell. Therefore, it behoves Sanyaasis to devote themselves assiduously to the preaching of truth and enlightening the minds of the people who are in doubt, to the studies of the Vedas and the Shastras and the propagation of the Vedic religion, thereby promote the good (physical, social, mental and spiritual) of the whole world.

Q. ~ Should mendicants other than Sanyaasi such as Vairagees, Khakees, etc. be ranked as Sanyaasi or not?

A. ~ No, they do not possess even one characteristic of a Sanyaasi. They follow anti-Vedic creeds, respect the words of the exponents of their sects more than the Vedas, sing the praises of their own creed, are involved in false practices, further their selfish ends, and ensnare others in to their perspective creeds and cults. Let alone doing any good to the world, they, instead, mislead people and bring about their fall and accomplish their own selfish ends. They have, therefore, no right to ranked in the Order of Sanyaasa but on the other hand, their Order can justly be entitled the Order of selfish creatures. This admits of no doubt.

Those a deserve to be called Sanyasis and great souls who walk in the path of rectitude and help others to do the same, promote their own happiness as well as that of the whole world here and hereafter.

Thus we have briefly discoursed on the Order of Sanyas. In the next chapter we shall treat of the Science of Government.

CHAPTER 6

SCIENCE OF GOVERNMENT

PAGE 161

The great Manu says to the Rishis (who begged him to discourse upon the duties of man, etc., for their benefit), "After discoursing on the duties of the four Classes and the four Orders, we shall now describe ***Raaja Dharma*** or the duties and qualifications, etc., or Rulers, in other words, we shall discuss as to who is fit to be a king, how he is to be selected, and how he can attain the highest bliss -salvation. Let a Kshatriya (ruler), whose knowledge, culture and piety are as perfect as those of a Brahman, govern the country with perfect justice" MANU 7:A1, 2 in the following way:-

(God teaches), "Let there be for the benefit of the rulers and the ruled three Assemblies -
1.Religious
2. Legislative
3. Educational
. Let each discuss and decide subjects that concern it, and adorn all men with knowledge, culture, righteousness, independence, and wealth, and thereby make them happy." RIG VEDA 3:36, 6.

PAGE 162

"Let the three Assemblies, Military Councils, and the Army hamoniously work together to carry on the government of a country." ATHARVA VEDA 15:2, 9, 2.

"A king should address the Assembly thus:- Let the leader of the Assembly abide by the just laws passed by the Assembly, and let other members do the same." ATHARVA VEDA 19:7, 55, 6.

It means that no single individual should be invested with absolute power. The king, who is the president of the Assembly, and the Assembly itself should be inter-dependent on each other. Both should be controlled by the people, who in their turn should be governed by the Assembly.

If the system be not followed and the king be independent of the people and have absolute power, "He would impoverish the people, - being despotic and hence arrogant - and oppress them, aye, even eat them up, just as a tiger or any other carnivorous animal pounces upon a robust animal and eats it up. A despotic ruler does not let any one else grow in power, robs the rich, usurps their property by unjust punishment, and accomplishes his selfish end. One man should, therefore, never be given despotic power." SHATPATHA BRAAHMAN 12:2, 3, 7, 8.

"O men! Let that man alone among you be made a king - the President of the Assembly - who is very powerful conqueror of foes, is never beaten by them, has the capacity to become the paramount sovereign, is most enlightened, is worthy of being made a President, who possesses most noble qualities, accomplishments, character and disposition;

PAGE 163

who is thoroughly worthy of the homage, trust and respect of all." ATHARVA VEDA 1: 6, 10, 98.

"O ye learned men ! Proclaim that man with one voice your king - the President and Head of the State - who is just, impartial, well-educated, cultured and friend of all. In this way alone shall ye attain universal sovereignity, be greater than all, manage the affairs of the State, obtain political eminence, acquire wealth, and rid the world of its enemies." YAJUR VEDA 9;40.

God teaches in the Veda, "Rulers! Your implements of warfare, (such as, guns, rifles, bows, arrows, etc.) and war-materials (such as gun-powder) be worthy of praise, strong and durable to repel and conquer your enemies. Let your army be a glorious one, so that you may always be victorious. But the aforesaid things shall not be attainable to the contemptible, the despicable, and unjust." RIG VEDA 1: 39, 2.
In other words, it is only as long as men remain honourable, just and virtuous that they are politically great. When they become wicked and unjust, they are absolutely ruined.

Let a nation, therefore, elect the most learned men, as members of the Educational Assembly, the most devout men, as members of the Religious Assembly and men of the most praiseworthy character, as members of the Legislative Assembly; and let that great man in it, who possess most excellent qualities, is highly accomplished, and bears most honourable character, he made the Head or President of the Political Assembly.

Let the three Assemblies harmoniously work together, and make good laws, and let all abide by those laws. Let them all be of one mind in affairs that promote the happiness of all. All men should subordinate themselves to the laws that are calculated to promote general well-being; they should be free inn matters relating to individual well-being.

PAGE 164

QUALIFICATIONS OF THE HEAD OF THE STATE

"He should be as powerful as electricity: as dear to his people's hearts as their very breath, able to read the inmost thoughts of others, and just in his dealings as a Judge. He should enlighten people's mind by the spread of knowledge, justice, and righteousness, and dispel ignorance and injustice as the sun illuminates the world. He should be like one who consumes wickedness like fire, keeps the wicked and the criminal under control like a jailer, gladdens the hearts of the good like the moon; makes the country rich and prosperous, as a treasurer keeps his treasury full; is powerful and majestic like the sun, keeps the people in order and awe; and on whom no one in the whole world dares to look with a stern eye. He alone is then fit to be the Head of the State who is like fire, air, the sun, the moon, a judge, a treasurer, a goaler in keeping the wicked under control, and like electricity in power." MANU 7: 4, 6, 7.

THE TRUE KING

"The Law alone is the real king, the dispenser of justice, the disciplinarian. The Law is considered as the surety for the four Classes and Orders to discharge properly their respective duties. The Law alone is the true Governor that maintains order among the people. The Law alone

PAGE 165

is their Protector. The Law keeps awake whilst all the people are fast asleep. The wise, therefore, look upon the Law alone as Dharma or Right. When rightly administered the Law makes all men happy but when administered wrongly, i.e., without due regard to the requirement of justice, it ruins the king. All the four Classes would become corrupt, all order would come to an end, there would be nothing but chaos and corruption if the Law were not properly enforced. Where the Law - which is likened unto a fear-inspiring man, black in color and with red eyes - striking fear into the hearts of the people (evil) and preventing them form committing crimes, rules supreme, there the people never go astray, and consequently live in happiness if it be administered by a just and learned man.

He alone is considered a fit person to administer the Law by the wise, who invariably speaks the truth, is thoughtful, highly intellectual and very clever in the attainment of virtue, wealth and righteous desires. The Law rightly administered by the king greatly promotes the practice of virtue, acquisition of wealth and secures the attainment of the heart-felt desires of his people. But the same Law destroys the king who is sensual, indolent, crafty, malevolent, mean and low-minded.

Great is the power and majesty of the Law. It cannot be administered by a man who is ignorant and unjust. It surely brings the downfall of the king who deviates from the path of rectitude.

PAGE 166

The Law can never be justly administered by a man who is destitute of learning and culture, has no wise and good men to assist him, and is sunk in sensualism. He alone is fit administer the Law- which is another name for justice - who is wise, pure in heart, of truthful character, associates with the good, conducts himself according to the law and is assisted by the truly good and great men in the discharge of his duties." MANU 7: 17, 19,24, 28, 30, 31.

CHIEF OFFICES

"The four chief Offices - Commander-in -Chief of the forces, Head of the Civil Government, Minister of Justice, and the Supreme Head of all - the King - should be held only by those

persons who are well -versed in all the four Vedas and the Shaastraas, are conversant with all the sciences and philosophies, devout, and have perfect control over their desires, passions and possess a noble character.

Let no man transgress that law which has been passed by an Assembly of ten men learned and wise, or at the very least of three such men. This Assembly must consist of members who are well-versed in the four Vedas, keen logicians, masters of language, and men conversant with the science of religion, they must belong to the first three Orders - Brahmacharya, (celibacy), Grihastha (married life), Vaanaprastha (renunciation)

Let no man transgress what has been decided by even an Assembly of three men who are scholars of the Rig Veda, the Yajur Veda and Saama Veda respectively.

PAGE 167

Even the decision of one Sanyaasi, (wise) who is fully conversant with all four Vedaas and is superior to all the twice-born (Dwijaas) should be considered of the highest authority. But let no man abide by the decision of myriads of ignorant men.

Even a meeting of thousands of men cannot be designated an Assembly, if they be destitute of such high virtues as self-control or truthful character, be ignorant of the Vedas and be men of no understanding like the Shoodraas.

Let no man abide by the law laid down by men who are altogether ignorant, and destitute of the knowledge of the Veda, or whosoever obeys the law propounded by ignorant fools falls into hundreds of kinds of sin and vice. Therefore, let not ignorant fools be ever made members of the aforesaid three Assemblies - Political, Educational and Religious. On the other hand let learned and devout persons only be elected to such high offices. MANU 12: 100, 110-111.

QUALIFICATIONS OF MEMBERS OF THE POLITICAL ASSEMBLY

</

"Those men alone are fit to fill such high offices, as of the President or a member of the Political Assembly, who have learnt the three kinds of knowledge, of good deeds and their practice, of elevation of mind by meditation, and contemplation of abstruse subjects, and of that superior wisdom that results from the first two - from the scholars of the four Vedas, - the true system of Government, the science of Logic, the Divine science which consists of the knowledge of the nature, character and attributes of God and the arts of elocution and debate. Let all members and leaders always walk in the path of

PAGE 168

rectitude, keep the senses under perfect control and keep aloof from sin. Let them always practise yoga, meditate on God morning evening, for, he who cannot control his mind and senses - which are subjects of the soul - can never keep the people under control.

Let a man, therefore, most diligently shun (and help others to do the same) eighteen vices - vices from which a man once entangled into them can hardly escape - ten of which proceed from love of pleasure and eight from anger.

A kind addicted to vices arising from the love of pleasure loses his kingdom, wealth and power and even his character. Whilst one who is addicted to vices arising from anger may even lose his life. Ten vices proceeding from love of pleasure are:-
1. Hunting. 2. Gaming - playing with dices, gambling, etc. 3. Sleeping by day. 4. Gossiping or

talking of sensual subjects. 5. Excess with women. 6. Use of intoxicants such as alcohol, opium, canabis indica and its products, etc. 7. Saying unkind or hard words. 8. Useless wandering about from place to place.

The vices that proceed from anger are:-
1. Tale-bearing 2. Violence, such as outraging another man's wife. 3. Malevolence. 4. Envy, i.e., mortification excited by the sight of another person's superiority or success. 5. Detraction from one's character. 6. Expenditure of money, etc., for sinful purposes. 7. Saying unkind or hard words. 8. Infliction of punishment without any offence.

Let him assiduously shun self-love that all wise men hold to be the root of all evils that are born of the love of pleasure and anger, it is through the love of self that a man contracts all these vices.

PAGE 169

The use of intoxicants, gaming, excess with women, and hunting - these four are the most pernicious vices that arise from the love of pleasure.

Infliction of punishment without offence, the use of slanderous language, the expenditure of money for unrighteous purposes - these three are the great vices born of anger that bring extreme suffering on the possessor thereof.

Out of these seven vices proceeding from the love of pleasure and anger the one preceding is worse than the one following. In other words, the use of slanderous language worse than the abuse of money, punishing the innocent worse than the use slanderous language. Hunting is worse than punishing the innocent, excess with women worse than hunting, and use of intoxicants worse still.

It is certain that it is better to die than to be addicted to vices, since the longer a wicked man lives, the more sins he will commit and consequently lower and lower will he sink and thereby the more will he suffer. Whilst he who is free from vices enjoys happiness even if he dies."

Therefore, it behoves all men, especially the king, to keep aloof form hunting, drinking, and other vices, and, instead, to develop a good character and noble disposition, and to devote themselves to the practice of virtuous deeds. MANU 7: 43-53.

PAGE 170

THE QUALIFICATIONS OF MINISTERS AND MEMBERS OF ASSEMBLIES

"Let a king appoint seven or eight good, righteous and clever ministers who are natives of the country, are thoroughly conversant with the Vedaas and the Shaatraas, are very brave and courageous, whose judgement seldom errs, who come from a good family and are well-tried men.

Even an act easy in itself becomes difficult to be accomplished by a man when single-handed. How much more so then, is the great work of the government of a country by a man single-handed. It is, therefore, a most dangerous thing to make one man a despotic ruler, or entrust a single man with sole management of the affairs of the State.

Let the Head of State, then, constantly consult with his clever with his clever and earned ministers on the affairs of the State, such as:- 1. Peace. 2. War 3. Defense - quietly protecting his own country against a foreign attack and waiting for an opportunity. 4. Offence - attacking an enemy

when he finds himself strong enough to do. 5. Proper management of the internal affairs of the State, the exchequer and the Army. 6. Pacification of the newly

PAGE 171

conquered countries by freeing them from all kinds of disturbance. Let him daily reflect on the six subjects.

Having ascertained the individual opinion of each of his ministers and other members of the Assembly, let him abide by the decision of the majority and do what is beneficial for him as well for others.

Let him likewise appoint other ministers who are men of great integrity, highly intellectual, of resolute minds, of great organizing power and of vast experience.

Let him appoint good, energetic, strong, and clever officers, as many as he requires, for the due transaction of the business of the State. Under them let brave, courageous strong men of great integrity and of noble lineage fill position involving great responsibility and risk, whilst let timid and faint-hearted men be employed for the administration of internal affairs.

Let him also appoint an Ambassador who comes from a good family, is very clever, perfectly honest, able to read the inmost thoughts of others and to foretell future, developments and events by observing the expression of faces and other significant signs and acts, and is well-versed in all the Shaastraas - branches of knowledge.

He alone is fit person to be appointed an Ambassador who is very much devoted to politics, loves his country with all his heart, is of irreproachable character, pure in heart, highly intelligent and endowed with an excellent memory, who can adapt himself to the manners and customs of different countries and different times, is good looking, fearless and a master of elocution." MANU 7: 54-57, 60-62, 64.

DUTIES OF MINISTERS AND OTHER HIGH OFFICIALS

"The power to enforce the law should be vested in a minister who should see that the law is administered justly, treasury and other affairs of the State should be under the control of the king, peace and war under that of the Ambassador, and everything under the control of the

PAGE 172

Assembly. It is the Ambassador alone who can make peace between enemies, or war between friends. He should so strive as to divide enemies united against his country.

Thus having learnt the designs of his enemy let a king - the President of the Assembly (as well as members of the Assembly, Ambassadors and others) - endeavor to guard himself against al danger from him.

In a thickly wooded country, where the soil is rich, let him build himself a town surrounded by a fortress of earth, or one protected by water, or one surrounded by a thick wood on all sides, or a fortress of armed men, or one surrounded by a mountain.

Let him build a wall round the city, because one brave, well-armed soldier placed inside it is a match for a hundred, and a hundred for thousands. It is therefore, extremely necessary to build a fort. Let the for t be well-supplied with arms and ammunition, with various kinds of grain and other

food stuffs, with conveyances and beasts of burden, etc., with teachers and preachers, artisans, various kinds of machines, with grass and grain, etc., for animals, and with water, etc. In the centre of the town let him build for himself a Government house, well- protected from wind, etc., suited to all weathers, with

PAGE 173

well provided parks and gardens round it, and well-supplied with water. It should be big for all the state functions.

Having done so far, that is, having completed his studies in the order of Brahmacharya and settled the affairs of the State, let him choose a consort of Kshatriya Class, born of a high family, endowed with beauty and other excellent qualities, dearest to his heart, blessed with charming manners, etc., and equal to him in knowledge, acquisitions, accomplishments and of like temperament. Let him take one wife and one only, and consider all other women as unapproachable, therefore let him not even look at another woman (with the eye of lust).

Let him retain a chaplain and a spiritual teacher to perform Homa and Yajnas suitable for different season sand other religious duties for him in the palace, and let him always devote himself to the business of the State. To devote himself day and night to the affairs of the State without allowing anything to go out of order is the highest duty of a king, aye, this is his worship, this is his communion." MANU 7: 65, 66,68, 70, 74-78.

REVENUE

"Let the king collect his revenue through honorable, trustworthy and accomplished men possessed of excellent character. Let him, who is the President of the Assembly, his ministers and other officials, and the Assembly observe the eternal principles taught by the Vedas, and let them act like fathers to the people.

Let the Assembly appoint officials of various kinds whose sole duty it should be to see that the State officials in all departments

PAGE 174

of their duties faithfully according to the regulations. Let them, who discharge their duties satisfactorily, be honored, whilst those who do not, be punished properly.

In order to disseminate the knowledge of the Veda which is truly called the imperishable treasure of the kings, let the king and the Assembly show due respect to students, who return from their seminaries after having studied the Vedas and Shatraas in the Order of Brahmacharya as well as their teachers. This helps forward the spread of education and the progress of a country.

If a king, devoted to the warfare of his people, be defied by an enemy of equal, greater, or less strength, let him remember the duty of Kshatriya and never shrink from going to battle. Let him fight with such skill as may ensure his victory.

Those kings who, with the object of defeating their enemies, fight fearlessly to their utmost and never turn away from the field of battle shall obtain happiness. They must never turn their backs upon the field of battle, but it is sometime necessary to hide away from the enemy in order to obtain victory over him. Let them employ all kinds of tactics to ensure their success in battle, but let them not perish foolishly like a tiger who, when his temper is rouse, exposes himself foolishly to the fire and is thereby killed.

In the field of battle let soldiers bear in mind the duty of men of honor, and, therefore, never strike a man who is standing near a field of battle - a non-combatant - nor one who is a eunuch, nor one who with folded palms begs for peace, nor one whose hair is disheveled or scattered (over his eyes), nor one who is sitting at ease, nor one who says 'I am at your mercy', nor one who is asleep, nor one who is unconscious or in a fit, nor one who is disarmed, nor one who is naked, nor one who is a mere spectator, nor one who is only a camp-follower, nor one who is in agony of pain

PAGE 175

from his wounds, nor one who is an invalid, nor one who is seriously wounded, nor one who is terrified, nor one who is running away (from the field of battle).

They should make them prisoners and provide them with food, drink and other necessaries of life. The wounded should be medically attended to. They should never be teased or made to suffer in any way. They should be employed in the kind of work that suits their station, etc. the king should especially see that no one strikes a woman, a child, and old man, a wounded man and one who is diseased or afflicted with sorrow.

Let him protect and bring up their children as if they were his own daughters or sisters. Nor should he ever look upon them with the eye of lust. After the country has settled down, let him send all those, from whom he does not fear a fresh revolt, away to their own homes; but let him keep in prison all others who, he fears, may possibly raise the standard of revolt.

The soldier, who cowardly turns his back on a field of battle and is slain (by an enemy), is thus rightly punished for his disloyalty to his master who shall take unto himself all the honor due to the deceased on account of his past good conduct which begets happiness in this world and in the next. The soldier, who is killed whilst running away from the field of battle, shall never obtain happiness. All his good work is nullified by this act of cowardice. He alone wins laurels who fights faithfully.

Let the king never violate this law that carriages, horses, elephants, tents, umbrellas, grain, silver and gold, cattle such as cows, women, cases of oil and butter, and various other articles are lawful

PAGE 176

Prize of the soldier or of the officer who takes them in war. The captors should give the sixteenth part of their loot to the king, and so should the latter distribute among the whole army the sixteenth part of what was taken by them collectively." MANU 7: 80-82, 87, 89, 91-99.

Let the wife and children have the share of the man who is killed in war. The wife and children of that man should be well look after till the children are grown up when the king should offer them suitable state appointments.

Let no one, who is desirous of augmenting the prosperity of his State and of gaining fame, victory, and happiness, transgress this law.

"What the king and the Assembly have not let them strive hard to get, what they preserved let them augment, and let them spend the augmented wealth in the diffusion of the knowledge of the Vedaas, the spread of the principles of true religion, in helping scholars and preachers of the Vedic religion, and bringing up orphans. Having learnt the fourfold object of activity let him shun sloth and live an active life.

Let him obtain what he has not got b the observance of the law, and what he has acquired let him protect with diligent attention, what he has protected let him augment by investing profitably, and let him always spend his augmented wealth in the furtherance of the aforesaid cause.

Let him on all occasions act without guile and never without sincerity, but, keeping himself well on his guard let him discover and ward off the evil designs of his enemy.

PAGE 177

Let him ponder over the acquisition of wealth like a heron that pretends to be as if in meditative attitude just before catching fish. Having obtained the necessary material and augmented his power, let him put forth his strength like a lion to vanquish his foe; like a tiger let him stealthily creep towards his enemy and catch him. When a powerful enemy has come close by, let him run away form him like a hare and then over take him by strategem.

Let not his foe discover his weak points but the vulnerable points of his foe let him himself well discern. Let him hide his vulnerable points form his enemy just as a tortoise draws in his limbs and keeps them concealed from view.

Let such a victorious sovereign reduce all dacoits, robbers and the like to submission by conciliating them, by giving them presents or by turning them against each other. If he fails to restrain then by those means let him do so by infliction heavy punishment on them.

As a farmer separates the husk from the corn without injuring the latter, so should a king exterminate dacoits and burglars, and thus protect his people.

The king, who, through neglect of duty and lack of understanding oppresses his people, soon loses his kingdom and perishes with his family before his time. MANU 7: 99, 101, 104-107, 110-117, 120-124

PAGE 178

Just as living beings lose their lives through the failure of their bodily strength, so do kings as well as their families lose their power, and even their lives by oppressing their subjects.

Therefore, in order to conduct the government properly let the king and the assembly so strive as to fully accomplish this object. The king who is always devoted to the welfare of his people obtains perpetual happiness.

Let him, therefore, have an administrative office in the midst of two, three, five and a hundred villages, wherein he should keep the required number of officials to carry on government business. Let him appoint an official at the head of one village, a second one over ten such villages, a third one over twenty, a fourth one over one hundred villages, and a fifth one over a thousand such villages.*

Let the Lord (i.e., the administrator) of one town daily apprise the *Lord of Ten Towns* privately of all crimes committed within his jurisdiction and the *Lord of Ten* submit his report to the *Lord of Twenty*. Let the *Lord of Twenty* notify all such matters to the *Lord of one hundred* every day and the *Lord of one Hundred*, to the *Lord of one Thousand*, in other words, five *Lords of Twenty, to a Lord of one Hundred, ten Lords of a Hundred, to a Lord of Ten thousand*, and the *Lord of Ten Thousand* to an assembly which governs the affairs of a hundred thousand townships and all such Assemblies, to the Supreme International Assembly representing the whole world.

Over every ten thousand villages let him appoint two presiding officials, one of whom should preside over the Assembly, whilst the

---

* In other words, the present system of having a Surveyor (Patwari) in one village, a branch Police Station for every ten villages and Head Police Station over two branch stations, a Tahsil over the five such Police Stations, a district over ten such Tahsils, and so on, has been borrowed from our ancient system of Government as taught by Manu.

PAGE 179

Other should tour all over the country and diligently inspect the work and conduct of all the magistrates and other officials.

For the purpose of holding the meetings of town councils let him erect a Town Hall in every big town. It should be lofty, capacious, and beautiful like the moon, wherein let the members of the town council, who should be men of vast learning and experience, deliberate over the affairs of their town, and make such laws as will promote the welfare of the people and advance the cause of education and enlightenment.

Let the *inspecting governor* have detectives under him - who should come from *Kshatriya* (protectors) as well as other Classes - and through them let him secretly know perfectly the conduct - good or bad - of the Government servants as well as that of the people. Let him punish those who do not faithfully discharge their duties and honor those who conduct is praiseworthy.

Let the king appoint such men guardians of his people as are virtuous, well-experienced, learned and of good lineage; under such learned officials let him also place men who are very wicked* as burglars and robbers, i.e., who live by seizing what belongs to others. It will help to keep those men form the pursuit of their wicked ways, as well as, to protect the people properly.

Let the king punish properly the magistrate who accepts bribe ether from the plaintiff or the defendant in a case and, therefore,

---

* On the principle that the best keeper is an old poacher. -Tr.

PAGE 180

gives an just decision, confiscate all his possessions, and banish him to a place form which he can never return. Were that man to go unpunished, it would encourage other officials to commit similar wicked crimes, whilst the infliction of punishment would serve to check them. But let those officials be paid handsomely for their services - either by gifts of land or in lump sums of money, paid annually or monthly - enough to keep them in comfort and even to make them rich.

Let an old official in consideration of his services be granted a pension equal to half his pay. This pension must last only so long as he lives, not after. But let his children be properly honored or given Government appointments according to their qualifications. Let his wife and children* be given an allowance by the State enough for their subsistence which should be stopped if they turn wicked. Let the king constantly follow this policy."

TAXES

"Let the king in conjunction with the Assembly, after full consideration, so levy taxes in his dominions as to ensure the happiness of both the rulers and the ruled. Let the king draw an annual revenue from his people little by little just as the leech, the suckling calf and the bee take

their food** little by little. Let him not, through extreme covetousness, destroy the very roots of his own and others, happiness, since

---

*Till they are able to earn their own living.
** i.e., the blood, the milk and the honey respectively. -Tr.

PAGE 181

he, who cuts off the roots of happiness and temporal prosperity, brings nothing but misery on himself as well as on others.

The king who can be both gently and stern as occasion demands is highly honored if he be gentle to the good and stern towards the wicked.

Having thus arranged the affairs of the State, let him devote himself to the protection and welfare of his people with diligent attention. Know that king as well as his ministers to be dead, not alive, the lives and property of those subjects are violently taken away by ruffians whilst they lament and cry aloud for help. Great shall be his suffering. Promotion of happiness of their subjects, therefore, is the highest duty of kings. The king who discharges this duty faithfully, levies taxes and governs the country with the help of the Assembly* enjoys happiness, but he who does otherwise is afflicted with misery and suffering." MANU 7: 128, 129,139, 140,141-144.

"Let the king rise in the last watch of the night, have a wash, meditate on God with his whole attention, perform **Homa**, pay his respects to the devoutly learned men, take his meal and enter the audience chamber. Let him standing there show respect to the people present. Having dismissed them, let him take counsel with his Prime Minister on state affairs. Thereafter let him go out for a walk or a ride, seek the top of a mountain wilderness, where there is not even the tiniest tree (to hide a person), or a sequestered house and discuss (state affairs) with him in all sincerity.

---

* As described in Manu in the 7th Chapter. -Tr.

PAGE 182

"That king, whose profound thoughts other men even though combined cannot unravel, in other words, whose thought are deep, pure, centered on public good, and hidden shall rule the whole earth, even though they be poor. Let him never do even a single thing without the approval of the Assembly." MANU 7: 145 - 148.

IN PEACE AND WAR - MILITARY.

"The king and other persons in authority should keep it in view that it is their duty to adopt after due deliberation one of the following six measures as occasion demands:-

1. Remaining passive.
2. Marching to action.
3. Making peace with the enemy.
4. Declaring war against wicked enemies.
5. Gaining victory b dividing his forces.
6. Seeking the protection of or alliance with powerful king when a ruler is weak.

Let the king thoroughly acquaint himself with the twofold nature of these measures:-
The two kinds of peace with the enemy are:_

- The contracting parties act in conjunction.
- They act apart.

But let the

PAGE 183

king always go on doing whatever is necessary for the present or will be required for the future.

War is of two kinds:-

- When it is waged on account of an injury to himself.
- When it is waged on account of an injury to a friendly power or an ally in season or out of season.

Remaining quiet is of two kinds - firstly, when it is done when the king's own power is weakened through some cause, and secondly, when he remains quiet on the advice of his ally.

To divide one's force - rank and file - into two sections in order to gain victory is called the Division of the force.

Seeking the protection of or alliance with a powerful ruler or the advice of a great man in self defense when threatened by an enemy or when on the offensive is the twofold Protection or Alliance.

When a king ascertains that by going to war at the present time he will suffer, whilst by waiting and going to war at some future time he will certainly gain in power and vanquish his enemy, let him , then, make peace with him and patiently wait for that favorable opportunity.

When he finds his people and the army considerable happy, prosperous and full of spirits and himself the same, let him then declare war against his foe.

When knows his own troops to be contented, cheerful and fit - well-fed, well-nourished and well-clothed, etc., - and those of his enemy the reverse, let him then attack or march against his foe.

PAGE 184

When he finds his foe much stronger than himself, let him accomplish his object by doubling or dividing his forces.

When it becomes clear to him that his enemies will soon march against him, let him then seek speedily the protection of or alliance with, a just and powerful king.

Let a king serve him who would help him in restoring order among his people or in keeping his army under control or his enemy in check, as he would, his teacher - temporal and spiritual. But if he finds his protector or ally full of evil designs, let him then fight him to fearlessly.

Let him never be hostile to a king who is just and virtuous. On the other hand, let him always be on friendly terms with him. All the aforesaid measures are to be adopted in order to vanquish a wicked man who is in power. MANU 8: 16 -176

"Let the king who is a true statesman, adopt such measures that neither his allies, neutral powers, nor his foes may grow in power or gain any great advantage over him. Let him thoroughly deliberate over the advantages and disadvantages of his past actions, his present and future duties. Then let him strive to ward off evils and promote good results. That king shall never be vanquished by his enemies who can foresee the good and evil results likely to follow from the measures that he would adopt in the future, who acts according to his convictions in the present without delay and knows his failings in the past.

PAGE 185

Let a statesman, especially the king, viz., the President of the Assembly, so endeavor that the power of his allies, neutral powers and foes may be kept within limits and not otherwise. Never should he be negligent of this. This alone is, in brief, true statesmanship." MANU 7:177-180

"Before a king begins his march against his enemy, let him secure the safety of his dominions, provide himself with all that is necessary for the expedition, take the necessary number of troops, carriages and other conveyances, weapons, fire-arms, etc., and dispatch his spies in all quarters.

Having seen that all the three ways -by land, on water, and through the air - are clear and well secured, let him travel on land by means of cars, on foot, on horseback, or on elephants, on water by boats, and through air by air-ships and the like, well provide himself with infantry, cavalry, elephants, cars. Weapons of war, provisions and other necessary things, and proceed gradually towards the chief city of the enemy having first given out some reason for his march.

In his conversation let him be well on his guard against, and keep a strict watch on the movements of a man who is inwardly a friend of the enemy and privately gives him information, whilst outwardly keeps with him also on friendly terms; because he who is inwardly an enemy and outwardly a friend must be looked upon as the most dangerous foe.

Let the king see that all officers learn the science and art of war, as well as he himself and other people. It is only those warriors who

PAGE186

are well -experienced in the art of war that can fight well on the field of battle. Let them be well-drilled in the following various dispositions:-

1. Marching troops in file.
2. Marching troops in column.
3. Marching troops in square.*
4. Marching troops at the double.**
5. Marching troops in Echelon.***
6. Advancing in skirmishing order.

   Let him extend his troops to the flank form which he apprehends danger like a lotus flower.

Let him keep his troops with their Commanders on four sides and himself in the center. Let him place his Generals, and Commanding Officers with their brave troops in all the eight directions.**** Let him turn his front towards the fighting.

He must also have his flanks and rear well-guarded, otherwise, the enemy may attack him on these positions on all sides let him station those soldiers who are well-trained in the art of war, firm in their places like the pillars of a roof, virtuous, clever in charging and sustaining a charge, fearless and faithful.

When he has to fight an enemy superior to himself in numbers, let him then arrange his troops in close formation or quickly deploy as occasion demands. When he has to fight his way into a city, a fort or the ranks of his enemy, let him arrange his troops in various forms of military array, such as marching them in Echelon or in the form of a double-edged that cuts both ways; let them fight as well as advance. Before artillery or musketry fire let him order his

---

*Just as boars run after one another and then form one close formation.
**Just as fish swim in water.
***Pointed at the end and thicker at the base - like a needle or a wedge.
**** N,S, E, W &NE, NW, SE, SW.

PAGE 187

troops to crawl like snakes till they get near the guns, shoot or capture the gunners and turn those very guns on the enemy or shoot him with his rifles. Or let him make old soldiers run on horses before the guns, keep good soldiers in the middle and thus attack the enemy. Let him shoot the enemy, scatter his forces, or capture them by a vigorous assault.

On level ground let him fight on foot, on horseback, or in cars, on sea in men-of-war, in shallow water on elephants, among trees and bushes with arrows, and in sandy places with swords and shields.

When his troops are engaged in fighting, let him cheer and encourage them. At the close of a battle let him gladden the hearts of those, who have distinguished themselves, by making nice speeches, providing them with everything they need, looking after their comfort, and helping them in every other way. Let him never engage in a fight without forming his troops into the necessary array of battle. Let him always watch the behavior of his troops and see whether they discharge their duties faithfully or not.

Let him destroy the reservoirs, city walls, the trenches of his enemy, alarm him by night, and adopt measures to vanquish him.

PAGE 188

Having conquered his foe let him have a treaty signed by him. Let him, if necessary, depose him from the throne and appoint another righteous man from the same dynasty as king, and have a document signed by him to the effect that he would carry out his orders, in other-words that he would adopt a just system of Government, serve his people and protect them. Let him give him the aforesaid advice and leave such men with him as would prevent any further disturbance.

Let him honor his vanquished foe with the gifts of gems and other valuable presents. Let him not behave so meanly as to deprive him even of his subsistence. Even if he were to keep him as his prisoner, let him show him such respect as may free him from the sorrow consequent on his defeat and make his life happy; because the seizure of others' property in this world gives rise to hatred, whilst the bestowal of gifts on others is the cause of love. Let him especially do the right thing for him at the right moment, it is a laudable thing to give the vanquished foe what is his heart's desire.

Let him never taunt him, nor laugh at him, nor poke fun at him, not even remind him of his defeat. Instead let him always show him respect by addressing him as his own brother." MANU 7:184-192, 194-196, 203, 204.

THE QUALIFICATIONS OF A FRIEND

"A king does not gain in power so much by the acquisition of gold and territory as by securing a friend who is firm, loving and far-seeing. Such a friend is valuable no matter whether he is powerful enough to

PAGE 189

help him in the attainment of his wishes or is even weak. It is laudable for a king to secure a friend- feeble thought he be - who knows what is right, remembers gratefully any kindness shown to him, is cheerful in temper, affectionate and preserving. Let him bear in mind that it is not proper to make a foe of a man who is eminently wise, comes from an excellent family, and is brave, courageous, clever, liberal-minded, grateful, firm, and patient. Whosover makes such a man his foe is sure to suffer.

He is called **neutral** (i..e., neither an avowed friend nor a declared foe) who is possessed of good qualities, knowledge, of mankind, valor, kindness of heart, and who never discloses the secret of his heart.

Let the king get up early in the morning, attend to his toilet, worship God, perform **Homa** himself or have it done by his chaplain, consult with his ministers, inspect and review his troops, cheer their spirits, inspect stables of horses and elephants, cow houses, etc., stores of arms and ammunition, hospitals and the treasury, in short, inspect everything with his own eyes and point out shortcomings.

Let him then go to the gymnasium, take physical exercise and, thereafter, in the middle of the day enter his private apartments to dine with his wife. His food should be well-tested and be such as will promote health, strength, energy and intellect. It should consist of various kinds of eatables, drinks, and sweets, juicy and fragrant dishes as well as condiments, sauce, etc., that may keep him free from disease." MANU 7:208-211.

Let him thus promote the welfare of his people.

PAGE 190

RATE OF TAXES

"Let the king take from trades-people and artisans one-fiftieth par of their profits in silver

and gold, and one-sixth, one eight, or one-twelfth of agricultural produce such as rice." MANU 7: 130.

If he takes it in cash instead of in kind, then too let him take it in such a way that the farmers and others would not suffer from poverty or from want of necessaries of life, such as food, drink, and so on. Because when the people are rich, healthy and have abundance of necessaries of life, the king flourishes. Let him therefore make his subject happy as he would his own children, and let the people regard the king, his ministers and other officials as their natural protectors, since it is a fact that the farmers and other wealth producers are the real source of kingly power. The king is their guardian. If there were no subjects whose king would he be? Or on the other hand if there were no king whose subjects will they be called?

Let both - the rulers and the ruled - be independent of each other in the performance of their respective duties, but let them subordinate themselves to each other in all those matters that require mutual harmony and co-operation. Let not the rulers go against the voice of the people, nor let the people and ministers do anything against the wish of the sovereign.

The political duties of kings have thus been briefly described. Let those who want to study this subject in detail consult the four Vedas, the Manu Smriti, the shukraniti, the Mahabharat and other books. The method of administering justice may be studied from the eighth and ninth chapters of Manu, but they are also described below:-

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE

"Let the king, the Court and the Judges daily decide justly lawsuits - which are classified under eighteen heads - according to the laws of the land and the teachings of the Dharm Shastraa.* If it be found necessary to undertake fresh legislation - respect of matters about which

---

*Books on the principles of justice written by Rishis in conformity with the Vedas.-Tr.

PAGE 191

no laws are to be found in the Law books of Rishis - let such laws be framed as will promote the welfare of the rulers and the ruled.

These are the following eighteen causes of disputes:-

1. Debt.
2. Deposit - dispute arises when a man deposits an article with another and is refused its return on demand.
3. Sale by one person of a thing that is owned by another.
4. Association of some persons against a particular individual for a criminal purpose.
5. Refusal to return a loan.
6. Non-payment of inadequate payment of one's wages.
7. Disputes with regard to sale or purchase>
8. Disputes between the owner of an animal and the man who looks after it.

9. Boundary disputes.
10. Assault.
11. Slander.
12. Larceny, burglary, and dacoity.
13. Violence.
14. Adultery
15. Disregard of conjugal duties.
16. Disputes about inheritance.
17. Gambling - with animate as well as inanimate things.
18. Murder.

These are the eighteen causes of disputes among men.

Let the judge observe the eternal law of justice and decide all these cases of disputes among men justly, without partiality.

PAGE 192

Where Justice, having been wounded by injustice, approaches the Court, and no one extracts the dart, shot by injustice, from the wound,* all the judges who constitute the bench deserve also to be counted as wounded.

Either a just and virtuous man should not enter an Assembly (or a Court of Justice), or, when he does enter it, should invariably speak the truth. He who looks on injustice perpetrated before his very eyes and still remains mute, or says what is false or unjust, is the greatest sinner.

Where justice is destroyed by injustice and truth by untruth under the very nose of the Judges who simply look on, all those who preside over that Court are as if dead, not one of them is alive. Justice being destroyed shall destroy the destroyer, Justice being protected shall protect the protector. Let no man, therefore, violate the laws of justice, lest justice, being destroyed, destroy him.

He who violates the laws of justice - justice that gives power and prosperity, and showers happiness like rain from heaven - is considered as lowest of the low by the wise. Let no one, therefore, violate the laws of justice. Justice alone, in this world, is the true friend that accompanies a man even after death; all other companions become extinct with the extinction of the body. Justice never forsakes a man.

---

*i.e., where the iniquitous go unpunished and the good, unrewarded and unhonored. -Tr.

PAGE 193

When justice is perpetrated in a Court of Justice (or an assembly) by partiality being shown to one party, the justice is divided into four equal parts. One quarter falls to the share of the party in the cause, one quarter of his witnesses, one quarter of all the judges (or members of the assembly), and one quarter of the presiding judge (or President of the Assembly). Where he, who deserves condemnation, is condemned; he, who is worthy of praise, is praised; he, who merits punishment, is punished; and he, who deserves honor, is honored, in that court (or assembly) the Presiding Judge and other Judges (or

the President and the members of the Assembly) are guiltless and innocent, and the evil deed recoils on him alone who committed it." MANU 8: 3-8, 12, 113-119.

WITNESSES AND THEIR APTITUDES, ETC.

"Among all classes those persons alone are eligible as witnesses who are men of character, learned, straightforward, who know their duty properly, and are truthful and free from covetousness. Never should men of opposite character be considered as eligible to bear witness.

Let women be witnesses for women, the twice-born for the twice-born; Shudras for Shudras, and outcasts for outcasts.

Let the judge never deem it extremely necessary to examine too strictly, the competence of witnesses in cases of violence, theft, adultery, the use of abusive language and assault, all these things being done in the private, witnesses are not easily available in such cases.

PAGE 194

If there be contradictory evidence let him accept as true the evidence of the majority; if the conflicting parties are equal in number, that of those distinguished witnesses, that of the best among the twice-born, viz., sages, seers and Sanyasis - altruistic teachers of humanity.

Two kinds of evidence is admissible:-

- What has been seen.
- What has been heard by the witnesses.

A witness who speaks the truth in a court of law neither deviates from righteousness nor deserves to be punished, but he, who does otherwise, should be properly punished.

A witness, who says anything in a court of law or in an assembly of good men, different form what he had seen or heard, should have his tongue cut-off. He will consequently live in misery and pain for the rest of his life and will have no happiness after death in consequence of having perjured himself.

PAGE 195

Let only that which a witness declares naturally be received as evidence, but what he says on being tutored by others be considered useless for the purposes of evidence by a judge.

The witnesses being assembled in the court, let the judge or the counsels in the presence of the plaintiffs and defendants address them in the following way:-

"O ye witnesses ! Whatever you know with regard to the matter before us in relation to both parties declare truthfully, for, your evidence is needed in this case. A witness who speaks the truth shall hereafter - in future rebirths - attain to exalted regions and states,

and enjoy happiness; he will obtain glory in this life as well as in the next, because the power of speech has been declared in the Vedas as the cause of honor and disgrace. He who invariably speaks the truth is worthy of honor, while he who falsifies his speech is disgraced. By truthfulness in speech is the cause of Justice and Righteousness advanced.

It behoves witnesses of all classes, therefore, to speak the truth and nothing but the truth. Verily, the soul itself is its own witness, the soul itself is its own motive power. O Man! Thou art the chief witness on behalf of others destroy not the purity of thy own soul; in other words do thou know what is in they own mind and to which thy speech corresponds as truth and the reverse as untruth. The wise consider no man greater than one whose discerning soul feels no misgivings when he speaks.

O man! If thou desirest to obtain happiness by uttering a falsehood when thou art alone, thou are mistaken, for the Supreme spirit that resideth in thy soul seeth whatever thou doest - good or bad. Fear Him O man! And live constantly a truthful life." MANU 8: 63, 72, 75, 78-81, 83, 84, 96, 91.

PAGE 196

"Evidence given through covetousness, through love, through love, through fear, through anger, through ignorance and through childishness, must be held false. Should a witness give false evidence from either to these motives, let fitting punishment be inflicted on him. If a man gives false evidence through covetousness he shall be fined one thousand **panas*** or one pound ten pence, if through love four shillings three pence, if through fear eight shillings four pence, if through friendship sixteen shillings eight pence, if through lust one pound thirteen shillings four pence, if through anger, three pounds two shillings six pence, if through ignorance eight shillings, and if through childishness two shillings one pence.

Punishment may be inflicted, through property, the penis, the back, the tongue, hands, feet, eyes, ears, noses, and the whole body. The amount of various punishments (with regard to fines) that have been described above or shall be done hereafter, should vary with the pecuniary circumstances of the offender:** with the time and place and nature of the offence, and with the general character and position (social and the like) of the offender.

The infliction of unjust punishment destroys reputation and honor -past, present and future - in this world as well as the glory to come. It causes great misery and intense suffering even after death; let a judge, therefore, avoid infliction of unjust punishment.

---

*A pana is equal to a farthing. -Tr.

**For instance if he be poor, let the fine be lighter than the ordinary rate, while if he be rich, let it be double, triple or even quadruple. -Tr.

PAGE 197

A king who inflicts punishment on such as deserve it not, and inflicts punishment on such as deserve it brings infamy on himself in this life and shall sink to great depths of misery in the next. Let the guilty, therefore, be invariably punished, and the innocent never punished.

For the first offence let the offender be punished by gently admonition, for the second by harsh, reproof, for the third by a fine, and for the fourth by corporeal chastisement, such as flogging and caning, or by imprisonment or death penalty." MANU 8:118-121, 125-129.

"With whatever limb a man commits an offence, even that limb shall the king remove or destroy in order to set an example to others and prevent the repetition of the same crime. Whosoever - be he father; tutor, friend, wife, son, or spiritual teacher - deviates from the path of duty, becomes liable to punishment; in other words, when a judge sits on the seat of justice, let him show partiality to no one and punish all justly.

Where an ordinary man is fined one penny, a king shall be fined a thousand, i.e., punishment inflicted on a king should be a thousand times heavier than that on an ordinary man, the king's minister eight hundred times, the official lower than him seven

PAGE 198

hundred, and one still lower, six hundred, and so on; even the lowest officials such as a constable, should be punished not less than eight times as heavily as an ordinary man would be, for if the government officials or servants be not punished more severely than ordinary people they would tyrannize over them.

As a lion requires a severer punishment than a goat to be well-broken, similarly do the rulers (from the highest officials - the king - to the meanest servant of the State), require heavier punishment than ordinary people. If a person possesses the power of discrimination, an yet commit theft, let his punishment be eight-fold - i.e., eight times the amount of the theft - if he be a Shudra; sixteen-fold, if a Vaishaya; thirty-two fold, if a Kshatriya; sixty-four or hundred-fold, or even a hundred and twenty-eight-fold if he be a Brahman, i.e., the more knowledge a man possesses and the greater his reputation and influence, the heavier his punishment should be.

Let not the king and other persons in authority, who desire wealth and prosperity, and love justice and righteousness, delay even for a single moment the punishment of man who has committed atrocious violence as dacoity, robbery, etc. A man who commits violence is more wicked and a more grievous offender than a slander, a thief, who suffers a man that perpetrates such atrocities to un-

PAGE 199

punished, incurs public displeasure and shall soon perish. Neither through friendship, nor even at the offer of immense wealth should a king let a criminal, who commits violent acts, go unpunished. On a criminal who is a terror to the people, let the king inflict just punishment, such a imprisonment or death.

Let him put a man, who is convicted of the murder of another (but not in self-defense, etc.) to death without a moment's hesitation, be he his tutor, his child, his father or some other elderly person, a Brahman, or a great scholar. He commits no sin who passes the sentence of death on a criminal convicted of murder and such other highly heinous crimes whether he be executed publicly or privately. It is like opposing anger to anger.*

Most excellent is the king in whose realm there is neither a thief nor an adulterer, nor a slanderer, nor a perpetrator of atrocious violence such as a dacoit nor a transgressor of the law." MANU 8:334-338, 344-347, 350, 351, 386.

"Should a wife out of her family pride desert her husband and misconduct herself, let the king condemn her to be devoured by dogs before all men and women. Similarly should a husband forsake his wife and misconduct himself with other women, let the king cause the sinner to burnt alive publicly on a red hot iron-bed." MANU 7: 371, 372, 406, 419, 420.

---

*i.e., fighting the criminal with his own weapon. -Tr.

PAGE 200

Q. Who shall punish the king or the queen, the Lord Chief Justice or his wife, if any one of them commits such wicked crimes a adultery?*

A.~ The Assembly (or the court of justice), They should be punished even more severely than other people.

Q.Why will the king and other high personages suffer the Assembly (or the court of justice) to punish them?

A.~ What is a king but a man endowed with virtue and favored by fortune. Were he to go unpunished, why would others obey the law? Besides if the people and other persons in authority and the Assembly would deem it just and necessary to punish the king, how can be single-handed refuse to suffer punishment? Were king and other high personages to go free, the king, ministers, and other men of influence and power would simply se justice and righteousness at naught, sink into the depths of injustice and ruin the people as well as themselves.

Remember ye the teaching of the Vedic text that says "Verily the just Law alone is the true king , yes, the just Law is the true religion." Whosoever violates it is lowest of the low.

Q. How can it be right to inflict such severe punishments, since man has no power to make a limb or bring the dead to life again?

A.~ Whosoever calls it severe punishment is ignorant of the true principles of Right Government. The infliction of a heavy punishment on one man prevents others from committing similar crimes, and tends to keep them steadfast in righteousness. Truly speaking this so-called heavy punishment is no heavier than the weight of a mustard seed when distributed among all the members of a

---

*According to the Roman Law which holds sway in the occident at the present time " The king can do no wrong; and no court is competent to try a sovereign for all the courts derive their authority from him. The ancient Aryan Judges derived their authority from God because they had to administer justice according to principles sanctioned by the Veda - Divine Law. The king, therefore, like his meanest subject, was subject to judicial trials, Unlike modern states the ancient state

had means of legal redress against the sovereign, now the only redress is rebellion. In this as in so many other respects the ancient Aryan Sage was ahead of the modern jurists. - (Rama Deva)

PAGE 201

community, whilst so-called light punishment, by its failure to check crime, is really a thousand times heavier than the first, as it is multiplied a thousand times by the proportional increase of crime. Now take for an illustration a community of one thousand persons. If every one of them be punished, say, one pound each, the total punishment will be one thousand pounds, whilst if one man in this community of one thousand persons be punished, say, one hundred pounds and should that punishment succeed in preventing the repetition of similar crimes, the total punishment will not be more than a hundred pounds, which is ten times less than one thousand pounds. Thus the seemingly light punishment in the long run turns out to be the heavier one.

"Let the king impose toll on all the ships and boats passing up and down sea-canals (or bays) and rivers - big and small - proportionate to the length of the country that they traverse; at sea no settled duty can be imposed, hence let him do what best suits the occasion. Let him in such cases make laws that may prove beneficial both to the state and the proprietors of ships."*

Let him always protect his subjects, who go to different foreign lands by means of these ships, wherever they are. Let them never suffer in any way.

"Let the king daily watch the results of various measures (adopted for the good of the state, etc.), inspect elephants, horses and other conveyances, inquire into his income and expenditure, inspect his mines of precious gems, and his treasury.

A king who discharges all these duties most faithfully is freed from all taint of sin, and shall attain t the Supreme State." MANU 8: 572, 406, 419, 480.

Q. Is the ancient Aryan system of Government perfect or imperfect?

A.~ Perfect; because all other systems of Government, that prevail at present or shall prevail, have and will have for their basis the Aryan System of Government. The laws that have not been declared expressly have been provided for by the text. "Let the Parliament composed of scholars, frame such laws as are just and beneficial to the rulers and the ruled."

---

*Here it must be borne in mind that those people who say that there were no ships in ancient times are absolutely in the wrong.

PAGE 202

Let the king as well as his advisers bear in mind that early marriage must not, be allowed, nor the marriage of grown up people without mutual consent. Let the king encourage the practice of Brahmacharya; let him put a stop to prostitution and the custom of plurality of wives (as polygamy, etc.) so that both body and soul may attain perfect strength and power. For if only mental powers and knowledge be developed, but not physical strength, one man of great physical strength may vanquish hundreds of scholars. On the other

hand if physical strength alone be sought after and not mental, the high duties of Government can never be rightly discharged.

Without proper training and requisite knowledge and without the proper discharge of these duties, there can be no harmony. All will be discord, division, mutual disputes, quarrels and feuds that ultimately ruin all. Let, therefore, both mind and body be developed. There is nothing more prejudicial t the growth of physical and mental powers than prostitution and excessive sexual indulgence.

Kshatriyaas should, in particular, be physically strong and possess well developed bodies, because if they be lascivious, the government of the country is irrevocably ruined. The proverb "As is the king, so shall the people be" should never be lost sight of. It, therefore, behoves the king and other high personages never to misconduct themselves. Instead, let them always set a good example to others in the matter of just and righteous living.

Thus have the duties of Ruler been briefly described. Those, who want to study them I detail, are referred to the Vedas, the seventh, eight and ninth chapters of Manu, the Shukraniti, Vidurpprajaagar, Rajadharma, an Apatadharma, chapters of Shantiparva of the Mahabharata. They should perfectly master the science and art of government, and rule one country or Empire or the whole earth. Let all understand "We are the subjects of the Lord of the universe - the king of kings. He is true king and we are all His humble servants," (Yajur Veda). May we in this world, through His mercy, be privileged to occupy kingly and other high offices and may He make us the means of advancing His eternal Justice.

CHAPTER 7

GOD AND THE VEDA.

PAGE 203

"They are atheists and of weak intellect, ad continually remain sunk in the depths of misery and pain who do not believe in, know, and commune with, Him who is Resplendent, All-glorious, All-Holy, All-knowledge, sustainer of the sun, the earth and other planets, Who pervades all like ether, is the Lord of all and is above all devatas. It is by the knowledge and contemplation of God alone that all men attain true happiness." RIG VEDA: I, 164, 39.

1. There are more Gods than one mentioned in the Vedas. Do you believe this or not?

A.~ No, we do not; as nowhere in all the four Vedas there is written anything that could go to show that there are more gods than one. On the other hand, it is clearly said in many places that there is only one God.

2. What is meant by the mention of various devatas (Gods) in the Vedas then?

A.~Whatsoever or whosoever possesses useful and brilliant qualities is called a devata, as the earth for instance; but it is nowhere said that it is God or is the object of our adoration. Even in the above mantra it is said that He, who is the sustainer of all devatas, is the adorable God, and is worthy of of being sought after, They are greatly mistaken who take the word "devata" to mean God.

PAGE 204

He is called devata of devatas - the greatest of all devatas, - because He aloneis the author of Creation, Sustenance and Dissolution of the Universe, the Great Judge and Lord of all. The Vedic text "The Lord of all of all, the Ruler of the universe, the Sustainer of all holds all things by means of thiry-three devatas" has been explained as follows in the fourteenth chapter of the Shatpatha Brahman:-

1. Heated cosmic bodies
2. Planets
3. Atmosphere
4. Super-terrestial space
5. Suns
6. Says of ethereal space
7. Satellities
8. Stars

These eight are called Vasus, because they are abode of all that lives, moves or exists. The eleven Rudras are the ten pranas - nervauric forces - enlivening the human body and the eleventh is the human spirit.

These are called Rudras because when they desert the body, it becomes dead and the relations of the deceased, consequently, begin to weep. The twelve months of a year are called Adityas, as they cause the lapse of the term of existence of each object or being. The (all-pervading) electricity is called Indra, as it is productive of great force. Yajna (assembly for the purposes of teaching and learning) is called Prajapati because it benefits mankind by the purification of air, water, rain and vegetables and because it aids the development of various arts, and because in it the honour is accorded to the learned and the wise.

These thirty-three aforesaid entities are called devatas by birtue of posssessing useful properties and qualities. Being Lord of all and greater than all, the Supreme Being is called the thirty-fourth Devata who alone is to be worshipped. The same thing is written on the other Shastras. Had people consulted these books, they would not have fallen into this error, viz., the believe that there are more gods than one mentioned in the Vedas.

PAGE 205

"By One Supreme Ruler is this universe pervaded, eve every world in the whole circle of nature, He is the true God. Know Him, O man! and covet not unjustly the wealth of any creature existing. Renounce all that is unjust and enjoy pure delight - true spiritual happiness - by the practice of justice and righteousness which is another name for **true religion.**YAJUR VEDA 40:1

"God teaches in the Veda "I, O men, lived before the whole universe came into being, I am Lord of all, I am the eternal cause of the whole creation. I am the source and giver of all wealth. Let all men look up to me alone as children do to their parents. I have appointed different foods and drinks for all creatures to give them sustenance so that they may live in happiness." RIG VEDA 10: 48, 5.

" I am God Almighty, I am the Light of the world like the sun. Neither defeat, nor death, can ever approach me. I am the controller of the universe, know me alone as the Creator of all. Strive ye diligently for the acquisition of power and wealth such (as true knowledge). Ask ye of me. May ye never lose my friendship. I give true knowledge, which is real wealth, unto men who are truthful. I am the revealer of Vedas which declare my true nature. It is through the Vedas that I advance the knowledge of all. I am the prompter of the good and true. I reward those who devote themselves to the good of humanity. I am the cause, I am the support of all that exists in this universe. May ye never turn away from me. May ye never accept another God in my place, nor worship him." RIG VEDA, 10:48, 5.

"God, O men existed in the beginning of the Creation. He is the Creator, Support and Sustainer of the sun and other luminous worlds, He was the Lord of the past Creation. He is the Lord of the present. He will be the Lord of the unborn universe. He created the whole world, and he sustains it. He is Eternal Bliss. May ye all praise and adore Him as we do." YAJUR VEDA, 13:4

PAGE 206

3. How can you prove His existence?

A.~ By the evidences of direct cognition, Inference, Testimony and History.

Q. *But there can be no evidence of direct cognition, with regard to God?*

A.~ "The knowledge which is the result of the direct contact of the five senses - optic, auditory, olfactory, gustatory and tactile - and of the mind, with light, sound , smell, taste and touch; with feelings of pleasure and pain, truth and untruth is called direct cognition. But this knowledge must

be free from error and doubt". Niyaya Shastra 1,4.

On reflection it will be clear that it is only attributes that can be known through the senses and the mind, not substances, in which those qualities inhere. As for example, we are cognizant of a solid substance when it gives rise to the sensations of touch, smell, etc., by coming in contact without four senses, such as the tactile sense, and the senses with the mind, and the latter with the soul; similarly we are cognizant of the existence of God by observing such qualities as design and intelligence in this world.

Besides, instantly the soul directs the mind and the latter directs the senses to the pursuit of a certain object either good - such as acts that promote public welfare - or bad such as theft, they all incline to the desired object and at that very moment, feelings of fear, shame , and distrust arise in the self consciousness if the action be sinful, and those of fearlessness, courage, and satisfaction of felicity, if it be good; these feelings are prompted not by the human soul, but by the Divine Spirit.

Lastly when the soul, freed from all impurities, devotes itself to the contemplation and realization of God through Yoga, it becomes cognizant of both - itself and the Divine Spirit. When we can be directly cognizant of the existence of God how can there be any doubt. His existence by inference and other evidence, because the cause is inferred from its effects.

PAGE 207

4. Is God All-pervading or does He reside in some particular locality?

A.- He is All-pervading. If He were localized to some particular place, He could never be Omniscient, Inward Regular of all, Universal Controller, Creator of all, Sustainer of all and the Cause fo resolution of all things into their elements, as it is impossible for the doer to do anything in place where he is not.

5. Is God Just as well as Merciful

A.~ Yes, he is both.

Q. *These two attributes are opposed to each other, since Justice consists in giving a person the just amount of pleasure or pain - neither more nor less - according to the nature of his deeds, while mercy consisted in letting the offender go unpunished. How could He be both merciful and just at the same time?*

A.- Justice and mercy differ only in name. The object served by justice is the same as accomplished by mercy. Now the object of infliction punishment through

justice is to prevent people from committing crimes and thereby enable them to be freed from pain and misery. What is the object of mercy but to rid people of misery? Your definitions of justice and mercy are not correct, because the infliction of just punishment in exact accordance with the amount of crime is called justice.

If the offender be not punished, mercy will be destroyed, for suffering one such criminal, a a robber, to go unpunished amounts to giving pain to thousands of righteous and law-abiding people. What mercy can ther be, the, in allowing one man to go unpunished and making others suffer? It will be an act of mercy indeed to that robber to keep him in prison and thereby prevent him from further commission of crimes. It will also be an act of mercy to thousands of other people to rid them of that robber or dacoit by putting him to death of keeping him in prison.

Q. *What is then the object of having two terms - mercy and justice- both having the same meaning? It is useless to have two terms, it would have been far better to have only one. This shows that they do not mean the same.*

A.~ Is not an idea expressed by more than one word, and cannot one word be expressive of more than one idea?

Q. *Yes, it is so.*

A.- Why did you doubt it then?

PAGE 208

Q.*Because we hear it said in the world.*

A.- We hear both true and false statements being made in this world, but it is our duty to discriminate between them after due reflection. Behold the infinite mercy of God that He has created all things in this world for the good of all, and given them all freely! What mercy can be greater than this? On the other hand, the inequality in the condition of men - some are in a state of misery - while others in a state of happiness - is a clear proof of the operation of His Law of justice. They - mercy and justice - only differ in the fact that the intense desire in one's mind to bestow happiness on all and accordingly i mercy, whilst the outward action - such as the just infliction of punishment on an offender by imprisoning him or putting him to death is - justice. The one object served by both is to rescue all from sin and consequent suffering

6. Has God a form or is He formless?

A.- He is formless, because if He possesses a form He could never be Omnipresent, nor, therefore Omniscient, since a finite substance can possess

only finite attributes, actions and nature. Besides, He could never be free from hunger and thirst, heat and cold, disease, imperfections and injuries. This proves, therefore, that God is formless, If He were to possess a body, another person would be required to make the different organs of His body, such as eyes, ears and the like, for He, who is the product of the combination of the different parts, must have an intelligent formless maker. Here if it be urged that God Himself made His own body simply by willing it, this too goes to prove that He was formless before He made His body. It is clear, therefore, that God is never embodied. Being without a body He is able to make the visible universe out of invisible causes.

7. Is God All-powerful or not?

A.- Yes, He is, but what you understand by the word All- powerful is not right. It really means that God does no require the least assistance from any person in all His works such as Creation, Sustenance and Dissolution of the Universe, and administration of Divine Justice. In other words, He does all His works with His own infinite power.

PAGE 209

8. But we believe that God can do whatever He likes. There is no one above Him.

A.- What does He like? If you say that he likes and can do all things, we ask - "Can God kill Himself?" Or "can He make other Gods like Himself, become ignorant, commit sins such as theft, adultery and the like? Or can He be unhappy?" Your answer can only be in the negative, as these things are opposed to the nature and attributes of God; hence your contention, that God can do all things, does not hold good. Our meaning only, therefore, of the word All-powerful is true.

Q.*Is God Anadi or Sadi?*

A.- He is Anadi, that , He has no cause or beginning.

9. What does God desire?

A.- The good of all, and the happiness of all, but He does not, by the caprice of His own will, subordinate one person to another without an offence.

10. Should we glorify God, pray to Him and commune with Him?

Q. *Will God by one's doing so suspend His laws, and forgive the sins of His devotees?*

A. No.

Q. *Why should we then worship God?*

A. Its object is altogether different from the one you mention.

Q. *What is it?*

A.- **Glorification** gives rise to love of the Supreme Being, reformation of one's nature, character and attributes in accordance with the nature, attributes, and character of God. **Prayer** crates humility, courage, and obtains divine help. **Communion** results in union with the Great Being and in direct cognition of HIm.

Q.*Will you Please explain it in detail?*

11. GLORIFICATION

A. **Glorification** is of two kinds:- Positive and Negative.

PAGE 210

Positive glorification consists in praising God as possessed of positive attributes in the following manner:-
"That Supreme Being overspreads all. He is entirely spirit, All-energy, All-powerful, Pure, Perfect, Omniscient, Inward Controller of all, Ruler of All, Eternal and Self-existent. He has from all eternity been teaching uncreated immortal human souls, the true knowledge of things through the revelation of the Veda - His eternal knowledge." YAJUR VEDA, 40:8

Negative glorification consists in praising God as devoid of such ungodly qualities as passion and malice in the following way:-
"He is never embodied, is never born, is never liable to division and is free from nervous or arterial systems, never commits a sin , is never subject to pain, grief and ignorance and the like." YAJUR VEDA, 40:8.

The object of **Glorification** is reform one's nature, attributes and character after the nature, attributes and character of God, for instance let him be just as God is and so on. He who praises God like a flunkey, but does not reform his character does himself no good.

12. PRAYERS

Prayer to God is to be addressed in the following way:-
"Endow us, O Lord, who art All-glorious, through thy mercy, at this very instant with that wisdom which the wise, the learned, and yogis pray for." YAJUR VEDA32: 14.

"Thou art Light, be merciful and shed that light into my heart. Thou art Infinite energy, through Thy grace endow me with unfailing energy. Thou are Infinite strength, endow me with strength. Thou art Infinite power, endow me with great power. Thou art wrathful with the wicked, make me also wrathful.

PAGE 211

Thou art moved neither by slander, nor by praise. Thou art forbearing towards those who offend against Thee, make me also forbearing." YAJUR VEDA 20: 9.

"May, O Ocean of Mercy, through thy grace my mind - the mind that in the wakeful state travels long distances, and, possesses brilliant qualities, which self-same mind - light of the senses - in sleep attains to the state of profound slumber and in dreams wanders over different places - always entertain pure thoughts for the good of the self as well as for that of all other living beings. May it never desire to injure any one." YAJUR VEDA 34:1.

"May, O Omniscient God, my mind - which is the source of all activity and which, thereby, enables men of learning, piety and courage to perform acts of great public good and heroic deeds on the field of battle and other occasions, which possess wonderful powers and admirable qualities and rules the senses - harbour only righteous desires and completely renounce sin and vice." YAJUR VEDA 34: 2.

"May, O lord, my mind - the mind which is the repository of the highest form of knowledge, is the faculty for consciousness and judgement, is the light of the senses, and is immortal, the mind without which a man is powerless to do even the most insignificant thing - aspire for purity and shun wickedness." YAJUR VEDA 34: 3.

"May, O Lord of the Universe, my mind - the mind which is the medium through which all yogis acquire knowledge of the past, the present and the future which becomes the means of the union of the immortal human soul with the Supreme Spirit and thereby makes it cognizant of the three periods of time (past, present and the future),

PAGE 212

the mind which is capable of conscious exertion and is closely united with the five sense, the faculty of discernment and the soul, and is the means of the advancement of that great Yajna called yoga - be endowed with true knowledge and yoga and thereby be freed from all kinds of pain and ignorance." YAJUR VEDA 43: 4.

"May, O Great God, Wises of the wise, through Thy grace, my mind - which like the hub of a wheel into which all the spokes are inserted, is the repository of the

Rig Veda, the Yajur Veda, The Sama Veda and also the Atharva Veda, the mind in which Omniscient, Omnipresent conscious Being - the Witness of all - makes Himself known - be freed from all ignorance and be endowed with the love of knowledge." YAJUR VEDA 34: 5

"May, O Lord, the Controller of the Universe, my mind - which is like a driver who can swing the horses around in all directions, sways men hither and thither, is seated in the heart, possessed of great activity and extreme energy - restrain all the senses from treading the path of wickedness and always direct them in the path of righteousness. Mayestt, Thou O Lord, of Thy kindness grant me this prayer." YAJUR VEDA 34: 6.

"Lead us, O Bestower of all happiness, Omniscient, Supreme Spirit, into the path of rectitude and thereby inspireus withh all kinds of knowledge and wisdom, rid us of all that is false and sinful in our conduct, and make us pure. To ths end, we in all humility repeatedly praise and adore Thee." YAJUR VEDA 40: 16.

PAGE 213

"Mayest not, Thou, O Punisher of the wicked, destroy our young ones, nor our old ones, foetuses, mothers, and fathers, nor those who are dear to us, nor our relations, nor our bodies. Direct us to that path by following which we may not be liable to punishment by Thy Law." YAJUR VEDA 16: 15.

"Lead us, O Supreme Spirit, Teacher of teachers, from falsehood unto rectitude, from darkness into light of knowledge, from death and disease to immortality and Eternal Happiness." SHATPATHA 14:3,1,30.

Prayer is said to be **Positive or Negative** according as the Deity is looked upon as possessed of good attributes or as free from bad qualities, faults and imperfections.

A man should act in accordance with what he prays for. For example, if he prays for the attainment of highest wisdom, let him do his utmost to attain it. In other words, **prayer** should be addressed to God for the attainment of an object after one has strenuously endeavoured to attain it. No on should pray in the following manner, nor does God ever answer such a prayer:-

'O lord! destroy my enemies, make me superior to all. Let me alone be honoured by all, make all other subordinate to me, etc.' For, if both enemies were to pray for each other's destruction, should God destroy both of them? If some one were to say that of the two let that man's prayer be granted who bears more love to God, we answer that the enemy of the man whose love is less, should also suffer destruction in a lesser degree. If people began to address such foolish prayers, the next thing they will do, will be to pray in this manner, "O God! Cook our food for us, put it on the table for us, scrub our houses, do our washing, till our land,

and do a bit of gardening a well for us." The greatest fools are they who, trusting in God in this wise, remain slothful and indolent; because who so-

PAGE 214

ever will obey God's commandment to work assiduously will never be happy. God commands thus:-

" Let a man aspire to live by doing work for a hundred years, i.e. as long as he lives. Let him never be lazy." Behold! all the animate and the inanimate objects in this universe perform their respective functions. The ants and other creatures are always active, the earth and other planets are always in motion, the trees are always growing or decaying. Man should take a lesson from these. As men help him who helps himself, so does God help him who works righteously, just as servants do their work only if the master himself is active and not lazy.

Only a man with eyes and with a desire to see can be made to see and not a blind man, likewise God lends his help in answer to those prayers only that aim at the good of all, and not those that are meant to injure any one. He who only keeps on saying 'sugar is sweet, sugar is sweet' can never taste the sweetness of sugar, nor obtain it but he, who tries for it, sooner or later is sure to get it.

13. COMMUNION

iii. **Communion**(upaasanaa). On this subject the **Upnishad** says:-
"No tongue can express that bliss which flows, from communion with the Supreme Spirit, into the soul of that man whose impurities are washed off by the practice of yoga, whose mind being abstracted from the outside world is centred in the Supreme Spirit; because that happiness is felt by the human soul in its inner self alone."

The word **upaasanaa** literally means to come close to. All that is required in order to come close to God by the practice of the the Octapartite (eight parts or stages) yoga and directly see the Omnipresent, Omniscient God should be accomplished.

14. THE TEN COMMANDMENTS

1. Let him cease to bear malice to any living being, let him always love all.
2. Let him always speak the truth, never an untruth.
3. Let him never commit theft, and let him be honest in his dealings.

PAGE 215

4. Let him practice self-control, never be lustful.

5. Let him be humble, never vain. "These five together comprise the first stage of Upaasanaa and are called **Yamas**." YOGA SHASTRA SADHANPAD, 30.
   Next come the **Niyamas** which are also five:-
6. " Let a man be clean internally by renouncing all passions and vicious desires, externally by the free use of water, etc.
7. Let him work hard righteously but neither rejoice in the resulting profit nor be sorrowful in case of loss. Let him renounce sloth and be always cheerful and active.
8. Let him keep his mind unruffled no matter whether he is happy or miserable, and do righteous deeds.
9. Let him always study the books of true knowledge, and teach them as well, and associate with good and pious men, and let him contemplate and mentally recite Aum which is the highest name of the Supreme Spirit.
10. Let him resign his soul to the Will of God." YOGA SHASTRA SADHANPAD, 32. These five together constitute the second stage of **Upaasanaa Yoga**.

The remaining six stages can be studied from Yoga shastra or our book called "An introduction to the Exposition of the Four Vedas."

When a man desires to engage in **Upaasanaa** (communion), let him resort to a solitary, clean p;ace and get comfortably seated, practise **Praanaayaama** (control of breath) reatrain the senses from the pursuit of outward objects, fix his mind on one of the following places:- the navel, the heart, the throat, eyes, the top of the head or the spine. Let him, then, discriminate between his own soul and the Supreme Spirit, get absorbed in contemplation of the latter and commune with Him. When a man follows these practices his mind as well as the soul becomes pure and imbued with righteousness. His knowledge and wisdom advance day by day till he obtains salvation. He who contemplated the Deity in this way for even one hour out of the twenty-four hours always continues to advance spiritually.

PAGE 216

15. THE PRACTICE OF COMMUNION

Upaasanaa is positive when God is contemplated as possessed of such attributes as Omniscience, and it is said to be negative when the human soul being deeply absorbed in the Supreme Spirit - who even pervades such a subtle thing as the human soul - contemplates on Him as free from such qualities as malice, colour, taste, smell and touch. Its result is that the soul, by coming close to God, is rid of all its impurities, sorrows and griefs, its nature, attributes and character become pure like those of God Himself, just as a man shivering from cold ceases to suffer from it by coming close to fire.

Therefore it behoves all to worship God - praise Him, pray to Him and commune with Him. Leaving out the other results that accrue from Divine Worship the gain in spiritual strength is such that even the approach of pain or sorrow of the greatest magnitude cannot disturb the mental tranquility of the devotee. He is able to bear it most patiently. Is this a trifling thing? Besides, he who does not worship God is ungrateful as well as most foolish, because it is nothing but extreme ingratitude and foolishness to forget the kindness of that Supreme Spirit who has freely given away all things of this world to his creature to cease to believe in His very existence.

16. How can God do the work which can only be done through sense organs when He is devoid of them?

A.-"God has no hands but grasps and moulds all things by virtue of His Omnipotence. He has no feet but transcends all in speed by virtue of His Omnipotence. He has no eyes but sees all perfectly, no ears but hears all, no internal organ of thought but knows all. No onecan know His limits, has been eternally existing. He is the Supreme Spirit that pervades all." SHWETA SHWETAR UPANISHAD, 3, 19.
In other words, though devoid of senses and mind, He does all His work by virtue of His Omnipotence.

PAGE 217

17. Many persons say that He is 'void of all activity and attribute.' Is this true?

A.- "The Great Eternal Spirit undergoes no modifications, requires no instruments to work with, has no equal nor any superior. He is the Supremely Powerful Being, endowed with innate Omniscience, Omnipresence and Infinite activity." SHWETA SHWETAR UPANISHAD 6, 8.
Had God been destitute of activity, He could never create the world, sustain it and reduce it to its elementary form. He, therefore, being Omnipresent and Omniscient, also possesses activity.

18. When He acts, is His action finite or infinite?

A.- In whatsoever space and time He wants to act, in the same He does, neither in less nor in more; because He is All-wise.

19. Does God know His own limits or not?

A.- The Supreme Spirit is All-knowledge. For what is knowledge but the cognizance of things just as they are. God is Infinite, therefore His knowledge of Himself as Infinite is true knowledge - the reverse is ignorance. To conceive a thing as infinite when it is really finite or vice versa is called ignorance. The conception of the nature, attributes and character of things as they are is called

true knowledge. Therefore the Yoga Shastra defines God thus:-
The All-pervading spirit, who is free from all pain and grief (such as ignorance), and from desire for all those deeds which are productive of results that are good or bad, pleasant or unpleasant, or of a mixed character and who is distinct from and superior to all souls, is called God.

20. Can the existence of God be proven by Direct Cognizance

Q - *"The existence of God cannot be proved owing to want of evidence of direct cognizance, and "in the absence of evidence of direct cognizance, there can be no inferential and other evidences"; SANKHYA SHASTRA, 1,112; besides "from the absence of the relation of Vyaapti (the relation of the*

PAGE 218

pervader to the pervaded) there can be no inference." SANKYA SHASTRA 5,10,11. Both these kinds of evidence - Direct Cognizance and Inference - being unavailable, other kinds of evidence, such as Testimony of a truthful witness are out of question. Therefore the existence of God cannot be proved.

A.- No, what the above aphorisms really mean is that the evidence of direct cognizance is wanting not in order to prove the existence of God but to prove Him as the Material cause of the universe, for in the same chapter occur the following aphorisms :-
"If the All-pervading Spirit be the Material Cause of the universe, He would be transformed into various material objects just as the primordial matter by the combination of invisible and minute atoms becomes metamorphosed into various visible and tangible objects. He is, therefore, not the material cause of the universe but the efficient cause." SANKHYA SHASTRA, 5,8.

"If the Conscious Being - God - be the material cause of the universe, He being possessed of infinite power, the world also should possess infinite power. But such is not the case. Therefore, God is not the material but the efficient cause of the world." SANKHYA SHASTRA 5, 9.

"The Upnishad also describes the primordial matter alone as the material cause of the world" SANKYA SHASTRA 5, 12 as in the following verse:-
"the primordial matter is transformed into the diverse objects of this world." SHWETA SHWETAR UPANISHAD 4, 5. Matter being subject to change is transformable, whereas God - the All-pervading spirit - being unchangeable is not metamorphosed into any other form or shape. He is unchangeable and always resides in the interior of the heart. Therefore, whosoever calls the sage Kapil - the author of the above aphorism - an atheist, is himself an atheist. Similarly,

PAGE 219

the authors of the other Shastras, for instance, Mimaansaa from the mention of the words Dharm and Dharmi, Vaisheshika from that ot the word Ishwar (God) and Niyaaya from that of Atmaa - All-pervading Spirit, are not athiests. He, who is Omnipresent, Omniscient and even pervades the human soul, is believed in by all of them - Mimaansaa, Vaisheshika, etc. - to be God.

21. Does God incarnate or not?

A.- No; because it is said in the Yajur Veda. "He is unborn." Again "He overspreads all." He is pure, is never born and never takes on a human form." It is clear from these quotations that God is never born.

Q. *But Krishna says in the Gita, "Whenever there is decay of virtue, I take on a human form." GITA 4: 7. What is your answer to this?*

Being opposed to the Veda, it cannot be held to be an authority. Though it is possible that Krishna, being very virtuous and being extremely anxious to further the cause of righteousness, might have wished that he would like to be born again and again at different times to protect the good and punish the wicked. if such was the case, there is no harm in it; because 'whatever the good and the great possess - their wealth, their bodies, aye eve their hearts - is at the service of humanity? In spite of all this Krishna could never be God.

22. Why do people then believe in the twenty-four incarnations of God?

Q.*If this be the case, why do people then believe in the twenty-four incarnations of God?*

A.- From want of knowledge of the Vedas, from being led astray by the sectarians and being themselves uneducated, people are involved in ignorance and, therefore, no wonder, believe in and say such false things.

Q. *How could such wicked men as Raavana and Kansa be destroyed if God did not incarnate?*

A- Firstly, whosoever is born, is sure to die. Secondly, what are Kansa and Raavana, when compared with the Almighty God,

PAGE 220

who without being incarnated has created this world, is sustaining it and can resolve it into its component elements? He being Omnipresent also pervaded the bodies of Kansa and Raavana and could at His will cut their vitals and instantaneously kill them. What shall we then call such a man but a fool who says that the Supreme Spirit possessed of Infinite Power, attributes and activity takes

on a human form and becomes subject to births and deaths in order to kill an insignificant creature.

Were anyone to say that God incarnates for the salvation of his devotees, then too it could not be true, for, if the devotees conduct themselves according to the Will of God, He is powerful enough to save them. What! Is the destruction of a Kansa or a Raavana or the lifting of a mountain, such as Govardhan, even more difficult that the creation, sustenance and dissolution of the sun, the moon and the earth and other planets? Whosoever ponders over the great things that God has done in this universe, cannot but come to the conclusion that "There is no one like Him, nor shall ever be."

Nor can the incarnation of God be demonstrated by reason, just as as the saying of a man, that space entered a womb or was put in a closed hand, can never be true, for space being Infinite and Omnipresent can neither go in, nor come out; similarly, God, being Infinite and All-pervading, it can never be predicated of him that He can go in or come out. Coming and going can be possible only if it be believed that there are places where He is not. Then was not God already present in the womb and was not He already present outside that He is said to have gone into and come out of it? Who but men devoid of intelligence, can believe in and say such things about God? Therefore, it should be understood that Christ and other were also not incarnations of the Deity, fear and grief, births and deaths, they were all men.

23. Does God forgive the sins of His devotees or not?

A.- No; for, He were to forgive their sins, His Law of Justice would be destroyed, and all men would become most sinful. Knowing that their sins will be forgiven, they will become fearless and will be greatly encourage to commit sins. For example, if the ruler of a country were to pardon the criminals, they would be encouraged to commit crimes greater still. For knowing well that the king

PAGE 221

will not punish them, they will be confident in their minds that they will get the king's pardon by folding their palms and doing other acts of humility. Even those who are not criminals, being no longer deterred by any fear of punishment, will begin to commit crimes. Therefore, it is but meet that God should give souls the just fruits of their deeds and not to forgive their sins.

24. Is the human soul a free-agent or otherwise?

A.- It is a free-agent in the matter of performing deeds, but it is subjected to the laws of God in the matter of reaping the fruits thereof; He alone is said to be a doer who is free to act.

25. What is free-agent?

A.- He is called a free-agent who has the body, the vital forces, the senses and the mind subordinate to his will. If the soul were not a free-agent it would not reap the fruits of its deeds - good or bad. Jus as soldiers acting under the direction of their commanding officer are not held guilty of murder even on killing many on the field of battle; similarly, if God were to influence the course of human conduct or if human actions were subordinate to His Will, it would not then be the human souls that would have to bear the consequences of those actions but God Himself.

Being the prompter He alone would suffer pain or enjoy happiness. Just as that man alone who murders another with some kind of weapon is arrested and punished for the crime and not the weapon; likewise, the souls subordinate to the Will of God could not justly be made to reap the fruits of their deeds - sinful or virtuous. It follows, therefore, that the soul is free to act according to its capacity, but once it has committed a sinful act, it becomes subjected to the operation of the laws of God, and thereby reaps the consequence of its sin. In other words, the soul is a free-agent in so far as the performance of deeds is concerned but it has to submit to Divine laws in the matter of suffering pain and misery for its sins.

26. Had not God created the soul and endowed it with energy, it could never have been able to do anything; hence whatever a human soul does is done solely through Divine impulse

A.- The soul was never created. It is beginningless like God and the material cause of the universe - primordial matter. The body and bodily organs were made by God, but they are all under the control of the soul. Now whoever performs an act - good

PAGE 222

or evil - reaps the fruit thereof and not God - the Maker of his body and bodily organs. This we can illustrate thus :- A man dug iron-ore out of a mountain, a merchant bought it of him; a blacksmith bought it from the latter's shop, and made a sword out of it and sold it to a soldier who killed a man with it. It is not the miner, nor the iron merchant, nor the blacksmith, nor the sword that are held responsible by the king for the crime of murder and punished. It is the soldier alone, who killed another with the sword, that is apprehended. In the same way, it is not God - the Maker of the body and bodily organs - Who reaps the fruits of the deeds done by the soul. On the other hand, He it is Who makes the soul bear the consequences of its acts. Had God been the actual doer, no soul would ever have committed a sin, because being Pure and Righteous, He could never prompted any soul to commit a sin. It, therefore, follows that the soul is a free-agent in doing deeds and the same may be predicated of God.

27. What are God and the soul in essence, and what are their natures, attributes and actions?

A.- In essence they are both conscious entities. By nature both are pure, immortal and virtuous, etc., but the creation of the universe, its sustenance and dissolution into elementary form and its control, the awarding of the fruits of their deeds - good and evil - to souls are the righteous actions of God; whilst the reproduction and rearing of children, the distribution of knowledge and arts, etc., are acts of the soul which may be virtuous or sinful. Eternal knowledge, Eternal bliss and Omnipotence, etc., are the attributes of God whilst those of souls are :-

Desire for the acquisition of things; repulsion, activity, feelings of pleasure, feelings of pain, sorrow, displeasure; consciousness, inspiration and expiration, nictation - closing and opening of the eyes, organic growth, discernment, memory and individuality, movement, regulation of the senses, internal changes and disorders, such as hunger and thirst, joy or sorrow, etc., are the attributes of the soul which distinguish it from God. The existence of the soul is known only by these attributes. as it is not material nor perceptible by the senses. These attributes manifest themselves only so long as the soul is present in the body, but cease to do so as soon

PAGE 223

as the soul leaves it. Those qualities that manifest themselves in the presence of a substance and cease to do so in its absence belong to that substances alone; as for example, light is the property of the sun and of the lamp, because it is absent in their absence and present in their presence. Similarly, God and the soul are known by their attributes.

Q.

28. God being cognizant of the three periods of time (the past, present and the future), knows all things about the future, and as God knows so has the soul to act, consequently the soul ceases to be a free-agent. God, therefore, cannot be justified in punishing it for its misdeeds, because it acts in accordance with what God before knew.

A.- It is foolishness to speak of God as being cognizant of the three periods of time, because what ceases to exist is called the Past, and what does not exist but will come into existence is called the Future. Now is there any kind of knowledge that ceases to exist with God or that He does not possess in the present but will possess in the future? Hence God's knowledge is always uniform and uninterrupted. He always lives in the Present. The past and the future relate to the human soul only. It is true, though, that the knowledge of three periods of time can be said to exist in God when it is spoken of in relation to the actions of the soul, but not absolutely.

As the soul acts by virtue of its free will, so does God know, what it does, by virtue of His Omniscience, and as God knows, so the soul acts. In other words, God possess the knowledge of the past, the present, and the future and gives soul their deserts; whilst the soul is a free-agent in whatever it does and in possessing a limited knowledge of the present. Just as God's knowledge of actions of human souls is beginningless, so is His knowledge of awarding just punishment. Both kinds of knowledge in Him are true. Can it ever be possible that the knowledge of actions, be true while that of doing justice be false? Hence your objection does not hold good.

29. Are the souls in different bodies distinct or is there only one soul pervading them all?

A.- Distinct. Had there been only one soul pervading them all, wakeful state, slumber, deep sleep, birth and death, union and

PAGE 224

disunion (with the body and the senses) could never take place; the nature of the soul, therefore, is finite, and so is its knowledge; it is also subtle, whilst God is still more subtle, Infinite, Omnipresent, Omniscient by nature. Hence God and the human soul stand in the relation of the pervader to the pervaded.

Q.*One thing cannot contain another at the same time; therefore, God and the soul can only be in the relation of close union but not in that of the pervader to the pervaded.*

A.- This law holds good in the case of things of the same condition but not in that of different conditions; just as iron is gross while electricity is subtle, the latter pervades the former and resides in the same space with itl Similarly, the human soul less subtle than God, whist the latter more subtle than the former, therefore it is that God pervades the human soul while the latter is pervaded by the former.

Just as God and the soul stand to each other in the relation of the pervader and the pervaded, so do they do in the relations of one who is served and the servitor, the supporter and the supported, the Master and the servant, the Ruler and the ruled, the Father and the son.

30. If God and the human soul be different, how will you interpret the following mighty texts of the Vedas? - "I am God," Thou art God" and " The soul is God."

A.- These are not Vedic texts at all, but quotations from the Brahmanas. They nowhere called 'mighty texts' in the true shastras. Their true meanings are as follow:- We take the first quotation which does not mean " I am God" but " I live in God."

PAGE 225

Here is used what is called substitution of the thing that contains or supports ofr the thing which is contained therein or supported thereby'; just as we say "watch-platforms are shouting." Now the platforms, being inanimate, do not possess the power of shouting; hence it means that the men on those platforms shout. Thus the platforms, that support the watchmen, are substituted for the men wo are supported by. Similarly it should be understood in the above text that God the support is substituted for the soul which is supported thereby or contained therein.

If you say that all things exist in God what is then the special object of saying that the soul exists in God? We answer that though it is true that all things exist in God, nothing is so close to God as the human soul. Being possessed of similar attributes, it is only the human soul that can know God, and during the time of salvation lives in the very presence of God, having direct cognizance of Him all the time. Hence the relation of God to the soul is that of a container or supporter to the thing contained therein or supported thereby and that of one companion to another.

It is clear, therefore, that God and the soul are not one. Just as a person says in reference to another 'He and I are one', i.e., in complete harmony with each other, in the same way, the human soul, being irresistable drawn towards God by its extreme love for Him and thereby completely immersed in Him during Samaadhi can say "God and I are one", that is, in harmony with each other as well as occuying the same space. That soul alone can declare its unity or harmony with God by virtue of similarities of attributes that becomes like God in its nature, attributes and character.

Q.*Well, what meaning will you give to the second text "(tat) God (twam) Thour (asi) art i.e., O soul! Thou art God."*

A.- What do you understand by the word (tat)?

Q.*Brahma (God).*

A.- How do you know that the word (tat) refer to Brahma?

PAGE 226

Q.*Because there is mention of the word Brahma in the sentence preceding the above quotation. (Tadeva.....advitiyam)*

A.- It seems that you have never read the Chhaandogya Upanishad (the book from which the quotation was taken). Had you read you would not have made the

wrong statement that the word Brahma occurs in the said text. The true text runs as (Tadeva....advitiyam). There is no such word as Brahma there.

Q.*What do you understand by the word tat then?*

A.- That Supreme Spirit should be sought after. He is infinitely subject. He is the Soul of the whole material universe as well as of the human soul: The Self-same Spirit is the Great Reality. He Himself is His Own soul. O my dear son Swetketo! (Tat) "that Omniscient, Supreme Spirit is within thee." For instance the great sage Yajnavalkya say to his wife in the Brahadaranyak Umnishad " O Maitreyi, The Great God reside within the soul and is yet distinct form it. The ignorant soul does not know that the Supreme Spirit pervades it. The soul is a body unto Him. In other words, just as the soul resides in the body, so does God reside within the soul, and yet He is distinct from it. He witnesses the deeds - good and evil - of the soul and gives it its deserts and thereby keeps it under control. Do Thou know O Maitreyi, that the ver same Immortal, Omniscient Being resides within they soul."
Can anyone give a different meaning to texts like these?

PAGE 227

Now about the third so-called 'mighty text' "This (soul is God (Brahma)." Its true sense is that when during the state of trance (samadhi) a yogi gets direct cognition of God, i.e., sees God, he says: "This (the very God who resides within me) is Brahma, i.e., pervades the whole universe." It is clear, therefore, that the Vedantists of to-day, who declare that the human soul and God are one and the same, do not understand the Vedant Shastra.

Q.*In the Chhaandogya Upnishad God says "Having created the universe and different bodies, I enter the body as a soul and manifest myself under different names and forms." CHHAANDOGYA 6: 3,2. Again, says the Taitreya Upnishad "Having created the universe and different bodies God Himself entered them." How can you give different meanings to these texts?*

A.- Had you understood the construction and meanings of words and sentences you would not have so perverted the sense of the original in translation. You must understand that there are two entities, one is the pervader and other post-pervader. Now God is like the post-pervader who enters after the soul has already entered the body and reveals the science of names and forms through the Veda. He caused the soul to enter the body and He Himself entered the soul thereafter. Had you understood the meaning of the word anu (post or after), you would not have mistranslated it.

Q.*Suppose a man were to say that the same Deva Datta who was seen at Kahi in the hot season, is her now-a-days at Mathura in the wet season. Now if you disregard the differences of time and locality (as hot and wet season, Kashi and*

Mathura) and take only the individual into consideration, the fact of the existence of the man Deva Datta only is established. Similarly on the 'principle of partial rejection and partial acceptance' if the unknown time,

PAGE 228

locality and illusion - opaadhi i.e., the obstruction medium - the case of I'shwara (Godin the active state), and of the known time and locality, ignorance, and finiteness in the case of the human soul be disregarded, and only the property of consciousness common to both be taken into account, the existence of Brahma (God) in both is established. On the same principle by the rejection of Omniscience and similar other attributes of God, and of the finiteness of knowledge in the case of the soul, and the acceptance of consciousness alone which is common to both, the unity of God and the soul is established. What answer can you give to this objection?

A.- Would you first please tell us whether you hold I'shwara and the soul to be eternal or non-eternal?

Q. *Both being the product of Opaadhi, we regard them as non-eternal.*

A.- Do you hold Opaadhi to be eternal or non-eternal?

Q. *Our belief on this subject is summed in the following verses:-*
"We Vedantis hold the the following six entities as beginningless:-
(1) Soul, (2). I'shwara - God in the active state, (3) Brahma - God in passive condition, (4) the distinctive difference between Ishwara and soul, (5) Ignorance, (6) the union of ignorance with a conscious entity. Of these six, Brahma alone is beginningless but terminable like that kind of Non-existence which though, existing in the present shall cease to exist in the future. These five continue to exist as long as ignorance lasts; and because their beginning is not known, they are called beginningless, but as they cease to exist when the soul attains true knowledge they are called terminable or non-eternal."

A.- Both these verses are wrong. As there can be no soul with the conjunction of ignorance with I'shwara, and no

PAGE 229

I'shwara, without the conjunction of maayaa - illusion or ignorance with Brahma, the sixth entity of your verse -i.e. the conjunction of ignorance with a conscious entity as a separate entity becomes superfluous; because the ignorance or illusion is absorbed into the soul and I'shwara, and forms part and parcel of them. For the same reason it is useless to count I'shwara and the soul as beginningless entities distinct from Brahma. Hence according to your view only two entities - Brahma and ignorance - are demonstrable and not six. Besides your idea of

I'shwara and the soul as two entities born of upaadhi or ignorance can only be true if you could demonstrate the existence of ignorance or illusion in Brahma Who is Infinite, Eternal, Holy, All-knowledge, Immortal and Omnipresent.

Were you to believe that the ignorance (depending upon and relating to self) in Brahma is restricted to one place at a time and exists from eternity, the whole Brahma cannot entirely be pure. Besides when you admit the presence of ignorance in one place, it being movable will keep shifting from place to place; hence which ever part of Brahma it goes to, that will become ignorant and whichever part it leaves, will become enlightened. This being the case, you could call no part of Brahma as eternally pure and enlightened.

Moreover ignorance on account of its presence and consequent pleasure and pain, etc., in one part of Brahma, will affect the whole, like a wound which though confined to one part of the body causes pain to be felt throughout the system. Again, that part of Brahma which is in the pale of ignorance will know itself free from it. Hence, Brahma will be divided into parts, one inside, the outside the pale of ignorance. If you reply 'Let Him be divided, it would be of no consequence to Him.' He would then no longer remain indivisible. He could not be ignorant. Besides ignorance or incorrect knowledge being only an attribute must necessarily reside in some substance in permanent relation to it. Hence it could not temporarily reside in Brahma.

If you believe that Brahma becomes the soul through the intervention of an obstructing medium (opaadhi) called Antahkaran (internal organ of thought), we ask whether Brahma is All-pervading or circumscribed. If you answer that He is All-pervading but the obstruction medium is circumscribed, i.e., limited as regards

PAGE 230

space, and is separate in each man, does that medium then move about or not?

Q.*It moves about.*

A.- Does Brahma as well move with it or does it remain stationary?

Q.*He remains stationary.*

A,- Then whichever part the obstructing medium - the antahkaran - leaves, that must become free from ignorance, whilst whichever part it goes to, that part of the pure enlightened Brahma must necessarily become ignorant. In other words, Brahma would in one moment become ignorant and in the next enlightened. Hence salvation and bondage will also become of momentary duration, and just as one cannot remember what another has seen or heard, similarly what Brahma has seen or heard yesterday he could no possibly remember today; because the

time and place of his observation are totally different from those of his remembrance.

But Brahma is the same in all you say. We ask, therefore, why Brahman is not All-knowing? If you say that the obstruction media - antahkaranas - are different or distinct from each other in different people, the resulting knowledge will, therefore, also be different. Our answer is that the medium being material, it cannot be the seat of consciousness. And if you say that it is neither Brahma nor the antahkaran, (the obstructing medium) - internal organ of thought - but the 'image of Brahma' -chidaabhaas - that is, the seat of knowledge, then too it is conscious entity that possesses knowledge. Why it is then finite in knowledge and power?

It is clear, therefore, that you cannot establish I'shwara and the soul as products of the influence of the 'obstructive mediums, ignorance or illusion', on Brahma. I'shwara is really another name for Brahma - the All-pervading God, while the other conscious, eternal, uncreated and immortal entity is called the soul.

If you say that the soul is nothing but the image of Brahma (chidaabhaas), we answer that the image being of momentary duration will soon perish. Who will then enjoy the bliss of salvation? Hence God and the soul were never one, nor are they at present, nor shall they ever be.

PAGE 231

Q. *How can you then establish the doctrine of non-duality which is clearly inculcated in the Upanishads as shown by the following quotation form the Chhaandogya? "O my dear son, in ghe beginning there was but One (God) and no other." According to our belief the existence of every thing else - whether of the same kind as, Brahma or of a different kind from, or as differentiated parts of, the same Brahma - besides Brahma, being negative the existence of Brahma alone is established. How could the doctrine of non-duality hold good when you believe that Brahma (God) is distinct from the soul?*

A.- Why have you fallen into this error? Fear not and try to understand the relation of an adjective to a substantive. Now what is the function of an adjective?

Q.*Its function is to differentiate.*

A.- Then why not also admit that it serves to elucidate and explain the character of the substantive. You should, therefore, understand that in the verse quoted above the word advait (i.e., and no other) is an adjective, qualifying the noun Brahma; its differentiating function is that it differentiates Brahma from innumerable souls and atoms, whilst its explanatory function is that it serves to elucidate that there is one God and one only. As when you say, "In this town Deva Datta is the one rich man. There is no other", or In this regiment Vikram

Singh is the one brave man and there is no other", you mean that in this town there is none so rich as Deva Datta and there is none in the regiment so brave as Vikram Singh, but it does not negative the existence of other men less rich and less brave than Deva Datta and Vikram Singh respectively. nor of animate (as plants and animals) and inanimate (as land and water, etc.,) things in the town and the regiment. Similarly, in the text, 'In the beginning there was one God and no other', it is implied that there was nothing besides God equal to Him, but it does no exclude the existenc of other things such as souls and the primordial elementary matter which are inferior to God. It is clear, then, that it means that there is but one God whilst the souls, and the material atoms are more than one, and the adjective advatiya (no other) serve to differentiate other existence from God as well as to elucidate the oneness of God. Therefore, it does not mean that the

PAGE 232

soul and matter - in atomic or the present visible condition - do not exist. On the other hand, they all exist but they are not equal to God. The explanation neither disproves the doctrine of non-duality nor that duality. So not be perplexed, think over it and try to understand it.

31. God and the soul possess the attributes of Existence, Consciousness and Blissfulness common to each other and are therefore, one. Why do you then refute this belief?

A.-The fact of two things possessing a few attributes common to each other does not make them one. Take for instance, solids and liquids and fire, all these are inanimate and visible but that does not make them one. The dissimilar attributes differentiate them. The hardness and prevent them from being considered as one.

Or take another illustration. Both a man and an ant see with their eyes, eat with their mouths and walk with their feet, yet they are not one and the same, having their bodily forms different from each other, a man having two feet whilst an ant many, and so on. Similarly, God's attributes of Omniscience, Omnipresence, Omnipotence, Infinite Bliss and Infinite activity, being different from those of the soul's and the attributes of the soul, such as finite knowledge, finite power, finite nature, liability to error and circumscription, being different from God's, God and the soul can never be one. Even in essence, they are different, God being most subtle, and the soul less subtle than God.

Q.*"He who makes even the slightest distinction between God and soul is subject to fear, as fear is possible only from a second person (i.e., not form one's own self)." VRIHADAARANYAKA UPANISHAD.*
Does not this inculcate the unity of the soul with Brahma?

A.- Your translation of this verse is wrong. The correct meaning is, that the soul that denies the existence of the Supreme Being or believes Him to limited to some particular time or place, or conducts itself against the will, nature, character and attributes of God or bears malice to another, becomes subject to fear. Because

PAGE 233

that person alone is afraid of God or of man who believes that God has nothing to do with him or says to another man, "What do I care for you? What can you do against me?" or do other harm or give them pain. Those who are in harmony with each other in all things are called one, as the following expression is very often used. "Deva Datta, Yajna Datta and Vishnu Datta are all one", meaning thereby that they are all of one mind. Harmony is the cause of happiness, whilst want of harmony begets misery and pain.

32. Do God and the soul always remain distinct from each other or do they ever become one?

A.-We have already partly answer this question but we will add her that on account of similarity in attributes and close relationship they are one, just as material solid substance is one with space, in being lifeless and inseparably associated with it: whilst they are distinct from each other on account of dissimilarity of such attributes, as omnipresence, subtlety, formless and endlessness, etc., of space and limitation visibility and such other attributes of a solid object; in other words, a solid object can never be separate from space, as it must have space to exist in, whilst on account of dissimilitude in nature they are always distinct from each other.

In the same way, the soul and the material objects can never be separate from God as He pervades them, nor, all, can they be one with Him as they are in nature different from Him as they are in nature different from Him. Before a house is built, the earth, water, iron and other building materials are found to exist in space; after a house is built they will exist in space, and continue to do so even after it is demolished and the material composing it scattered broad-cast; in short, the building material can never be separate from space, nor, can it being different in nature, ever be one with it.

Similarly, both the soul and the material cause of this universe, being pervaded by God, never were, nor are, nor shall ever be separate from Him, and being in their natures distinct from Him can ever be one with Him. The Vedantists of today are like one-eyed men who see only one side of the street they pass through and are bent on giving such a great importance to the close connection or relationship between God and the soul that they completely ignore the dissimilitude between the two. There is not a single substance in this world that is devoid of

PAGE 234

Positiveness - the property of possessing some qualities - and negativeness - the property of being devoid of some qualities - of close relationship and its reverse, similitude and dissimilitude , etc.

33. Is God positive - possessed of attributes (Saguna) entity or a negative - destitute of attributes of (nirgun) one?

A.- He is both.

Q. *How can two swords be put in one scabbard? How can on thing be both positive and positive?*

A.- A thing that is possessed of certain qualities is called Positive (Saguna), whilst, one devoid of certain qualities is called negative (Nirguna). Hence all things are both positive and negative, being possessed of certain qualities and destitute of others, as the material objects being possessed of visibility and other properties are positive, whilst being devoid of intelligence and other attributes of conscious beings, they are negative. In the same way, conscious beings (as souls) are positive, as they possess intelligence, whilst they are negative, as they are devoid of visibility and other properties of the material objects.

All things, therefore, are positive (Saguna) and negative (Nirguna) by virtue of being possessed of certain natural qualities, and devoid of those that are antithetic to them. There is not a single substance that is only positive or only negative. Both positiveness and negativeness always reside in the same object. In the same way, God is positive being possessed of certain natural attributes, such as Omniscience, Omnipresence, etc. He is also negative being free from the attributes of visibility and other properties of material objects, and from feelings of pleasure and pain, and other attributes of the soul.

Q. *People speak of a thing as Nirguna (Negative) when it is formless and as Saguna (Positive) when it is possessed of a form. In other words, God is called Saguna (Positive) when He incarnates, and Nirguna (Negative) when He is not embodied. Is this view of the terms positive and negative right?*

A.- No, it is a false conception entertained by ignorant minds that are destitute of true knowledge. The ignorant always make senseless noise like the lowing of cattle. Their utterances should be looked upon as valueless as the ravings of a man in delirium from high fever.

PAGE 235

Q.*Is God Ragi - one possessed of feelings and passions, etc.- or Vairakta - one who has renounced all things?*

A.- He is neither the one nor the other. For, you desire for the possession of a thing that exists without you or is better than you; but as there is nothing that is outside or separate from God or better than He, He could not possibly be Ragi. As a Vairakta is one who renounces what he has, God being All-pervading can not renounce anything; therefore He is not Vairakta either.

34. Does God possess desire (Ichchhaa)?

A.- No, not that kind of desire which is another name for a passion excited by the love of an object from which pleasure is expected, because, you only desire to obtain a thing which you do not already possess, which is of a superior quality and is productive of pleasure. Now there is nothing that God does not possess or is superior to Him, and being All-Bliss He can also have no desire for further happiness. Therefore, there is no possibility of the presence of desire in God. But thereis no God what is called I'kshan, that is true knowledge and creative power.

We have treated this subject very briefly but it is hoped that it will suffice for the wise. Now we proceed to the treatment of the subject of the Veda.

The Atharva Veda says, "Who is that Great Being who revealed the Rig Veda, the Yajur Veda, The Sama Veda and the Atharva Veda? He is the Supreme Spirit Who created the universe and sustains it." ATHARVA VEDA 10:23,4,10.

Again., says the Yajur Veda "The Great Ruler of the Universe, Who is Self-existent, All-pervading, Holy, eternal and Formless, has been eternally instructing His subjects - immortal souls - in all kinds of knowledge for their good through the Veda." YAJUR VEDA 5O; 8.

35. Do you believe God to be Formless or embodied?

A.- Formless

PAGE 236

Q.*Being formless how could He reveal the Veda without the use of the organs of speech, as in the pronunciation of words the use of such organs as the palate and of a certain amount of effort with the tongue are indispensable.*

A.- Being Omnipresent, and Omnipresent, He does not stand in need of the organs of speech in order to reveal the Veda to the human souls; because the organs of speech , such as the mouth, the tongue, etc., are needed in pronouncing words only when you want to speak to another person, and not when you are speaking to yourself. It is our daily experience that various kinds of mental processes and the formation of words are continually going on in our mind without the use of the organs of speech.

Even on shutting your ears with the fingers you can notice that many different varieties of sound are audible that are not produced by the use of the organs of speech. In the same way, God instructed human souls by virtue of His Omniscience and Omnipresence without the use of the organs of speech. After the Incorporeal God has revealed the perfect knowledge of the Veda in the heart of a human being by virtue of His presence within it, he teaches it to others through speech. Hence, this objection does not hold good in the case of God.

36. Whose hearts did God reveal the Vedas in?

A.-"In the beginning, God revealed the four Vedas, Rig, Vayu, Sama, and Atharva, to Agni, Vayu, A'ditya and Angira, respectively." SHAPATHA BRAHMAN 11: 4,2.3.

Q.*But it is written in the Shwetashwetar Upanishad, " In the beginning God created Brahma and revealed the Vedas in his heart."SHEWTAR UPANISHAD 6:18. Why do you say that they were revealed to Agni, and other sages?*

A.- Brahma was instructed in the knowledge of the Veda through the medium of the four sages , such as Agni. Mark what Manu

PAGE 237

Says: "In the beginning after human being had been created, the Supreme Spirit made the Vedas known to Brahma through Agni, etc., i.e., Brahma learnt the four Vedas from Agni, Vayu, A'ditya and Angira." MANU: 23

Q. *Why should He have revealed the Vedas to those four men alone and not to others as well? That imputes favouritism to God.*

A.- Among all men those four alone were purest in heart, therefore, God revealed the true knowledge to them only.

37. Why did He reveal the Veda in Sanskrit instead of a language of some particular country?

A.~ Had He revealed the Veda in the language of some particular country, He would have been partial to that country, because it would have been easier for the people of that country to learn and teach the Veda than for the foreigners, therefore, it is that He did it in Sanskrit that belongs to no country, and is the mother of all other languages. Just as He has ordained the material creation such as the earth, etc., which is also the source of all the useful arts, for the equal good of all, so should the language of the Divine revelation be accessible to all countries and nations with the same amount of labour. Hence the revelation of the Veda in Sanskrit does not make God

partial to any nation.

37a. Evidence that proves the the Vedas to be Divine revelation.

Q. ***What evidence have you to prove that the Veda in Sanskrit is of Divine origin and not the work of man?***

The book in which God is described as He is, viz., Holy, Omniscient, Pure in nature, character and attributes, Just, Merciful, etc., and in which nothing is said that is opposed to the laws of nature reason, the evidence of direct cognizance, etc., the teachings of the highly learned altruistic teachers of humanity (A'ptas), and the intuition of pure souls, and in which the laws, nature, and properties of matter and the soul are propounded as they are to be inferred from the order of nature as fixed by God, is the book of Divine revelation. Now the Vedas alone fulfil all the above conditions, hence they are the revealed books and not books, like the Bible and the Q'uran which we shall discuss fully in the thirteenth and fourteenth chapters (of this book) respectively.

PAGE 238

Q.*There is no necessity for the Veda to be revealed by God. Men can by themselves by degrees augment their knowledge and thereafter make books as well.*

A.- No, they cannot do that, because there can be no effect without a cause. Look at savages such as the Bhils. Do they ever become enlightened by themselves without being instructed by others? The same is true of men in civilized communities, they need to be taught before they become educated. Similarly, had not God instructed the primitive sages in the knowledge of the Veda and had not they in their turn taught other men, all men would have remained ignorant. If a child were kept in a sequestered place from its very birth with no other company but that of illiterate persons or animals, on attaining maturity he would be no better than one of his company.

Take for example the case of Egypt, Greece, or the Continent of Europe. The people of all these countries were without a trace of learning before the spread of knowledge from India. In the same way before Columbus and other Europeans went to America, the natives had been without any learning for hundreds and thousands of years. Now some of them have become enlightened after receiving education from the Europeans. Similarly, in the beginning of the world men received knowledge from God and since then there have been various learned men in different periods, Says Patanjali in his Yoga Shastra.

"As in the present time we become enlightened only after being taught by our teachers, so were in the beginning of the world, Agni and the other three

Rishis (sages), taught by the greatest of all teachers - God." YOGA SHASTRA SAMADHI, 26. His knowledge is eternal. He is quite unlike the human soul that becomes devoid of consciousness in profound sleep and during the period of dissolution. It is certain, therefore, that no effect can be produced without a cause.

38. The Vedas were revealed in the Sanskrit language. Those Rishis were ignorant of that language. How did they then understand the Vedas?

A.- They were made known to them by God, and whenever great

PAGE 239

Sages, who were yogis, imbued with piety, and with the desire to understand the meanings of certain mantras and whose minds possessed the power of perfect concentration, entered the superior condition, called Samaadhi, in contemplation of Deity. He made known unto them the meanings of the desired mantras. When the Vedas were thus revealed to many Rishis, they made expositions with historical illustrations of the Vedic mantras and embodied them in books called the Brahmanas which literally means an exposition of the Veda.

"The names of the Rishis, who were seers of certain mantras and for the first time published and taught the exposition of those mantras, are written along with those mantras as token remembrance." Nirukta 1-20. Those who look upon those Rishis as the authors of the mantras should be considered absolutely in the wrong. They were simply seers of those mantras.

Q. *Which books are called the Vedas?*

A.- The book called the Rig Veda, the Yajur Veda, the Sama Veda and the Atharva Veda - the Mantras Sanhitas only and no other.

Q. *But the sage Katyayana says. The mantras Sanhitas together with the Brahmanas constitute the Vedas.*

A.- You must have noticed that in the beginning of every Mantra Sanhita and at the end of each of its chapters it has always been the practice from time immemorial to write the word Veda, but it is never done so in the case of Brahmanas. We read in the Nirukt, "This is in the Veda, this is in the Brahmanas;" NIRUKT 5: 3 & 4 - in the same way we read in Panini, " In the Chhanda (Veda) and Brahmanas, etc." ASHTADHYAYI 4: 2, 66. It is clear from these quotations that the Veda is the name of books distinct from the Brahmanas. The Veda is what is called the Mantra Sanhita or a recollection of mantras, whilst the Brahmanas are the expositions of those mantras. Those who want to know more about this subject can consult our book called " An

introduction to the Exposition of the Vedas", wherein it is proved on the authority of various kinds of evidence that the

PAGE 240

above quotation quoted as Katyayan"s could never be his. Because if we believe that, the Veda, could never be eternal, for in the Brahmanas there are to be found biographies of various Rishis and Sages, kings and princes; but since biographies of persons can only be written after their birth, the Brahmanas that contain those biographies must have been written after the birth of those Rishis and kings, etc., and therefore, cannot be eternal. The Veda does not contain the biography of any person, on the other hand in it only those words are used by which knowledge is made known. There is no mention of any proper names fo any particular event or individual in the Veda.

39. How many Shaakhaas (branches) are there of the Veda?

A.- Eleven hundred and twenty-seven.

Q.*What are Shaakhaas (branches)?* A.- The expositions are called shaakhaas.

Q.*We, hear of learned people speaking of the different parts of the Veda as shaakhaas. Are they wrong?*

A.- If you think over it a little, you will understand that they are in the wrong, because all the Shaakhaas are attributed to Rishis such as Ashwalaayani and others, whilst the authorship of the Veda is ascribed to God. It other words, as the author of the four Vedas is believed to be God, so are Rishis held to be the authors of the shaakhaas, such as Ashwalaayani. And besides, all the shaakhaas take Veda texts and expound them, while in the Veda texts only are given. Therefore, the four Vedas - the books of Divine revelation - are like the trunk of a tree, whose branches (shaakhaas) are the books, such as Ashwalaayani, written by Rishis and not revealed by God,

As the parents are kind to their children and wish for their children and wish for their welfare, so has the Supreme Spirit, out of kindness to all men, revealed the Veda by whose study men are freed from ignorance and error, and may attain the light of true knowledge and thereby enjoy extreme happiness as well as advance knowledge and promote their welfare.

PAGE 241

40. Are the Vedas eternal or non-eternal?

A.- They are eternal. God being eternal, His knowledge and attributes must necessarily be eternal, because the nature, attributes and character of an eternal substance are also eternal and vice versa.

Q ~ *Oh, I see. God must have given knowledge to those Rishis who afterwards composed the Vedas. Is that what you mean?*

A.- There can be no ideas without words. No one but an All-knowing Being has the power to make such compositions as are full of all kinds of knowledge and require the perfect knowledge of music and poetry, meters, such chhandhaas and notes, etc. True, after having studied the Vedas, the Rishis, in order to elucidate the various branches of learning, made books on Grammar, Philology, Music and Poetry, etc. Had not God revealed the Vedas, no man would have been able to write anything. The Vedas, therefore, are revealed books. All men should conduct themselves according to their teachings, and when questioned as to his religion let everyone answer that his religion is Vedic, i.e., he believes in whatever is said in the Vedas.

The subjects of God and the Veda have been thus briefly been treated. In the next Chapter we shall discourse on the Creation of the world cosmogony

CHAPTER 8

THE CREATION, SUSTENANCE AND DISSOLUTION OF THE UNIVERSE.

PAGE 242

1. Has this universe proceeded from God or from something else?

A.-God is the efficient cause of this universe, but the material cause is prakriti - the primordial elementary matter.

"He who has created this multiform universe, and is the cause of its sustenance as well as dissolution, the Lord of the universe in whom the whole world exists, is sustained and then resolved into elementary condition, is the Supreme Spirit. Know Him, O man, to be your God and believe in no other as the Creator of the Universe." RIG VEDA 10: 126, 8.

"In the beginning the whole was enveloped in utter darkness. Nothing was discernible. It was like a dark night, Matter was in its very elementary form. It was like ether. The whole universe, completely overspread by darkness, was insignificantly small compared with the Infinite God who thereafter, by His omnipotence, evolved this cosmic world - the, effect - out of the elementary matter - the cause.* RIG VEDA 10: 129, 3

"Love and worship that Supreme Spirit, O men, Who is the support of all the luminous bodies (such as the sun), the one Incomparable Lord of the present as

---

*
It is remarkable that modern science is slowly but surely coming round to what the Vedas teach. The atomic theory is losing ground and the Vedic doctrine gaining ground day by day. Mark what one of the modern most scientists, M. Bernard Brunlhes says:- "Matter which seems to give us the imaage of stability and repose only exists, then, by reason of the rotatory movement of its particles so that when atoms have radiated all their energy in the form of luminous, calorific, electric and other forms of vibrations, they return to the primitive ether." Rama Deva.

PAGE 243

well as of the future worlds, Who existed even before the world came into being, and has created all things that exist in space between the earth and heaven.*"RIG VEDA 10:121, 1.

2. Has not prakriti emanated from God?

A.- No, it is beginningless.

"O Men, that All-pervading Being alone is the Lord of the imperishable prakriti - the material cause of the world - and of the soul and is yet distinct from both. He is the Creator of universe - the past, present and the future." YAJUR VEDA 21: 2

"That Supreme Spirit, form Whom all things proceed and in Whom they live and perish, is the All-pervading God. Aspire, O men, to know Him." TAITREYA UPANISHAD BHRIGU, 1.

"That Great God should be sought after, Who is the cause of the creation, the sustenance and dissolution of the universe." VEDAANT SHAASTRA I. 1,2.

3. How many entities are eternal or beginningless

A.- Three - God, the soul, and the prakriti (matter).
Q.**What are your authorities for this statement?**

A.- "Both God and the soul are eternal, they are alike in consciousness and such other attributes. They are associated together - God pervading the soul - and are mutual companions. The prakriti (matter), which is

---

*Literally the sun. -Tr.

PAGE 244

Likened to the trunk of a tree whose branches are the multiform universe which is resolved into tis elementary condition at the time of dissolution is also eternal. The natures, attributes and characters of these three are also eternal. Of the two - God and the soul - the latter alone reaps the fruits of this tree of the universe - good or evil - whilst the former does not. He is the All-glorious Being who shines within, without and all around." RIG VEDA I, 164, 20.

"The Great God - the King - revealed all kinds of knowledge to the human soul - His eternal subjects - through the Veda." YAJUR VEDA, 50, 8.

"The prakriti, the soul and God, all of them, are uncreated. They are the cause of the whole universe. They have no cause of the whole universe. They have no cause and have been existing eternally. The eternal soul enjoys the eternal matter and is wrapped up in it whilst God neither enjoys it, nor, is He wrapped up in it." SHWETA SHWATER UPNISHAD, 4: 5.

The attributes of God and the soul have been described iin the last chapter. Here we shall treat of the properties of prakriti (matter).
"That condition of matter in which the intellect-promoting (satva - high), passion-exciting (rajas - medium) and stupidity producing (tamas - low)qualities are found combined in equal proportions is called prakriti. From prakriti emanated the principle of wisdom (Mahaatava), and from the latter proceeded the principle of Individuality (Ahakaara) from which emanated the five subtle entities

and the ten principles of sensation and action, and the manas, i.e., the principle of attention. From the five subtle entities issued forth the five gross entities, such as

PAGE 245

solids, liquids, etc. These twenty-four entities and the purush, i.e., the spirit - human and Divine - form a group of twenty-five noumena." SANKYA SHASTRA,1: 61.

Of all these twenty-four, the prakriti is uncreated, the principle of wisdom, the principle of Individuality, and the five subtle entities are the products of the prakriti and are in their turn the cause of the ten principles of sensation, and action and of the principle of attention. The purush - i.e., the spirit - is neither the cause (material) nor the effect of anything.

4. Is this whole universe nothing but God

But it is said in the Chhaandoya Upanishad, "Before Creation the universe was existent"; whilst the Taitreya Upanishad says, " It was non-existent or nothing." Again the Vrikadaaranyaka Upanishad (Chapt. I,4,1) says "It was all spirit" and lastly the Shatapatha Brahmanad (Chapt. 11: 1, 11, 1) says, "It was all God (Brahma)" and again "by His Own will the Great God transformed Himself into this multiform universe." In another Upnishad it is written "Sarvam Khalu, etc.", which means "Verily this whole universe is God, all other things are nothing but God."

A._ Why do you pervert the meanings of these quotations? For those very Upanishads it is said "Oshwetketo, proceed thou from effects to causes and learn that prithivi (solids) proceed from liquids, apah (liguids) from teja - that condition of matter whose properties are heat and light, ectc., - and teja from the uncreated prakriti. This prakriti - the true existence - is the source, abode and support of the whole universe." What you have translated

PAGE 246

As "this universe was non-existent" means that it was non-existent as universe in their gross physical and visible form. But it existed in essence or in elementary form as the eternal prakriti. It was not nothing, God and the soul also were existent. Your quotations which begins with "Sarvam khualu" is nothing but a pot-pouri, for, you have taken parts of two verses from two different Upanishads and put them together and formed them into one sentence. "Sarva Khalu", etc., is tiken form the Chhaandogya Upanishad (chapt III: 14, 1) and Nehanaanaaa, from the Katha Upnishad (chapt. II:4,11).

Just as the limbs of the body are of use only so long as they form part of it, but become useless as soon as they are separated or cut off form it, similarly you can get sense out of words or sentences when in their proper places in conjunction with what has gone before and what follows them, but they become meaningless as soon as they are dislocated from their proper places and joined to others.

Now mark carefully the true meaning of the above quotation. "Worship, thou, O soul, that Great Being Who is the Creator, the Support, and the Life of the Universe. It is by His power that the whole universe come into being and is sustained, and it is in Him that it exists, Worship Him alone and no other. He is an Indivisible, Immutable, Conscious Being. There is no admixture of different things in Him, though all things with their distinct individual existence have their being in Him and are sustained by Him."

5. How many causes are there of the Universe

A.- Three - **The efficient , the material and the common.** The **efficient cause** is the one by whose directed activity a thing is made, and by the absence of whose directed activity nothing is made. It does not change itself, though it works changes in other things. The **material cause** is one without which nothing can be made. It undergoes changes, is made and un-made.
The **common cause** is one that is an instrument in the making of a thing, and is common to many things. The **efficient cause** is of two kinds:-
The **Primary efficient cause** is the Supreme Spirit - the Governor

PAGE 247

Of all, Who creates the universe out of the prakriti (matter), sustains it, and then resolves it into its elementary form.

The **secondary efficient cause** is the soul. It takes different materials out of the universe created by God and moulds them into different shapes.

The **material cause** is the prakiti which is the material used in the making of the universe. Being devoid of intelligence it can neither make nor unmake itself, but is always mad or unmade by a conscious intelligent being; though here and there even one kind of dead matter (but those changes are never ordered). Let us take an illustration. God made seeds (of different kinds), when they fall into a suitable soil and get the prper amount of water and nourishment, they develop into trees; but if they come in contact with fire they perish. All ordered changes in material things depend for their occurrence on God and the soul.

All such means as knowledge, strength and hands, and instruments, time and space, that are required for the making of thing constitute its common cause.

Now take for illustration a pot. The potter is its efficient cause clay its material cause, whilst the rod, the wheel and other instruments, time, space, light, eyes, hands (of the pttter), knowledge and the necessary labour, etc., constitute its common cause. Nothing can be made or unmade without these three causes.

The Neo-Vedantists* look upon God as the efficient as well as the material cause of the universe, but they are absolutely in the wrong. "Just as a spider does not take in anything from outside, but draws out filaments from its body with which it spins its web and sports about in it, so does God evolve the world out of His Own self, becomes metamorphosed into it, and enjoys Himself." MUNDAKA UPANISHAD, I:1, 7.

---

*i.e., the modern exponents of the Vedaant Philosophy. -Tr.

PAGE 248

6. Why is not the universe God?

"So Brahma desired and willed 'Let me assume diverse forms, in other words, become metamorphosed into the universe' and by the mere act of willing He became transformed into the universe."THE TAITREYA UPANISHAD, BRAHM, 6.

It is said in the Metrical Commentary of Gaurpaada (on the Vedant Aphorisms). "Whatever did not exist in the beginnning and will cease to exist in the end, does not exist in the present age." THE GAURPA DHEYA KARIKA, 31.
In the beginning the world did not exist but Brahma did. After the dissolution the world will no longer exist, but Brahma will. Therefore, the world does not exist even in the present, it is all Brahma. Why is not the universe Brahma then?

A.- If, as you say, Brahma (God) were the material cause of the universe, He would become transformable, conditioned and changeable. Besides, the natures, attributes and characteristics of a material cause are always transmitted to its effect. Says the Vaisheshika Darshana. I: 1,24 "The effect only reveals whatsoever pre-existed in the (material) cause." How could then Brahma and the material world be related as (material) cause and effect? They are so dissimilar in their natures, attributes and characteristics. Why! Brahma is the Personification of true existence, consciousness and bliss, whilst the material universe is ephemeral, inanimate and devoid of bliss.

Brahma is Uncreated, Invisible, whilst the material world is created, divisible and visible. Had the material objects, such as solids, bee evolved out of Brahma He would possess the same attributes as the material objects. Just as solids and other material things are dead and inert, so would Brahma be, or the material objects would possess consciousness just as Brahma does. Moreover the illustration of a spider and its web does not prove your contention. Instead it disproves it, because the material body of the spider is the material cause of the filaments, whilst the soul within is the efficient cause.* In the same way, the All-pervading

---

*It also illustrates the wonderful creative power of God that the soul cannot draw out filaments from the bodies of other creatures.

PAGE 249

God has evolved this gross visible universe out of the subtle, visible prakriti that resided in Him. He pervades the universe and witness all, and is perfect bliss. The text you have translated into "God desired and willed 'Let me assume diverse forms, etc.," really means that God mentally saw, contemplated and willed 'Let me create the multiform universe and become revealed'; because it is only after the world has been created that God becomes contemporaneous with the various gross physical objects and is revealed to the human souls in their meditations, thoughts, knowledge, preachings and hearings.

At the same time of Dissolution no one except Himself and the emancipated souls know Him. The aphorism, you have quoted, is erroneous; because, though it is true that before Creation, the universe did not exist in this gross visible condition, nor will it exist in this form the Dissolution onwards till the beginning of the next creation, yet it was not nothing, nor will it be. Before Creation it existed in a subltel invisible elementary form, so will it be after Dissolution.

Says the Rig Veda:-
"In the beginning it was all darkness", the whole universe was enveloped in utter darkness." RIV VEDA10: 126,3. Again says Manu, " In the beginning this universe was enshrouded in darkness. It was neither definable, nor discoverable by reason. Neither did it possess any physical signs, nor was it, therefore, perceptible by the senses." MANU 1: 5. Nor shall it be after the beginning of, or, during the period of dissolution. But the present time it is definable, possessed of visible signs and characteristics, and therefore perfectly discernable by the senses, and yet that commentator declared the non-existence of the world in the present, which is absolutely invalid. Because whatever a person knows on the authority of direct cognition and other evidences cannot be nothing.

7. What object had God in creating the world?

A.- What object could He have in not creating it?

Q.**Had He not created it, He would have lived in happiness? Besides, the souls would have remained free from pleasure and pain and the like.**

PAGE 250

A.- These are the ideas of the lazy and the indolent, but not of men of energetic and active habits. What happiness could the souls enjoy during the period of Dissolution? If the happiness and misery of this world were compared, it will be found that the happiness is many times greater than the misery. Besides, many a pure soul that adopts the means of obtaining salvation attains final beatitude; whilst during the period of Dissolution the souls simply remain idle as in deep sleep. Moreover had He not created this world, how could He have been able to award souls their deserts, and how could they have reaped the fruits of their deeds - good and evil - done in the previous cycle of Creation.*

If you were asked what is the function of the eyes, you can only say 'sight of course'. In the same way of what use could the knowledge, activity, and power of creating the world be in God other than that of creating? Nothing else. The attributes of God, such as justice, mercy, the power of sustaining the world, can have significance only when He makes the world. His Infinite power bears fruit only when it is applied to the creation, sustenance, government and dissolution of the universe. Just as sight is the natural function of the eye, so are the creation of the world, the free gift of all things to the souls and promoting the well-being of all the natural attributes of God.

Was the seed made first or the tree?

A.- The seed; because, the seed, cause, Hetu (source), Nidaana Mimitta (origin), etc., are all synonymous terms. The cause, being also called the see, must precede the effect.

9. God being Omnipotent can he not create matter and soul?

Q - *God being Omnipotent, He can also create prakriti - the primordial matter - and the soul. If He cannot, He cannot be called Omnipotent.*

A.- We have explained the meaning of the word Omnipotent before. But does Omnipotent mean one who can work even the impossibilities. If there be one who can do even such impossible things as the prduction of an effect without a cause, then can He make another God, Himself die, suffer pain, become dead and inert, inanimate, unjust, impure and immoral or not? Even God cannot change the natural properties of things as heat of the fire,

---

*That is, one preceding the last Creation.

PAGE 251

Fluidity of liquids and inertness of earth, etc. His laws being true and perfect, He cannot alter them. Omnipotence, therefore, only means that He possesses the power of doing all His works without any help.

Q. Is God formless or embodied? If He be formless, how could He create the world without bodily organs? Of course an objection like this cannot be urged if He be embodied.

A.- God is formless. He cannot be God who possesses a body; because he would then have finite powers, be limited by time and space, be subjected to hunger and thirst, heat and cold, wounds and injuries, pain and disease. Such a being may possess the attributes or powers of the soul, but no Divine attributes could be ascribed to him; since incarnate God could never grasp and control the primordial elementary matter - prakriti - atoms and molecules, nor could he create the world out of those subtle elements, just as we, being embodied in flesh, cannot grasp or control them.

God does not possess a physical body of bodily organs, such as hands and feet, though he does possess Infinite power, Infinite energy and Infinite activity, by virtue of which He does all those works that neither matter nor the soul can do. It is only because He is even more subtle than the soul and the prakriti, and pervades them, that He can grasp them and transform them into this visible universe.

10. Is God formless or embodied?

Q - *If God be formless, this world created by Him should also be formless, just as in the case of other living beings, such as men, - children have bodies like their parents. Had they been formless, their children would have been the same.* A.- What a childish question! We have already stated that God is not the material cause of the universe. He is only its efficient cause. It is prakriti and paramanus - the premordial elementary matter and atoms, - which are less subtle than God, that are the material cause of the world. They are not altogether formless but are subtler than other material objects, while less subtle as compared to God.

11. If God be formless, this world created by Him should also be formless

A.-No; because that which does not exist (in any form) cannot be called into existence. It is absolutely impossible. It is as

PAGE 252

much as impossible for an effect to be produced without its cause as the story of a man, who would brag in the following way, to be true. "I saw a man and a woman being married whose mothers never bore any children. They had boys made of human horns, and wore garlands of ethereal flowers. They bathed in the water of mirage and lived in a town of angels where it rained without clouds, and cereals and vegetables grew without any soil, etc.," or " I had neither father nor mother and yet came into being. I have no tongue in my mouth and lo! I can speak. There was no snake in the hole and yet one came out of it. I was nowhere, nor were these people, and yet we are all here." Only lunatics can believe and say such things.

12. Cannot God create an effect without cause?

Q. *If there can be no effect without a cause, what is the cause of the first cause then?*

A.- Whatsoever is an absolute cause, can ever be an effect of another, but that which is the cause of one and the effect of another is called a relative cause. Take an example. The earth is the cause of a house but an effect of liquids (Liquids are the causes of solids as they precede them in the order of formation. The earth is solid), but the first cause, prakriti (matter) has no other cause, viz., it is beginningless or eternal. Says the Saankhya Darshana, 1: 67 "The first having no cause is the cause of all effects." Every effect must have three causes before it comes into existence; just as before a piece of cloth can be made, it must have three things - the weaver, the thread and machinery, in the same way the creation of the world pre-supposes the

existence of God, the prakriti, the souls, time and space which are all uncreated and eternal. There would be no world if even one ot them were absent.

The various objections of atheists are answered below:

13. If there can be no effect without a cause, what is the cause of the first cause then

(i) *Shoonya (nought or nothing) is the one true reality. In the beginning there was nothing but nothing, and nothing will survive in the end; because whatever now exists will cease to exist and become nothing.*

---

*quids are the causes of solids as they precede them in the order of formation. The earth is a solid.

PAGE 253

A.- The ether, an invisible substance (such a prakriti), the space and a point are also called nothing. It is inanimate and all things invisibly exist in it. Lines are made up of points, while circle, squares, etc., are made of lines. Thus has God, by the might of His creative power, evolved the earth, mountains and objects of all other shapes and forms out of a point or nebula - nothing. Besides, He who knows nothing cannot be nothing. [Hence shoonya (nothing) does not here mean nothing put a point or a nebula.]

15. Can something come out of nothing?

(ii) Q. *Something can come out of nothing , just as a seed does not germinate and send forth a sprout until it is split, but when you break a seed an look into it, you do not find any sprout in it. It is clear then that the sprout comes out of nothing.*

A.- That which splits a seed before it germinates, must have already been present in the ee, otherwise what causes the see to split? Nor would it have come out had it not been there.

16. Do we sow what we reap?

(iii) Q.> *It is not true 'As you sow so shall you reap,' Many an act is seen that does not bear fruit; therefore it is right it infer that it entirely rest with God to punish or reward a man for his deeds. It absolutely depends upon His wish.*

A.- If it were so, why does not God reward or punish a man for deeds he has never done? It follows, therefore, that God gives every man his due according to the nature of his deeds. God does not reward or punish men according to the caprice of his Will. On the other hand, He makes a man reap only what he has sown.

17. Can effects can be produced without a cause?

(iv) Q. *Effects can be produced without a cause just as the sharp thorns of Acacia Arabica spring out of the branches that are not at all sharp and pointed but are soft and smooth. It is clear from this illustration, therefore, that in the beginning of Creation all material objects and bodies of living beings come into being without (first) cause.*

PAGE 254

A.- Whatever a thing springs from, is its cause. Thorns do not come out of nothing. They come out of a thorny tree, therefore, that tree is their cause. Hence the world was not created without a cause.

(v) Q. *All things have been created and are liable to decay. They are all ephemeral. The Neo-Vedantis put forward objections like this, because they say, "Thousands of books support the doctrine that Brahma alone is the true reality., the world is a delusion and the soul is not distinct from Brahma (God). All else is unreal."*

A.- All can not be unreal if the fact of their being unreal is real.

Q. *Even the fact of their being unreal is unreal. Just as fire not only burns other things and thus destroys them, but is itself destroyed after others have been destroyed.*

A.- That which is perceptible by the senses cannot be unreal or nothing, nor can the extremely subtle matter - the material cause of the world - be unreal or perishable. The Neo-Vedantis hold Brahma as the (material) cause of the universe; He - the cause - being real, the world - the effect - cannot be unreal. If it were said that the material world is only a material conception and, therefore, unreal like the objects seen in a dream or life a piece of rope seen in the dark and mistaken for a snake, it cannot be true; because a conception or an idea is something abstract which cannot remain apart from the noumenon wherein it resides.

When one that conceives (viz., the soul) is real, the conception cannot be unreal, otherwise you will have to admit that the soul is also unreal. You cannot see a thing in a dream unless you have seen or heard of it in the wakeful state, in other words, when the various objects of this world come in contact without senses, they give rise to percepts called knowledge by direct cognition - which leave impressions on our souls, it is these impressions which are recalled by, and become vivid to the soul in dreams. If it be possible for a man to dream of things of which he has had no impressions in his mind, a man born blind, should dream of colours which is not the

PAGE 255

case. It follows, therefore, that in the mind are retained impressions and ideas of external things that exist in the outside world. And just as external things continue to exist even after a man ceases to have any consciousness of them as in sound sleep, so does prakriti- the material cause of the world - continue to exist ever after Dissolution.

18. Why not believe that the external things seen in the wakeful state is unreal?

As the external objects pass out of our consciousness in slumber and those seen in a dream in the state of profound sleep, i.e., perish as far as we are concerned, in the same way why not believe that the external things seen in the wakeful state are also unreal?

A.- No, we cannot believe that; because both in slumber and profound sleep the external objects only pass out of our consciousness. They do not cease to exist, just as different things lying behind us are simply invisible to us but are there, and have not ceased to exist. Therefore, what we have said before, that God , the soul and the prakriti - the material cause - are real entities, is alone true.

19. If the five states of matter is eternal why isn't the world eternal?

(vi)Q. *The five bhuts - five states of matter as Prithivi (solids), Apah (liquid) etc., - being eternal, the whole world is eternal or imperishable.*

A.- No, it is not true; because if all those objects, the cause of whose formation or disintegration is seen every day, be eternal, the whole material visible world with all such perishable things as the bodies of men and animals, houses, and their furniture and the like would be eternal, which is absurd. Therefore, the effects can never be eternal.

20. Are all things distinct from each other?

(vii)Q. *All things are distinct from each other, There is no unity in them. Whatever we see precludes another.*

A.-The whole exists in its parts. Time, ether, space, God, and Order and Genus, though separate entities, are yet common to all. There is nothing that can exist separate from or without them. Hence all these are not separate from each other, though they are different by nature. Thus there is unity in variety.

PAGE 256

(viii) Q. *All things exclude each other, and are therefore non-existent, just as a cow is not a horse, nor is a horse a cow. Therefore, both the horse and the cow are non-existent. Similarly, all things are as if non-existent.*

A.- Though it is true that the 'relation of one thing excluding others does exist in all things, but a thing does not exclude itself. For example, a cow is not a horse, nor is a horse a cow; but a cow as a cow and a horse as a horse do exist. If things were non-existent how could you ever speak of this Itretaraabhaava relation i.e., 'the relation of one thing excluding others from itself'. [Hence the world and things contained therein do exist. They are not non-existent.]

21.There can be no creator.

(ix)Q. *The world comes into being by virtue of the fact that it is in the nature of things to combine together and produce different things. Just as maggots are produced the coming together of food, moisture and by decomposition setting in; or as vegetables begin to grow when the seed, water, and soil are brought together under favourable conditions; or as the wind blowing on the sea is the cause of waves that in turn produce merchaum, which mixed with turmeric, lime and lemon juice forms what is called concrete, so does this world come into being by virtue of the natural properties of the elements. There is no Creator.*

A.-If formation be the natural property of matter, there would be no dissolution or disintegration; and if you say that disintegration is also a natural property of matter, there could then be no formation. But if you say that both formation and disintegration are the natural properties of matter, there could then be neither formation nor disintegration. If you say that an efficient agent is the cause of the creation and dissolution of the world, it must be other than and distinct from the objects that are subject to formation and disintegration.

If formation and disintegration be the natural properties of matter, they may happen at any and every moment. Besides, if there is no Maker and the world came into being by virtue of the natural properties inherent in matter, why do not other earths, suns and moons come into existence near our earth? Moreover, whatever now grows or comes into being, does so by virtue of the combination of different substances - made by God. Just as plants grow wherever the water,

PAGE 257

soil and the seed come in contact under favourable conditions, and not otherwise; in the same way in the manufacture of concrete its components such as turmeric, lime, lemon juice and merchaum do not come together by themselves, but are mixed up together by some one, nor dot hey produce concrete unless mixed in their right proportion. Similarly, the prakriti and atoms, until they are properly combined by God with the requisite knowledge and skill, cannot by themselves produce anything. It follows, therefore, that the world did not come into being by itself, i.e., by virtue of the natural properties of matter, but was created by God.

22. It was never created nor shall it ever perish.

Q. This world has had no Creator, nor is there one at present, nor, shall there ever be one. It has been eternally existing as such. It was never created nor shall it ever perish.

A.- No action or thing - which is the product of action - can ever come into existence without an agent. All objects to this world such as the earth, are subject to the processes of formation, that is, are the product of definite combination. They can never be eternal, because a thing which is the product of combination can never exist after its component parts come as under. If you do not believe it, take the hardest rock or a diamond or a piece of steel and smash it into pieces, melt or roast it and see for yourself if it is composed of separate particles, called molecules and atoms, or not. If it is, then surely a time will come when those molecules will come apart.

23. Can the highly exalted soul become God?

Q. There is not Eternal God, on the other hand a highly exalted soul, that by the practice of yoga attains such power as the control of atoms, etc., and omniscience, becomes God.

A.- Had there been not Eternal God, the Creator of the universe, Who would have made the bodies, the sense organs and all objects of this world, the very support and means of subsistence of the yogi, by means of which he comes to possess such wonderful powers? Without their help no one can endeavour to accomplish anything. The endeavour being impossible how could he have acquired those wonderful powers? Whatsoever efforts a man may make, whatsoever means he may employ, whatsoever powers he may acquire, he can never equal God in His natural - in contradistinction to the soul's acquired - Everlasting or Eternal powers which are infinite and manifold; because, the knowledge of

PAGE258

the soul, even if it were to go on improving till eternity, will still remain finite and his powers limited. Its power and knowledge can never become infinite. Mark, no yogi has ever been able to subvert the laws of nature as ordained by God, nor ever shall. God - the Eternal Seer - possessed of wonderful powers has ordained that eyes shall be the organs of sight, and ears the organs of hearing. The human soul can never become God.

24. In different cycles of Creation does God make the universe of a uniform or a different

Q. In different cycles of Creation does God make the universe of a uniform or a different character?

A.- Just as it is now, so was it in the past, so will it be in the future. It is said in the Veda, "Just as God created the sun, the earth, the moon , the electricity, the atmosphere in the previous cycles, so has He done in the present and so will He do in the future." RIG VEDA 10: 190, 3. God's works, being free from error or flaw, are always of uniform character. It is only the works of one

who is finite and whose knowledge is subject to increase or decrease that can be erroneous or faulty, not those of God.

25. Do the Vedas and the Shastras harmonize with or contradict one another ?

Q. Do the Vedas and the Shastras harmonize with or contradict one another on the subject of creation?

A.- They harnonize.

Q.*If they harmonize, why is it that in the TAITREYA UPANISHAD BRAHMANAND 1, creation is described in the following manner? Out of prakriti - elementary material cause of the world - God first created Akasha.* Then was evolved Vayu - gaseous or vaporous condition of matter; out of Vayu proceeded Agni - matter which gives out*

---

*A'kaasha is here said to be created, it only means that by the gathering together of all the pervading elements A'kaasha as well as space becomes manifest. In reality A'kaasha is never created, because of there were no A'kaasha and space, wherein could the prakriti exist?

PAGE 259

heat, light and electricity - out of Agni proceeded Liquids; and out of liquids came solids (such as earth); out of solids issued forth vegetables which yielded food. Food produced the reproductive element which is the cause of the physical body and bodily organs." In Chhaandoyga it is written that Creation begins with Agni, in the Aitreya Upanishad that it begins with Liquids. In the Veda itself in some places Purush (God), while in others Hiranyagarbha (God) has been described as the cause of the Universe; whilst in the mimaansaa action or application, in Vaisheshika time, in Niyaaya paramaanus (atoms) in Yoga conscious exertion, in Sankhya prakriti - the primordial elementary matter, - Vedaanta, God. Now out of all these which is right and which is wrong?

A.- They are all right, not one of them is wrong. He is in the wrong who misunderstands them. God is the efficient cause and prakriti the material cause of the universe. After Mahaapralaya - Grand dissolution - the next Creation starts A'kaash. In Minor dissolution (cycles) when disintegration does not reach the stage of Vaayu (gas) and A'kash but reaches only that of Agni (electricity or fire) the next creation begins with Agni. But when after dissolution in which even agni - electricity - is not disintegrated, the next creation begins with Liquids.

In other words the next Creation starts at where the previous dissolution ends. Purush and Hiranyagarbha, as we have described in the first chapter, are names of God. Nor is there contrariety in the description of creation given in the six Shaastraas, because what is contrariety but contradiction of statements when the subject under discussion is the same. Now mark how the descriptions of the six shaastraas harmonize with each other.

- The Mimaansaa says, "Nothing in this world can be produced without proper application."
- TheVaisheshika says, "Nothing can be done or made without the expenditure of time."
- The Niyaaya says, "Nothing can be produced without the material cause."
- The Yoga says, "Nothing can be made without the requisite skill, knowledge and thought."
- The Saankhya says, "Nothing can be made without the definite combination of atoms."
- The Vedaanta says, "Nothing can be made without a Maker."

This shows that the Creation of the world requires six different causes which have been described separately one by each separate Shaastra. There is no contradiction in these descriptions. The six Shaastras together serve to explain the phenomenon of Creation in the same way as six men

PAGE 260

Would help each other to put a thatch on the roof of a house. A man took six men - five of them blind an the sixth possessed of dim sight - and showed them each a different part of the body of an elephant. And then asked them what they thought the animal was like. The first one answered 'like a pillar', the second 'like a fan', the third 'like a big pestle', the fourth 'like a broomstick', the fifth 'like somethingflat', and the sixth one said 'something dark like four pillars supporting the body of a buffalo'. Similar to these six men is the condition of those men who, instead of studying the books of rishis - the true seers of nature - read the current Sanskrit or vernacular books written by narrow-minded men of little understanding who malign each other and wrangle over triflings. Why should they not suffer who are the blind followers of the blind? The lives of half-educated, selfish, sensual and ease-loving men of to-day help to ruin and debase the world.

26. Why should a cause not have a cause if there can be no effect without cause?

A.~ O ye simple bretheren! Why do you not use your common sense a little? Mark, there are only two things in this world, a cause and an effect. Whatsoever is a cause (absolute) can never be an effect; and whatsoever is an effect can never be a cause at the same time. As long as a man does not thoroughtly understand the science of Creation, he can never have a true conception of the universe.

"That condition of matter in which intellect-promoting (satva), passion -exciting (rajas) and stupidity-producing (tamas) qualities are found combined in equal proportions is the uncreated, imperishable prakriti. The first combination of the highly subtle, indivisible separately-existing particles called paramanus (atoms or electrons) derived from the prakriti, is called the Beginning (of Creation). The various combinations of atoms in different proportions and ways give rise to various grades and conditions - subtle and gross - of matter till it reaches the gross visible multiform stage called srishti - the universe."

PAGE 261

Now that which enters into the first combination and brings it about, existed before the combination, and shall exist after the component parts are pushed as under is called the cause. Whilst that which comes into existence after the combination, and ceases to exist after it has come to an end is called the effect. He who wants to know the cause of a cause, the effect of an effect, the maker of maker, the agent of an agent, the act of an act, is blind though he sees, is deaf though he hears, and ignorant though well-read. Can ther ever be the eye of an eye, the lamp of a lamp, and the sun of a sun? That out of which something is made is called a cause. Whatever is made from another is called an effect. Whoever produces an effect out of a cause is called the maker.

"Nothing can ever become something, nor can something ever become nothing. These two principles have been rightly ascertained by the true seers of nature." GITA 2: 16. How can prejudiced, sophisticated, insincere, and ignorant minds understand them so easily? He who is neither well-read nor associate with the good and the learned, nor meditates on these abstruse subjects with profound attention, remains immersed in doubt and ignorance. Blessed are they who studiously endeavour to understand the principles of all sciences and having mastered them, teach others honestly.

It is clear, therefore, that he who believes this world to have been created without a cause really knows nothing.

27. The slow and gradual scientific creation of the Universe.

When the time of Creation comes, God gathers those extremely subtle particles (called Paramaanus). The **first principle** that is produced out of the highly subtle elementary prakriti, is called Mahaatatva - the**principle of wisdom** - which is one degree less subtle than the prakriti. Out of the Mahaatatva is evolved Ahankaara - the **principle of individuality** - which is still less subtle and in its turn gives rise to the **five subtle principles**, called Bhuts, besides the **five principles of sensation** and **five principles of action** and the **principle of attention**

PAGE 262

which are all a little less subtle than the **principle of individuality**. The five subtle bhuts, by passing through various stages of less subtle conditions of matter, are finally transformed into five least subtle states of matter, such as solids, liquids, etc. From the latter spring up various kinds of trees, plants, etc., which are the source of food, and out of food is produced the reproductive element which is cause of the body.

But the first creation (of bodies) was not the result of sexual intercourse; because it is only after the male and female bodies have been created by God and souls put into them that the Maithuni (sexual intercourse) creation begins.

28. The wonderful creation of the physical body.

Behold the wonderful organization of the body!
How the learned are wonder-struck with it? First there is the osseous frame-work girt with a net-work of vessels - veins, arteries and nerves, etc., - invested with flesh and the whole covered by skin with its appendages - nails and hairs. Then how beautifully are the different organs, such as the heart, the liver, the spleen and the lungs - ventilating apparatus - laid out. The formation of the brain, of the optic nerve with the most reticulate formation of the retina, the demarking of the paths of indryas - the principles of sensation and action - , the linking of the soul with the body, the assigning of definite places to it for wakeful state, slumber and deep sleep, the formation of different kinds of dhaatus - tissues and secretions, such as muscle, bone-marrow, blood, reproductive elements - and the construction of various other wonderful structures and mechanisms in the body who but God could have caused.

29. The wonderful creation of the earth.

The earth studded with various kinds of precious stones and metals, the seeds of trees of a thousand different kinds* with their wonderful exquisite structures, leaves with myriads of different colours** and shades, flowers, fruits, roots, rhizomes and cereals with various scents and flavours*** none but God could create. Nor could any one except God create myriads of earths, suns, moon and other cosmic bodies, and sustain, revolve the regulate them.

An object when perceived produces two kinds of knowledge in the mind of the observer, viz., of the nature of the object itself and of its maker. For example, a man found a beautiful ornament in a jungle. On examination he saw that it was made of gold and that

---

*Such as Banyan tree, etc.

**Such as green, white , yellow, dark, be-spotted and other mixed colours.

***Such as sweet, alkaline, saltish, bitter, astringent, sharp and acid.

PAGE 263

it must have been made by a clever goldsmith. In the same way, the wonderful workmanship and execution of this wonderful universe prove the existence of its Maker

Q.**What was first created, man or earth, etc.?**

A.~ The earth, etc., because without them where could man live and how could he maintain his life?

30. Was one man created in the beginning of Creation or more than one?

A.~ More than one; because souls, that on account of their previous good actions deserve to be born in the Aishwari - not the result of sexual intercourse - Creation, are born in the beginning of the world. It is said in the Yajur Veda, "(In the beginning) there were born many men as well as rishis, i.e.., learned seers of nature. They were progenitors of the human race." On the authority of this Vedic text it is certain then that in the beginning of Creation hundreds and thousands of men were born. By observing nature with the aid of reason we come to the same conclusion, viz., that men are descended from many fathers and mothers (i.e., not from one father and one mother).

31. In the beginning of Creation were men created as children, adults or old people or in all conditions?

A.~ They were adults, because had God created them as children they would have required adults to bring them up, and had created them as old men, they would not have been able to propagate the race, therefore He created them adults.

32. Does creation ever had a beginning?

A.~ No; just as the night follows the day and the day follows the night, the night precedes the day and day precedes the night, so does Creation follows Dissolution and Dissolution follows Creation, Dissolution precede Creation, and Creation precede Dissolution. This alternate process has been eternally going on. It has neither a beginning, nor an end, but just as the beginning and end of a day or of a night are seen, so do Creations and Dissolutions have beginnings as well as ends. God, the soul and prakriti - the primordial elementary matter - are eternal by nature, whilst Creation, and Dissolution are eternal by pravah -i.e., they follow each

PAGE 264

other in alternate succession - like the flow of a river which is not continuous throughout the whole year. It dries up and disappears in summer, and reappears in the rainy season. Jus as the nature, attributes, and character of God are eternal, so are His works - the Creation, Sustenance, and Dissolution (of the world).

33. Does not the belief of souls in lower beings impute partiality?

God put some souls in human bodies, while others he clothed with bodies of ferocious animals such as tigers, others with those of cattle, such as cows, others with those of birds and insects, other still with those of plants. Does not this belief impute partiality to God?

A.~ No, it does not impute any partiality, because He put souls into the bodies they deserved according to deeds done in the previous birth. Had He done so without any consideration as to the nature of their deeds, He would have been unjust indeed.

34. Where was man first created?

A.~ In Trivishtap otherwise called Tibet. *Q. Were all men of one class or divided into different classes at the time of Creation?*

A.~ They all belonged to one class, viz., that of man, but later on they were divided into two main classes, - the good and the wicked. The good were called *Aryas* and the wicked *Dasyus*. Says the Rig Veda, "Do ye know (there are) two classes of men - *Aryas* and *Dasyus*." The good and learned were also called *Devaas*, while the ignorant and wicked, such as dacoits (robbers), were called *Asura*. The*Aryas* were again divided into four *Classes, viz., Braahmana (teachers), Kshatriya (rulers or protectors), Vaishya (merchants) and Shuudra (labourers).* Those who belonged to the first three classes being educated and bearing good character, were called *Dwijas* - twice born; whilst the *fourth Class* was so named because of being composed of ignorant and illiterate persons. They were also called *Anaryas* - not good. This division into *Aryas* and *Shudras* is supported by the Atharva Veda wherein it is said "Some are *Aryas*, others *Shuudras*.

35. How did they happen to come here (to India) then?

A.~ When the relations between the *Aryas*and *Dasyus*, or between *Devas* and *Asuraas*, (i.e., between the good and learned, and the ignorant and wicked) developed into a constant state of

PAGE 265

warfare, and serious troubles arose, the *Aryas* regarding this country as the best in the whole earth emigrated her and colonized it. For this reason it is called*Aryavarta* - the abode of the *Aryas*.

Q. What are the boundaries of Aryavarta?

A.~ "It is bounded on the North by the Himalayas, on the South by the Vindyachal mountains, on the East and West by the sea. It has also on its West the Sarasvati River (Sindh or Attock) and on the East the Dhrisvati river also called the Brahmaputra which rises from the mountain east of Nepal, and passing down to the east of Assam and the west of Burma, falls into the Bay of Bengal in the Southern Sea (Indian Ocean). All the countries included between the Himalaya on the North and Vindhyachal mountains on the south as far as Rameshwar are called Aryavarta, because they were colonized and inhabited by *Devas* (the learned) and *Aryas* - the good and the noble." Manu 2: 22, 17.

Q. What was the name of this country before that , and who were its oboriginal inhabitants?

A.~ It had no name, nor was it inhabited by any other people before the *Aryas*(settled in it) who sometime after creation came straight down here from Tibet and colonized this country.

Q. Some people say that they came from Iran (Persia) and hence they were called Aryas. Before the Aryas came to this country it was inhabited by savages whom the Aryas called Asuraas and Raakshasas as (demons), while they called themselves Devatas (gods). The wars between the two were called by the name Devaasura Sangraam as in the historical romances. Is this true?

A.~ It is absolutely wrong. The *Veda* declares what we have already repeated, i.e., "The virtuous, learned, unselfish, and pious men are called *Aryas*, while the men of opposite character such as docoits, wicked, unrighteous and

PAGE 266

ignorant persons are called *Dasyus*."RIG VEDA 2: 51, 8. Besides , "The *Dwijaas* (the twice-born) - *Braahmanaas, Kshatriyas, Vaishyaas* - are called *Aryas*, while the *Shuudraas* are called *Anaaryas, or Non-Aryas."*ATHARVA VEDA19:62. In the face of these Vedic authorities how can sensible people believe in the imaginary tales of the foreigners. In the *Devaasura* wars, *Prince Arjuna and King Dashratha* and others of *Aryavarta*used to go to the assistance of the *Aryas* in order to crush the Asuras. This shows that the people living outside *Aryavarta* were called *Dasyus and Malechhaas*; because whenever those people attacked *Aryas* living on the Himalayas, the kings and rulers of *Aryavarta*, went to help the *Ayas* of the north, etc.

But the war which Ram Chandra waged in the south against Ravan - the king of Ceylon - is called not by the name of *Devaasura* war but by that of *Raama-Raavana* war or the war between the *Aryas and Raakhasas*. In no Sanskrit book - historical or otherwise - it is recorded that the *Aryas* emigrated here from Iran, fought with and conquered the aborigines, drove them out, and became the rulers of the country. How can then these statements of the foreigners be true? Besides, *Manu* also corroborates our position. He says, "The countries other than *Aryavarta* are called *Dasyus*and *Malechha countries*."MANU 10:45, 2:23. The people living in the north-east, north, north-west were called *Raakshasas*. You can still see that the description of *Raakshasas* given therein tallies with the ugly appearance of the negroes of today. The people living in the antipodes of Aryavarta were called *Nagas*, and their country *Pataala*because of being situated under the feet (of those living in *Aryavarta).* Their kings belonged to the *Naaga* dynasty taking their name from that of the founder who was called *Naga*. His daughter *Ulopi* was married to Prince Arjuna. From the time of *kshvaaku* to that of *Kauravaas* and *Paandavaas*, the *Aryas* were the sovereign rulers of the whole earth, and the *Vedas* were preached and taught more or less even in countries other than *Aryavarta*.

PAGE 267

Brahma was the first of the literati. His son was called *Virat* whose son was *Manu* who had ten sons, *Marichi* etc., who were progenitors of seven kings beginning with *Swayambhava* whose off-springs were the kings beginning with *Ikshvaaku*. This *Ikshvaaku* colonized *Aryavarta* and was its first king. At the present moment, let alone governing foreign countries, the *Aryas* through indolence, negligence and mutual discord and ill-luck do not possess a free, independent, uninterrupted and fearless rule even over their own country. Whatsoever rule is left to them, is being crushed under the heel of the foreigner.

There are only a few independent states left. When a country falls upon evil days, the natives have to bear untold misery and suffering. Say what you will, the indigenous native rule is by far the best. A foreign government, perfectly free from religious prejudices, impartial towards all - the natives and the foreigners - kind, beneficent and just to the natives like their parents though it may be, can never the people perfectly happy. It is extremely difficult to do away with the differences in language, religion, education, customs and manners, but without doing that the people can never fully effect mutual good and accomplish their object. It behoves all good people to hold in due respect the teachings of the *Veda* and *Shaastraas* and ancient history.

36. Has much time elapsed since the creation of the world?

A.~ One billion, nine hundred sixty millions and some hundred thousand years have passed since the creation of the world and the revelation of the Vedas. For detailed exposition of this subject the readers should consult our book called "An introduction to the Exposition of the Vedas." (1,960,852,999 years old).

- The orderly devolopment of the subtle ether (matter) to that of the stage of solid.

The minutest particle of matter that cannot be divided any further is called a *Paramaanu* (atom).
60 *Paramaanus* make one *Anu* (molecule).
2 *Anus* make one *Dvyanak*, which enters into the composition of the ordinary physical *Vayu* (air).
3 *Dvyanaks* make one *Trasarenu* that forms *Agni* - that condition of matter whose property is light, and heat.
4 *Dvyanaks* form*Jala* (liquids).
5 *Dvyanaks* form *Prithvi* (solids).

PAGE 268

Three *Dvyanaks* make one *trasarenu*, by doubling which earth and visible objects are formed. It is in this way - i.e., by the process of combining *Paramaanuus* and *Anus* and so on till the visible things are produced - that the earth and other planets have been made of God.

37. What supports this earth?

Q. What supports this earth? One man says that it rests on the head of Shesha - a thousand-hooded snake, another says that it is supported on the horns of a bull, a third says that it rests on nothing, a fourth one says that it is supported by the solar attraction, and sixth one says that being heavy the earth is going down and down in space. Out of all of these different theories which shall we believe to be true?

A.~ Those, who say that it rests on the head of Shesha (a snake) or on the horns of a bull, should be asked, on what the earth rested in the time of the parents of the shesha or of the bull before it was born and what supported it. The followers of the bull theory will be at once silenced. But the advocates of the shesha theory willsay that the shesha rest on a kurn (a tortoise) which rests on water, and the water on Agni and the Agni on air and air rests on A'kaasha (space). They should be asked on what all of them rested. They will have say "on God". If you ask them again whose children the shesha and bull were, they will tell you that the bull was the son of a cow and the shesha that of kurma (a tortoise), the son of Marichi who was the son of Manu, the son of Virat, who was the son of Brahma.

This Brahma was born in the beginning of creation. Six generations had thus passed before the shesha was born, who had sustained the earth till then? What did it rest on at the time of the birth of *Kashyapa* (the tortoise)? They will have nothing further to say* and will, therefore, begin to quarrel. What it really means is that *shesha* is another name for the remainder (that is, what is left behind in subtracting one sum from another). Some poet said: "The earth rests on shesha." Some ignorant man, not understanding the poet, invented this tale of the snake. What the poet really meant was that the earth was supported by God - the one Unchangeable Being in the midst of Creation and Dissolution, the One permanent element that undergoes no change during Creation

---

*Literally 'thy silence adn my silence.' It is an Indian proverb.-Tr.

PAGE 269

or Dissolution. In the whole world He is the only one that remains unchanged. He stands aloof from change. "That God who is unaffected by time, and is imperishable sustains the sun and the earth and all other planets." ATHARVA VEDA 14:1, 1.

There is passage in the Rig Veda which means "*Ukshaa* sustains the moon and earth." Some ignorant person seeing the word *ukshaa* invented the story of the bull supporting the earth, because *ukshaa* does also mean a bull, but never entered the head of that idiot as to how a bull could be powerful enough to support such a planet. *Ukshaa* her means the sun, because it waters the earth through rain. It sustains this earth by solar attraction. But there is none besides God Who sustains the sun.

38. How could God sustain such big planets s the sun and the earth?

A.~ Just as these big planets are nothing compared to the infinite (in which they exist) - (they are not even as big as a drop in the ocean), - similarly compared with the Infinite, Almighty God, these myriads of planets are not even as big as an atom. He pervades everything within and without. "He is the Supreme Spirit who created all things and sustains them." YAJUR VEDA. Had He not been an All-pervading God (just as the Puranics, the Muslims and the Christians say). He could never sustain this world, because no one can support a thing without being present there. If some one says, "All these planets are supporting each other by mutual attraction, where then is the necessity for God to sustain them?"

He should be asked if the universe is finite or infinite. If he answers that it is infinite it cannot be true - since a thing possessing a form can never be infinite; and if he says that it is finite, we ask whose attraction supports what is beyond or outside its limits. Things when spoken of collectively ar called *smashti* and individually *Vyashti**. If all the worlds were collectively called the universe, there is no one but God

---

*For example, a group of trees would be called Smashti,while each tree individually Vyashti.

PAGE 270

Who attracts and sustains it as it is said in the Yajur Veda, "God it is Who creates and sustains luminous bodies, (such as the sun) as well as the non-luminous (such as the earth)."YAJUR VEDA 13:4. As He pervades all. He is the Creator and sustainer of the universe.

Q. Do the earth and other planets revolve or are they stationary?

A.~ They revolve.

<1>Q. Some say that it is the sun that moves, not the earth, while others say just the reverse. Now who are right?

A.~ They are both half grown; because it is written in the Veda, "This earth with all it waters revolves round the sun." YAJUR VEDA 3, 6. This shows that the earth revolves. Again says the Veda, "The Glorious , resplendent sun, that gives life and energy to al the world, - animate and inanimate - through rain and solar rays, and makes all physical objects visible, attracts all other planet and rotates in its own orbit, but does not move round other planets." YAJUR VEDA 33:43.

In each solar system there is one sun that gives light to all the planets (such as the earth).

Says the Veda, "As the moon is illuminated by the sun, so are other planets (such as the earth) illuminated by the light of the sun." ATHARVA VEDA14: 1. But the day, and the night are constantly present. It is day in that part of the earth which in its revolutions round the sun confronts it, whilst it is night in the other half which is hidden from it. In other words, the sunrise, the sunset, the twilight, the mid-day and the mid-night, etc,. are always present in different countries at the same time; thus when it is sunrise in India, it is sunset in America and vice versa; when it is mid-day or mid-night in America and vice-versa. Those, who say that the sun moves round the earth

PAGE 271

which is stationary are all ignorant; because, had it been so, one day and one night would have lasted thousands of years, since the sun is called *Bradhna*, which means that it is a hundred thousand times bigger than the earth, and millions of miles distant from it; consequently it would require much longer time for the sun to go round the earth than for the latter to go round the former. Just as if a mountain were to go round a mustard seed, it would take much longer time when the latter would go round the former.

Those who say that the sun is stationary are ignorant of Astronomy; because had it been so, how could it move form one zodiac to another; besides, a heavy body like the sun could never remain in space without rotating constantly. The Jainees, who say that the earth does not move, but on the other hand is going down and down in space, and that in one Jamboo Island alone there are two suns and two moons, are like one suffering from Delirium Tremens the result of over-intoxication with cannabis Indica.

If the earth were going down and down, it would smash into pieces from want of support of the air which could no longer encircle it. The people living on the top (uppermost) should have more air than those below, it being unequally distributed. Had there been two suns and two moons there would have been no night and no dark half of the month. Therefore, there is only one moon for our planet and one sun amidst many planets.

39. What are the sun, the moon and the stars?

Q. Are they inhabited by man and other living creatures or not?

A.~ They are worlds inhabited by men and other living beings, The Shatpatha Braahman 14:6, 9, 4. says., "The earth, the water, the heated bodies, the space, the moon, the sun, and other planets are all called *Vasus or abodes*, because they are abodes of living beings as well as of inanimate objects." When the sun, the moon and other planets are abodes like our earth, what doubt can there be in their being inhabited? When this little earth of God is full of men land other living beings, can it ever be possible that all other worlds are void? How can myriads of other worlds be of any use unless they are inhabited by man and other beings? It follows, therefore, that they are inhabited.

PAGE 272

40. Do they have the same bodies?

Q. *Would men and other living beings in the other worlds have the same kind of bodies and bodily organs as they have here or different?*

A.~ Most likely there is some difference in their form and the like, just as you see some difference in form, countenance, appearance and complexion among people of different countries as the

Ethiopeans, Chinese, the Indians and the Europeans. But the creation of the same class or species on this earth and other planets is identical. The class or species that has its sense organs (as eyes) in some definite place in the body here (on this planet), will have them in the same place other planets; for it is said in the Veda, "Just as God created the sun, the moon, the earth, and other planets and the objects therein in the previous cycles of Creation, the same has He done in the present Creation." RIG VEDA 10: 190. He does not make any alteration.

41. Are the same Vedas revealed in the other worlds as in this?

A.~ Yes. Just as the policy of a king is the same in all the countries under his rule, so is the Vedic system of Government of the King of kings identically the same in all the worlds over which He rules.

42. Why should we have control of matter and soul?

Q. When you hold that the soul and the Prakriti (matter) are eternal and were never created by God, why should He have any control over them, as they are independent?

A.~ Just as a king and his subjects live contemporaneously and yet they are subject to him, so are the soul and the prakriti under the control of God. Why should not the soul, with its finite powers and the dead inert matter be subject to His powers when He creates the whole universe, awards souls the fruits of their deeds, protects and sustains all, and possess infinite powers. It is clear, therefore, that the soul is free to act, but is subject to the laws of God in reaping the fruits of its acts, while the Almighty God is the Creator, Protector and Sustainer of, the universe.

END OF CHAPTER 8.

CHAPTER 9

KNOWLEDGE AND IGNORANCE, EMANCIPATION AND BONDAGE

PAGE 273

1. Knowledge (Vidya) and Ignorance (Avidya)

"He who realizes the nature of **Vidyaa** -true knowledge - and of **Avidyaa** - good moral life and Divine contemplation - simultaneously conquers death by virtue of **Avidyaa** and obtains Immortality by virtue of **Vidyaa**." YAJUR VEDA. 40: 40.

Characteristics of **Avidyaa**:-
1. "The false notion that the transient world and worldly things (such as bodies) are eternal or in other words that the world of effects, that we see and feel, has always been existing and will continue to exist for ever, and that by virtue of the power of yoga, the physical bodies of godly men become imperishable, is the first kind of ignorance (Avidyaa).

2. To regard impure things, such as lustfulness and untruthfulness, as pure is the second kind of Ignorance (Avidyaa).

3. To believe that excessive sexual indulgence is a source of happiness, whilst it really causes pain and suffering, constitutes the third variety of ignorance (Avidyaa).

4. To consider dead material things as possessed of soul is the fourth kind of ignorance (Avidyaa)." YOGA SHAASTRA , Saadhanpada.

This fourfold incorrect knowledge is called **Avidya** or ignorance. The reverse of it , viz., to look upon what is temporal as temporal; what is eternal as eternal; what is pure as pure; what is impure as

PAGE 274

Impure, pain as pain, pleasure as pleasure, what is soul-less as soul-less, what is soul-possessing as soul-possessing, is called **Vidyaa** or knowledge.

That by which the true nature of things is known is not revealed and, instead, a false conception of things is formed, is called ignorance.

Virtuous life and contemplation of God are called **Avidyaa** (or not knowledge), because they are only bodily acts and mental processes. They are not knowledge. Therefore, it is said in the above mantra that without pure life and contemplation of God no one can ever conquer death. Virtuous acts, the worship of one true God and correct knowledge lead to **Emancipation**, whilst an immoral life, the worship of idols (or other things or persons in place of God), and false knowledge are the cause of the **Bondage** of the soul. No man can ever, for a single moment be, free from actions, thoughts and knowledge. Performance or righteous acts, as truthfulness in speech, and the renunciation of sinful acts, as untruthfulness, alone are the means of Salvation.

2. Who cannot obtain Emancipation?

A.~ One who is in Bondage.

Q. Who is in bondage?

A.~ One who is sunk in sin and ignorance.

3. Are Bondage and Emancipation natural to souls or acquired?

A.~ Acquired, because if they be natural they would be permanent.

Q. "The soul being Brahma (God) is really neither ever veiled by ignorance, nor born. It is neither in bondage nor need it devise any means for its emancipation, neither it desires to be emancipated nor is it ever emancipated. How can it be emancipated when it was never in bondage?" GAURPADIYA KARIKA, 2: 32. What is your answer to this?

PAGE 275

A.~ This statement of the Neo-Vedaantists is not true, because the soul being finite by nature is veiled and takes on a body which is popularly called its birth. It is also in bondage, because it suffers from the consequences of its sins and thinks out means to escape from sin and suffering and consequent bondage, and desires to free itself from pain. Being emancipated it "sees" the All-blissful God and thereby attains final beatitude (i.e., obtains salvation).

4. The soul is pure and untainted.

These are all the properties of the body and mind - the internal organ of thought - not of the soul.

The soul is free from sin and virtue. It is merely a witness of what the body and the mind do. Heat and cold are felt by the body.

A.~ The body and mind - the internal organ of thought - are material, hence dead and inert. They can never fell heat or cold, nor therefore the consequent pain or pleasure. It is conscious beings (who possess souls) such as men, who feel heat and cold when a hot or a cold substance comes in contact with their bodies. Even the praanas - the nervauric forces - are devoid of consciousness.

They can feel neither hunger nor thirst. It is the soul possess of nervauric forces that feels the sensations of hunger or thirst. Similarly, the manas - internal organ of thought - is also devoid of consciousness. It can feel neither sorrow nor joy, but it is through the manas that the soul feels pleasure or pain, and joy or sorrow.

Similarly, through the organs of sensations, such as the ears, the soul receives different sensations, such as of hearing, and consequently feels pleasure or pain, just according to the nature of those sensations. It is the soul that thinks, knows, remembers and feels its individuality through the organs of thought, discernment, memory and individuality. It is, therefore, the soul that enjoys or suffers. Just as it is the man that uses his sword to kill another who is punished and not the sword, similarly, it is the soul that, by the use of such instruments as the body, the bodily senses, the organs of thought, the nervauric forces, does acts - good or evil - and consequently it is the soul alone that reaps the fruits thereof - joy or sorrow.

The soul is not a witness of acts. It is the actual doer that reaps the fruits of deeds done. The One Incomparable Supreme Spirit alone is the Witness. It is the soul that does acts and is, therefore, naturally engrossed by them. The soul is not God and, consequently, it is not the witness of acts (but the actual doer).

PAGE 276

5. The soul is the image of God..

..and just as when a mirror gets broken, the image (in it) ceases to exist but it does in no way affect the object (whose image it was), similarly, the soul as the image of God lasts only so long as the antahkaran (internal organ of thought - mind) - the reflecting medium - endures, once that disappears, the soul no longer in bondage is emancipated - Is it not so?

A.~ It is a childish idea, because before you can have an image, you must have two things that possess form and object and a reflecting medium - distinct from each other. Take an example. The face and mirror are both essential to the formation of the image of the face. Both have form and are visible. They are also separate form each other. Had they not been so, there would have been no image. God being All-pervading and Formless it is impossible for Him to have an image.

Q.But do you not see the all-pervading, formless ether reflected in clear deep water. Similarly, God can be reflected in a pure mind. Therefore, it is that the soul is called chidaabhaas - the image of God.

A.~ This is again childish babble; ether being invisible no one can ever see it. How can anyone see ether with his eyes when he cannot even see air which grosser than ether?

6. Is it not ether, then, that you see in the sky above, blue and dusty?

A.~ No.

Q. What is it then?

A.~ It is the fine particles of earth, water and Agni (in the atmosphere). The blue colour is mainly due to the particles of water in the atmosphere that come down as rain, while the dusty appearance is due to the particles of dust which is carried up from the earth and floats about the air. It is these things that are seen and reflected in water or in a mirror, and not ether.

Q. Just as we find such terms as Ghataakaasha - the ether enclosed by a pot - Mataakaaha - the ether enclosed by a house - Meghaakaasha - the ether enclosed by a cloud -, used to denote various parts of ether; and after the pot, etc., are broken, the particular parts of ether cease to exist, only the universal ether is

PAGE 277

left; in the same way Brahma (God in Passive state) is I'shwara (God in active state) or the soul according as He is spoken of in relation to universe or to the antahkaran - internal organ of thought.

A.~ This is also a foolish argument. The ether (of the pot or the house, etc.) never perishes, nor is it ever shatttered into pieces. It is the pot or the house that is broken or pulled down and comes into pieces. You never hear of a person saying to another "Bring me the ether of a pot." He always says, "Bring me a pot." Your argument, therefore, is not valid.

Q. As the fish and other marine creatures swim about in the sea or as the birds fly about in air, so do all antahkarnas move about in Brahma - truly conscious Being Who is All-pervading like ether. They are by themselves devoid of consciousness, but by virtue of Divine presence in them they become conscious, just as a piece of iron becomes hot by coming in contact with fire. The antahkarnas like the fish and birds move about, whilst Brahma is stationary like space. There can, therefore, be no harm in believing that the soul in fact is Brahma (God).

A.~ Even this illustration of yours is not right, because of the soul be the image or reflection of the All-pervading Brahma in the antahkaran, why does it not possess such attributes as omniscience? If you say that it is not omniscient because of he limitations imposed upon the soul by the limiting medium, is Brahma then subject to obstruction, limitation and division or is He Indivisible? If you say that He is Indivisible, no limiting medium or veil can stand in His way. Why should not the soul then be omniscient?

On the other hand, if you say that the soul - which is really no other than Brahma, - forgets its divine nature and seemingly but not really moves about with antahkaran, then part of Brahma which the antahkaran (organ of thought) - veiling medium - gets to, will become subject to doubt, and distrust, and destitute of true knowledge, whilst that part, which it leaves behind, will become omniscient, pure and blissfull. Thus this antahkaran will disturb the whole universal Brahma, and consequently bondage (ignorance) and emancipation (knowledge) would become of momentary duration. Besides, if your assertion be true, no one should be able to remember whatever one had seen or heard in the past, because that Brahma who had seen or heard it had

PAGE 278

ceased to exist (on account of the antahkaran being in a state of constant motion and thus shifting form place to place. It follows, therefore, that God (Brahma) can never become the soul, nor can the soul become God. They can never be one. They are always distinct from each other.

..(attributing the properties of one thing to another), in other words, the substitution of on thing for another. The substitution of the world and worldly objects for Brahma, that is, to speak of them as if they were different from Brahma, is simply meant to help a seeker after truth to understand the subject with ease. In reality everything is Brahma.

A.~ Who is it that makes this substitution?

Q.The soul

A.~ What is the soul?

Q.The conscious entity limited by antahkaran.

A.~ Is it the same Brahma or something different?

Q. The same Brahma.

A.~ Was it Brahma Himself then Who formed an erroneous conception of the world (according to the Vedantis, there is really no world, it is only delusion)?

Q. Even if it be Brahma who did it, it can do Him no harm.

A.~ Why is not he who forms an erroneous conception of things wrong then?

Q. No, because whatsoever is conceived in mind or spoken with the tongue is all false.

A.~ Is not Brahma, then - author of false ideas and false speech - false and fallible?

Q. Never mind that, let him be so, Our object is simply to prove our position.

A.~ Oh, ye false Vedaantis ! You have made Brahma (God), whose all desires and conceptions are truth, the author of falsehood. Is it not the cause of your degradation? In which Upanishad, aphorism or Veda is it written that Brahma is untruthful in thought or speech? Your conduct is like that of a burglar in the proverb

PAGE 279

which says, "A thief sitting in judgement on the magistrate." It is right for the magistrate to punish a burglar but it is unnatural and wrong if a burglar tries to punish the magistrate. Similarly, you, who are untruthful both in mind and speech, try in vain to lay your faults on God. If a part of Brahma be untruthful in word, deed or thought, the whole Brahma would be the same, because He is uniform. His nature, knowledge and action are all true.

Untruthfulness in word, deed or thought is your failing but not of Brahma. What you call knowledge is really ignorance, and what you call your adhyaropa is also false, because you call yourselves Brahma, when you are not Brahma, and regard the soul as Brahma what is not Brahma. Now what are these if not false ideas? He who is Omnipresent, can never become subject to limitations, ignorance and bondage. It is the soul that is limited by time and space, finite in nature, knowledge and power, but not the Omniscient, Omnipresent Brahma.

BONDAGE AND EMANCIPATON

8. What is emancipation?

A.~ That condition in which the souls are freed.

Q. Freed from what?

A.~ What they desire to be freed from.

Q. What do they desire to be freed from?

A.~ From pain (or misery)

Q. Being freed from pain what do they attain and where do they live?

A.~ They attain happiness and live in God.

Q. What re the causes of Bondage and Emancipation?

A.~ Obedience to the Will of God, dissociation from sin, ignorance, bad company, evil influences and bad habits, the practice of truthfulness in speech, the promotion of public good, even-handed justice, righteousness and the advancement of knowledge, worship of God - Glorification, Prayer and Communion -in other words,

PAGE 280

the practice of yoga, study and tuition or instruction of others, and advancement of knowledge by righteous efforts, the employment of best means towards the accomplishment of one's object, the regulation of one's conduct in strict accordance with the dictates of even-handed justice which is righteousness, and so on are the means of obtaining Emancipation, whilst the reverse of these, disobedience to the Divine Will and the like lead to Bondage.

9. Does the soul in the state of Emancipation keep its individuality or is it absorbed (into God)?

A.~ It lives and keeps its individuality.

Q.Where does it live?

A.~ In God.

Q. Where is God? And does an emancipated soul remain in some definite place or go about just as it desires?

A.~ It remains its innate power, activity and attributes but no physical body. It is said in the Shatapatha Braahmana:-
"An emancipate soul has no physical body or bodily organs but it retains its pure natural attributes and powers. By virtue of its innate powers, an emancipate soul has the principle of hearing when it wants to hear, the principle of touch when it wants to feel, the principle of sight when it wishes to see, the principle of taste when it desires to taste, the principle of smell when it wants to smell, the principle of thought for thinking, the principle of

PAGE 281

judgement for ascertaining truth, the principle of memory for remembering, the principle of individuality for feeling its individuality. It can possess this so-called - composed of the principles of sensation and thought, etc., at its will. Just as when the soul is embodied, it depends upon its physical body and bodily organs to carry out its will, so does it enjoy the bliss of Emancipation through the use of its innate power.

10. What is the nature of this power, and of how many kinds is it?

A.~ Really it is of one kind, but it may be said to consist of the following 24 varieties:-
1. Strength; 2. Energy; 3. Attraction; 4. Suggestion; 5. Motion; 6. Intimidation; 7. Analytic power; 8. Skill; 9. Courage; 10. Memory; 11. Discernment; 12. Desire; 13. Love; 14. Hatred; 15. Association; 16. Dissociation; 17. Dividing power; 18. Combining power; 19. Power of sight; 20. Hearing; 21. Touch; 22. Taste; 23. Smell; 24. Knowledge.

By the help of these very powers the soul attains and enjoys happiness even in Emancipation. If the soul, when emancipated, were to be absorbed into Brahma, who would then enjoy the bliss of emancipation. Those who regard the dissolution of soul as emancipation are no doubt immersed in ignorance, because the Emancipation of the soul consists in its exemption from all sin and suffering and in the enjoyment of perfect bliss in the All-pervading, All-blissful, Infinite, Omnipotent God. Mark! What the Vedaant Shaastra says on the subject:-

"According to Baadri the soul as well as the mind - the principle of thought - is present in Emancipation." VEDAANT SHAATRA 4: 4, 10. In other words, Baadri, otherwise known as Paraashar, the father of Vyaasa, does not believe in the absorption of the soul (into God) nor in its dissolution, nor in that to the principle of thought in the state of Emancipation. Similarly, the great teacher Jaimini holds that "an emancipated soul possesses the principle of thought

PAGE 282

as well as well as the spiritual or subtle body - the principles of sensation, and the nervauric forces. The soul and the principle of thought, etc., are not absent during emancipation."VEDAANT SHAASTRA 4: 4, 11.

Again the sage Vyaasa believes "both in the presence and absence of these powers in the state of emancipation, in other words, he holds that the soul exists and retains all its powers that are pure, whilst unholiness, sinfulness, pain and ignorance and the like are absent." VEDAANT SHAASTRA 4: 4,12

"That condition of the soul in which it possesses a pure manas - principle of thought, the five principles of sensation, and in which the deliberations of the principle of discernment are true and constant, is called the supreme state or Emancipation." KATHOPANISHAD, 2: 6, 10.

"That Supreme Spirit, Who is free from sin, decay and death, pain and sorrow, hunger and thirst, Whose thoughts and desires are the very essence of truth, should be sought after. It is by contact with the Divine Spirit that an emancipated soul attains to all the conditions it wishes for, and realizes all its desires, and it is through the knowledge of the Supreme Soul that it learns the means of salvation and the ways of self-purificcation." CHHAANDOGYA UPANISHAD, 8:7, 1.

So this emancipated soul sees al through pure spiritual eyes, and a pure manas and thereby enjoys extreme bliss. The soul that rests in the All-Glorious, Supreme Being - Omnipresent, Omniscient Spirit, the Inward Controller of all - Whom all men of

PAGE 283

Learning, imbued with piety and desirous of obtaining salvation, worship and adore (by the practice of yoga), enjoys the beatitude of emancipation. Verily it obtains all its heart's desires and whatsoever worlds and states it wishes to attain to. The emancipated soul leaves off its mortal coil and roam about in space in the All-pervading God by the help of the Spiritual body.

As long as the soul is embodied, it can never be free from worldly pains and sorrows. Prajapati said to Indra, 'Listen, O thou who art wealthy and worthy of great respect! This physical body is mortal. It is in the jaws of death very much like a goat under the jaws of a lion (meaning that death can overtake this body at anytime). It is the dwelling place of the formless and immoral soul, which is, therefore, constantly afflicted with pain or engrossed in pleasure, because an embodied soul can never be free form worldly joys or sorrows. On the other hand, the un-embodied, emancipated soul, that lives in God, can neither be affected by joys nor by sorrows. It continually enjoys perfect bliss.

11. Does the soul, once being emancipated, ever become subject to birth and death again?

It is said in the Chhaandogya Upanishac:-
"The soul after being emancipated never comes back again into this world." CHHAANDOGYA 8:7, 1.

"Again it is written in the Vedaant Shaastras:
"The Veda declares there is no coming back, no coming back declares the Veda."VEDANT SHAASTRA 4: 4, 33.

The Gita also says:-
"That Supreme State from which it - the soul - never falls back (into this world) is mine."

It is clear from these quotations that that alone is called (the state of) Emancipation from which the soul never returns into this world. What is your view?

PAGE 284

A.~ It is not true that the emancipated soul never returns to this world because the Veda contradicts this view.
"Whose name should we hold sacred; Who is that All-glorious, Resplendent Being Who is imperishable among all the perishable things; Who having made us enjoy the bliss of emancipation again invests us with bodies and thereby gives us the pleasure of seeing our parents? It is the All-glorious, Eternal, Immortal, All-pervading, Supreme Being Whose name we should hold sacred. He, it is, Who helps us to enjoy the bliss of Emancipation and then bring us back into this world, clothes us with bodies, and thereby gives us the pleasure of seeing our parents. The same Divine Spirit it is Who regulates the period of Emancipation and lords over all." RIG VEDA 1:24, 2.

Again says the Saankhya Shaastra,
"Souls live in Bondage and Emancipation as they are at the present time. There is no everlasting (Atyanta) Bondage or emancipation." SAANKYA 1:159.

Q. But the Niyaaya Shaastra says:-
*"(Atyanta) Everlasting freedom from pain alone is called Emancipation, because it is only freedom form false ideas, ignorance, vices (such as covetousness) and from engrossment in sensual gratification and contraction of evil habits, and consequent immunity from birth and pain, that brings about Emancipation which is everlasting.**

A.~ The word Atyanta does not necessarily always mean everlasting, because we very often say that such a man is

---

* Even the word Everlasting in English does not mean unending, it sometimes used to express the same idea as atyanta, i.e., extreme - Tr.

PAGE 285

in atyanta pain or enjoys atyanta pleasure. Now here atyanta means extreme. What we, therefore, mean is that that man is in extreme pain or enjoys extreme pleasure. Similarly the word atyanta in the above quotations means extreme, not everlasting or etenal.

12. If the soul returns to this world form the state of emancipation, what is the duration of Emancipation then?

A.~ "The emancipated soul returns to this world from the state of emancipation in the Omnipresent God till after the end of the Grand-Dissolution (Mahaakalpa) and, thereafter, parts with that bliss and is again born into this world." MUNDAK UPANISHAD 3: 2, 6.
The period covered by Grand-Dissolution is calculated thus:-

Time is first divided into four **yugas** or cycles:-
Satyuga (Golden age)……..1,728,000 years.
Dvaaparyuga (Silver age)……1,296,000 years
Tretaayuga (Bronze age)……864,000 years
Kaliyuga (Iron or dark age)……432,000 years
---------- -

Total ……. 4,320,000 years

Thus 4,320,000 years make one **Chaturyugi**

2,000 **Chaturyugi** is 8,640, 000,000 years and is equal to an **Ahoratra** (Day and Night)

30 **Ahoratras** equal one **Maasa** (month)

12 **Maasas** equal one **Prantakal** (Grand-dissolution).

Thus, the duration of **Emancipation** = 100 x 12x 30 x 2000 x 4,320,000 = 311, 040,000,000,000 years.

Q. All others writers teach and all the world believes that the emancipation is that condition from which no souls returns to this world and becomes subject to births and deaths.

PAGE 286

A.~ This view can never be true. Firstly, when the powers of the soul, its instruments (such as body and bodily organs), and its means are all finite, how could the reward extend over an infinite period? Secondly, the soul does not possess infinite capacity, infinite means and infinite activity to enjoy infinite bliss, how could it then enjoy Everlasting happiness? How could the end be eternal when the means to accomplish it are non-eternal? Thirdly, if no souls came back from the state of emancipation, the world should become bereft of them.

13. No, there can be no dearth of souls, because the emancipated souls are replaced by new ones that God creates.

A.~

1. Firstly, if that be the case the soul would become non-eternal (mortal), because a thing that is created must perish. Therefore, according to your own view the soul even on obtaining emancipation would perish, hence emancipation becomes non-eternal.
2. Secondly, in the place wherein emancipated souls live - otherwise called Heaven - there will be a great deal of hustling, crowding and jostling, as there will be no end of increase in the population for the simple reason that immigration will be so great, whilst emigration will be nil.
3. Thirdly, there can be no perception of pain. For example, you would not know sweet taste from bitter or bitter from sweet, if you would only taste one of them - sweet or bitter - all your life-time, because it is only by comparing the flavours of things possessing opposite tastes that we form an idea of both. If a man were always to eat and drink sweet things only, he would not enjoy them so much as one who tastes all kinds of food.
4. Fourthly, if God were to give the soul unlimited happiness as the fruit if its actions that are limited (finite), His justice would be destroyed. A wise man does not put on his man's shoulders a load heavier than he can carry. If a man can only carry a load of eighty pounds and his master puts a weight of eight hundred pounds on his head, he is certainly worthy of censure. Similarly, it would not be right for God to load the soul, possessed of finite power and finite knowledge, with everlasting happiness.
5. Fifthly, if you say that God creates new souls, the material out of which He creates them will eventually run short; because a bank, however wealthy it may be that has a constant drain on it, but has no income, is sure to become bankrupt sooner or later. It follows, therefore, that this arrangement

   PAGE 287

   alone - viz., Emancipation and then return from it - is the right one.

6. Sixthly, there is no man who would prefer life-imprisonment (or hanging) to imprisonment for a shorter term. There being no return from Emancipation, it differs from life-imprisonment only in this respect that one has not to work there.

   With regard to Emancipation as absorption into God (which is the plea of salvation according to some people)it is like death by drowning one-self into the sea.

14. The soul can enjoy eternal bliss..

and be emancipated everlastingly just as God lives in enjoyment of Perfect and Everlasting Bliss and is Eternally free from worldly joy and sorrow, pleasure and pain.

A.~ God is infinite by nature, His essence, powers, attributes are all infinite. He can, therefore, never be subject to ignorance, pain and bondage, etc. The soul, even when emancipated, remains, finite in knowledge, though pure in nature. Its attributes, powers and activity all remain finite. It can, therefore, never be like God.

15. This being the case, Emancipation is no better than birth and death. It is useless, therefore, to endeavour to obtain it.

A.~ It is not like birth and death. The bliss of Emancipation extends over the period of Creations and Dissolutions for thirty-six thousand times. Is uninterrupted happiness with perfect absence of

pain extending over such a long period trifling? You eat and drink to-day, though you know you will be hungry again before the day is out. Why do you try to appease your hunger and quench your thirst then? If it is considered necessary to endeavour to appease hunger and quench thirst, acquire worldly possessions, and temporal power and fame, have a wife and children and the like, why is it not the same for emancipation? Though death is certain, yet we work in order to live. In like manner, though the return from emancipation is certain, still it is extremely desirable that we should do our best to obtain it.

16. What are the means of obtaining Emancipation?

A.~ Some of them have already been mentioned but the special means are the following:-
(1)

1. Let him who desires emancipation be emancipated now in this life. In other words, let him renounce all those evil or sinful

PAGE 288

actions, such as untruthfulness in speech, that lead to misery and pain. Let him, instead, always live a virtuous life and do such good deeds (e.g., veracity in speech) as lead to happiness. Let him, who wants to escape from pain and enjoy happiness, abandon sin and practice righteousness; because sin is the cause of pain and suffering, whilst righteousness begets happiness.

2. Let him always associate with men of great learning and piety, and thereby studiously know truth from untruth, virtue from vice, and right from wrong.
3. Let him ascertain that the body comprises five systems (koshas - also translated into Sheaths by some writers):-
(i) The Physical system which comprises all the tissues and fluids of the body from bone to skin. It is the gross physical body or system.
(ii) The **Vital** system which comprises the five great vital or nervauric forces:-
[1] **Praana** or the Expiratory force which helps to draw the air out.
[2] **Apaana** or the Inspiratory force which helps to draw the air into the lungs.
[3] **Samaana** or the Solar-sympathetic force which is situated in the center of the abdomen, and serves to carry rasa, i.e., chyle -the essence of food - and blood to all parts of the body.
[4]**Udaana** or Glosso-pharyngeal force which helps to draw the food down the throat into the stomach, etc., and give rise to strength and energy.
[5] **Vyaana** or the Motor- muscular force which helps the soul to move or do anything - the cause of motion.

(iii) The Mento- motor system which comprises the principle of volition, the principle of individuality, and the five principles of action, viz., articulation, grasp, locomotion, reproduction and excretion.

PAGE 289

(iv) The Mento-sensory system which comprises the principle of judgement, the principle of memory, and the five principles of sensation, viz., sight, hearing, taste, smell and touch. It is through these that the soul carries on such processes, as thinking and the like.(v) The Spirituo-emotional system which comprises love, cheerfulness, happiness - great or little. The elementary matter called prakritiis the medium through which the soul entertains these feelings.

The above-mentioned five systems are the media through which the soul acquires all kinds of knowledge, carries on all the mental processes, and performs all its actions.

4. Let him realize that there are three states or phases of the soul:-
(1) Wakeful phase.
(2) Dreaming phase.
(3) Slumbering phase, sound sleep or sushupti in which there is no consciouness of the outside world, nor are there any dreams.

17. How many kinds of bodies are there?

5. Let him know that there are four kinds of bodies:-
[1] **The gross physical body** which is seen and felt.

[2] **The subtle (spiritual or astral) body** which comprises seventeen principles:- five nervauric or vital principles, five principles of sensation, and five physical principles such as Prithivi (solid), apaah (air), agni (heat/electricity), etc., in subtle form, and the principles of volition and discernment. It also accompanies the soul in all its births and deaths. It is of two kinds:-
a. Material which is derived from the fine particles of subtle matter.
b.Spiritual or natural which comprises the natural powers and attributes of the soul.
Both these remain with the soul in the state of Emancipation, and it is through them that the soul enjoys the bliss of emancipation.

PAGE 290

[3] **The casual body** (kaarana shrira) which consists of the elementary matter - prakriti. It is all-pervading and therefore, common to all souls. It is through this that the soul enters into the state called sound dreamless sleep.

[4] **The turya (superior) body** is that through which the soul is absorbed in the contemplation of the All-blissful Supreme Spirit in the state of samaadhi (superior condition) developed by the practice of yoga and perfect concentration. The energy born of this pure body - the product of the pure influence of the superior condition - is of great service to the soul in Emancipation.

The soul itself is distinct from all the above-mentioned systems, states, and bodies. That the soul is distinct from states is evident from the fact that when a man dies, everyone says that the soul has passed out of the body. The soul alone is the prompter, the possessor, the seer, the doer, and the reaper of the fruits of its actions. Know him, who says that the soul is not the doer nor the reaper, to be ignorant and destitute of reason; because all these bodies, etc., are by themselves dead and inert.

They can never feel any pain nor pleasure, nor can they do anything - good or evil , though it is true that the soul in conjunction with them does sinful and virtuous deeds and reaps the fruits thereof - pain or pleasure.

When the senses come in contact with the external objects, and the manas - the principle of attention - acts on conjunction with the senses, and the soul with the manas, it incites the mervauric forces into action - good or evil, the soul is then said to be directed outwardly, and at that very moment feelings of happiness, cheerfulness and fearlessness

spring up in the mind from within when the act is good, while those of fear, shame and distrust when it is evil.

It is the voice of the Omnisicient Divine spirit - the Inward Controller of all from within. Verily he alone who follows this voice and acts accordingly - enjoys the bliss of Emancipation. Whosoever goes against the dictates of this voice suffers from misery and pain - the result of bondage.

PAGE 291

The above constitutes the first means of Salvation.

(2) **Vairaagya** is next. It consists in the practice of truth and renunciation of untruth after carefully discriminating right from wrong. In other words, it consists in acquiring the knowledge of the nature, properties, and characteristics of all things, from earth to Heaven (literally God), in assiduously obeying God's commandments and worshipping Him, in never going against His Will and in making nature subservient to oneself.

(3)**Shatak Sampatti** - the performance of six kinds of acts:-

- **Sama** consists in restraining one's soul and manas (mind) from sin and temptation, and in always practising righteousness.
- **Dama** consists in keeping the body and the senses aloof from doing evil deeds, such as adultery, and in practising self-control and living a chaste life.
- **Uprati** consists in never associating oneself with the wicked.
- **Titiksha** consists in becoming deaf to all worldly applause or censure, and indifferent to profit or loss, joy or sorrow, and in throwing oneself heart and soul into the pursuit of the ways and means of Emancipation.
- **Samaadhaana** is the concentration of mind.

(4) **Mumukshatwa** is perfect devotion to and unflinching love for nothing but emancipation and the means of obtaining it like a hungry or thirsty man who desires nothing else but food and drink. These are the four saadhanaas or means of attaining Emancipation. Next come what are called **Anubandhaas** (subsidiary means) so called because they come after the saadhanaas or means.

Anubandhaas (subsidiary means) are four in number:-

1. **Adhikaari** is the worthiness to become a recepticle unto the Divine spirit.

   PAGE 292

2. **Sambandha** is the thorough knowledge of the Veda and Shaastra and of (the means of emancipation) - another name for seeing God - explained therein, and the realization thereof.
3. **Vishayee** is making the realization of God - the subject matter of all Shaastraas - as the one object of one's life.
4. **Prayojana** is the exemption from all misery and pain, and he perfect enjoyment of the great bliss of Emancipation.

After **anubandhaas** (subsidiary means) comes **Shravana Chatushthayaa**. It is also four kinds:-

1. **Shravana** is to listen most attentively with calm mind to the discourse or speech of a learned man and more so if the subject be Divine science, because it is the most abstruse and the subtlest of all the sciences.
2. **Manana** is thinking over what one has heard in retirement, and in removing doubts if there be any by questioning the speaker. Questions may sometimes be asked even in the middle of a discourse if the speaker and the audience think proper.
3. **Nidhidhyaasana**. When all doubts are cleared after hearing a discourse and thinking over it, let the enquirer enter into the superior condition and see for himself by the help of yoga whether it is the same as he had heard and reasoned out or not. This is called Nidhidhyaasana.
4. **Saakhshaata Karana** is the resulting correct knowledge of the nature, properties and characteristics of the desired object.

Let him (i.e., the seeker after Salvation) always renounce qualities and habits that are the result of the darkness of mind (Tamoguna), such as anger, uncleanliness - both physical and mental - indolence, and infatuation. Let him also hold himself aloof from Rajoguna, i.e., passions, such as jealousy, hatred, lust, conceit and restlessness of spirit, and instead, acquire Satoguna, i.e., good qualities, such as tranquility of mind, gently disposition, purity, knowledge and ideas.

PAGE 293

Let him be friends with the happy, kind to those who are in pain and distress, love those who are good and virtuous, but neither love nor hate those who are wicked. Let the seeker after salvation always devote at least two hours daily to meditation of devotional exercises and mentally see all the subtle principles within the body, such as the principle of thought, etc.

We are conscious beings. Therefore, it is that we can acquire and possess knowledge, and see exactly whatever state the mind - the manas - is in, as for instance tranquil or restless, happy or sorrowful. Similarly, we are conscious of the doings of the senses, can remember what we have seen before, are cognizant of different ideas and objects at different times; attract and sustain others and yet we are distinct from all of them; otherwise the soul could never be a free-agent, nor the prompter and sustainer of the principle of thought, the senses, the body and the bodily organs.

In this world there are five kinds of **Klesha** (pain):-

- **Ignorance**. It has already been described (in the beginning of this Chapter).
- **Asmitaa** is to regard the principle of discernment and soul as one and the same thing.
- **Raaga** is the love of pleasure.
- **Dvesha** is aversion to pain.
- **Abhinivesha** is the fear of death. All living beings have continually the desire to live for ever and do not wish to die

Let every man free himself from these five kinds of klesha (pain) by means of the practice of yoga and the acquisition of spiritual knowledge, the realization of God, and enjoy the supreme bliss of Emancipation.

19. The kind of salvation you believe in is quite different from that of the rest of the world.

Now the Jainees hold that salvation consists is going to Shivapuri and sitting there quietly on a platform called Moksha Shilla (the stone of salvation); the salvation of the Christians consists in going to the fourth Heaven wherein they

PAGE 294

enjoy themselves by singing, playing and putting on fine dresses, and marrying and fighting; whilst the Mohamedans believe that salvation consists in going to the seventh Heaven, Vaama Maargis to Shripur, Shaivites to Kailaash, Vaishnavites to Baikunth, and Gosaaeens to Golaka and enjoying life by means of beautiful wives, pretty dresses and houses, nice foods and drinks. The Pouraaniks (the followers of the Puraanaas0 believe in five kinds of salvation:-

1. *Residence in the same world with God.*
2. *Living with God as His younger brother.*
3. *Becoming like God in nature.*
4. *Living near God as a servant lives near his master.*
5. *Intimate union with God.*

Last of all, the Vedaantis hold that salvation consists in the absorption of the soul into God.

A.~ We shall discuss the different kinds of salvation which the Jainees, the Mohamedans, and the Christians believe in the twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth chapters, respectively, of this book. The salvation of the Vaama Maargis, which consists in nothing else but eating meat and drinking wine, hearing love songs and enjoying themselves with women, is no better than what you get in this world. They look upon all men as Mahaadeva or Vishnu, and all women as Paaravati or Lakshmi and enjoy themselves with each other.

Now this is no better than what the princes and other wealthy people do in this world except what they say that there will be no disease in heaven and that you will always remain young, which can never be true; because wherever there is enjoyment of sensual pleasures, there is disease, and wherever there is disease, there is old age. The puraaniks should be told that their five kinds of salvation are attainable even to animals, insects and worms without any effort on their part.

Take for example, the first kind of their salvation. All these worlds wherein all living beings exist are God's Who lives in all of them, hence they live in the same world with God. Salvation number (2) is also possessed by the soul without any effort on its part; because being smaller than God and both being conscious entities it is like a younger brother to God. (3) As regards the third kind of salvation, being a spirit and possessing,

PAGE 295

consciousness and being pure in nature the soul is like God, but it can never be like Him in infinite power, infinite activity and infinite attributes. As regards salvation number (4), God being Omnipresent all souls are near Him, hence all of them already possess this kind of salvation. The same may be said of salvation number (5). God being All-pervading, He also resides in the soul. Hence the latter is in intimate union with God.

The disintegration of the body and the soul into their component parts, which is called salvation (nirvaana) by some atheists (Buddhists), is attainable even to dogs and donkeys.

All these kinds of salvation are no salvation at all. They are really prisons, because all those people believe their respective Heavens, such as Shivpuri, the fourth Heaven, or the seventh Heaven, shripur, Kailash, Vaikunth and Golaka, to be definite worlds or places (of residence). Were their inmates to leave those places, they would lose their salvation. They are, therefore, rather like prisoners imprisoned in dark cells out of which they dare not go.

The true salvation or emancipation consists in this that the soul should go about wherever it likes without any let or hindrance, and should have no fears, doubts, or sorrows.

The union of the soul with body is called its birth, while the severance of this link is called death or dissolution.

The emancipated souls are born again in the due course of time.

20. Do you believe in the unity or the plurality of birth (of soul)?

A.~ In the plurality of births.

Why can the soul then remember what happened in its previous births and deaths?

A.~ The soul is finite in knowledge and powers. It is not the seer of the three periods of time - the past, the present and future - it cannot therefore recall its past. Besides, the manas - the principle of thought and attention - by means of which the soul knows cannot have tow ideas, i.e., of the past as well as the present - at one and the same time. Let alone things that happened in the previous life of the soul, can a man remember all that happens in this very life form the time of conception till, say, the age of five. We see and hear so many different things while we are awake, and dream of so many different things while in slumber, why can we not recall

PAGE 296

all those things when we are in deep sleep? You could never tell, if you were asked, for example, what you were doing on the ninth day of the fifth month of the thirteenth year of your life exactly at ten in the morning; which way you were looking; what the position of your head and hands was; whether your mouth was open or shut; and what you were then thinking of? When such is the case even in this life, how absurd then to question the validity of the previous existence of the soul simply because it cannot recall what happened in that life?

It is a good thing too that the soul cannot remember its past, otherwise there would have been no happiness for it. It would have died of sheer pain and mental anguish brought on by brooding over the terrible sufferings and sorrows of it past lives. No man can ever know that happened in his past lives even if he were to try to do so; because the soul's power and knowledge are limited.. God alone can know that.

21. How can the punishment, that God inflicts on the soul, reform it..
Back to contents

... when it cannot remember its past; because the punishment could prevent it from committing any further sins only if it were to know that such and such a punishment was meted out to it for such and such a sin.

A.~ How many kinds of knowledge do you believe in?

Q. *Eight kinds, such as knowledge through direct cognition, through Inference, through analogy, etc.*

A.~ Why can you not then infer the existence of the previous life of the soul form seeing different peple born and brought up under different conditions in this world such as affluence and poverty, happiness and misery, talent and idiocy, etc. Suppose a physician and a layman are taken ill. The physician at once finds out the cause that brought on the disease on him, while the layman cannot; because the former has studied Medical Science while the latter has not. But even the layman knows this much that he must have violated some law of nature - dietetic or sanitary, etc., - to bring on the disease, such as fever. Similarly, why can you not infer the pre-existence of the

soul by observing people afflicted with pain and suffering, or endowed with pleasures or joys of this world in unequal proportions - results of their actions not in the present life? If you refuse to believe in the pre-existence of the soul, how do you think it to be consistent with the justice of God

PAGE 297

to bless some with riches, power, and talent, etc., while afflict others with poverty, suffering, idiocy and the like without their having done anything - good or evil - in their previous lives to deserve them? God can be just only when He gives the soul pleasure or pain according to its good or evil deeds done in its previous lives.

Q. *The belief in the unity of birth is not inconsistent with the justice of God. He is like a Sovereign Ruler, whatsoever he does is just. He may also be likened to a gardener who implants trees big and small in his grove, some he trims, others he cuts down, others still he protects (from wind and cattle, etc.), improves and multiples. One can do whatever one likes with one/s own. In like manner, God can do whatever He likes (with His world). There is no one above Him who could punish Him or whom He should fear.*

A.~ God always desires justice and acts justly, therefore, it is that he is Great and worthy of our homage and adoration. He would not be God if He acted unjustly. A gardener who plants trees aimlessly or promenades or other places, cuts down trees that do not require cutting, multiplies those that are fit to be multiplied, and does not multiply those that are suitable for multiplying, is worthy of blame.

In like manner would God be blameworthy were He to act without a reasonable cause. It is absolutely necessary for God to act justly, because He is pure and just by nature. Should He act like a madman? He would even be beneath a good judge of this world, and would no longer be honoured. Does not a judge, in this world, who punishes the innocent and awards honour t those who have done nothing to deserve it, merit blame and forfeit his honour? God never does anything that is unjust. He, therefore, fears none.

22. God has pre-ordained all. He gives one or acts by one whatsoever He had determined before-hand to give or do.

A.~ His determination is always in accordance with the actions of the soul. Should it be otherwise, He would be unjust and guilty.

23. All men have the same amount of misery and happiness. .

The great have great cares, whilst the small have small troubles and cares. A rich merchant, for instance, has a law suit, of say 100,000 rupees, in a Court of law. He leaves his house in a palanquin

PAGE 298

(borne on the shoulders of men) for the Court on a very hot day. The ignorant, when they see him thus passing through a street, cry out "Behold the might of virtue land vice. One is comfortably sitting in the palanquin, whilst the others are bearing him on their shoulders bare-footed with a burning ground underneath and a scorching sun over head." But the wise know that as the Court is drawing nigh, the anxiety of the merchant, his doubts and fears are increasing, while the palanquin bearers are getting easier at the prospect of being soon relieved from their burden.

When at last they get to the court, the merchant thinks of going hither and thither. He soliloquizes thus "Shall I go to see by counsel or shall I see the clerk of the Court first? Shall I win or lose to-day? Oh! I wish I knew what was going to happen" and so on. The palanquin bearers, on the other hand, chat together, smoke, feel happy, and enjoy their siesta. If the merchant wins, he feels a bit happy, if he loses, he sinks into the depths of misery, whilst the palanquin bearers are affected neither one way nor the other.

They remain just as they were before the case was decided. Similarly, when a king lays himself down on his beautiful and soft bed, he does not go to sleep quicker than a labourer who falls asleep as soon as he stretches himself on uneven earth covered with stones and pebbles. The same is true of all other conditions seemingly unequal.

A.~ Only the ignorant can believe that all are equally happy or miserable. If a rich merchant and apalanquin bearer were asked to change their places with one another, the merchant would never like to become a palanquin bearer, while the latter would simply jump at the offer. Had they been equally happy or miserable, the merchant would never have refused to change his place with the palanquiin bearer, nor, would the latter have liked to become a rich merchant.

Behold the difference between the happiness and misery of the different people! One soul comes into the womb of the queen of a great righteous and learned king, whilst another in that of the wife of a poor miserable grass-cutter. One is happy and well-cared for in every way since the day of its conception, whilst the other suffers in a hundred different ways. When one is born, he is bathed with pure fragrant water, and his cord is carefully cut. He is properly fed and cared for. When he is hungry, he is given milk mixed

PAGE 299

with sugar and other necessary ingredients in proper proportions. There are servants to wait upon him, toys for him to play with, conveyances to take him out to pretty and healthy places. He is well-loved, and is happy. The other is born in a jungle, where not even water is to be had to wash him. When he is hungry and wants milk, he slapped on the face instead, cries most pitifully, but no one attends to him and so on.

The infliction of suffering or the awarding of happiness to souls, without their having previously done acts - sinful or virtuous - to deserve it, would disgrace God. Besides, if we suffer or enjoy here in this world without having previously done anything - sinful or virtuous - our going to Hell or Heaven after d4ath ought not to be dependent on our deeds done in this life, because just as God has given us pleasure or pain her without our having previously done sinful or virtuous deeds, so would He send some of us to Hell, others to Heaven just according to His pleasure.

Why should men then practice virtue. (If this logic be accepted) all would become wicked and lead sinful lives; because it is doubtful if virtue will bear any fruit. It all rests with God. He would do just as it would please Him. No one will thus fear sin which will consequently multiply, whilst virtue will decay. It follows therefore that the present birth of the soul is in accordance with its deeds - sinful and virtuous - in the past, whilst the future will be determined by its present and past modes of life - righteous or unrighteous.

24. Are souls in the bodies of men and animals of the same nature or different?

A.~ They are all of the same nature, but are pure or impure according as they are virtuous or sinful.

Q. Do the souls of men go into bodies of animals and vice versa; and do souls of men go into souls of women and vice versa?

A.~ Yes, they do. When sin predominates over virtue in a man, his soul goes into the bodies of lower animals and the like when virtue predominates over sin in a soul, it is born as a good and learned person. When sin and virtue are equal, the soul is born as an ordinary man. Sin and virtue being of three different grades - superior, medium, and inferior - men can be divided into three classes according as they are possessed of superior, medium and

PAGE 300

inferior kind of material (bodies, bodily powers, mental capacities and talents, etc.). When sin preponderates over virtue, the soul suffers the consequences of its sin in the bodies of lower animals and the like, till its sins and virtues are equalized when it is invested with a human body. Similarly, when it has enjoyed the excess of virtue over sin, it is born as an ordinary man.

The separation of the soul from the body is called death, whist its union with the body is called birth. When the soul leaves the body, it lives in the atmosphere (yama), because it is said in the Veda, "Yama,is another name for air." Thereafter the Great Judge - God - embodies that soul according to the nature of its deeds done in the previous life. Guided by God it enters the body of some living creature with air, water, food, drink or through any one of the openings of the body.

Having entered it, it gradually reaches the reproductive element, the thereby establishes itself in the womb, and is thus invested with a body and eventually born. It is clothed with a male or a female body, just as it merits a male or a female one; whilst a hermaphrodite is formed by the union of the male and the female reproductive elements in equal proportions at the same time of conception.

The soul is continually chained down to this wheel of births and deaths till by the practice of the highest virtue and complete absorption into Divine contemplation and the acquisition of the highest knowledge it obtains Emancipation. By the practice of deeds of the highest virtue, etc., it is born as a good and great personage among men; and being freed from births and deaths and the consequent pain and suffering, it enjoys perfect bliss in Emancipation till the end of the Grand-Dissolution.

25. Can Emancipation be obtained in one life or in more than one?

A.~ In more than one; because it is said in the Upanishad:-
"Verily it is only when all the knots of its heart - darkness, and ignorance - are severed, all its doubts dispelled, and when it sins no longer that the soul

PAGE 301

finds rest in that Supreme Spirit Who pervades it both within and withou." MUNDAK 2: 8.

26. Is the soul in Emancipation absorbed into God or does it retain its individuality?

A.~ It retains its separate individuality, for should it get absorbed into the Divine Spirit, who would then enjoy the bliss of Emancipation. Besides, all the hardships borne, all the efforts made and all the means employed to obtain Emancipation would become useless. Absorption of the soul into the Divine Spirit is not Emancipation but its death or annihilation. It is only the soul that obeys the will of God, follows the highest virtue, associates with the good and the great practices yoga and employs all the aforesaid means, that obtains emancipation. Says the Upanishad:-

"The soul that knows the Supreme Spirit Who is All-truth, All-knowledge and All-Bliss and resides in the very interior of the soul and the principle of discernment, finds rest in the Omnipresent Great God and thereby, being in harmony with the Indefinite Omniscient Supreme Being all its

(righteous) desires are gratified. In other words, whatever happiness it wishes for it obtains." TAITREYA ANANDVALLI 1.

27. When the soul cannot enjoy worldly happiness without a body, how could it then enjoy the bliss of Emancipation without a physical body?

A.~ We have answered this objection before, but will add that the soul enjoys the bliss of emancipation through God in the same way as it enjoys the worldly pleasures through the body. The emancipated soul roams about in the Infinite all-pervading God as it desires, sees all nature through puree knowledge, meets other emancipated souls, sees all the laws, of nature in operation, goes about in all the worlds visible and invisible, sees all objects that it comes across, the more its knowledge increases the happier it feels.

Being altogether pure, the soul acquires perfect knowledge of all hidden things in the state of Emancipation. This extreme bliss alone is called Heaven (swarga), while pursuit of worldly

PAGE 302

Desires and consequent pain and suffering are called Hell (naraka). Swarga literally means happiness. The ordinary happiness id called worldly happiness. Whilst the extreme happiness born of the realization of God is called Extraordinary happiness or Heaven (Swarga).

All men naturally desire to obtain happiness and escape form pain and misery. But as long they do not practice righteousness and renounce sin, so long they cannot obtain happiness and be freed from pain and suffering; because the effect cannot perish as long as the cause exists. It is said "All pain and suffering cease as soon as sin is destroyed just as a tree perishes when its root is cut away."

19a. Sattvic, Rajasik & Tamasic - three-fold nature of the mind.

Mark, how Manu 12: 8, 9, 25, 33, 35-38. describes the manifold course of sin and virtue:- "Let a man thus know this three-fold nature (of mind) - the highest, the mean, and the lowest degree - cultivate the disposition of the highest kind and reject the other two. Let him also bear in mind that the soul has a reward - happiness - or a punishment - pain and suffering - for his acts - mental through mind, verbal through its organs of speech, and corporeal through its physical body."

"For the corporeal sinful acts (such as theft, adultery and killing or injuring the good) a man shall assume a vegetable form; for verbal sinful acts, the form of a bird or an animal; and for sinful acts mostly mental, the lowest of human conditions."

"The quality that predominates in physical body renders the embodied soul eminently distinguished for that quality."

"The possession of true ideas by the soul is declared to be an indication of Sattva (Superior). Ignorance betokens Tamas (lowest). Passion of love and hatred signify Rajas (medium). These three attributes, i.e., Sattva, Rajas and Tamas of the Prakriti are to be found in all things."

PAGE 303

"When a man feels that there is tranquility, peacefulness, and contentment in his mind and

also his soul is pure as the purest light, let him know then that the **Sattva** predominates; whilst the **Rajas** and **Tamas** occupy a subordinate position."

"When the soul is unhappy, has no peace of mind, is restlessly engaged in the pursuit of sensual objects, let him then know that it is the **Rajas** that predominates, whilst the **Sattva** and **Tamas** are suppressed."

"When the soul and the **manas** - the principle of thought - are engaged in the headlong pursuit of worldly things, lose all sense of right and wrong, are thoroughly infatuated with sensual gratification and absolutely incapable of discussion a subject, and are extremely dull of understanding, let him understand that it is the **Tamas** that predominates in him."

"Now we shall describe at large, the various results in the highest, mean and lowest degrees that proceed from those three qualities."

"Study of the **Veda** - source of all true knowledge -, strict devotion to duty, the advancement of knowledge, the desire for purity - corporeal and spiritual, self-control, the practice of righteousness and Divine contemplation verily betoken **Sattva**."

"Spasmodic zeal, impatience, practice of unrighteous act, and habitual indulgence in sensual gratification are the signs of the

PAGE 304

preponderance of **Rajas** and the comparative suppression of the **Tamas**and **Sattva**."

"Extreme covetousness - the root of all evils - extreme indolence, stupidity and sleepiness, discontents, cruelty, atheism, i.e., want of faith in God and the **Veda**, distraction of mind, want of mental concentration, and contraction of evil habits should be looked upon by a wise man as indications of **Tamas**. It is the **Tamas**, then, that predominates whilst the **Rajas** and **Sattva** are not markedly manifest."

"Besides, whenever a man's soul feels shame, doubt and fear in having done, in doing or in going to do an act, let him know that the **Tamas** greatly preponderates in him."

"When a man seeks great fame in this world, and does not cease giving money to flatters, flunkeys, and parasites: poor though he be, let him understand that the **Rajas** preponderates in him."

"When a man's soul thirsts after knowledge, not matter where it comes from, cultivates good qualities, feels no shame in doing good actions at which it greatly rejoices, in other words is always desirous of practicing righteousness, let him know then that the **Sattva** predominates."

"The craving for sensual gratification is an index of **Tamas**, the desire for the acquisition of worldly possession, or **Rajas** and the

PAGE 305

practice of righteousness, of <SATTVA< b>. The last mentioned is superior to **Rajas**, and that in its turn is superior to **Tamas**. Now we shall describe the conditions that each of these

qualities -**Sattva, Rajas** and **Tamas** - leads to:-

"Those endowed with **Sattava** attain to the state of the learned, godly men. Those, who are possessed of **Rajas**, become men, while those immersed in **Tamas** fall into the condition of lower orders."

"Vegetables (as trees), worms and insects, fish, snakes, tortoise, cattle, and deer, and like, are the forms which the lowest degree of **Tamas** leads to."

"Elephants, horses, extremely stupid and dull persons, men of dirty habits and uncouth speech and manners, ferocious animals, such as lions, wolves and boars, re the forms that proceed from the mean degree of **Tamas**."

"Flatterers,* beautiful birds, braggarts, cruel blood-thirsty men, and those who drink wine and other intoxicants habitually and are dirty in their habits, are the conditions which proceed from the highest degree of **Tamas**."

"Fencers (cudgel players, etc.), gardeners, sailors, acrobats, armed servants and those who are addicted to drinking and gambling result from the **Rajas** of the lowest degree."

"Rulers, men of the governing class (statesmen, soldiers, etc.), king's chaplains, controversialists, ambassadors, lawyers, judges,

–

---

*Those who make poetical compositions, etc., in praise of other in order to flatter them.

PAGE 306

heads of the army and the like are occasioned by the **Rajas** of the medium degree."

"Singers, musicians, men of great wealth and resource, companions or associates of the great and good men of vast learning or those who wait upon them, and women of great beauty and physical charms are caused by the Rajas of the highest quality."

"Those who are strictly devoted to their duties, truth and righteousness, masters of their passions, altruistic teachers of humanity - **Sanyaasis**, teachers of the Veda, aeronauts, astronomers, physicians or hygienist, i.e., those who devote themselves to the science and art of the perfect development of the human body, proceed from the **Sattva** of the lowest degree."

"Philanthropists, seers of the **Veda**, godly learned men, great scholars of the **Veda**, professors of the science, of electricity, astronomy, geology, etc. (literally, the science of time), those who possess true knowledge and power which they use for the good of others, and great Teachers result from the **Sattva** of the medium degree.

"Masters of all four Vedas, masters of all the sciences and arts, who invent (or construct) air ships and such machines, those who are embodiments of righteousness and wisdom, those who acquire control over the elementary* result from the **Sattva** of the highest degree."

"The ignorant, the basest among men who indulge in their sensual appetites, renounce the practice of righteousness and the performance of their duties and lead sinful lives assume

the basest forms and thereby suffer various afflictions."

---

*Literally atoms and first stage after their combination. -Tr.

PAGE 307

Thus whatsoever act a man sows by virtue of the **Sattva, Rajas** and **Tamas**, the same shall he reap. Those who are emancipated are beyond the pale of these three qualities. Let every man, therefore, endeavor to become great yogi (altruistic teacher) by the practice of **yoga**, and employ himself in the pursuit of those means that lead to **Emanicapation**.

"Let a man restrain his mind from the doing of acts that proceed from **Rajas** and **Tamas** and thereafter even from those that result from **Sattva**, and become imbued with purity and such other good qualities."

" Let him then withdraw his mind from the senses, aim it at righteousness, and make it concentrate on God. This withdrawal of the mind from all things, and concentrating it on one point is called **yoga**."

"After the mind is withdrawn and concentrated, the soul is centered in God - the Seer of all - and finds rest in Him." YOGA I: 2, 3.

Let a man practice all the above described means of **Emancipation** and understand that "Exemption from pain which is of three kinds - that from physical disorders, hunger and thirst, etc., that from other living beings and that from natural causes such as excessive heat or cold, or excessive or deficient rain, or from the restlessness of mind and the senses - and the consequent attainment of **Emancipation** is the highest work." SAANKHYA SHASTRA, 1:1.

END OF CHAPTER 9

CHAPTER 10

CONDUCT - DESIRABLE and UNDESIRABLE; DIET -PERMISSIBLE and FORBIDDEN.

PAGE 308

Yamas and Niyamas

Back to contents

Now we shall treat of *desirable conduct* - the performance of righteous actions, refinement of (character) speech and manners, association with men of learning and piety, and love of all true knowledge, etc. - and *undesirable conduct* - the reverse of all these things:-

"People should always bear in mind that whatsoever is done by learned men - good and true, - who are free form inordinate affection and hatred, or whatsoever is known to be true by the testimony of the inner monitor is the *true conduct* of life." MANU 2: 1.

"In this world, neither inordinate desire nor its total absence is conducive to a man's happiness, because it would be impossible either to lead a virtuous life as enjoined by the *Veda* or to acquire true (Vedic) knowledge without desiring the same." MANU 2:2.

"It is impossible for any man to be altogether free from desire, because all our actions - philanthrophic works, truthfulness in speech, the practice of *Yamas** and *Niyamas*,** and other duties - proceed from desire for the same.

---

* Yamas are five:- (1) kindness to all, (2) truthfulness in word, deed and thought, (3) honesty in dealings, (4) chastity, (5) freedom from selfishness.
**Niyamas are also five:- (1)Purity of mind and body, (2) mental tranquility, (3) strict devotion to duty, (4) study of the Vedas and other true Shaastraas and contemplation of the Deity, (5)Resignation to the Will of God. - Tr.

PAGE 309

"Even the most insignificant action (e.g., nictitation) in this world is impossible without a desireeon the part of the doer. Therefore, whatever a man does (e.g., the movements of his hand, feet, eyes, and menta. Activity) is the outcome of his will." MANU 2: 4.

"Let a man regulatehis conduct according to what is *sanctioned by the Vedas taught by Smritis* and other books of the *Rishis* - seers of the Veda -, practiced by all men - good and true and approved by his own soul." MANU 2: 6.

In other words, let him perform such actions in the doing of which no such feelings, as fear, distrust and shame, arise in the soul. Behold, when a man desires to tell a lie or steal anything, his soul is filled with feelings of fear, shame and doubt, it is, therefore, a proof of the fact that it is wrong to do such an act.

"Let a man, therefore, carefully view all these - the Veda, the teachiigs of the Vedic seers, practices of good men and true, and the approval of his own soul - with the eyes of wisdom, and do his duty in obedience to what is sanctioned by the Veda and approved by his own soul." MANU 2: 8>

"Verily tha man, who follows rules of the righteous conduct as taught by Veda and by the Smritis in conformity with Veda, shall acquire fame in this life and the highest bliss in the next.." MANU 2: 9.

"The Veda is called the **shruti** and the system of conduct of life as taught by the Vedic seers and teachers is embodied in the **Smriti**. It is by the help of these that the true conduct of life as well as the false is ascertained. He who holds them- the Vedas and the works of true

PAGE 310

teachers in conformity with the Veda - to contempt should be excluded from all good society, as an atheist and a slanderer of the Veda.

"Therefore, the Veda, the Smriti, the practice of good men and the approval of one's soul - these are undoubtedly the four criteria of the True conduct of life. In other words, it is by these alone that the true religion is ascertained." MANU 2: 12.

"It is only those who stand aloof from the headlong pursuit of both - wealth and carnal desires - that can ever attain a knowledge of true religion. It is the duty of everyone, who aspires to gain this object, to determine what true religion is by the help of the Veda, for, a clear and perfect ascertainment of true religion is not attained without help of the Veda." MANU 2:13.

"Therefore it behoves all men to practise all those righteous deeds that are enjoined by the Veda.

Sankaras

Back to contents

Dwijaas - Braahmans, Kshatriyaas and Vaishyaas - should perform all Sanskaars* for their own good as well as for that of their children. They lead to purity (mental and corporeal) in this life as well as in the next." MANU 2: 16.

"Let the Tonsure Sanskar be performed in the sixteenth year of a Braahman, in the twenty-second of a Kshatriya, in the twenty-fourth of a Vaishya." MANU 2: 65. (In other words, it should not be delayed beyond those periods). Thereafter they should keep a tuft of hair on the top of the head

---

*A sanskar is anything done to improve, refine and purify the body and the soul. Ther are altogether sixteen sanskars: the first one is the sexual intercourse with the object of producing good children, as has been described in the beginning of the second Chapter of this book. -Tr.

PAGE 311

and always cut or shave the hair of the head, moustache and beard. That is to say, they should never grow them afterwards. In a very cold climate they can please themselves as to cutting the hair or allowing it to grow. On the other hand, in very hot climate they shold have all their hair, not even barring the tuft of hair on the top of the head, cut or shaved; because too much hair on the head is productive of heat which causes dulness of intellect. The moustache and beard cause inconvenience in eating and drinking; because the particles of food adhere to them.

Controlling the Senses

"As a skilful driver keeps his horses well under control and directs them in the right path, so should a man strive to keep his senses - that are apt to lead one's mind to the pursuit of wicked objects and temptations - under thorough control, restrain them from the path of sin and temptation, and always guide them in the path of righteousness. This alone is the true conduct of life." MANU 2:88.

"Verily that man alone can achieve his heart's who is master of his senses and directs them in the path of righteousness. But he who allows them to get engrossed in sensual gratification and sin, and thus becomes their slave, soon contracts evil habits, loses his character and suffers the evil consequences thereof." MANU 2:93.

"Sensual desires are never fully gratified if they are indulged. They are only inflamed still more fiercely like fire which blazes more vehemenly when fuel (and butter) are added to it. Let a man, therefore, never indulge in sensual gratification." MANU 2:94.

PAGE 312

"A man who is the slave of his passions can never succeed in acquiring knowledge of the Veda, in keeping up his vows of chastity, truthfulness and the like, nor in fulfilling his duties towards man and God, practising righteousness and doing good works. They are only attainable to the good and pious man who is the master of his senses." MANU 2: 97.

"Let a man, therefore, have thorough control over his five organs of sense and five organs of action and the eleventh organ of thought, - the mind, - protect his body by proper dieting and by observing the laws of health, and, thereby achieve the object of his life." MANU 2: 100.

"He is verily the master of his senses who rejoices not when applauded, nor grieves when censured, is neither by sensation of nice soft things (such as soft comfortable bed and clothes), nor displeased by that of hard and coarse things, neither delighted with the sight of beautiful things nor vexed with that of ugly hideous things, neither pleased with a good dinner nor angered with a bad one, neither gladdened with the smell of perfumes, nor disgusted with that of disagreeable odours." MANU 2: 98.

"Let a wise man never speak unless spoken to, nor answer a question when unjustly and hypocritically asked. Among hypocrites let him remain as if he were dumb; but to the honest truth-seeker let him preach even though unasked." MANU 2: 110.

PAGE 313

Character

"Wealth, nobility of blood, age, professional skill, and honesty industry (or character) and true knowledge, these are five things to be respected but the one following more than the one preceding it. In other words, a man of noble lineage or one's relation ought to command more respect than a man, who is only wealthy, and aged man should be respected more than the first two, a man possessing some professional skill or good character more than the first three; again true knowledge and wisdom (the wealth of mind) should command more respect than professional skill or character." MANU 2:136

"An ignorant man destitute of true knowledge, four hundred years old though he be, is in truth a child; whilst a teacher of secular knowledge and of spiritual science, though he be a child, should be respected as an old man; because all the Shaatraas and wise sages have declared an ignorant man to be like a child and a learned man like unto a father." MANU 2:153.

"A man does not become old (aged) by years, nor by grey hair, nor by wealth, nor by powerful kindreds and friends. The wise and holy sages have declared, - 'He among us is old (great) who is most learned in knowledge - material and spiritual." MANU 2:154.

"A **Brahman** is entitled to distinction according to the extent of his knowledge; a **Kshaatriya** is judged by his physical power, a **Vaishya** by material wealth in his possession, and a **Shoodra**by years." MANU 2:155.

PAGE 314

"A man is not, therefore, old (venerable), because his head is grey, but he, who has acquired wisdom though tender in years, is considered old (venerable) by the wise." MANU 2:156.

"As an elephant made of wood or as a deer made of leather, so is a man destitute of knowledge. He is a man only in name." MANU 2:157.

"Let a man therefore, gain knowledge and acquire wisdom, lead a virtuous life, bear makice to none and hsow all men the path that leads to true happiness. Let his speech be sweet and kindly." MANU 2:159.

Blessed are they who always preach the truth and thereby promote righteousness and destroy sin and wickedness.

Let a man always take bath regularly, keep his clothes clean, his food and drink clean and pure, the his house clean and tidy. The cleanliness and purity of these things lead to health and purity of mind, which in their turn increase strength and capacity for work.
Cleanliness should be sufficient to remove all traces of dirt and disagreeable odours.

"The practice of such virtues as veracity, and the doing of good works verily constitute the true conduct of life enjjoined by the **Veda** and taught by the **Smritis**." MANU 1: 108.
"The service of father, mother, tutor and atithis, i.e., the altruistic teachers of humanity, is called **devapujaa** or the worship of godly persons." YAJUR VEDA 14:15 -ATHARVA VEDA 11:15,17 - TAITREYA UPANISHAD 7: 11

PAGE 315

Devotion to whatever promotes the good of the world as well as abstinence from all harmful acts are the chief duties of man. Let a man never associate with those who are atheists, and liars, nor with those who are indolent, guilty of breach of faith, hypocritical, selfish and deceitful. Let him always move in the society ofmen who are learned, truthful, pious and have public good at heart. This, in truth, constitutes good conduct.

O. *Is not the character of the people of Aryavarta (India) lost by going a broad?*

A.~ No, it is not; because a man can retain a good character and is not polluted, no matter wher he goes, as long as he is pure in mind and body and practises such virtues as truthfulness. Whoever is addicted to a sinful life and immoral practices, even though he lives in India, loses his character and is polluted. Had it not been so, why should the ancients have travelled abroad.

Ancient Aryas of Europe and the Americas.

Mark what is written in the **Mahaabhaarat**. "Once upon a time the sage **Vyaasa** lived in **Paataala** (America) with his son and pupil **Shuka**. The son asked his father if spiritual science was only what he had him or something more. **Vyaasa** intentionally did not answer that question. He had lectured on tthat subject before. So in order to have his teaching confirmed by the testimony of another man, he addressed **Shuka** thus, 'O my son, you go to **Mithipapuri** and ask this very question of King **Janak**. He would give you the right answer.'

Having heard what his father said, **Shuka** left America for Mithalpuri. He first visited the continent that lay to the North and North-West of the Himalayas and was called **Harivarsha*** (now called Europe), then the countries of the Jews called **Hoon** (Asia Minor, etc.), thence he came to China, from China he proceeded towards the Himalayas and thence to **Mithilapuri** (in India). It is recorded in the same

---

*Hari a monkey, Varsha an abode. Hari-Varsha therefore literally means abode of monkeys, so-called because its inhabitants have red lips and brown eyes like those of monkeys.

PAGE 316

book that **Krishna** and **Arjuna** went to America in an **Ashwatari** vessel (i.e., one propelled by electricity) and brought the sage **Uddalaka** back with them on the occasion of the **Rajasuya Yajna** of Emperor **Yudhishthira**. Again Prince **Dhritraashtra** was married to a princess of **Gandhaar** (Kandhaar). **Madri**, the wife of King **Paandu** was the daughter of the King of Iran (Persia), Prince **Arjuna** was married to Princess **Ulopi** of **Paataala** (America). Now how could they have done all those things if they had not gone abroad?*

Again ther is mention of a tac in the Manu Smriti which was levied on all vessels leaving Indian ports.

When Emperor **Yudhishthira** performed his Rajasuya Yajna (coronation), he sent his brothers, prince **Bhima**, prince **Arjuna**, prince **Nakula** and prince **Sahadeva** with invitations to all the kings of the four quarters of the globe to join the Yajna. Had they considered it debasing to one's character to travel abroad, they would not have done all those things.

The ancient Indians used to go abroad to all parts of the world for the purposes of trade, travel, or on political business. The present day bug-bear of loss of one's character and faith through travelling abroad is simply due to the false teachings of the ignorant people and the growoth of dense ignnorance. Those who do not hesitate to go abroad, and thereby associate with peoples of various foreign countries, study their customs and manners of the foreigners, and rejecting their faults and evil habits, and bad manners, O ye foolish people!

Your character and faith are not lost by having sexual intercourse with a low, despicable prostitute, but you consider it harmful and debasing to associate with good men of other countries! What is it, if not foolishness? It is true though that those who live on flesh-diet and take intoxication drinks, have their bodies, bodily organs and secretions (as reproductive element) saturated with the fine particles of those malodorous substances. The **Aryas** (natives of India) should, therefore, becareful that they do not get infected with these evel habits. But there can

---

*Literally to different contries, peninsulas and islands. -Tr.

PAGE 317

be no harm or sin in learniing trade, arts and other good qualities from the foreigners. When these foolish people considerit a sin even to see or touch them, they can never fight against them, as they must see and touch them in fight.

Let all good men remember that good conduct consists only in the avoidance of untruthfulness, injustice, inordinate affection or hatred and other evel habits, and in the practice of love and kindness towards all, in the cultivation of gentle disposition and in the promotion of public good, etc. Let them also understand that religion has reference to one's soul and good life. When we live righteous lives, foreign travel can do us no harm.

The evil consequences flow wonly from the commission of sins. It is right though that we should thoroughly understand what the true Vedic religion is, and also learn to refute false religions so that no onemay be able to mislead us. Can a country ever make any progress unless its people trade with or extend their rule over other countries? What can you expect but misery and poverty, when the people of acountry trade only among themselves, whilst the foreigners control their trade and rule over them?

These hypocrites - the so-called priests and other religious teachers perfectly understand that if they educate the people, and let them travel abroad, they would get enlightened, and consquently would no longer be ensnared in net of fraud and hypocrisy spread by them. They would thus lose

their livelihood and respect. This is the reason that they make so much fuss in the matter of eating and drinking. Their object is to prvent people from going abroad. It is quite true though that not even by mistake should they ever use meat or drink.

Have all sensible men not ascertained that in time of war the cooking of food and its eating, or drinking (milk or water, etc.) under such absurd restrictions as those of **Chaukaa*** by soldiers have invariably been the cause of their defeat? The duty of a soldier - whether on foot, mounted on a horse or on an elephant, or seated in a car - consists (if necessary) in eating and drinking with one hand whilsst fighting the enemy with the other, and in winning the battle; whilwit is wrong on his part to let himself be defeated. By observing such absurd restrictions as of **Caukaa** is the matter of

---

*The kitchen should be plastered with a thin coating of mud mixed with a bit of cow-dung. The food should be cooked by no one else but a high caste and then served by the same within a marked area, etc.-Tr.

PAGE 318

eating and drinking, and other foolish practices. These stupid people have lost all independence, happiness, wealth, political power, learning and activity, in short, everything. Now they are sitting idle with empty hands, praying for someone to come and relieve their distress, and give them something in charity wherewith they could get some food and ease the pangs of hunger. But that help is never forthcoming. They have thus completely ruined **Aryavarta** (India). It is quite true though that no pains should be spared in washing, plastering, sweeping, cleaning and tidying up the kitchen. It should never be allowed, to get dirty like that of the Mohammedans and Christians.*

Cooking and preparation of food.

O. What are Sakharee and Nikharee?

A.~ The food that is cooked in water is called **Sakharee**, while what is cooked in milk or fried in butter is called **Nikharee** (i.e., nice). This is another fraud invented by these rogues. The food cooked in milk and butter is always pleasing to the taste; they have originated these fraudulent practices (in the matter of food) in order to fill their stomachs with delicious, greasy articles of food, otherwise, whatever has been ripened by heat and time is called ripe (another name for nikharee) and whatever has not been cooked or ripened is called raw (another name for sakharee). Even the permissibility of all ripe or cooked food and the prohibition of raw food is not applicable to all cases, for instance, fried grams and other cereals, though un-cooked, are still eaten and their use is not forbidden.

O. *Should the Dwijaas (twice-born) cook their food with their own hands or is it permissible to eat food cooked by the Shoodraas (low-casted*)**?**

A.~ They can eat what has been cooked by the **Shoodraas**; because it is the duty of **Dwijas - Brahmans, Khatriyas and Vaishyas** both men and women) to devote themselves to the dissemination of knowledge, the service of the state, the breeding of cattle, and to agriculture, trade and arts (and not to waste their time in cooking, etc.) But they should not eat or drink out of a <SHOODRAAS< b>utensils or what has been cooked in his own house except in case

---

*In India the kitchens of the Mohamedans and Christians are not generally kept clean. Among the European residents in India it is chiefly due to the fact that the kitchens are entirely left in the hands of low caste Indian servants who do not possess and great sense of cleanliness.-Tr.

PAGE 319

of emergency. Here is an authority for this statement :- " In the houses of the twice-born, Shoodraas - i.e., ignorant men and women incapable of following any higher pursuit - should do the cooking and other domestic service." APASTAMBH II.ii, 2,4. But they should keep their bodies and clothes, etc., clean. While engaged in cooking in the houses of the **Aryas** - the twice-born - they should have their mouths covered (with a piece of cloth) so that their beath may not contaminate the food, and their saliva may not fall into it; they should wash before cooking. They should take their food after the **Aryas** have been served.

O. *How can it be permissible to eat food cooked by a Shoodraa when it is held to be wrong to partake of food even touched by him?*

A.~ It is a mere fabrication, and therefore, absolutely wrong. Bear you well in mind that whosoever has partaken of sugar (brown or white), butter, milk, flour, vegetables, fruits and roots has in fact eaten what has been prepared by men of all sorts and conditions, and their leavings. When the <SHOODRAAS< b>, leather-workers,* scavengers, and Mohammedans, Christians and others gather sugarcanes for the fields, peel them, and press juice out of them, they handle them with their soiled hands, as they do not wash them even after micturating or defecating.

They suck one-half of a cane, and shove the remaining half into the press, fill a jug out of a vessel containing cane juice, drink as much as they can, and pour the remainder back into it. While evaporating the juice they sometimes make cakes in the same pan and never clean it afterwards. In the manufacture of white sugar, they rub the brown sugar with their shoes, the soles of which are soiled with all kinds of dirt, offal, and dust. Milkmen adulterate milk with water kept in their dirty cans, and keep butter in the same. Similarly, in the manufacture of flour they - the laborers - handle it with their dirty hands, and even their perspiration trickles sown into it.

The same kind of undesirable practices are to be seen in the careless handling of fruits, roots and tubers. Whoever has, therefore, eaten these things has in fact eaten of the hands of men of all sorts and conditions.

---

*Leather-workers in India are of very dirty habits. -Tr.

PAGE 320

O. *There is nothing wrong in partaking of foods and drinks that have even been prepared and handled behind your back, such as fruits, roots and tubers, etc. (by undesirable persons).*

A.~ Indeed ! what else would you have eaten? Dust or ashes? Sugar is sweet, milk and butter are nourishing, you could not forego the use of these articles. No wonder, therefore, that you extremely selfish people have invented such false doctrines and practices. Well, if there be no harm in eating or drinking what ahs not been prepared before your eyes by some undesirable person, would you eat food out of the hands of a scavenger or a Mohammedan* who cooked it with his own hands in some place out of your sight. It is true that in eating and drinking out of the hands of flesh-eaters and wine-drinkers, such as the Mohammedans and the Christians, there is some danger of even the **Aryas** - followers of the **Veda** - contracting these evil habits, e.g., eating flesh and drinking intoxicants.

But ther can be no harm if the **Aryas** dine together. It is extremely difficult for people to make any progress as long as their religion and their interests are not the same. Again they cannot progress when they do not rejoice in each other's joys, nor sympathize in each other's afflictions. But mer dining together can never lead to any real progress. As long as they do not avoid evil things - manners, customs, etc. - and embrace good things, instead of making any progress they will go form bad to worse.

The causes of foreign rule in India are:- mutual feud, differences in religion, want of purity in life, lack of education, child-marriage, marriage in which the contracting parties have no voice in the selection of their life-partners, indulgence in carnal gratification, untruthfulness and other evil habits, the neglect of the study of the **Veda**, and other mal-practices.

It is only when brothers fight among themselves that an outsider poses as an arbiter. Have you people even forgotten the practices that were in vogue at the time of the **Mahaabhaarat War**, a little over five thousand years ago? In the war they - the soldiers - ate and drank even while riding or driving in cars. Mutual feud ruined the **Kauravas**, the **Paandavas** and the

---

*The Puraniks do not partake of food touched by a Mohammedan or a Christian. - Tr.

PAGE 321

Yaadavas in the past. The same fatal disease is still clinging to us. None knows whether this dreadful fiend will ever leave us, or rob us of all our happiness and plunge us in the depths of misery. The **Aryas** are still treading the wicked path of the despicable low **Duryodhana**, the destroyer of his race and enemy of his country. May God through His mercy rid us, **Aryas**, of this dreadful disease.

ON DIET - PERMISSIBLE and FORBIDDEN

Permissibility or prohibition in diet is based on two factors - one determined by the Science of morals and religion, and the other by the Science of Health.

"The twice-born -**Braahmans, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas** - must not eat such vegetables, fruits and roots as are raised in night soil and other kinds of refuse." MANU 5:5

"They should abstain from flesh diet and intoxicants", MANU 2: 177, such as wine, Ganja, Cannabis Indica, and opium, etc.

"Let them never use those articles that are prejudicial to the growth of the intellect." SHARANGDHAR 4:21.

They should also avoid the use of all those articles of food that are decomposed, fermented, unclean or foul smelling, etc., and those that are not properly cooked as well as those prepared and handled by such men as live on flesh - diet and intoxicating drinks whose very bodies are saturated with the fine particles of meat and alcohol.

The **Aryas** should neither themselves kill such useful animals as cows, nor let other do the same. One cow in one generation benefits 475,000 people through her milk, butter and offspring - male and female. Thus, some cows give thirty-two pints of milk, other not more than three pints daily, say for twelve months (some give mild for eighteen months, other for six, hence we have taken the mean of the two). Calculating on this basis, we find that 24,960 persons can be fed at one

meal with the milk given by one cow in her whole life-time. On an average a cow calves about twelve times during her whole life. Supposing two of them die, of the

PAGE 322

remaining ten calves, say, there are five males and five females. The latter during their lives will together give enough milk to satisfy 124,800 persons at one meal. The remaining five male calves can produce at least 180 tons of corn,* and supposing we allow 11/2 lb. of corn per head, 180 tons will do on a rough estimate for 250,000 persons as food for one meal. Putting milk and corn together a cow in one generation can supply one good meal to 475,600 people.

Similarly if we go on calculating the amount of corn and milk yielded by one cow in all her generations, it will be found that they would be sufficient to feed millions upon millions of people. Besides bullocks are very useful to man for tilling the ground, riding, pulling carts and wagons, and carrying heavy loads, etc., but the chief use of cows is that they yield good milk.

Buffalo's milk is not so useful in promoting the growth of the intellect as a cow's. Therefore, it is that the **Aryas** have always regarded the xow as the most useful animal. Other enlightened people will do the same. One goat yields, enough milk to satisfy 25,920 people at one meal. Similarly, horses, elephants, camels, donkeys and sheep are of great service to man in various ways. Those who slaughter these animals should be looked upon as enemies of the whole human race.

When the **Aryas** were in power, these most useful animals were never allowed to be killed. Consequently, man and other living beings lived in great peace and happiness. Because , milk and butter, and such animals as bullocks being plentiful, there was abundance of food and drink (as milk, etc.). But since the meat-eating, and wine-drinking foreigners - the slayers of kind and other animals - have come into this country and become the ruling power, the troubles and suffering s of the **Aryas** have ever been on the increase; because, it is said, "How can you get fruits and flowers of a tree when its root is cut off?" VRIDHA CHAANAKYA 10:13.

O. *Were all people to live on non-flesh diet, lions and other carnivorous animals would multiply in such large number that they will kill all such useful animals as cows. Your attempt to prevent their slaughter would come to nothing.*

---

*Bullocks ar used in India for tilling the ground and other agricultural purposes.-Tr.

PAGE 323

A.~ It is the business of the State to punish or even kill all those men and animals that are injurious (to the community).

O. *Should their flesh, i.e., (of the animals thus killed) be thrown away?*

A.~ It would do no harm to the world whether it be thrown away, given to dogs or such other carnivorous animals, cremated or even eaten by some meat-eater. But if eaten by man, it will tend to change his disposition and make him cruel.

The use of all such food and drinks as are obtained through injuring or killing others or through theft, dishonesty, breach of faith, fraud or hypocrisy is forbidden, in other words they al come under the heading of forbidden articles of diet; while the acquisition of foods and drinks through

righteous means without injuring or killing any living creature falls in the category of permissible articles, of diet.

This also includes all those articles that give health, and strength, destroy disease, promote intellectual power and energy and prolong life, such as rice, wheat, sugar, milk, butter, fruits, tubers and roots, when properly mixed in due proportion and cooked, and eaten in moderation at proper meal times.

Abstinence from the use of all those things that do not agree with one's constitution and are apt to produce disease or other evil effects, and the use of those that are prescribed for one (by his medical attendant) also constitute adherence to what is called the permissible diet.

O. *Is there any harm in eating together, i.e., out of the same dish?*

A.~ Yes, it is harmful, because people differ in their nature and constitutions, etc., from each other. Just as one is eating out of the same dish with a leper is apt to catch disease, likewise eating with other people is always liable to produce evil results. It can never do any good. Therefore it is said in the Manu Smriti:-
"Let no man give the leaving of his food to another, nor eat out of the same dish with another, nor eat too much, nor after finishing his meal leave his seat without washing his hands and rinsing out his mouth." MANU 2: 56.

PAGE 324

O. *How will you then interpret the text "Let a pupil eat Uchhistha (the leaving of) his preceptor"?*

A.~ It means that a pupil should serve his tutor first and after he ahs finished his meal, let the pupil himself eat of what is left - behind not as leavings but what has not been used by the teacher and is still kept separately. This is only implies that the teacher should have his meal before his pupil.

O. *If the use of all kinds of leavings is forbidden, honey - the leaving of bees, milk - the leavings of calves, and one's own leavings - the food left after one had taken one morsel out of it - should also be forbidden.*

A.~ Honey comes under this description only nominally. It is really the essence of many a medicinal plant, hence it is acceptable. The calf can only drink the milk that comes out of the teats of its mother, but not what is inside. Therefore the milk, that is obtained by milking a cow after the calf has sucked it off the teats cannot be called leavings. But it is proper that the udder and teats should be carefully washed and cleansed with pure water after the calf has had its share, before the cow is milked, and the milking vessel should also be dept perfectly clean.

One's own leavings can do no harm to oneself. Even nature clearly teaches us that it is wrong to eat another man's leavings. No one feels any great repugnance in touching the secretions from one's own nose, mouth, ears and organs of reproduction, micturition and defecation,, but one does so in the case of others. It proves, therefore, that this practice is not against the laws of nature. No one, therefore, should eat the leavings of or in the same dish with another.

O. *Should not even husband and wife eat each other's leavings?*

A.~ No, even their natures and constitutions differ?

O. *Well, Sir! What harm is there in eating what has been prepared by any one as long as he is a man; because the bodies of all men, from a Braahman to the lowest of human beings, are made of flesh and bones? The same blood runs in the veins of all.*

A.~ Yes, there is harm. A Braahman and Braahmani are fed on the very best of foods, hence their bodies are formed out of the reproductive elements, that are free from impurities and other deleteruous elements, which is not true of the bodies of the extremely

PAGE 325

degraded men and women that are simply laden with dirt and other foul matter. It is, therefore, right that we should eat and drink with **Brahmans** and other higher classes and not with scavengers and workers in leather. Now what would you say if you were asked "Would you look upon all other women, such as your mother, sister, mother-in-law, sister-in-law, daughter-in-law, with the same eyes as your wife, because all of them are made of the same kind of flesh and blood?" You will simply be filled with shame and make no answer. Again, as good, clean food is eaten with hands and the mouth, so can the bad, unclean and decomposed food be eaten, would you then eat dirt, etc. ? Can this ever be right?

The Kitchen

Q. *As you plaster the kitchen floor with cow-dung (and mud), why do you not then also use human excrement for the same purpose? Why is not the kitchen polluted when the dung is used in it?*

A.~ The dung is not so foul-smelling as the human excrement. The cow-dung being greasy does not so easily come off the floor, nor does it soil the dress, nor does it look dirty. Dirt does not come off the dry dung so easily as off the mud. The place that has been plastered with a thin coating of mud and dung properly mixed together looks nice. If the kitchen, wherein food is cooked and sometimes also eaten, the naturally therefore particles of food, such as bread-crumbs, sugar and butter, drop sown on the floor which being thus made dirty attracts flies, insects and other such creatures be not swept, plastered and properly cleaned every day, it would be as dirt as a privy.

The kitchen, therefore, should be properly plastered with mud and dung, swept and kept thoroughly clean. This applies to the floor that is made of bricks and mud or of the latter only. But if it is cemented, it should be kept clean by washing it thoroughly with water. The kitchen should never be allowed to get dirty and untidy like that of a Mohammedan wherein there is a pile of charcoal in one place, a heap of ashes in another, and a bundle of sticks in the third, here a broken kettle, and there an unwashed plate, here some bones there some joints, and as about flies their number is legion!!! That place is, as a rule, so dirty that if a respectable man were to go and sit there

PAGE 326

for a little while, it would soon possibly bring up his food. It looks more like a latrine.* Well, if you think that plastering with mud and dung pollutes your kitchen, why do you plaster the walls of the rest of your house with them? Why do you burn dried cow-dung in your fire-place and use that fire to light your pipe (hubble-bubble)? Do not these things pollute you kitchen? What nonsense!

O. *Should one take his meals in the Chaukaa or outside it?*

A.~ One may take his meals wherever the place is clean and tidy. But in times of war and other cases of emergency it is quite proper to eat and drink in all positions and places - sitting on horse-back, driving cars, or standing.

Eating with foreigners

O. *Should one eat only what has been cooked by one's own hands and not that which has been done by another?*

A.~ Among the **Aryas** as food has been prepared in a clean manner, not matter who has done it, there is no harm in eating it in company with other **Aryas**. If **Braahmans** (men and women) and persons of other higher **Classes** were to devote their time to cooking, washing utensils, sweeping and dusting, and observing such embarrassing restrictions as that of the **Chaukaa**, who would then attend to higher pursuits, such as the advancement of science and arts.

Behold! On the occasion of the **Rajasuya Yajna** of Emperor **Yudhishthira**, kings and princes, sages and wise teachers had gathered from all parts of the world. They all ate and drank together. It is only since the Mohammedan, the Christians taken to eating beef and drinking wine that these troublesome restrictions in eating and drinking have come into vogue in this country.

The kings, princes and other **Aryas** of ancient India had even marriage relations with the foreigners, as we read in the **Mahaabhaarata** that **Ghaandhaaree< Maadri, Ulopi** and other princesses, of **Gaandhaar** (Kandhaar), Persia, America and Europe were married to some of the Indian princes. **Shakuni** and others dined with the **Kauravas** and the **Paandavas**. they never quarreled with each other, because then only one religion prevailed in the whole

---

*Which is generally kept extremely dirty especially among the poor.-Tr.

PAGE327

world. And that was **Vedic**. They all firmly believed in it. They looked upon other's sorrows and joys, gains and losses as if they were their own. It was only then that peace and happiness reigned throughout the whole world. But alas ! Now it is different. The religions are various and are their followers. Their mutual hatred and strife have greatly increased, and consequently their sufferings an sorrows have immensely multiplied.

It is the duty of all wise men to do away with all these evils and relieve their suffering. May the Omniscient Ruler of all sow the seed of true religion in all hearts, whereby all false religions and false doctrines may soon perish. Let all wise men ponder over it impartially, leave off all mutual hatred and malice, and promote the happiness of all.

We have briefly discoursed in this chapter on Conduct - desirable and undesirable, and on Diet - permissible and forbidden.

CHAPTER 11

AN EXAMINATION OF THE DIFFERENT RELIGIONS PREVAILING IN ARYAVARTA (INDIA)

PAGE 329

Aryavarta (India) before 5,000 years ago.

Now we shall examine the religions of the Aryas, i.e., the people who liven in Aryvarta (India). This country is such that no other country in the whole world can come up to the level of its excellence. It is also called the Golden Land as it produces gold and precious stones. It was for this reason that in the beginning of the world the Aryas cam to this country. We have already stated in the Chapter on Cosmogony that the good and the noble men are called Aryas, whilst those who are otherwise are called Dasyus.

The natives of all other countries on the earth praise this very country, and believe that the philosopher's stone is to be found here. Though this story of the philosopher's stone is a myth, yet it is true that this country (Aryavarta) itself is verily a philosopher's stone whose very touch converts all base metals - poor foreigners - into gold - rich nabobs.

Since the beginning of the world till 5,000 years back, the Aryas were the sovereign rulers of the whole earth, in other words, there was only one paramount power whose suzerainty was acknowledged by the rulers of the earth. Till the time of the **Kauravas** and the **Pandavas**, all rulers of the earth and their subjects obeyed the law laid sown by the rulers of this country, for it is said in the **Manu Smriti**, that was compose in the beginning of the world. "Let all other people of the earth - Brahmans*, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas, Shoodras, Dasyus and Malecchas - learn arts

---

* Braahaman's _Teachers - secular and spiritual.
Kshatriyas - Men of governing class, statesmen, soldiers, etc.
Vaishyeas - Merchants, artisans and farmers.
Shoodraas - Men of the servant class, laborer.
Dasyus - Wicked people
Malechhas - Barbarians.

PAGE 330

and science suitable to them from the learned people born in this country." MANU 2: 20.
The perusal of the **Mahaabhaarata** proves that the Aryas were the sovereign rulers of the earth till the coronation of Emperor**Yudhisthtira** and the Great War of **Mahaabhaarata**, for we read in that book that King **Bhaagadatta** of China, **Babruvaahan** of America, **Vidalakha*** of Europe, the Ruler of Greece, King **Shalya** of Persia and various other rulers came as ordered to take part in the Great War and in the coronation of Emperor **Yudhishthira**.

Whe the house of **Raghu** held paramount authority (in this country), even King **Raavana** of Ceylon acknowledged its suzerainty. Later when he revolted against its authority, Prince **Ram Chandra** having vanquished and dethroned him placed his younger brother **Vibhishana** on the throne instead. Since the time of **Swyambhava** to that of the Paandavas the Aryas were the paramount power throughout the whole world.

Thereafter, mutual dissensions among them compassed their destruction, for in this world, over which a just God presides, the rule of the proud, the unjust and the ignorant (such as the Kauravas were) cannot last very long. It is also a law of nature that the accumulation of wealth in a community out of al proportion to its needs and requirements brings in its train indolence, jealousy, mutual hatred, lustfulness, luxury and neglect of duty which put an end to all sound learning and education, whose place is usurped by evil customs, manners and practices like the use of meat and wine, child marriage, and licentiousness.

Besides, when people acquire perfection in the military science and the art of war, and the army becomes so formidable that no one in the whole world can stand it on a field of battle, pride and party spirit increase among them and they become unjust. Thereafter, the lose all power either

through mutual dissensions, or a strong man from among families of little importance rises to distinction and is powerful enough to subjugate them, just as Shivajee and Gobind Singh rose against Mohammedan rule and completely annihilated the Muslim power in India.

The fact that the Aryas were the sovereign rulers of the earth since the beginning of the world till the Great War called **Mahaabhaarata**, is also proved on the authority of the **Maitreyopanishad**

---

* Called so account of his cat-like eyes.

PAGE 331

which says, "Why! Besides these, there have been other Mighty Rulers who were the Sovereign Lords of the whole earth; such as **Sudyumna, Bhuridyumna, Indraashwapati, Shashavindu Harishchandra, Ambrisha, Nanaktu, Saryati,Anarnya, Akshasena,** and also such like Emperors as **Mauruta** and **Bharat**." MAITRY UPANISHAD, 1,4.

The names of such Sovereign Rulers as Swyambhava.* etc., are clearly mentioned in the**Mahaabhaarata**, the **Manu Smiriti** and other authoritative books. Only the prejudiced and the ignorant regard these statements as fallacious.

Q. ~ Is it true that the ancients knew the use of fire-arms, such as Agneyastra, about which we read in ancient Sanskrit literature. Were cannons and muskets known to the ancients or not?

A. ~ Yes, it is true. Guns and like fire-arms were used in ancient times. The **Agneyastra** and the like weapons can be manufactured by the application of scientific principles.

Q. ~ Were they brought into existence through magical formulae sanctified by the Gods?

A. ~ No, the methods of manufacturing these weapons were evolved as the result of deep thought (mantra). But mere pronouncing of mantra, which is nothing but a collections of words, cannot produce and substance. Were any one to say that the chanting of a mantra (or a hymn) can produce fire, he may be asked as to why it should not burn the throat and tongue of the person who recites it. How funny that a person should burn himself to death while meditating the death of his enemy. A mantra literally means the power of thought, hence **Raja mantri**, from Raja- state, and mantri - one who thinks) is one who thinks over the affairs of a State and is the King's adviser.

Thus, men after deep study acquire a knowledge of the laws of nature, and by the proper application thereof make many dis-

---

* What a pity that the descendants of these Aryas are being crushed under the wheel of the foreigner.

PAGE 332

coveries in the domain of art and invented machines. As for instance, if an iron arrow or a ball be filled with such substances as when ignited will produce smoke, which by coming in contact with air or the rays of the sun will catch fire, he will have invented an **Agneyastra**. The fire opened by it will fail of its effect, if the commander of the opposing army discharges a **Varunastra** which is made of such materials whose smoke is converted into a cloud.

The moment it comes in contact with air it immediately begins to rain and extinguishes the fire. Likewise, there existed in ancient times other weapons of war, such as **Vaagaphansa** - which when discharged against an enemy paralyzed his limbs - and **Mohanastra** - which was charged with such narcotic substances whose smoke could cause stupefaction of the soldiers of the enemy -, and **Pashupatashtra** - another kind of **Agnevastra**, in which electricity produced from a wire, glass or some other substance was employed to kill one's enemy.

As regards the words **Top** (cannon) and **Bandook** (muskets) they belong to a foreign language and not to **Sanskrit** or to any of the Indian Vernaculars allied to it. Now what called a **Top** (cannon) by the foreigners, is spoken of as **Shatagahni** (literally that which kills hundreds at a time) and **bandook** (musket), **Bhushundi** in **Sanskrit** and **Arya Bhaashaa** (one of the most widely spoken Indian Vernaculars). Hose who are unacquainted with the **Sanskrit** literature write and say all sorts of nonsense. Their writings can never be considered as authentic by the learned.

All the knowledge that is extant in the world originated in **Aryavarta** (India). Thence it spread to Egypt, thence to Greece, thence to the whole continent of Europe,, thence to America and other countries. Even today India heads all other countries in the matter of **Sanskrit** learning. The impression that the Germans are the best **Sanskrit** scholars and that no one has read so much of **Sanskrit** as Professor Max Muller is altogether unfounded. Yes, in a land where lofty trees never grow, even Recinis Communis or the common Castor oil plant may be called an oak.

The study of **Sanskrit** being almost non-existent in Europe, German scholars like Professor Max Muller, who have read a little Sanskrit may have come to be regarded as the highest authorities in Germany, but compared with India the number of Sanskrit scholars in that country is very small. We came to know from a letter of the President of a German University that even learned enough to interpret a Sanskrit letter are rare in Germany. We have also made it plain from the study of Max

PAGE 333

Muller's History of Sanskrit Literature and his commentary on some Mantras of the Vedas that the Professor has been able to scribble out something by the help of the so-called **Tikaas** or paraphrases of the Vedas current in India, for instance, he translates the word **Bradhnam** into a horse in the vedic verse which runs as:- Yunjanti bradhanam arusham charanti…." Even Sanyanacharya's rendering of it unto the sun is much better, but its real meaning is the All-Pervading Spirit.* This will suffice to show how much Sanskrit learning Professor Max Muller and other Germans possess.

It is a fact that all the science and religions that are extant in the world originated in India, and thence spread to other countries. Mr. Jacolliot, a native of France, tells us in his book called Bible in India, that India is the source of all kinds of knowledge and good institutions. All sciences and religions found in the world have spread from this country. He prays to God thus, "Mayest thou, O Lord , raise my country to that height of civilization and progress that had been attained by India in ancient times."**

Prince Dara Shikoh had also come to the same conclusion viz., in no other language is knowledge to be found so perfect as in Sanskrit. He says in his commentary on the Upanishad that he read Arabic and other languages, but his doubts were never dispelled, nor was he ever so happy till he studied Sanskrit, which cleared all his doubts and made him extremely happy.

Again look at the Zodiac representation on the temple of Man at Banares so beautiful is it that even today it gives wondrous information on astronomy though it has not been properly looked

after. It will be a very good thing if the rulers of Jeypore were to look after the Temple and make necessary repairs.

The fall of the Vedic civilization..

It is a pity that this jewel of country received such a rude shock from the Great War the even today it has not recovered from its effects, for what doubt can there be in the ruin of a country wherein brothers begin to kill each other. Rightly has it been said, "When the time of destruction is at hand, intellect becomes perverted," VRIDHA CHANIKYA, 16: 17, and men do foolish things. Should anyone, offer them good advice, they

---

* Vide our book called " An Introduction to the exposition of the Vedas"wherein the true meaning of this mantra is fully explained.
** These are not actually his words, this is what he says in substance. -Tr.

PAGE 334

take it ill, but are always willing to follow unwholesome advice. When most of the learned men, Kings and Emperors, sages and seers were killed or died in the Great War, the light of knowledge began to grow dim, and with it the dissemination of the Vedic Religion came to an end. The people became a prey to mutual jealousy, hatred and vanity. The strong seized upon the country and proclaimed themselves kings. Thus, when the empire was divided into so many independent states even in India, who could then have kept the foreign possessions under control.

When the **Braahmans** became destitute of knowledge, there could be no talk of the ignorance of the Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shoodras. Even the ancient practice of the study of the Vedas and other Shaastras with their meanings died away. The Braahmans only learnt the Veddas by note - just enough to enable them to earn their livelihood. Even that much they did teach to the Kshatriyas, and others.

As the ignorant became the teachers of the people, deceitfulness, fraud, hypocrisy, and irreligion began to increase among them. The Braahmans thought that they should make some arrangement for their livelihood. They held a council among themselves and agreed to preach to the Kshatriyas and others:- "We alone are the object of worship to you. You could never enter Heaven or obtain salvation except by serving us. Should you not serve us, you shall fall into an awful Hell."

The Vedas, and the Shaastraas written by the Vedic sages and seers have declared men of learning and as Braahmans and worthy of respect; but here they, who were ignorant, lascivious, deceitful, licentious, lazy and irreligious, declared themselves as Braahmans and worthy of homage. But how could the sterling virtues of the righteous, learned and truth-loving Brahamans be found in them. When the Kshatriyas and others became absolutely destitute of Sanskrit learning, whatever cock and bull stories the Braahmans connocted, the simpletons believed. They ensnared all in their net of hypocrisy, brought them under thorough control and began to teach:- "Whatever a Braahman declares is as infallible as words falling from Divine lips."

When the Kshatriyas and others who had more money and brains became their dupes, these so-called Braahmans got a golden

PAGE 335

opportunity of enjoying sensual pleasures adlibitum. They also declared that all the best things of the earth were meant for the Braahmans only. In other words, they subverted the whole system of Classes and Orders, and based it on the mere accident of birth, instead of on the qualifications, character and works of the people, as it originally was. They even began to accept charity given

in the name of the dead, in fact they did whatever they pleased. They went even so far as to say:- "We are lords of the earth. No one can enter Heaven without serving us." The so-called Braahmans of the present day say the same thing.

Now if they were asked as to which place they would go to after death - since they did such wicked deeds indeed that they deserved no better abode than a terrible hell and therefore they would be turned into worms, ants, moths and the like - they get highly enraged and cry out, "Were we to curse you, you would be destroyed, for it is written "He that wrongs a Braahman shall be damned." It may be said in reply to this, that certainly it is true he that wrongs a man, who is perfect scholar of the Veda, is well-versed in divine knowledge and imbued with piety and righteousness, and is devoted to the good of the whole world and is therefore called a Braahman, shall certainly be damned, but you neither deserve to be called Braahmans, nor are entitled to our homage.

The source of false religions..

Q. ~ What are we then?

A. ~ You are popes.

Q. ~ What is a pope?

A. ~ The word pope is originally meant father in Latin, but here this term is applied to a person who robs another through fraud and hypocrisy and achieves his selfish end.

Q. ~ *No, we are Braahmans and holy men (Saadhu) for our parents were Braahmans and we are the disciples of such and such a holy man.*

A. ~ It may be true, but one does not become a Braahman or a Saadhu by being the offspring of Braahman parents or a disciple of a Saadhu. A man becomes a Braahman or a holy man by bearing good character, by doing righteous deeds and by possessing such good virtues as altruism. It is said that the Popes of Rome used to say to their followers:- "If you will confess you sins before us, we shall grant you absolution from them. No one can enter Heaven unless one pays homage to us and thereby obtains our

PAGE 336

permission. Should you wish to go to Heaven you must deposit money with us and you will get your money's worth of property there." Upon hearing this, those ignorant men who had more money than brains and were anxious to enter Heaven would offer the stipulated amount of money to the Pope who would then stand before the image of Jesus Christ or Mary and write down a draft in the following words:-

'O Lord Christ! The bearer has deposited Rs.100,000 to Thy credit with us in order to get admission into Heaven. When he comes there mayest Thou be pleased to give him in Thy Father's Kingdom, houses, gardens and parks worth Rs 25.000, horses, carriages hounds and servants worth Rs. 25,000, foods, drinks and clothes, etc., worth Rs. 25,000, and get him the remaining Rs. 25,000 in cash so that he may entertain his friends, brothers and other relations etc.'

The Pope would then sign his name on the draft and give it to the supplicant saying:-
"Tell your family members before-hand to put this draft under your head in the grave before you

are buried. The angels will then come to take you to Heaven, and after you have been conveyed there along with the draft, you shall get everything mentioned therein.

It seems as if the Popes had had the monopoly of Heaven. These popish practices lasted in Europe only so long as it was sunk in ignorance, but now that the people have become enlightened, the false practices of the popes do not flourish so well, but at the same time have not altogether disappeared.

As in Europe, so in India the popery appeared in a thousand different forms, and cast its net of hypocrisy and fraud, in other words, the Indian popes have kept the rulers and the ruled from acquiring learning and associating with the good. In fact, they have always been misleading the people and have done nothing else.

But let it be borne in mind that it is only those who practice fraud and hypocrisy, and follow other evil occupations that are called popes, whilst those, even among the so-called *Braahmans*, who live righteous lives, are learned and devoted to the public good, deserve to be called true *Braahmans* and holy men.

Thus it is proper to designate the deceitful, the hypocritical and the selfish - i.e., those who serve selfish ends at the sacrifice of the interest of others - alone as popes, while good and learned men as *Braahmans* and holy men (Saadhus); because had there been no such true *Braahmans* or Sadhus as escaped from the traps laid by theJainees, Mohammedans and Christians, who would have helped to keep up love for the **Vedas**, and the *Shaastras*

PAGE 337

in the minds of the **Aryan** people, and maintain the system of Classes and Orders? This indeed has been the works of true *Braahmans* and *Sadhus*.Manu has said:- **"Let a wise man extract nectar even from poison."** The escape of the **Aryas**, however misled into popish practices, from the snares of the Main and other religions has indeed been like nectar extracted from poison.

Thus when the laity became bereft of knowledge, the popes who had read a little of the ritual became haughty, they combined together and declared before the kings and others in authority that it was unlawful to punish a *Braahman* or a *Sadhu*, and such texts as declared "let no *Braahman* be killed; let no *Braahmans* and *Sadhus*, were applied to themselves by the popes. They also wrote books containing false statements whose authorship they attributed to the great sages and seers of the past in order to stamp them with authority.

These books they passed off as the writings of the great **Vedic** seers and read them out to the people. Thus under the cover of these great names they succeeded in getting themselves out of ht reach of the Law and did whatever they liked, in other words, they have framed such strict laws that no one durst sit or stand, eat or drink, come or go, sleep or wake without their permission.

They instilled into the minds of the rulers that these so-called *Braahmans* and *Sadhus*, who were really popes, might do whatever they liked. They should never be punished. The rulers should not even ever think of punishing them. When the people became so ignorant, the popes did and made others do whatever they wished.

This evil took root 1000 years before the Great War, and even though the **Vedic** sages and seers lived in that age, yet the seeds of indolence, negligence, mutual jealousy and hatred had begun to sprout a little, and gradually they grew into lofty trees. When the preaching of the truth died away, ignorance spread all over India and its people began to quarrel and fight among themselves, for it is said, "Righteousness, wealth, gratification of legitimate desires and salvation are attainable only when teachers of the highest type are found in a country, but in the absence of

good teachers and good disciples dense ignorance prevails. Whenever good teachers are born who preach the truth, ignorance is dispelled and the light of truth begins to shine forth." SAANKHYA 3:79, 81..

Then the popes got the laity to worship them and their feet, and began to say that in that alone consisted their (future) happiness.

PAGE 338

When the people were completely brought under subjection, the popes became entirely negligent of their duty, and extremely immersed in sensuality. As they were like shepherds, and the people like their sheep - ignorant dupes knowledge intellectual power, strength, courage, bravery and valor and all other good qualities were gradually lost. When they became licentious, they began to use meat and drink wine secretly.

The sect of Vaama Margis..

Then a sect sprung up among them whose followers wrote books called the *Tantraas* in which various statements were introduced with words *Shiva* said. *Parvati* said, *Bhairava* said. In these books such curious things are written as follow:-

"(Madya) wine, (Mansa) meat, Meena) fish, (Mudra-cakes), Maithuna) copulation, all these five beginning with the letter M lead to salvation in all ages." KALITANTRA.

"While in the circle of Bhairava persons of all Classes are regarded as twice-born, but after leaving the Bhairavi circle they all revert to their respective Classes." KULARNAVA.

"He, who drinks and drinks and drinks till he falls to the ground, gets up and again drinks, shall never be born again." MAHANIRMANA TANTRA.

"Excepting his mother let a man have sexual intercourse with all women. The *Vedaas* an the *Shastras* and other ancient books are like harlots. But the *Saambhavi Mudra** is like a lady of high birth who lives in privacy." JNANA SANKALANI TANTRA.

---

* Shambhavi Mudra is the name of certain positions of the figures practiced in devotions or religious worship offered to Paarvati - wife of Shiva. _Tr.

PAGE 339

Now look at the trickery of these stupid popes that whatever is considered to be highly sinful and opposed to the Veda is regarded as virtuous by the **Vaama Margis**. The use of meat, wine, fish, delicious eatables, such as various kinds of cakes, and copulation are considered as means of attaining salvation. Believing all men to be (incarnations of) Shiva and all women and all women (incarnations of) *Paarvati* they mutter the absurd couplet, "I am *Shiva* and thou are *Paarvati*, let us then co-habit" and they co-habit - not matter who the man and the women be, and see no harm in it.

The low women whose very touch is considered to be polluting are regarded extremely pure by them. As for instance the *Shaastra* forbids the touch of a woman when she is menstruating, but the *Vaama Margis* believe her to be very clean.

Reader! Mark, how meaningless is that verse of theirs which says:-
"Sexual intercourse with a woman is menses is like having a bath (in the sacred Tank) at *Pushkar*, with an outcast woman a pilgrimage to Kashi (Benares), with a woman working in leather like a bath (in the Ganges) at *Pragaya* (Allahabad), and with a washer-woman like a pilgrimage to Mathura, and with a prostitute like a pilgrimage to Audhya." RUDRYA MALA TANTRA.

They call wine pilgrimage, meat purity and flower, fish No. 3 and water-cucumber, copulation No. 4, and a cake, No. 5. they have employed such names to meat, etc., so that others may not understand them. They call themselves lotus-like, kind hearted, brave, merciful, mighty and the like, while they call others thorn-like, perverted, emaciated (like lean animals). They say that in a social gathering of the *Vaama Margis* all persons, whether Brahmans or outcasts, become Dwijas (i.e., twice born), but as soon as they leave that meeting, they revert to their respective Classes.

In a *Bhairavi* Circle* they mark or draw a triangle, a square, or a circle on the earth or on a piece of board, on which they place a pitcher full of wine, worship it and read this mantra "O Wine! Thou art free from the curse of *Brahma*." In a sequestered place, where none but the *Vaama Margis* can go men and women meet together; the men strip a woman naked and worship her, while the women strip a man naked and worship him. Then, any

---

* i.e., social gathering of Vaama Margis. -Tr.

PAGE 340

man can get hold of any woman, be she his own wife, daughter, mother, sister or daughter-in-law or anyone else's and co-habit with her.

They fill a cup with wine and place meat the sweets on a plate. Then the officiating priest takes that cup in his hand and saying, "I am Bhairava (the Indian Bacchus) or I am *Shiva* " drinks it up. Thereupon the rest of the company drink out of the same cup. Having stripped naked someone's wife or a prostitute, or a man, they give a sword in her or his hand, call her a goddess (Devi) or him a great God (Mahadeva).

They worship her or his private organs and make that goddess or God drink a cup of wine and themselves drink of the same cup turn by turn. They go on drinking till they get completely drunk. Anyone of the men can then co-habit with any woman, be she his own sister, mother or daughter, he likes.

Sometimes when extremely intoxicated they fight among themselves with their shoes or fists, pull each other's hair, or kick one another. If anyone vomits there, he who ahs attained the highest stage of perfection, i.e., is an *aghori* (and omnivorous person) or an adept would even eat up the vomited matter.

The following are the qualifications of an adept among them:- "He that drinks away bottle after bottle in a public house, sleeps in a brothel in order to misconduct himself, and commits similar other sins without compunction or shame, is like a great Sovereign Emperor of the whole earth among the *Vaama Margis*." TNANA SANKALANI TANTRA.

In short, the greatest sinner among them is called great, whilst he who is virtuous and afraid of committing evil deeds is called small, for it is recorded in one of their scriptures, "He that is restrained from the commission of sinful deeds by the fear of public opinion, of disobedience to the dictates of the scriptures, of tarnishing the family name and of being looked down upon by the

country at large is human, whilst one who commits wicked deeds without any shame is Divine (Eternal Shiva)."

The *Uddisa Tantra* describes a ceremonial thus. Let bottles filled with wine be placed in niches in all the four walls of a room. Then let a man drink a bottle of wine from one of the four walls of a room. Then let a man drink a bottle of wine from one of the niches and to the next, and have another bottle, thence go to the third

PAGE 341

niche, and have still another bottle and then go to the fourth and go on drinking till he falls down on the earth like a log. When he comes round a bit let him again drink in the same way till he falls a second time, let him repeat it a third time, and when he gets up a fourth time, he shall never be born again. But the fact is that it is extremely difficult for such men to be born again as men.

They shall, on the contrary, enter the bodies of very low creatures and remain there for long time to come. The law has been laid down in the Tantra, books of *Vaama Margis* that a man can have sexual intercourse with all women (except his mother), even if they be his daughters, sisters or other near relations.

There are ten kinds of higher knowledge known among them. One of them is *Maatangi knowledge*. One who is versed in this believes that even a mother should not be spared, that is a man can have sexual intercourse even with his own mother. These people mutter some magical incantations while having sexual intercourse in the hope of acquiring occult power. Very few people indeed are there in this world who are so insane and do idiotic as these *Vaama Margis*!!!

He who would advocate untruth must revile the truth. Mark what the*Vaama Margis* say:- "The **Vedas** and the *Shaastras* and other ancient books are like common harlots, but the *Shambhavi Mudra* is like a lady of high birth and of great chastity."

No wonder! These *Vaama Margi* being so low and degraded in their morals founded a religion so entirely opposed to the to the **Veda**. Later on when their religion had widely spread over India, they roguishly introduced some of their evil practices even in the name of the **Veda** as the following quotations will bear out:-

"Let a man drink wine (sura) in the *Saautramani Yajna*."
"Let a man eat meat in a *Yajna*."
"A slaughter ceases to be slaughter when this deed is done in a *Vedic* sacrifice."

"There is no turpitude in eating flesh, drinking wine, and committing adultery, for that is the natural way of created beings, but abstinence being great reward." MANU.

PAGE 342

Now the word *suraa*, that does not mean wine, has been translated as wine in one of the above quotations. The word *suraa* really means the juice of a creeper called *Soma*. These *Vaama Margis*, who have started such wicked practices as killing animals in a sacrifice, should be asked if, as they hold, it to be true that a slaughter ceases to be as such in a *Vedic* sacrifice, what harem will there be if a *Vaama Margi* and his family members be slaughtered and then offered in a sacrifice?

It is childish to say that there is no sin in eating meat, drinking wine and committing adultery, for meat cannot be had without killing animals, and it can never be right to hurt or kill animals without

an offence. With regard to drinking wine, it is interdicted everywhere, and nowhere except in the books of *Vaama Margis* has it been allowed, on the other hand its use has been forbidden in all (sacred) books.

Sexual intercourse with a woman excepting one's wedded wife is undoubtedly sinful. He who declares it permissible is indeed himself a great sinner.

They interpolated these and similar other verses into the works of the seers, and also wrote books in the name of many great sages and savants, and thus introduced such sacrifices as *Gomedha* - a sacrifice in which horses were killed. They declared that by slaughtering these animals and offering them as a sacrifice both - the animals sacrificed and the *Yajamaana* - went to Heaven. This evil practice seems to have originated on account of their ignorance of the true meanings of such wods as *Ashwamedha, Gomedha*, and *Naramedha* that occur in the *Braahmans*, for had they understood them, they would not have committed such blunders.

What are then the true meanings of such words as Ashwamedha, Gomedha, and Naramedha?

A. ~ Their meanings are not what the *Vaama Margis* think. Nowhere in the scriptures and other authentic books it is written that horses, cows and human beings should be killed and offered as a sacrifice in the sacred fire, called *Homa*. It is only in the books of the *Vaama Margis* that such absurd things are written.

PAGE 343

Wherever in the authentic books of the sages the sanctions of such a sacrifice is found, it should be understood that the verse or the passage has been interpolated by the *Vaama Margis*. Now mark! What the *Shathapatha Braahmana* says on the subject:- "A king governs his people justly and righteously. This called *Ashwamedha*." "A learned man gives a free gift of knowledge to the people. This also called *Ashwamedha*. Again , "the burning of clarified butter and odoriferous and nutritious substances in the fire in order to purify the are is also called *Ashwamedha*. SHATHAPATHA BRAHMANA 13: 1, 6;3.

"To keep the food pure or to keep the senses under control. Or to make a good use of the rays of the sun or keep the earth free from impurities (clean) is called *Gomedha*." "The cremation of the body of a dead person in accordance with the principles laid down in the **Vedas** is called *Naramedha*." *

Q. - The sacrificers assert that the Yajmaanaa and the animals burnt in a sacrifice both go to heaven, and also that they bring the animals (burnt in the sacrifice) to life again. Do you think it to be true or not?

A. ~ No, if it be true that they go to Heaven, why should not he (as well as his dear relations), who asserts it, be killed and burnt as a sacrifice and thereby sent to Heaven, or why could they (i.e., the sacrificer and his relations) not be brought back to life after they have been killed and burnt in the sacrifice.

Q. - It the Vedas do not sanction this kind of sacrifice, why should the Vedic hymns be chanted at the time?

A. ~ The hymns cannot prevent anyone from chanting them, for they are only a collection of words, but they do not mean that the animals should be slaughtered and burnt in sacrifices. The Vedic hymns *Agnaye Swaha*, etc., mean that the clarified butter and other nutritious and

odoriferous substances, when burnt in the fire, purify the air, rain, and water, and thereby promote happiness on this earth. How could those idiots understand the true meaning of the *Vedic* hymns, because the selfish minds know and believe in nothing else but serving their selfish ends.

Seeing these evil, popish practices as well as others, such as feeding the priest in order to satisfy the spirits of the dead, a most dreadful religion, called Jainism or Buddhism, that reviled the

---

* The Yajamaana is a person who institutes or performs a sacrifice and pay the expenses of it. This is the orthodox meaning of the word. - Tr.

PAGE 344

Vedas and the *Shaastras*, sprang up into existence. It is related that in this very country there was a certain king of Gorakhpur who performed a sacrifice in which these popes officiated. His beloved queen died during an act of sexual intercourse with a horse as required in such a sacrifice.

This disgusted the king who renounced the world, handed over the government of his kingdom to his son, became a mendicant and began to expose the trickery of these popes.

A brief statement on Charavaka, Abhanaka and Jainism

Back to contents

There are two sects of the Jain or Buddha religion called *Charvaka* and *Abhanaka*. Its followers wrote such verses as the following:-

"If an animal when slaughtered and burnt in a sacrifice go to Heaven, why should the *Yajamaana* (the master of ceremonies) not slay his own father another dear relations and burn them in a sacrifice and thereby help them go to Heaven?"

"If oblations offered to the priests in the name of a deceased ancestor satisfy the latter, it is useless for people going abroad to take any cash with them for maintaining themselves during the journey; because of eatables offered to the priests in the name of a departed ancestor can reach him, why cannot the food and drink prepared at home and offered on plates and in cups in the name of the person gone abroad by his relations reach him in foreign lands? When a person living in a distant country or in a place, say only 10 cubits away from where the food and drink are offered in his name, cannot obtain them, it is impossible then for a departed ancestor to receive things offered in his name."

The people began to believe in these teachings of the *Charavakas*, etc., that stood the test of reason. Thus their religion (Jainism and Buddhism) began to spread. When many good kings and landlords became its followers, the popes too inclined towards it, for they would go whenever they got plenty of cash. They soon embrace Jainism. There are many popish practices, but of a different kind, even among the Jainis. These will be described in Chapter 12 The majority of the people embrace their religion, but others who lived in the hills in Benares or at

PAGE 345

Canouj, and in the West and in the South (of India) did not accept it. The Jainis being ignorant of the knowledge of the Veda attributed the popish practices (then current among the followers of the Veda) to the Veda and began even to run down these scriptures. They prohibited the study

and teaching of the Veda, suppressed the custom of wearing *Yajnopavita* (the sacred thread), which is a symbol of culture and of belonging to one of the three upper Classes, abolished the system of *Brahamacharya*, etc., destroyed as many books of the Vedic literature as the could get hold of, and even persecuted and oppressed the Aryas a great deal.

When they gained in power and had ceased to be afraid of any body, they began to favor and honor their followers - both the householders and the mendicants - and to dishonor and punish the followers of the Veda unjustly. They began to live in ease and luxury, and being puffed up with pride became over-bearing in their manners. They also made huge images of their religious teachers, calle *Tirthankaras* - from *Rishabhdeva* to*Mahaavria* - and began to worship them. Thus the practice of worshipping idols originated with the Jains (in this country). The belief in God decline and the people took to idolatry instead. Thus, Jainism reigned supreme for about 300 years in India. The people during that time had become quite destitute of the knowledge of the Veda. This must have happened nearly 2,500 years ago.

Shankaracharya

About 2,200 years ago *Shankaracharya*, a Braahmana of Dravid (Southern India), studied Grammar and all other *Shaastras* - books on Logic, Philosophy, Metaphysics, Theology, etc. - during student life, and seeing the religious degradation of his country began to soliloquies thus:- "What a pity! The true theistic Vedic religion has disappeared, whilst the atheistic Jain religion has prevailed to the great detriment of the people. This (i.e., the Jain religion) must be put down somehow." *Shankarcharya* had not only read the Shaastras but also the Jain scriptures. He was also a powerful debater.

He began to think as to what was the best method of overthrowing Jainism. At last he came to the conclusion that preaching and holding discussions with the Jainis were the best methods to put down Jainism. With this object in view he went to Ujjain (in Central India). King *Sudhanwa* then ruled there. He had read the Jain books as well as a little Sanskrit. *Shankaracharya* began to preach the Vedic religion there. He went to the king and said "You have read the Jain books as well as Sanskrit, and also believe in the Jain Religion. I, therefore ask you to arrange a discussion between the exponents of the Jain

PAGE 346

religion and myself on the condition that the vanquished party should embrace the religion of the victor and that you should also accept his faith. Although king Sudhanwa was a follower of the Jain religion, yet as he had read Sanskrit he had some light of knowledge in his heart, and his intellect had not been obscured by extreme animalism, because a learned man can distinguish between right and wrong, and then embrace the truth and reject falsehood.

As long as King Sudhanwa had not come across a very learned teacher, he was in doubt as to which of the two - Vedic and Jain - religions was right, and which false. When he heard Shankaracharya, he was very much pleased with what he said, and replied that he would certainly arrange the desired discussion and find out which religion was true and which false. He invited many exponents of the Jain religion from very distant places and convened a meeting for a discussion between them and Shankar.

In this Shankar was to prove the truth of the Vedic religion and to refute Jainism, whilst the Jain teachers were to prove their own religion to be true and refute the Vedic religion. The Jainis held that there was not Eternal Maker of this universe, and the soul and the world were beginningless, they were never created, nor will they ever be reduced to their component elements.

On the other hand, Shankaracharya maintained that the Beginningless, Omnipotent Supreme Spirit alone was the Maker of the Universe, the world and the soul were unreal, and as the Great God had created the universe by virtue of His Maya, he alone sustains it and causes its dissolution. The soul and the world are like things seen in a dream. God Himself became metamorphosed into this world and sports about in it.

The discussion lasted for many days; in the end the religion of the Jainis were refuted both by reason and cogent proofs, while the that of Shankar remained unrefuted. Thereupon those Jain teachers and King Sudhanwa renounced Jainism and embraced the Vedic religion i.e., the religion advocated by Shankaracharya. Then there was a great stir and noise about it in the country. King Sudhanwa wrote letters to his friends and relations and among others to rulers of the country, by whose help discussions between Shankar and other Jainis teachers were arranged in different places, but the Jainis having been defeated in the first discussion lost everywhere.

Thereafter Sudhanwa and other kings arranged for Shankar's tour throughout the whole of India and furnished him with an escort of armed men to protect him and with servants to attend upon him. Form that time onward the people (of India) began to wear the sacred thread and

PAGE 347

study and teach the Vedas. For ten years he toured all over the country, refuted Jainism and advocated the Vedic religion. All the broken images that are now-a-days dug out of the earth were broken in the time of Shankar, whilst those that are found whole here and there under the ground had been buried by the Jainis for fear of their being broken (by those who had renounced Jainism). Shankar also refuted Shivism that ahd come into vogue a little before his time, and also Vaama Margism.

At that time this country was very rich, and its people were also patriotic. Shankar, King Sudhanwa and other kings had not had the Jain temples pulled down as they intended to establish schools therein to teach the Vedas and other Shaastras. When the Vedic religion had been established in the country and they were about to adopt measures for the diffusion of knowledge, two men, outwardly followers of the Vedic religion but bigoted Jainis at heart, in other words, perfect hypocrites whom Shankar had befriended on finding a suitable occasion poisoned him with such a poisonous substance that his appetite failed and an eruption broke out on his body, and he died within six months.

Then all lost heart so much so that even the dissemination of knowledge that was about to take place did not do so. Shankar's disciples began to teach his commentary on the Vedaant Shaastra, called Shankar Bhaashya, and other books that had been written by him. In other words, they began to preach what had been professed by Shanker with a view to refute the Jainis more successful, viz., hat Brahmaa (God) was the true reality, the Universe was an illusions and that the human soul and God were one.

They started monasteries, Shringeri in the south, Bhugovarahan iin the East and Josi in the North and Sarda at Dwarka iin he West (of India), became their abbots, gained wealth and power , and began to live in ease and luxury, as after the death of Shankar his disciples were highly honored.

Now it must be understood that if it was the belief of Shankar that God and the human soul were identical and that the world was an illusion, it was not good; but if he had avowed this doctrine simply in order to refute Jainism more successfully, it was a little good.

Beliefs of the Neo-Vedantists.

The beliefs of the Neo-Vedantists are discussed below in the form of questions and answers:-

Q. - The world is unreal like things seen in a dream, or like a piece of rope mistaken for a snake, or like a sea-shell seen glittering in the sunshine for a piece of silver or like a mirage for

PAGE 348

water, or like a town of angels or like a juggler's trick. (Brahmaa) God alone is real.

A. ~ What do you call real?

Q. - What does not exist and yet appears to do so.

A. ~ How can a thing appear to exist when it does not exist at all?

Q. - By adhyaropa.

A. ~ What do you mean by adhyaropa?

Q. -Adhyaropa or adhyasa consists in believing a thing to be different from what i really is; the refutation of a wrong belief is called apavaada; by the help of these two this phenomenal world can be taken to exist in Brahmaa Who is Himself Unchangeable.

A. ~ You have fallen into this mistake by believing a piece of rope to be real while a snake to be unreal. Is not a snake also real?

If you say that it does not exist in a piece of rope we ask, "Does it not exist in some other place or does its idea not exist in our consciousness?" If it does, a snake then is not unreal. In the same way, other illustrations, such as that of a mollusk-shell mistaken for a piece of silver, can be shown to be wrong. Similarly, things seen in dreams also exist somewhere in the world. Their ideas exist in our consciousness, hence it cannot be said of them that they exist by adhayaropa (i.e., by erroneously attributing the properties of one thing to another.

Q. - If this be true, how can one see a thing in a dream that was never seen or heard to exist in the wakeful state, such as a man' s head is cut off and he himself weeps, or a stream of water flows uphill?

A. ~ Even this argument does not support your contention, because impression of a thing cannot exist in one's mind unless h has seen or heard of it, and there can be no remembrance without mental impressions, and without remembrance there can be no direct consciousness of a thing. When a person hears from another that such and a such person's head was cut off on a field of battle and his father or brother or some other relation was seen to weep, or when a person sees water from a fountain jetting up, all these things make impressions on his mind. When he is no longer in his wakeful state and dreams in his sleep of what he had seen or heard, since he sees all these things in himself, it can be understood how he comes to imagine that his own head is cut off and he himself weeps or that a stream of water flows upwards. This is

PAGE 349

again not like imagining a thing to exist which does not exist at all, it is more like sketching in which a sketcher embodies his idea of what he had seen or heard on paper, or like painting in which a painter by forming a metal picture of his subject paints it on canvas.

It is true though that sometimes such things are seen in dreams as are still remembered, for instance, one sees one's teacher (in a dream), while on other occasions one recalls things in a dream that had been seen or heard long time ago and had therefore completely passed out of one's memory; in such cases one forgets whether one sees, or hears the same as one ha seen or heard before in the wakeful state. But things cannot be remembered so methodically in dreams as in a wakeful state.

Again a person born blind can never dream of colors, hence you definition of the words *Adhyaropa or Adhyasaa* is wrong. And what the *Neo-Vedaantists* called *Vivartavada* is also untrue. The term *Vivartavada* means that a person erroneously considers the universe to be real, while it is only illusory (Brahma alone being a real entity), just as one mistakes a piece of rope for a snake.

Q. - There can be no knowledge of an Adhyasa - a thing that is supported - without the knowledge of its Adhishthan - that which supports it, - for in the above instance had there been no rope, the idea of a snake being there would never have entered one's mind. As there is no snake in a piece of rope, nor there ever was, not shall it ever be, in dim light a man may mistake a piece of rope for a snake and tremble with fear, but when he sees it with the light of a good lamp, his mistake is at once corrected and he ceases to fear, in like manner a man erroneously conceives that this world exist in Brahma this illusion of the existence of the world comes to an end, and he finds that it is all Brahma.

A. ~ Who erroneously experiences this illusion of the world in Brahma?*Q. - The human soul.*

A. ~ Whence did the human soul originate?

Q. - Out of ignorance?

A. ~ What is the origin of ignorance and where does it reside?

Q. - Ignorance is without a beginning and resides in Brahma

A. ~ Was there ignorance of self or of something else in Brahma and who was it that became ignorant?

PAGE 350

Q. - Chidabhasa

A. ~ What is the nature of this Chidabhasa?

Q. - It is Brahmaa. Brahmaa become ignorant of Brahmaa, in other words, He forgets His own nature.

A.~ What is the cause of this forgetfulness?

Q. - Nescience.

A. ~ Is nescience an attribute of an Omnipresent, Omniscient Being or of one who possesses finite knowledge.

Q. - Of the latter.

A. ~ Do you then believe in the existence of a second conscious entity besides the Infinite, Omniscient, Conscious Being? And where did the being possessed of finite knowledge, you just spoke of, come from? Of course it would be alright if you were to believe in the existence of another beginningless, finite, conscious entity besides *Brahma*, but you do not, hence the objection.

Again were *Brahma* to become ignorant of Self, this ignorance would spread throughout the whole *Braham* just a pain in one part of a man's body makes all other parts (of his body) helpless, so would *Brahma*, if afflicted with ignorance or pain in one part, feel Himself ignorant or afflicted with pain throughout His whole self.

Q. - It is all an attribute of Upadhi.

A. ~ Is *Upadhi* possessed of consciousness or not? Is it real or otherwise?

Q. - It is indescribable, in other words, it cannot be said of it that it possesses consciousness or is without it, is real or apparent.

A. ~ This is quite absurd for on the one hand you say that it is nescience, and on the other you hold that it can neither be said to be possessed of consciousness, nor devoid of it, neither real nor unreal. It can be compared to a piece of gold adulterated with copper which can neither be said to be gold nor copper, but a mixture of both.

Q. - Just as the ether of the pot, the ether of a house, and the ether of a cloud appear to be distinct from the universal ether by virtue of being enclosed by the pot, the house and the cloud, while in reality they are all identical with the universal ether, in like manner Brahma appears

PAGE 351

to the ignorant different in different persons and things by virtue of the intervention of maya, nescience, and antahkaran (the internal organ of thought) and also by being spoken of collectively and individually, while in reality He is one and the same in all. It is said in the Katha Upanishad, "Just as hear pervades objects of the various sizes and shapes, such as big and small, long, broad and round, and assumes the different forms of those objects, so does God pervades different antahkarans an assumes their forms, but as a matter of fact He is distinct from them."

A. ~ "Even this assertion of yours is wrong. Just as you believe the pot, the house and the cloud, in the examples cited by you, to be distinct from ether, inn like manner why do you not believe the material world - both in its casual and present visible forms - and the soul to be distinct from the Supreme Spirit, and the latter distinct from the former (i.e., the matter and the soul)?

Q. - "Just as heat pervades all objects and thereby appears to assume various forms, so does the Supreme Spirit by pervading the soul and matter appear to the ignorant as one possessed of form, but in reality He is neither matter nor the soul." Again, when a thousand trays full of water are placed in the sun, a thousand different reflections of the sun are seen, but in reality the sun is one, and does not perish, move or spread when the trays get broken or their water moves or spreads, in the same manner Brahma is reflected in the antahkaran - this reflection is is called chidabhasa or the image of God.

The soul exists as a distinct entity only so long as the antahkaran lasts, but the moment the antahkaran, having attained perfect knowledge ceases to exist, the soul attains the nature of Brahma, i.e. becomes God. But as long as the soul is ignorant of its true nature which is Divine,

and thinks that it is the Chidabhasa that enjoys, feels pleasure or pain, commits sinful or virtuous deeds or is subject to birth and death, it cannot get freedom from the bondage of this world.

A. ~ This illustration of yours is of no good. The sun has a form so do the trays and the water therein, possessed forms. Again, the sun is separate from the trays and the water therein and vice versa. These two facts alone make it possible for the sun to be

PAGE 352

reflected. Has all these been formless or had they not been separate from each other, there would have been no reflection of the sun. God is Formless and being Omnipresent like ether noting van be separate from Him., nor van the (i.e., God and the Universe) be one and the same, as the relation of one that pervades and one that is pervaded by exists between God and the world, in other words, when the pervader and the pervaded seen from the *anwaya* and *Vyatirekabhava** point of view, they are united together and yet are always distinct from each other.

For, if they be one, the relation of the pervader and the pervaded cannot exist but it is clearly said in the *Brihdarayaka Upanishad* that this relation does exist between God and the world. Again there can be no reflection of God because it is impossible for a formless object to be reflected (in a transparent medium). As to your belief regarding *Brahmaa* that He becomes the soul through the intervention of *Antahkaran* , it is like a child's prattle, for the *Antahkaran* is mutable, movable and separate, whilst *Brahma* is immutable and entire. Should you not believe *Brahmaa* and the soul to be different form each other, how would you answer the following objection.

The *Antahkaran* being movable, the part of Brahmaa which it would occupy would become devoid of consciousness, whilst the part where it shifts from would become possessed of knowledge, just as an umbrella cuts off the sunshine wherever it is carried, ceases to intercept it where it has been shifted from, in like manner will the *Antahkaran* by acting as an intercepting medium make *Brahmaa* at one moment ignorant and bound, and at the next wise and free. From the effect of the presence of an intervening medium like the *Antahkaran*, and *Brahmaa* being indivisible the whole of *Brahmaa* will become ignorant, which can never be true as He is ex-hypothesis, All-knowledge. Again, whatever *Brahmaa*, through the medium of a certain *Antahkaran*, has been,

---

* Anwaya in Logic means a "statement of the constant and invariable concomitance of the Hetu (middle term) and the Sadhya (major term) of an Indian syllogism…..Anwaya, in fact, corresponds to the universal A proposition of European logic 'All A is B'. Vyatirekabhava means an assertion of the concomitance of the absence of Sadhya and the absence of Hetu, and corresponds to the converted A proposition 'All not -B is not -a'…..A cause or Hetu is said to be connected with its effect by Anwaya Vyatirekaryapati when both the affirmative an negative relations between the thing to be proved and the cause that proves can be equally asserted; such a Hetu alone makes the argument perfectly sound and incapable of refutation. This process of arriving at the Vyapati or universal proposition corresponds to the methods of Agreement and Difference in Mills' Logic." - Tr.

PAGE 353

say, at Mathura, the same cannot be re-called in Kashi (Benares) by *Brahmaa*, since He does not possess the same *Antahkaran*, as what has been seen by one cannot be remembered by another. The *chidabhas* that sees a thing a Mathura is not the same that lives a Benares, and the *Brahmaa* that illuminates the *chidabhas* of Mathura isnot the same that lives at Benares. If the very *Brahmaa* be the soul and not distinct from it, the soul ought to be Omniscient.

If the reflection of *Brahmaa* be distinct, none should be able to recall what he ahs seen or hear in thepast. If you say that one can remember because *Brahmaa* is one and the same. We answer that pain or ignorance in one part (of Brahmaa) should affect the whole of *Brahmaa*. Thus by

such illustration you have represented the Eternal, Holy, All-wise, Ever-free, Indivisible *Brahmaa* as non-eternal, unholy, ignorant, and subject to bondage, and division.

Q. - Even a formless object can be reflected, just as ether (sky) is reflected in a mirror or a in water and looks blue or dull gray, in like manner Brahmaa casts His reflection in all Antahkaran.

A. ~ No one can see ether with his eyes as it is altogether formless, how can a thing be reflected in a looking-glass or in water when it cannot even be seen. Only a thing that possesses some form can look blue or deep gray, but never a formless one.

Q. - What is then that looks bluish on high and is reflected in a mirror?

A. ~ It is the particles of dust and water (that have gone up from the earth) and of *Agni**. If there were not aqueous vapor above, where could the rain come from? Hence what looks like a tent (and over-spreads us) in reality a spherically-shaped mass of aqueous vapor. Just as fog, when looked at form a distance, appears thick and tent-like but gets thinner on approaching nearer, so does the watery vapor go up in the sky.

Q. - Are the then the illustrations elating to a coil of rope and a snake and to things seen in dreams and the like, which have been adduced above by us, beside the point?

---

* That state of matter whose properties are light and heat, etc. See Chapter 3 for further information on this subject.- Tr.

PAGE 354

A. ~ No, it is your understanding that is to blame, and this has already been pointed out. Pray tell us who it is that first falls a prey to ignorance?

Q. - Brahma.

A. ~ Is Brahma Omniscient or possessed of finite knowledge?

Q. - He is neither Omniscient nor is He possessed of finite knowledge, because Omniscience and its reverse can be predicated of him alone whose (psychic vision) is barred by a limiting medium (Upaadhi).

A. ~ Who is it that becomes subject to the influence of *Upaadhi*?

Q. - Brahmaa

A. ~ Then it is proved that *Brahmaa* can be both Omniscient and its reverse. Why did you then take exception to this statement? If you contend that upaadhi is something that has not reality in existence, with whom then did this false conception originate?

Q. - Is the soul identical with Brahmaa or not?

A. ~ It is different from *Brahmaa*, for if it were the same as *Brahmaa*, no false conceptions could originate. He, whose conception can be wrong, can never be All-truth.

Q. - We recognize nod distinction between right and wrong, and all human utterance is devoid of actuality.

A. ~ If all that you believe and say is false, hoe can you afford safe guidance?

Q. -We don't care whether we afford safe guidance or not. Conceptions of right and wrong originate entirely with us (and have o objective reality). It is the soul that is the witness and seat thereof.

A. ~ If conceptions of right and wrong are purely subjective phenomena, you would be a thief and an honest man at one and the same time and, therefore, a very unsafe guide. For he alone is a trustworthy guide whose conceptions are correct, who speaks what is right and acts up to his convictions in accordance with what is right, and not one who is otherwise. Your statement being self-contradictory you cannot be right.

Q. - Do you believe in the existence of the beginningless Maya that resides in the and envelopes Brahmaa?

A. ~ No, we do not, because you interpret Maya as something which is not and yet appears to be. Only he whose mental vision is blurred will subscribe to this belief. It is impossible that a thing, which does not exist at all, should appear to exist, even as

PAGE 355

it is impossible to photograph the son of a barren woman. Besides your view is opposed to the teachings of the *Upanishads* as is proved by the following passage of the *Chhandogya Upanishad*, "(Do thou,) O dear son, (bear in mind) that the world had verily a material cause."

Q. - Would you refute the teachings of even scholars like Vasishtha, Shankar and Nischaldas who were possesses of greater learning than you are? To me it appears that Vasishtha, Shankar, and Nischaldas could speak with greater authority.

A. ~ Are you yourself a well-read ma or not?

Q. - Yes, I have read a little.

A. ~ Alright then, try if you can establish the truth of the doctrine promulgated by Vasishtha, Shakara and Nischaldas, we will refute your arguments. He whose position is proved to be right, will be regarded the greater authority. If the position held by you in common with those teachers had been impregnable, you would have succeeded in confuting us in debate by producing the arguments advanced by them, and in that case your position would have been accepted as right.

It is very likely that *Shankaracharya* had taken up this position with the view to refute more successfully the beliefs of the Jainis, for many a selfish scholar in response to the requirements of expediency preaches doctrines opposed to the dictates of this conscience. But if he really held beliefs like the identity of God with the soul, and the unreality of the external universe, his position was altogether wrong.

Let us now examine the claims of *Nischaldas* to scholarship. He say s in his book, called *Vrittiprabhakar*, that the oneness of God and the soul can be inferred from the fact of both of them being possessed of consciousness. An argument like this can be adduced only by men possessed of a poor intellect, because things possessing similar attributes are not necessarily identical, as points of dissimilarity may differentiate them just as the statement that *Prithivi* (solids) and *Jala* (liquids) being dead and inert, are identical, cannot be valid, in the same manner the contention of *Nischaldas* state above is illogical because finitude and fallibility differentiate the

soul from God and omniscience and infallibility differentiate God from the soul; it is, therefore, clear that God and the soul are two distinct entities.

Now solidity and *gankha* (the property of exciting olfactory impulses) are attributes of *Prithivi* (solids) which distinguish if from *Jala* (liquids) which possesses *rasa* (the property of exciting gustatory impulses) and fluidity, therefore solids and

PAGE 356

liquids are not identical. In like manner, God and the soul on account of possessing dissimilar attributes, never were, nor are, nor shall ever be one. This will suffice to show the extent of *Nischaldas's* learning. As regards *Yoga vashishtha*, its author was a *Neo-Vedaantis*. It could not have been written by *Balmika, Vashishtha* or *Ram Chandra*, for all of them were followers of the Vedic religion and could not therefore have written a book opposed to its teachings, nor could they have preached anti-Vedic doctrines.

Q. - Vyasa is the author of Shariraka Sutraas which also inculcate the identity of God with the soul. For example he says,

1. *"The soul manifests itself after attaining its true nature which is Divine, because the word (Swa) self stands for it its Divine Nature." VEDAANT SHASTRA 4:4,1.*
2. *"Jaimini holds that the soul is one with God, because there are passages in the Upanishads which declare that the soul can attain to a state of sinlessness." VEDAANT 4:4, 7.*
3. *"The great teacher Audulomi believes that the soul retains the attribute of consciousness a lone in the state of salvation (hence is identical with Brahmaa) as there are passages in the Brihidaranyaka which declare that the soul is of the same nature as God." VEDANT 4:4, 6.*
4. *"Vyasa holds that God and the soul are not different, because the passages like the above occur in the Upanishads." VEDANT 4: 5.*
5. *"When a seer (yogi) attains superhuman powers and regains his Divinity, he is not longer subject to the authority of a higher power, i.e., by virtue of his Divinity he attains final beatitude and remains in the state of emancipation as his own master as well as the supreme Governor of the universe." VEDANT 4: 4, 9.*

Now how would you explain these passages?)

A. ~ You have wrongly translated these aphorisms. The following is their correct translation:-

PAGE 357

1. "So long as the soul is not cleansed of all its impurities, and does not regain its pristine purity, it cannot acquire superhuman* powers and attain eternal bliss through communication with the Divine Spirit that pervades the soul."
2. "In like manner the great sage Jaimini holds that so long as the soul does not attain superhuman psychic powers and free itself from the bondage of sin, it cannot attain and enjoy eternal bliss."
3. "The great Teacher Audulomi believes that when the soul is freed from all faults and imperfections, such as ignorance, attains purity and retains the attribute of consciousness alone, it establishes direct relationship with the All-pervading Deity."
4. "The great sage Vyasa holds that when a man attains a beatified state in this life by virtue of direct communion with God and acquisition of superhuman psychic powers and absolute knowledge, he recovers his original pure self and enjoys extreme bliss."

5. "When a yogi has reached a stage at which al his volitional activity is directed towards righteousness alone., he attains to a state of constant communion with God and obtains the bliss of salvation. Then he is free and is his own master quite unlike what we see in this world of ours, wherein one man is placed above another."

Had the interpolation of the above aphorisms been different from what is given here, the following aphorisms would not be found in the same book.

(i) The soul which is distinct from God could not be the author of the universe, for being possessed of finite energy and knowledge it has not the power to build up the Cosmos. Hence the soul is distinct from God. VEDANT SHAASTRA 1:1, 16.

(ii)"The soul and God are distinct from each other, as it has been declared by the Upanishads that they are different. Had it not been so, it would not be true that the soul attains bliss through communion with God Who is All-bliss and that God is the object of realization, whilst the

---

* I have to use this word for want of a better word. Here the term superhuman is used to express those powers that are not attainable by man except through the practice of the highest form of Yoga. - Tr.

PAGE 358

soul seeks realization." The soul and God are, therefore, not identical. VEDANT 1:1, 17

(iii)"It having been declared by the Upanishads that God is distinguished from the soul and the primordial matter on account of His possessing the attributes of Resplendence, Holiness, All-glory, absence of incarnate existence, Omnipresence, and of His being Unborn and Deathless, without the necessity of respiration, bodily existence and mind, the subtler than the soul which again is subtler than primordial matter. On account of the Character and attributes stated above, God is distinct from both the soul and the matter." VEDANT 1,2, 22.

(iv)"The Upanishads inculcate the union of the Omnipresent God with the soul, and of the soul with the Divine spirit. God and the soul are therefore distinct from each other as union can be predicted only of two distinct entities." VEDANT 1:1,19.

"God has been declared Omnipresent in the Upanishad and because He pervades the soul, the soul which is pervaded is distinct from God that pervades it. This relation can be true only of two distinct entities. Just as God is distinct from the soul, in like manner is He different from learned men, otherwise called Devas, because the latter enjoy the use of the senses, and manas, the earth and other material objects, space, the atmosphere and luminaries like the sun." VEDANT 1:1,20.

(vii)"As God and the soul are two distinct entities, the Upanishads declare that in the recesses of the human heart there lie hidden tow spirits - divine and the human." VEDANT 1:1, 11

(vii)"The soul circumscribed by a material body cannot be identical with God as the nature, attributes and characteristics of God cannot be predicated of it." VEDANT 1:1,3.

PAGE 359

(ix) "God is distinct from the soul as He pervades the senses, the manas, the earth and other material objects, and the soul. This fact of God being Omnipresent is clearly stated in all the Upanishads." VEDANT 1:2, 18.

(x) "The soul encased in a bodily tenement is not God, for they essentially different from each other in nature." VEDANT 1:2, 20.

Thus even the Shariraka Sutras* teach that God and the soul are distinct from each other in their very nature. In the same manner, it can be proved that there can be no Upakram (i.e., the issuing of the Universe from Brahmaa) and Upsanhara (i.e., the merging of the Universe into God at the time of Dissolution) as held by the Neo-Vedantis.

When they recognize not other entity excepting God, it must be He alone then that is subject to creation and dissolution, but the Vedas and other authoritative scriptures declare him otherwise. This belief of theirs is, therefore sacrilegious, for it is impossible that God Who is Unchangeable, Infinite, Holy, Eternal, Infallible, should become subject to change, creation and ignorance.

Even at the time of dissolution God (prakriti) (primordial matter), and the soul continue to exist separately. Therefore the Neo-Vedantic theories of Creation and Dissolution are also false. There are good many other beliefs of theirs that are opposed to the teachings of the Shaastraas and do not stand the test of reason and experience.

After the both the Jainis and the followers of the Shankar exercised some influence on the religious thought of the country and there were discussions and debates between them.

Vikramaditya, Bhartri Hari and King Bhoja and the Shivites.

Three hundred years after Shankara there flourished in Ujjain a glorious potentate named Vikramaditya. He put sown internecine warfare among the ruling Princes of India and established peace. Later on Raja Bhartri Hari acquired some proficiency in poetry and allied branches of literature, and in other departments of learning. He renounced the world, and abdicated the throne.

---

* Another name for the Vedant Shastra.

360

Five hundred years after Vikrama there flourished another king called Bhoja. He encouraged the study of Sanskrit Grammar to some extent, and patronized artistic poetry so much so that even a shepherd, named Kalidas, became the author of 'Raghuvansha'. Whoever composd a fine verse and presented himself at his court was richly rewarded and honored.

after this the kings and aristocracy gave up the pursuit of knowledge altogether. Though the Shivites existed before Shankar's time and after the Vaama Maarga had had it sway, they had not, then, acquired much influence. From Vikram's time onwards this sect began to gain in influence and power. The Shivites were split up into many sections, such as Pashupata, even as the Vaama Maargis were divided into ten sections such as Maha Vidya. These people raised Shankara to the position of an incarnation of Shiva. Sanyasis also embraced the Shiva faith. They also kept on good relations with the Vaama Margis who took to the worship of Devi, the consort of Shiva, whilst the Shivites started the worship of Mahadeva.

Both the Vaama Maargis and Shivites besmear their bodies with ashes and wear rosaries, the beads of which are made of the Rudraksha tree, but the latter are not so much opposed to the Vedic teachings as are the former. The Shivites composed many verses like the following, "Fie on him whose forehead is not besmeared with ashes, and who had not got a Rudraksh rosary round his neck. He should be boycotted like an outcast. He who wears 32 beads on the neck, 40 on the head, 6 in each ear, 12 round each wrist, 16 round each arm, one on the top of the head, and 108 next to the heart is verily like unto Lord Mahadeva Himself."

The Shaktas share this belief. Later on the Vaama Maargis and the Shivites combined together and introduced the worship of the male and female reproductive organs which are termed Jaladhari and Linga. These unblushing wretches did not feel the slightest shame in

PAGE 361

following these idiotic practices. It as been well said by a poet, "The selfish when blinded by self-interest mistakes diabolical deeds for good actions, and are not alive to their sinful character." They began to look upon the worship of stalks and stones and of the reproductive organs, as the sole means of attaining righteous ends, wealth, the fulfillment of legitimate desires and even salvation.

When after Raja Bhoja, the Jainis installed idols in their temples and began to frequent them for paying homage and adoration to the images, the disciples of these popes (Vaama Maargis and Shivites) began to follow their example. At about the same time in Western India Mohammedans and followers off other alien religions poured into India, the popes composed verses like the following:- "What ever may be the amount of pain inflicted, and even though the life be in jeopardy, let not the language of the Yavanas* be employed in speech. Let no one save his life by seeking refuge in a Jain temple, even though he be pursued by a mad elephant, for it is better to be killed by him than to set foot in a Jain temple.

They began to preach such pernicious doctrines to their followers. When asked to quote chapter and verse from some authoritative scriptures they expressed themselves (willing and ready to do so). On being pressed they quoted passages from the Markandeya Purana and recited pieces from the Durgapath purporting to sing the glories of Devi (goddess).

In the reigh of Raja Bhoja some Pundits wrote the Markandeya and the Shiva Puranas and gave out that Vyasa was the author thereof. When this was brought to the notice of the king, these Pundits had their hands chopped off by way of punishment. Further he issued an order that all works on poetry and other subjects should bear on their title pages the names of the authors and not of sages and seers (of yore). This is written in the historical work Sanjivani by Raja Bhoja. This book is to be found with the Tivari Braahmans of Bhind, a village in the Gwalior State. The Rao Saahib of Lakhuna and his minister Ram Dyal Chaubey have seen it with their own eyes.

---

* The term Yavanas is equally applied to the Greeks and the Mohammedans, etc.-Tr.

PAGE 362

It is clearly written therein that Vyasa composed 4,400 verses of the Mahabharat, and his pupils added another 5, 600. thus there were in all 10,000 verses in the original Mahabharat. In the time of Raja Vikramaditya the number of verses rose to 20,000. Raja Bhoja says that in his father's time the number came up to 25,000 and at the time of writing the books under notice, when he was a middle aged man, it had risen to 30,000; if it went on increasing at the rate the Mahabharat will in no time become a camel's load.

He further says that if books like the Puranas were made in the name of the ancient sages and seers, the people of Aryavarta (India) would be steeped in superstition and thus being deprived of the benefits of the Vedic Religion would sink deep in degradation. This shows that king Bhoja has some idea of the Vedic teachings.

In the country ruled over by Raja Bhoja and in the neighbourhood ther live some very clever mechanicians who, as the Bhoja Prabandha says, "has constructed a machine resembling a

horse in shape that could traverse 27 and half Kosas or about 55 miles an hour on land as well as in air. Another mechanician had invented a fan that gave plenty of air and worked automatically."

If these two machines had been still existent, the Europeans would not have inflated with so much pride.

The Puranics or Vaishnavites

In spite of the effort of the popes. Their disciples continued their visits to the temples of the Jainis, they even began to attend Jain meetings wherein passages from the Jain scriptures were recited. The Jain popes began to inveigh the followers of the Puranic popes into their nets. The Puranic popes then bethought of themselves that unless they devised some means ot stem the tide of conversion, their disciples would become Jainis.

Upon this the Puranic popes by mutual consultations came to the conclusion that like the Jainis, they should also have their incarnations, temples, images and mythological books. For instance they devised 24 incarnations in place of Jain Tirthankars which likewise are 24 in number. The Jainis have Tantras and sub-tantras. The Puranic popes wrote out 18 Puranas (sub-puranas).

PAGE 363

The Vaishnava sect took its birth 150 years after Raja Bhoja. The founder Shathakopa was the son of a professional prostitute. In his time the movement achieved some successl his successor was Munivahana the son of a scavenger. He was succeeded by Yavanacharya who was born in a Mohammedan family. The fourth was Ramanuja, a Braahaman by birth. He propagated this creed. The Shivites had the Shiva Puran, and the Shaktas their Devi Bhagvat Puran, so the Vaishnavites their Vishnu Puran.

The authors did not publish these books in their own names, but instead fathered their publications on sages, and seers like Vyasa fearing that no one would attach any weight to what was published in their own name. These books should appropriately have been names Navina (i.e., of recent date). But there is nothing to wonder at if a poor man named his son Maharaj Adhiraja (Emperor), and if a thing of recent origin was named Sanatan (ancient). The contents of the Puranas bear on them the stamp of the internecine warfare of these sects.

Mark! It is written in the Devi Bhagvat Purana that a goddess named Shri, the mistress of Shripur, was the author of the universe. She also created Brahma, Vishnu and Mahadeva. She willed and then rubbed her hands and lo! There was a blister out of which Brahma was born. The goddess asked him to marry her. Brahma replied, "Thou ar my mother, therefore, it does not behove me to marry thee." This enraged the mother goddess and she reduced her son to ashes. She again rubbed her hands and produced another son in the same way. She named him Vishnu. The same proposal was made to him with the like result. He too was reduced to ashes.

A third son was brought into being in the same way. She named him Mahadeva and made a proposal of marriage to him. Mahadeva replied, " I cannot marry thee, unless thou art metamorphosed into a different woman." She did the needful. Then Mahadeva asked her, "What do these two heaps of ashes signify?" The goddess replied, "These are the mortal remains of thy brothers. They did not obey my orders and were therefore reduced to ashes." Mahadeva replied, "What shall I alone do? Bring them to life again and produce two other girls and let the three of us marry the three of them." The goddess did what was asked of her and thus the tree couples were married. What a shame! The fellows did

PAGE 364

not marry their mother but married their own sisters!!! Can this action be regarded morally justifiable?

Thereafter the goddess brought into existence Indra, etc. (Brahma, Vishnu, Rudra, Indra, were appointed as palanquin bearers of the goddess). Many such yarns have been spun out (in this book).
It might be asked (of the Shaktas), "What was the body of the goddess like? Who were her parents? Who was the creator of that Shripur." Should they say back in reply that the goddess had no beginning, it could not be right because whatever is the product of combination of elements must needs have a beginning. If the marriage if a mother with her son be a sin, why should not the marriage between brothers and sisters be regarded likewise?

Just as in the Devi Bhagvat Purana, Mahadeva, Vishnu, Brahma, etc., have been spoken of disparagingly whilst the goddess (Devi) has been exalted, in like manner in the Shiva Puran the Devi, etc., have been held up to contempt. All these have been described therein as the servants of Mahadeva who is proclaimed their Lord and Maser.

Now if the wearing of the stones of a fruit and the besmearing of the body with ashes can lead to salvation, why then the donkeys and pigs and other animals who wallow in dust, and Bhil and other low-born men who wear strings of fruit-stones on their bodies are already saved.

Q. - In the Kalagnirudra Upanishad the besmearing of the body with ashes is enjoined. Is that false? Even the Veda commends this practice, because the words Tryayasham Jamadagni occur in the text of the Yajur Veda. In the Puranas it is stated that the tree which grew out of the tears that ran from the eyes of Rudra was named Rudraksha. It is for this very reason that the wearing of one Rudraksha absolves one from all sins, leads him to Heaven and he terrors of hell are as nought for him.

A. ~ The author of Kalagnirudra Upanishad must have been one who was in the habit of besmearing himself with ashes, because passages like 'the first line traced with ashes (on one's forehead) represents the earth' which occur therein are manifestly absurd, for how is it possible that a line drawn with hand everyday should stand for the earth. As regards the Vedic text Tryaysham Jamadagni it does not relate to the wearing of Rudraksha or

PAGE 365

besmearing one's body with ashes. On the contrary it means "Do thou, O Lord, ordain that my eyesight may be preserved uninjured for 300 years and that i may also follow such rules of health as may help to preserve it." This interpretation of the Vedic text is supported by the Shathapatha Braahman which says, "Jamadagni does verily signify eyesight."

How foolish it is to assert that a tree can grow out of tears streaming from an eye! Who can subvert the laws of nature as ordained by God? Every tree grows out of the seed assigned to it by the Supreme Sprit, and not otherwise. It therefore follows that only savages, who are little better than beast, would wear Rudraksha, Tulsi,* lotus buds, blades of grass Sandal and besmear their bodies with ashes.

Thsu Vaama Maargis and Shivites are given to evil practices and are malicious. They do not even perform their (religious, and other), duties. Whoever is a good man among them does not believe in these things and does righteous deeds. If, as they say, Rudraksha and ashes scare away the minions of the Angel of Death, why are not policemen inspired with fright at their sight? When these things cannot frighten even dogs, lions, snakes, scorpions, flies and mosquitoes, why should the hosts of the Angel of Death (Lord of Justice) dread their sight?

Q. -The Vaama Maargis and Shivites are not good, but I suppose the Vaishnavites are so.

A. ~ Their sect being opposed to the teachings of the Vedas they are worse still.

Q. - Why do you refute the Shaiva and other creeds, they find support in the following Vedic texts:-

"We adore Rudra, the wrathful." "Thu art Vishnu." "Adoration to Vishnu." "We pray to Ganesh, the Lord of Hosts." We pay homage to the goddess Bhagvati." "We worship the Sun, the life of the universe - animate and inanimate."

A. ~ These texts lend no support to Shaiva and other creeds, for Rudra means God, vital air, the soul and heat. The text relating to Rudra would mean that we should render obeisance to God Who is the Punisher of all evils doers, and should take proper food to keep up the animal heat in the body. Besides, wherever

---

* It is the holy basil held in reverence by the Vaishanvites.-Tr.

PAGE 366

Texts relating to Shiva are found in the Vedas, they mean that we should pay homage to the All-merciful God who showers blessings on all. A Shaiva is really one who worships Shiva - the All-merciful Being; a Vaishnava is one who worships Vishnu - the All-pervading God. A Ganpata is one who worships Ganpati - The Lord of Hosts i.e., (of the Universe); Bhagvata is one who sits at the feet of the muses. A Saurka is one who is the devotee of the All-pervading God, the Soul of the Universe - animate and inanimate. Thus Rudra, shiva, Vishnu, Ganapati, Surya, connote God, and Bhagvati connotes truthful speech.

These various Puranic texts were invented owing to the wrong interpretation of the Vedic texts (quoted above). The following story illustrates this tendency:- a faqir had two disciples who shampooed him everyday. One undertook to massage the right foot and the other the left. One day it so happened that one of the disciples had gone out shopping, while the other was at his post. In the mean time the faqir change his side andit so happened that the foot in charge of the disciple, who was away, fell on the top of the other foot that was assigned to the disciple that was present. The latter took a stick and aimed a blow at the offending foot. The faqir cried out, "Oh you wicked one! What have you done?

The disciple replied "Why has the other foot fallen on the one that I am kneading?' Just at that moment the other disciple returned home and began to knead the foot assigned to him and found that it was swollen. He asked the faqir as to what had happened to that foot. The faqur related the whole story. This fellow without uttering a word or making a sign took up a stick and struck a heavy blow at the other foot. The faqir screamed aloud and both the disciples fell to battering his feet.

When there was a great uproar, a large number of people crowded in and asked the faqir what the matter was. A sensible man from among the crowd rescued the faqir, and expostulated with the foolish disciples thus "Look you her! Both these feet belong to the body of your preceptor. If you knead them, it is he alone that is benefited thereby, and if you cause injury to them, it is he again who suffers pain."

Just as the two disciples in the story made fools of themselves, likewise the Shivites, Shaktas, Vaishnavites and the like revile one another, because they are ignorant of the true meanings of the

PAGE 367

words Shiva, Rudra, Vishnu, etc., which, as is set forth in the first chapter of this book, are the different names of the Immutable God Who is Self-existent, All-wise and Blissful.

These men of little understanding do not use their brains and never give the least thought to the matter, otherwise they will soon find out that all such terms as Shiva, Rudra, and Vishnu connote One Supreme, Incomparable< Omniscient God, the Controller of the universe, on account of His possessing multitudinous attributes. Would not the wrath of God descend on such people?

Now mark he wonderful trickery of the Chakrankitas and Vaishnavites!
The Ramanuja Patal Padhiti says:-

"Branding the body with red hot iron, making the mark of a trident on the forehead, wearing a rosary, bearing a name (ending in Das) and receiving the knowledge of the mystic word are the five holy acts that lead to salvation." These people brand the upper-most part of their arms with a red-hot iron marked with the sign of a conch-shell, a discus, a mace, or a lotus, the quench the iron in a vessel containing milk. Some even drink that milk.

Now it is clear that the person drinking that milk must be tasting human flesh. These people hope to reach God by resorting to such practices. They argue that no one can reach God without branding his body in the way indicated above, for till then the devotee is raw (spiritually) unregenerated.

Just as everyone is afraid of a police constable in uniform, so the minions of Yama (Angel of Death) dare not approach one who is branded with signs which make them out to be Vishnu's devotees. They further say "It is a meritorious act to mark the forehead with sign of a crozier, to brand the body with the signs of conch-shell, a discus, a mace, and a rosary whose beads are made of lotus stalk. These symbols inspire the Angel of Death and earthly potentates with awe. It is also a good thing to bear

PAGE 368

a name ending in Das (servant), such as Narayan Das, Vishnu Das, and to be initiated into the knowledge of them mystic words such as "Adoration to Narayana." This is for ordinary people. the mystic verse for rich and respectable people is "May we worship the feet of Narayana. Adoration to the Great Narayana, adoration to the great Ramanuja." Verily this is quite business-like.

The wording of the mystic verse varies with the social position of the initiated. The Chakrankits believe that these five holy acts (sanskars) are the means of salvation. Just as Vaama Maargis have five Makaras (so-called holy practices beginning with the letter M.), likewise the Vaishnavites have five Sanskars (so-called holy practices beginning with the Letter S).

The Vedic mantras, that hey adduce in support of their belief as to branding the body with the signs of a discus, and a crozier, etc., when rightly translated would mean:- "O Lord Thou Who art the Protector of the universe and the Veda, and art Omnipotent, Omnipresent and Holy in nature canst not be approached by a human soul that has not been purified by means of thorough control of the senses, truthful speech, subjugation of the animal in man, conquest of the lower self, the practice of yoga, association with good men all these constitute Tapa) and is therefore

not spiritually regenerate. It is only those, whose souls have been cleansed through righteous conduct and devotion to virtue, that can see Thee Who art All-Holy." RIG VEDA. 9:83, 2.

"Only those who lead a thoroughly righteous life can attain to the realization of the All-glorious, Supreme Spirit." RIG VEDA 9:83, 2.

Now it worth considering how Ramanuja and others can construe these texts as sanctioning the Chankrankit creed. After this how could they be regarded learned. Had they been so, they would not have put upon these texts such an impossible construction, for in these texts the words atapta tanu (which would mean unbranded body according to the Chakrankitic interpretation) occur

PAGE 369

and not atapta bhuja (unbranded arem). Again the words atapta tanu comprehend the entire body from top to toe. Should the Chakrantikas the word tapa to mean branding with fire, they may shove themselves into a furnace and burn their entire body, even hen they will be acting against the spirit of this text. For in it tapa is stated to be the performance of righteous deeds like veracity in speech.

The following verse from the Taitreya Upanishad also supports this view. "Perfect purity of heart, truthfulness in word, deed and thought, restraining the mind from rioting in evil, keeping the senses under perfect control, i.e., the employment of the mind and sense organs for the practice of righteousness, the study of the Vedas and other books of true knowledge, and the molding of conduct in accordance with the Vedic injunctions constitute tapa."The burning of the body by branding it with red hot iron is not tapa. It is a remarkable fact that the Chakrankits pose as Vaishnavites of a very superior order but do not think of the origin of their sect and of the evil practices connected therewith. Their founder was a man named Shatthakopa.

It is written in the authoritative works of the Chakrankitas and in the Bhagat Mal whose author was the bard Nabha. "The seer (Shathakopa)wove winnowing baskets and earned his living by selling them." He was born of a whore; it is very likely that when he wanted to read with the Brahmans, he was refused this privilege, thereupon (having been exasperated) he founded the Chakrankita sect and introduced the use of marks on the forehead and started the practice of branding the arms

All this was opposed to the teachings of the Shaastraas and was evolved out of his own imagination. He was succeeded by his disciple Munivhana who was the son of an outcast. His chief disciple was Yavanacharya who was a Mohammedan by birth. Yavanacharya is sometime corrupted into Yamunacharya. After him Ramanuja who was a Brahman by birth, was converted to this faith. His predecessors had written some (sacred) works in the loval dialects. Ramanuja devoted sometime to the study of Sanskrit, was the author of a few books

PAGE 370

in Sanskrit verse and of a commentary on the Shariraka Sutras and the Upanishads which gave an interpretation of these books quite contrary to what was given by Shankar. He criticized Shankar a great deal. For instance, Shankar holds that the soul and the Divine Spirit are identical; nothing besides God has an existence in fact. The phenomenal word is an illusion and is, therefore, unreal and perishable. Ramanuja on the contrary believes that God, the soul and matter are eternally co-existent,.

Shankar is wrong in so far as he says that the soul and the primordial matter as distinct from God do not exist and Rmanuja's belief, that these three entities are eternally co-existent and yet the soul and God circumvented by Maya (matter) are one* is altogether absurd. The denial of the

freedom of will and a belief in the efficacy of tilaka (making specific mark on the forehead) and of wearing rosary, and in idol worship, and other evil doctrines and practices are found in the Chakrankit faith. The creed of Shankar is not so much opposed to the Vedic teachings as that of the Chakrankits.

The origin of idol-worship.

Q. - With whom did idol worship originate?

A. ~It originated with the Jainees.

Q. - Why did the Jainees start idol worship?

A. ~They did it out of their ignorance.

Q. - The Jainees contend that when one looks at an idol which is symbolical of deep meditation and peaceful repose, one's soul is illumined by these spiritual influences.

A. ~ The soul is possessed of consciousness, while idol is dead and inert. Do you mean to say that the soul should also lose its consciousness and become lifeless like the idol. Idol worship is a fraud. The Jaiinees were the authors of this mode of worship. Their beliefs will be examined in the 12th Chapter.

Q. - It seems that the Shaktas have not borrowed this practice from the Jainees, for their idols are not like those of the Jainees.

A. ~ It is true that the Shakta idols are not like the Jain ones. Had they made idols resembling Jain idols in very detail, they would have become Jainees. It is for this reason that they dressed images quite differently from those of the Jainees, for the Vishnavites and others deemed it their duty to oppose the Jainees and

---

* This is called Vasishtaadvaita.

PAGE 371

vice versa. The Jain idols were always naked and represented a being who was seated in a contemplative mood and had renounced the world, while on the contrary the Vaishnava idols symbolized gods having by their sides goddesses, who were dressed out in fine style and excited lascivious thoughts by their lewd charms and licentious looks.

The Jains never blow conch-shell, nor ring bells (at the time of worship), while the Vaishnavites and others make a tremendous noise (by blowing conch -shell and beating drums, etc.). It was thus that the disciples of the Vaishnavities and the like vilely popes escaped from the clutches of the Jainees and were ensnared into the nets spread out bye these people. They also composed many books, which are replete with incredibly absurd stories, in the name of the great seers like Vyasa.

The Puranic Hindu and Chakrankitas sects.

They named them Puranas (ancient books) and began to read out select portions from them: They began to practice wonderful frauds and trickery. One of these popes would take an idol

made of stone, conceal it in a mountain cave or a secret recess in a jungle or bury it in the ground. After this was done, he would proclaim to his disciples that Mahadeva, Parvati, Radha, Krishna, Sita, Ram, Lakshmi, Narayana, Bhairava, Hanuman, or some other God or goddess had visited him in his dreams and informed him that he or she was in such and such place, commanded him to get him or her (out of the place), install in a temple and become his)or her) priest. If these demands were complied with, he or she would grant him his heart's desires.

The ignorant people who had 'more money than brains' would hear such stories and believe them to be true, they would enquire of him as to the exact site where the God or goddess was to be found. At this the pope would answer "The idol can be found in this mountain or that jungle, should you desire it I could lead you to the place." Thereupon those fools would accompany that scoundrel to the place, find the idol and being struck with astonishment fall at the feet fo the Pope and exclaim "The God is indeed very gracious into you. Take the idol home and we will build him a temple wherein the idol may be installed, you shall be his priest and we shall also gain our hearts' desires by paying our adoration to him." When the trick playe by one of the popes was successful, the others followed his example, had recourse to jugglery and imposture and installed idols with a view to earn their livelihood.

Q. - God being Formless cannot be contemplated. Idols are, therefore, absolutely needed. Where is the harm if we stand before an idol with folded palms, think of God and recite His name?

PAGE 372

A. ~ God being Formless and Omnipresent cannot have an image. If the sight of an idol puts God in one's mind why cannot this wonderful creation, which comprehends the earth, water, fire, air, vegetation and a hundred and one other things? Cannot one think of God when he looks at the earth and the mountains which are wonderfully constructed, and out of which human beings fashion idols? It is altogether wrong to say that the sight of an idol makes on think of God. This would mean that when the idol is out of sight, the devotee would not think of God and, consequently when all alone, may succumb to the temptation of committing theft, adultery and the like sins. Believing as he does that there is no one to witness his actions, he would not scruple to commit the most degrading sins.

These are some of the evils that result from the worship of idols. Now mark the difference! He, who has not faith in idols and believes that the Omnipresent, Omniscient and Just God pervades the whole Universe, cannot even harbor evil thoughts in his mind - lave alone committing sins, because he knows that God witnesses all actions - good and bad- and that He is never away from Him even for one moment. He is fully aware of the fact that if he committed a sin - in word, deed, or thought - he cannot but he punished by a Just Providence.

Merely taking the name of God is of no use, even as the repetition of the word sugar does not give a sweet taste to the mouth, nor does the repetition of the word Neem (Melia azdiracta) imparts a bitter taste to the palate. The sensations of the sweetness and bitterness are produced only when sweet and bitter substances are brought in contact with the tongue.

Q. - Is it then a mistake to take the name of the Lord? The Puranas assign great merit to this fact.

A. ~ Your mode of taking the name of the Lord is erroneous and is not commendable.

Q. - Why is our mode erroneous?

A. ~ Because it is anti-Vedic.

Q. - Pray tell us what the Vedic mode of taking the name of the Lord is.

A. ~ It is this. Take for instance the name Nyayakari (Just) which is one of the many names. Contemplate what it connotes. Even as God dispenses justice to all and is free from the least taint of partiality, so should you conform your conduct to the requirements

PAGE 373

of justice and always refrain from doing anything unjust. The contemplation of even one name of the Deity in this way conduces to one's spiritual welfare.

Q. - We too know that God is Formless, but we believe that He incarnated as Shiva, Vishnu, Ganesha, Surya and Devi, etc., and also appeared in flesh as Rama, Krishna, etc. That is why the images of the Deity are extant. Would you say that even this is wrong?

A. ~ Of course we would, for Veda declares God to be "Unborn Indivisible, Formless," etc., and, therefore, not subject to birth and death and the necessity of incarnation. The doctrine of the incarnation of God cannot stand even the test of reasoning, for He, who pervades the universe like ether, is Infinite, Invisible and is not susceptible to pleasure and pain, cannot be contained in a drop of semen or in the uterus or in a bodily tenement.

coming into and going out can only be predicated of a finite being. To say that the Immobile Invisible God, Who pervades every particle of matter, can take on flesh is as absurd as ti would be to assert that the son of a barren woman was married and her grandson was seen.

Q. - Being Omnipresent He pervades even an idol. Why is it not then right to contemplate and worship God in any object whatsoever, as it has been said "God resides neither in wooden objects, nor in stones, nor in things made of clay. The attainment of the Deity is possible only through faith. God is to be found in any object which one may choose to pin his faith to."

A. ~ Being All-pervading He cannot be imagined to exist in any particular object only. To hold to the contrary would be tantamount to believing that the sovereign Lord of the earth rules over a small cottage to the exclusion of His whole Empire and would be an insult to Him. In like manner, it is a blasphemy against God to imagine Him as existing in one particular object only.

If you believe Him to Omnipresent, why do you pluck flowers fro the garden and offer them to the idol, make a thin paste of Sandal wood and apply this to it, burn incense, beat drums and cymbals, and blow trumpets before it? He pervades your hands why do you then stand before it with folded palms? He is in your head

PAGE 374

why should you then prostrate yourself before the image? He is in food and drinks, why should you then offer them to it? He is in water, why, should you the bathe it? God pervades all these things. What do you worship, the pervader or the pervaded? If the former, why do you then offer flowers, etc., to images made of stone or wood? If the latter, why do you then lay a false claim to the worship of God? Why don't you say that you worship stalks and stones etc., which is the bare truth? Now tell us, whether your faith is always right or not?

If it be so, you will have to believe that God is subject to the power of you faith. Why don't you then convert clay into gold and silver, pebbles into diamonds and emeralds, etc., the sea foam into pearls, water into clarified butter, milk and curd, etc., and dust into fine flour by the power of your faith?

You never desire sorrow why are you then afflicted with it? You always desire happiness, why can you not always obtain it? Why don't the blind recover their sight through faith? You never desire death, why should you then die? Your faith then is not a true faith. True faith consists in believing things what they actually are believing that fire is fire and water is water. To hold the opposite view is the reverse of true faith. True cognition of objects is attained only when we know things as they really are. The reverse of this is false knowledge.

Q. - The fact is that so long as you do not invoke a God by means of Vedic Mantras he does not make his appearance in the image worshipped. He comes as soon as he is summoned and leaves the moment he is requested to depart.

A. ~ If as you say that the God comes into the image when invoked, why does not the idol show signs of consciousness and why does not the image also leave when the God is asked to depart? Whence does it come and here does it go? The fact of the matter is that the All-pervading Spirit can neither come into and idol, nor, leave it. If you mantras are efficacious that you can summon God, why can you not infuse life into your dead son by the force of the very same mantras? Again why can you not bide the soul depart from the body of your enemy?

PAGE 375

The truth is that the popes trade upon the credulity of the unsophisticated people like you. There is not a single word in the Veda to support idol worship and the belief that God can be summoned and bidden to depart (at the will of the devotee).

Q. - Here are some Vedic Mantras that support idol worship, etc., why do you then assert to the contrary?

"May the vital airs enter it (idol) and reside therein in ease for long. May the senses enter it and remain therein for long. May the Supernal Soul enter it and stay therein for long."

A. ~ You betray woeful ignorance when you make this assertion. Why do you not use your understanding a little? These texts are not at all found in the Vedas. They are to be found in the apocryphal Tantra books of the Vaama Maargis.

Q. - Are the Tantras then mythical?

A. ~ Undoubtedly they are so. Just ast there is not a single verse in the Vedas to sanction invocation of the Deity and vitalization of the idol, likewise there is nothing to indicate that it is right to invoke idols, to bathe them, to install them in temples and apply sandal paste to them.

Q. - If the Vedas do not explicitly sanction idol-worship, they do not condemn the practice either. If they do condemn it, the inference is clear that the practice must have existed in ancient times, for it has been said, "Only that can be condemned which prevails."

A. ~ Of course there is no sanction for this practice (in the Veda and the Shaastraas), but on the other hand it is positively condemned thus:-

(1) "They are enveloped in darkness, in other words, are steeped in ignorance and sunk in the greatest depths of misery who worship the uncreated, eternal prakriti - the material cause of the world - in place of the All-pervading God, but those who worship visible things born of the prakriti, such as the earth, trees, bodies (human and the like) in place of God are enveloped in still greater darkness, in other words, they are extremely foolish, fall into an awful hell of pain and sorrow, and suffer terribly for a long time." YAJUR VEDA 40: 9.

PAGE 376

(2)"The formless Supreme Spirit that pervades the universe can have no material representation, likeness or image." YAJUR VEDA 32: 3.

(3) "Do thou offer thy worship to the self-same Brahma (All-pervading God) who transcends the power of speech and is the source thereof by virtue jof His being Omnipotent, and is the support of the Universe. No other Being is worthy of adoration." KENOPANISHAD.

(4)"Do thou offer thy worship to the self-same Brahma who cannot be comprehended by the human mind and yet is cognizant of the inner workings of the mind. Do thou never worship the soul and the intellect in place of God." KENOPANISHAD.

(5) "Do thou offer thy worship to the Being that cannot be seen with eyes, and yet, He it is from whom the power of sight is derived. Do thou never worship the sun, the fire and the lightening and other material objects which are distinct from Him." KENOPANISHAD.

(6) "Do thou offer thy worship to the self-same Brahma who is not the object of auditory perception, and yet He it is who is the bestower of the power of hearing. Do thou never worship sound* etc., in place of the Lord." KENOPANISHAD.

(7) "Do thou offer thy worship to the self-same Brahma who is not influenced by the breathing forces and yet is the director thereof. Do thou never worship the atmosphere in place of the Lord (which is distinct from Him)." KENOPANISHD.

---

* i.e. let not thy soul be held in bondage by the power of sweet and seductive speech. -Tr.

PAGE 377

It is clear therefore that idol worship is interdicted (in the Veda and the Shaastraa).

Prohibition applies to deeds that have been done as well as to those that have not been done, the first named kind may be illustrated thus. A man is sitting somewhere and he is asked to leave the place. The last named may be illustrated as follow:

(a father says to his son) "O my son! Do thou never steal, nor jump into the well, nor associate with the wicked, nor remain without learning." God has thus interdicted practices which were within the purview of His knowledge, and not within the knowledge of men. Hence the worship of stalks and stones and so forth is absolutely prohibited.

Q. - Well, if idol worship be not a meritorious act, it is not a sin anyhow.

A. ~ (Human) Acts are of twoe kinds only:- injunctions -i.e., acts like veracity in speech that have been positively enjoined by the Vedas and prohibitions - i.e., acts like mendacity that have been positively prohibited by the Vedas. Just as it is a righteous act to do what has been enjoined by the Vedas and a sin not to do it. If you resort to practices like idol worship which have been interdicted by the Vedas why then are you not a sinner?

Q. - Mark! The Vedas are eternal. The practice of Idol worship could not have existed in remote antiquity. At that time the gods were visible. This practice originated with the authors of the Tantras and Puranas. When the knowledge and mental capacity of men suffered diminution, they found it hard to contemplate the Deity. Such men can of course fix their minds on idols only,

hence idol worship is meant for the ignorant, even as a man can get to the top of a house only if he uses all the staircases, he could never succeed in his object. Idol worship is therefore the first step. When after worshipping images for a length of time, the devotee will gain in (divine) knowledge and in purity of heart, he will then be fitted for divine meditation. Just as a marksman acquires skill

PAGE 378

in his art by shooting at the target and by continued practice learns to hit smaller objects, in like manner one who worships the visible symbols of the Deity will, in course of time, attain to the realization of the abstract Deity. Little girls play with dolls only so long as they do not actually get married. For these reasons idol worship is not an evil practice.

A. ~ When it is held that only those acts are righteous that are sanctioned by the Vedas, while those that have been interdicted by them are sinful, idol worship is a sin even from your standpoint. Whoever accepts as authoritative books whose teachings are opposed to the Vedas may not inappropriately be termed a Nihilist.

Manu says " whoever reviles, rejects, dishonors or contravenes the teachings of the Vedas is called a Nihilist." MANU 2: 11.

"Whatever books have been written by low, despicable people who are opposed to the Vedas drag down the world to the lowest depths of misery and are therefore useless and false. They further envelop the world in dark ignorance and are the cause of great misery in this world as well as the next." MANU 12: 95, .

All books whose teachings are opposed to the Vedas gain publication and enjoy an ephemeral existence as they do not inculcate eternal principles. It is useless and wrong to believe in them." MANU 12: 96.

All the sages from Brahma down to Jaimini have held that righteous conduct consists solely in rejecting all that is opposed to the Vedas and in practicing whatever has been enjoined by them, the reason being that the Vedas expound truth and nothing but truth, while all books like the Tantraa and Puranas that are replete with anti-Vedic teachings are false and, therefore, the worship of idols which they inculcate is likewise a sin.

People never gain knowledge by the worship of material objects, on the contrary they forget even what they have previously acquired. Knowledge is increased by serving the learned and by associating

PAGE 379

with them - not by image worship. Can God ever be contemplated through the worship of stalks and stones? Certainly not! Idol worship cannot be compared with a staircase. It may more appropriately be looked upon as deep ditch, whoever falls into it is hacked pieces, can never come out of it and even dies there. Undoubtedly the acquisition of true knowledge and cultivation of habits of truthfulness and the like virtues by association with pious and learned men of he ordinary stamps as well as with learned Yogis of the highest order constitute steps that lead to the realization of the Great God, even as a ladder takes one to the upper story of a house.

No one has yet become a learned man through the worship of idols, on the contrary most of the idol-worshippers have remained in ignorance and wasted their precious lives an died (in despair). Moreover, all those who worship idols now and will do so in future will die without enjoying the

fruits of (human) life which are there practice of righteousness, acquisition of wealth, realization of legitimate desires and attainment of salvation. Idol worship cannot be likened to target shooting.

Association with pious and learned men and a study of the laws of nature constitute the real target, by practicing at which one can reach God by gradual steps. Now is the worship of images like playing with dolls. The learning of the alphabet and good habits may fitly be compared to playing with dolls and is, therefore, the first step towards the realization of God. Bear in mind that whoever receives the right sort of training and culture will also, in due course of time, reach God, his true master.

Q. - Mind can be concentrated on a material object, but it is difficult to rivet it on an immaterial one, hence the worships of idols is justifiable.

A. ~ No, the concentration of mind on a material object is impossible, for it can grasp it at once and after mastering all the details wanders over fresh objects. On the other hand, in the case of Immaterial, Infinite God, do what it will, the mind will never be able to comprehend Him. God being Indivisible the mind cannot wander, it contemplates His nature, attributes, characteristics and being beatified is perfectly focused.

Had it been possible to concentrate the mind on a material object, all the people of the world would have been able to concentrate their minds, because it remains engrossed in worldly objects such as other minds, one's wife, children and friends and wealth, but no one can concentrate his mind except on abstract Being, because He is Indivisible

PAGE 380

A few evils of idolworship.

Hence idol worship is a sin.(This is the first argument against idol worship).

- Millions of rupees are spent in constructing temples for idol worship. This leads to poverty and indolence.
- Free and promiscuous mixing together of the sexes in the temples leas to adultery, internecine quarrels and the spread of disease (contagious).
- The idol worshippers regard this mode of worship as the sole means of the practice of righteousness, the acquisition of wealth, the fulfillment of legitimate desires and he attainment of salvation. They, therefore, give up all active work and waste away their precious lives.
- Since people worship idols with different names, forms and characteristics, they have not unity of faith and their mutually antagonistic beliefs and practices create bad blood in the country and lead it to its ruin.
- They depend upon the idols for the defeat of their enemies and the triumph of their arms, and, therefore, do not exert themselves. The result is that they are defeated, and government of he country, independence and wealth with its attendant pleasures, fall to the lot of their enemies. They are themselves robbed of their independence and reduced to the condition of a subject race, suffer in a hundred different way like the pony of an in keeper and the donkey of the potter.
- If some one were to say to another person that he would put a stone in his name or place, he will feel angry and will most likely abuse him or hit him back. In like manner the ignorant people who take a stone to be the symbol of the Deity and worship idols in place of God will surely have the Divine wrath visited upon them.
- Laboring under mistaken notions, they peregrinate from temple to temple and from one country to another, endure untold misery, lay ace at the root of their worldly and spiritual welfare, suffer at the hands of thieves and are duped by thugs.

PAGE 381

- Money is given away to wicked priests who spend it on debauchery and the gratification of the bestial appetites on flesh and wine and in fomenting quarrels and in promoting litigation. Thereby the donor forfeits its happiness and is pained beyond measure.
- These people lay themselves open to the charge of ingratitude by not showing due respect to their parents and other persons worthy of esteem and worshipping idols instead.
- When these idols are stolen by thieves or are dashed into pieces (by some iconoclast), they set up loud lamentation.
- The priestesses and priests are corrupted on account of illicit intercourse with other men and women and thus forfeit their connubial felicity.
- The servants do not properly obey their masters and they turn against each other and are thereby ruined.
- The soul by constant contemplation of dead and inert matter loses the power of sound judgment, because the material properties of the object contemplated (such as a stone) are transmitted to the soul through the manas.
- God has created fragrant substances like the flowers to purify air and water and to prevent disease. If the priests were not to pluck the followers, the purificatory process would go on for an indefinitely long period, air and water would be purified and the flowers would continue shedding fragrance till the time of their natural decay. They cut off their useful career in the prime of their life. The flowers get mixed with mud, are decomposed and emit stench instead of sweet odor. Has God created flowers and other odoriferous substances for making an offering of them to the idols.
- Sandal wood, unhooked grain and the like offerings get mixed with water and mud, and are then thrown into a drain or a cistern where they rot and give off such offensive odors as issue from human excrement. Thousands of tiny creatures are constantly produced and die and cause it to stink still more.

These are few evils caused by the worship of idols. It should, therefore, be given up by all righteous men. Whoever worshipped

PAGE 382

idols. Worships it, or will do so in future could not have, nor can he now or will in future escape from the effects of these evils.

Q. - Is no form of idol worship permissible? What is then meant by the expression worship of the five gods which has been in common use since times immemorial. Does it not imply the worship of the five gods called Shiva, Vishnu, Ambika, Ganesha and Surya.

A. ~ No form of idol worship is permissible, but the worship of the five living gods is our duty. This expression **Pancha Yajna** or the worship of the five gods - has a very good meaning, but the ignorant fools have degraded it and construed it to mean something altogether different form what was originally intended. The worship of Shiva and the like gods has already been condemned. But we shall now explain what is meant by the worship of the five gods which is sanctioned by the Vedas.

This may be termed worship of gods that are truly worthy of reverence.

1. "The first object of worship is the mother. It is the duty of her sons and daughters to serve this goddess with all their heart and all their soul, and keep her happy. Let her never be treated harshly."
2. "Second object of worship is the father. This God should also be served like the mother."

3. "The third object of worship is the teacher who bestows knowledge (upon his pupils). This God should also be served with utmost devotion."
4. "The fourth object of worship is the altruistic teacher of humanity who is learned, deeply religious, upright, well-wisher of all and goes from place to place preaching the truth the thereby making the people happy."
5. "The fifth object of worship is the husband for the wife and the wife for the husband."

These are the five living gods who bring a man into being and bring him up, and it is through them that he gains true knowledge, sound culture and is instructed into the righteous principles of conduct. It is the worship them and worship of these that leads one to God. Whoever does not worship them and worship idols instead is a transgressor of Vedic principles.

PAGE 383

Q. - What harm would there be if people worship these as well as idols?

A. ~ True happiness consists solely in giving up altogether the worship of idols and in serving mother and other living gods. It is an awful shame that people should have given up the worship of the living gods that impart happiness and have taken to the worship of idols instead. The priests have started this practice, because they thought that if the people placed eatables as offering before their parents, they would accept and eat them up, and in that case they (the priests) would get nothing to eat and would receive no offerings.

It is for this reason that they make idols, place eatables before them, blow trumpets and conch-shells, beat sym-balls, tom-toms and produce tintinnabulation and thus make, a tremendous noise and poke their thumbs at them as if to say "Be tantalized while we enjoy the viands!"

It is like this: one man hoaxes another and irritates him by putting food before him and saying to him "Take thou the bell" and poking his thumb at him removes the food placed before him, eats it himself with gusto. This sort of hocus-pocus is resorted to by these pujaris* (priests).

The priests adorn and beautify their idols so much that they glitter with dazzling brilliancy. Like thugs they adorn their persons to look attractive, and enjoy themselves at the expense of these ignorant, gullible, unsophisticated fools. Under a righteous Government these lovers of idols (priests) would have been compelled to earn their living by breaking stones, making bricks and carrying materials for building purposes or doing the like work.

---

*

PAGE 384

Q. - If one looks at the statue of a woman, his imaginations are inflamed with sexual desire; similarly when one looks at an image symbolic of supernal peace and imperturbability, there is no reason why he should not attain to a state of quietude and indifference to joy or sorrow.

A. ~ He cannot: because his thinking faculty is blunted on account of his soul being influenced, by the inertness characteristic of dead matter (out of which the idol has been fashioned). Loss of judgment entails loss of the blessed state of indifference (to the joy or sorrow). This is a hindrance to the attainment of Divine knowledge, without which the attainment of bliss is not possible. Whatever benefits accrue to a man proceed from association with the learned, study of their biographies and perusal of their books (and not from the worship of their statues).

If you merely look at the image of a person and know nothing about his good qualities, you are not inspired with affectionate reverence for him. It is the knowledge of his good qualities alone which inspires that feeling. It is evil practices like idol worship that are responsible for the existence of millions of idle, lazy, indolent, and beggarly priests in India, who are mainly answerable for this wide-spread ignorance, fraud and mendacity in the country.

Q. - Lat Bhairava and other gods displayed many miracles at Kashi (Benares) when Emperor Aurangzeb with a huge following of Mohammedans attacked that city on his mission of iconoclasm. When the invaders discharged a volley of rifle shots and cannon bombs, millions of hornets issued forth and put to flight the bewildered host.

A. ~ This was not a miracle worked by the idol, it is very likely that there were a large number of hornets' nests in the temple. The hornets are irascibly fierce in nature. When their nests are disturbed, they run after their invaders and sting them. The miracle of the stream of milk that flowed from the idol was only a trickery on the part of priests.

Q. - Here is another instance. Mahadeva being desirous that he should not be seen by an infidel hid himself in a well, and the Veni Madhava God concealed himself in a Brahman's house for the same reason. (Are not these even miracles?)

A. ~ The wonder is that the army of sprites officered by Lat Bhairava and Kalbhairava and the hosts of the Angel of Death mentioned in the Gaarur Purana did not fight the Mohammedans and

PAGE 385

route them. It is related about Mahaadeva and Vishnu in the Puraanas that they annihilated many a formidable fiend like Tripurasura, why could they not annihilate the Mohammedan invaders. This clearly show that the poor idols could not fight with the enemy or help their devotees in their fight.

When the Mohammedan invaders who had been breaking idols and pulling down temples in their march to Benares came close to the town, the priests took the idol of Mahadeva and threw it into a well and hid the idol of Veni Maadhava in a Braahman's house.

If it be true that the emissaries of the Angel of Death dare not visit Kashi through fear of Kaala Bhairava, who would not let Kashi be destroyed even at the time of Dissolution, why were not the infidel soldiers scared away? Why did they permit the destruction of their king's (i.e., Mahaadeva's) Temple. All this is the invention of priests.

Q. - When a man offers oblations to the manes of his ancestors at Gaya, their sins are forgiven, and, by virtue of the merits of this Shraadha, they go to heaven. The ancestors put out their hands to receive the cakes offered. Not this also false?

A. ~ It is absolutely false. Hundreds and thousands of rupees are given away in charity to the priests for the good and happiness of the manes; these priests of Gaya waste all this money in prostitution and other sinful practices. If this be the merit of offering cakes to the manes at Gaya, why can Gaya not be freed from sins like prostitution.

No other hands, but those of priests are seen coming out (of the earth) now-a-days. Some rogue might have dug a pit with soft grass. He might have then induced a man to offer cakes to the manes of his ancestors by the mouth of the pit. The rascal in the pit must have put his hand out and taken the cakes. There could be nothing surprising if something like t his happened in the past. Likewise the story of Raavana having brought Bainaath is also false.

Q. - Millions of people believe in the Kali and Kaamaaksha and other goddesses of Calcutta. Is it not a miracle (in itself)?

A. ~ Not a bit. These people are intellectually blind, follow one another like sheep and fall into a ditch or a well, and cannot help themselves. One fool follows another and both fall into the ditch of idol-worship and remain therein and suffer.

PAGE 386

Q. - Well, let it pass. In Jaggan Naath, anyhow, miracles are plainly visible. Every time the god Jaggan Naath changes its body, a log of sandal wood comes by itself to the shore from some distant part of the sea. Seven cooking pans containing rice and water are placed on fire, one on the top of another; rice is done in the upper as well as in the lower pans, but it is not done at all in the middle one.*

Whoever does not eat the present from the Jaggan Naath idol becomes a leper. The Jaggan Naath car goes by itself. The idol not let itself be seen by a sinner. The gods built its temple while Indradaman was the ruler of the country. Whenever the God changes its body, three men - a king, a carpenter and a priest - die. Now, how could you prove the falsity of these miracles?

A. ~ A man, who had worshipped Jaggan Naath for twelve long years, had then renounced the world and become a Sanyasi, came to Mathuraa and met us there. We inquired from him about all these miracles. He told us that they were all false. On reflection we are convinced that when the time for the god changing its body comes, a log of sandal wood is taken to the sea in a boat and then dropped into it. This is, then, washed to the shore by the sea-waves. Out of this log the carpenters shape idols.

As regards the miracles of the cooking pans, when cooking is done, none but the cooks are admitted into the kitchen and allowed to see anything there. Six round fireplaces are made in a circle and the seventh i made in the center. Clarified butter, dust and ashes are applied to the bottom of six pans in which water and rice are placed. They are, then, placed on the six fireplaces, when the rice therein is done, they are taken of the fire and their bottom well cleansed. Now they put fresh rice and water in the seventh cooking pan.

The pans are put on the central fireplace, one on the top of the other and the seventh one in the center of the lot. The mouths of the six fireplaces are then closed with iron sheets. The place is then thrown open to the visitors. Those among them who are rich are invited to see that the rice in the upper and lower pans is done, whilst that in the central pan is not at all done. Those who seem to have 'more money than brains' place gold and silver by way of an offering; some even promise to contribute something monthly Shoodras and other low class people bring eatables as an offering

---

* i.e., the miracle mentioned above.

PAGE 387

into the temple. After they have been offered to the Jaggan Naath idol, these people eat a little of these eatables and leave the rest in the pans which are sent to the house of those who pay for them. All people - from the poor householders, Saadhus and mendicants down to the Shoodras and outcasts - sit in a row and eat together. When one set of people have finished eating, another set take their places and eat out of the same leaf-plates as the first one - in other words, they eat their leavings.

It is a most pernicious practice. As regards the third miracle, good many who go there return home without having eaten the leavings of others. As long as they stay there, they take the food prepared with their own hands. They never get leprosy and the like diseases in consequence. Besides, even in that town of Jaggan Naath there are to be found good many lepers who, in spite of daily eating and the leavings of others, cannot get rid of their disease.

This practice of eating one another's leavings was started by Vaama Maargis as part of their Bhairavi circle. In proof of this may be mentioned that the idol of Subhadra who was sister to both Krishna and Baldeva, is seated in place of wife between the idols of the two brothers. Had it not been due to the Bhairave set, no such thing could ever have happened.

As regards the fourth miracle, it may be said that there must be some mechanism connected with the wheels of the car; when it is worked in the right way, the car moves, but when the midst of the gathering the mechanism is worked in the opposite way, the car stops. Thereupon the priests shout, "Give alms and do some meritorious acts whereby the god Jaggan Naath may be propitiated and allow the car to move and preserve our faith."

As long as the money keeps pouring in, they keep on shouting lie this but as soon as it ceases to pour in, a native of Braj nicely-dressed and wrapped in shawls, etc., standing before the car with folded palms prays, "Do Thou, O Lord Jaggan Naath, allow this car to move on and thereby preserve our faith." Then he kneels down, salutes the God and mounts the car, at that very moment the mechanism is turned the right way, the crowd shouts, 'Hail Lord! Hail!" Thousands of people pull the cord (attached to the car), forward and the car moves.

The same kind of trickery is carried on in the temple of Jaggan Naath. Hundreds and thousands of people go to pay their homage to the idol, but the place is so big and so dark that even in the daytime lamps have to be lighted up before anything can be seen. A curtain is hanging before the idol, the priest and popes stand inside. When the curtain is pulled from one side, it is in front of the idol

PAGE 388

and hides it. Thereupon they shout, "Present your offerings. You sins will be forgiven and you will then be enabled to see the god. Make haste." Those poor simpletons are taken in by these scoundrels of priests. Then as soon as the curtain is drawn to the other side, the idol becomes visible. Thereupon all those foolish people shout. "Hail! Lord! Hail!!" After being hustled and jostled and put to various other indignities, they return home.

It is the same Indradaman whose descendants are still to be found in Calcutta. He was a great king. He was a devotee of Devi (goddess). He had this temple built at the cost of millions of rupees in order to remove vexatious restrictions in connection with eating and drinking from among the people of Aryavarta, but these foolish people never like to be freed from their shackles. As regards your belief that the gods built the temple of Jaggan Naath, there were not other gods but the builders who raised it.

A king, a priest and a carpenter do not at all die when the god changes body. They are all predominantly present there. It is very likely that in times gone by these three might have proved very troublesome to their inferiors who, in order to revenge themselves, might have poisoned them to death.

The interior of the Jaggan Naath idol is hollow wherein is placed another idol called Shaaligraam in a golden vessel. This is washed everyday with water and the wash is used for making what is called the sacred drink. Possibly they - the prisoners - smeared this idol with the essence of some poison at the time of evening prayers.

The next morning the sacred drink was made and given to those three persons - the king, the priest and the carpenter who died of it. Thereupon those slaves to Mammon might have given it out that the god, at the time of changing his body, carried away the three devotees along with him. Such wicked frauds are very often practiced (by selfish people) to rob others of their wealth.

Q. - In Rameshwaram the linga increases in length when the stream of water from the Gangotri is let fall on it. Now is this also false?*

---

* The linga is a representation of the reproductive organ of the God Shiva.

PAGE 389

A. ~ Yes, it is false. That temple also is so dark that even in the day time lamps have to be kept lit up day an night. When the stream of water is let fall on the idol, the light from the lamps is reflected like a flash of lightning in the water. Besides this, there is nothing else that happens there. The stone neither increases nor decreases in size, it remains as it is. They (i.e., the priests) by such impostures rob those idiots - the lay people.

Q. - Rameshwaram was built by Rama Chandra. Had the worship of idols been opposed to the Vedas, why should he have founded an idolatrous temple and Valmika mentioned it in his Ramayan?

A. ~ In Rama Chandra's time there was not a trace of the linga or its temple. It is true, though, that a king of Deccan by the name of Rama and this temple built and placed a linga in it and called it Rameshwaram - the Lord of Rama.

When Rama Chandra, while he was traveling back in an air-ship from Ceylon to Ayodhya accompanied by his wife Sita, and Hanumaan and others, reached this place, he addressed her thus, "O Sita, dear, being quite upset by your separation, we were wandering about in your quest and in this very place spent the four months of the rainy season,. Here we used to worship and contemplate the Great God Who pervades all, is above all the devas - sages, seers, and the most powerful material objects and forces - and is the Supernal Soul of all. Through His grace we got all the material of war.*Look at this bridge which we built across the sea (between India and Ceylon). We, then, crossed over to Ceylon an killed that (wicked) Ravan and have brought you back." Valmika has written nothing more than this in his Ramayana.

Q. - There is an idol of Kalyakant in the Deccan, which smokes the hubble-bubble up to this day. If idolatry be a false practice, this miracle should also be false.

A. ~ It is undoubtedly false. It is altogether an imposture practiced by the popes. Very likely the mouth of the idol is hollow and there is a hole just opposite to the mouth in the back from which a pipe is carried through the adjoining wall to the room situated at the back of the one the idol is placed in. as soon as the priest, having got the hooka ready and introduced its tube into the mouth.

---

* This war was waged against Ravan (King of Ceylon presently Sri Lanka) who had stolen away Sita.

PAGE 390

of the idol and fixed it there properly and pulled down the curtains , comes out of the room, the man in the backroom begins to smoke. While, on the one hand bubbling noise is produced in the

hooka, on the other, smoke issues forth from the mouth and nostrils of the idol which has been blown into it through the tube that connects the back hole of the idol with its mouth. At that time the popes no doubt rob many an ignorant man of their money and reduce them to poverty.

Q. - Behold! The idol, of Dakor left Dwarka with one of its devotees. The idol, several maunds in weight, was weighed against two grains and half of gold. Is not even this a miracle?

A. ~ No, it is not. That devotee must have stolen the idol, whilst as regards the idol having been weighed against 2 and half grams of gold, some one under the influence of Cannabis Indica must have spun this yarn.

Q. - Somnauth used to live in mid air. It was a great miracle. Is this also untrue?

A. ~ Of course, it is. There were magnetic rocks placed both above and below the idol. On account of their attraction and counter-attraction, it stood in mid air.

The Muslims' plundering and looting of Hindu temples.

When Mahmud of Ghazni attacked this temple, it was razed to the ground, its priests and other devotees were humbled and reduced to a most wretched condition, and an army of hundreds of thousands of soldiers was put to flight by a force of 10,000 men. A pretty miracle indeed!

The popish priests offered presents to the god, worshipped and praised him and addressed prayers to him, thus "O god of gods! Do thou destroy this barbarian and take us under thy protection." They would tell their dupes - ruling princes:- "Do not be at all anxious. Rest assured, Mahaadeva is sure to send Bhairava or Virabhadra for your assistance who will destroy or blind all these barbarians." Or they would tell them, "Our god is sure to manifest himself presently. Hanumaan (monkey-God). Bhairava (the Indian Bacchus) and Durga have appeared to us in a dream and promise to do everything for us."

Those poor simple Rajas were easily taken in by these popes. They believed in all that they said and, therefore, did not resist the invader. Many popes, who were astrologers, said that that was not an auspicious time for them to fight, because one said it was the 8th moon while the other said that the Yoginee star would face them (when they go to fight) and

PAGE 391

so on, they were altogether misled by the popes (and therefore they did nothing to defend themselves). When they were surrounded on all sides by the barbarians, they tried to escape from their miserable plight. Hundreds of popish priests and their dupes fell into the hands of the enemies. Their priests with folded hands implored the Mohammedans to spare their temple and the idol, and offered to pay Rs. 30,000,000 as ransom but the Mohammedans answered that they were not idol-worshippers but idol-breakers and off they went and began demolish the temple.

When the roof fell, and he magnetic rocks were shifted, down fell the idol which, when broken, was found to contain Rs. 180,000,000 worth of diamonds. When the popish priests were flogged, they began to weep. They were told to point out where the treasury was. Through fear of punishment, they revealed everything. Thereupon the Mohammedans, having looted the treasury and thrashed the priests, made slaves of them as well as of their dupes.

They made them grind corn, cut grass and carry urine and foeces but gave them nothing but parched grain to eat. Oh! Why did these people ruin themselves by the worship of stones? Why did they not worship the Almighty God whereby they could have put the barbarians, to rout and

gained victory over them? Had they worshipped heroes and brave men in place of all those idols, what a protection they would have afforded.

the priests worshipped those stones so devoutly and yet not one of them shifted from its place, fell upon the head of one of the invaders and broke it. Had they served a single brave man as they did the idols, he would have done his best to protect those who had served him and to destroy their enemies.

Q. - Ranchhora thereby sent a hundi (bank-draft) to Narsee Mehta and helped him to pay off his debts. Is this also false?*

A. ~ Some banker must have helped hi with the money to pay off his debts, and someone must have given it out falsely that the Lord Krishna had sent him a hundi (bank-draft). In the year 1858 the English demolished the temple and its idols with artillery fire, where were the idols, then? (Why did they not do anything to defend themselves?) Baghers, no doubt, fought very bravely and killed many of their enemies, but the idols could not even break

---

* It is another name of Krishna.

PAGE 392

one leg of a fly. Had there been even one so brave as Krishna, he would have utterly routed the enemy an put him to flight. Why should not those who seek his protection be soundly thrashed when their protector himself is beaten?

Q. - Jwaladevi is a veritable goddess. It consumes everything. When anything is offered to it, it consumes one half of it and leaves the other half (untouched). The Mohammedan emperors had a canal of water let fall on it to extinguish it and sheets of iron fixed on it to choke it, but the flame (of fire) was neither put out nor choked. The goddess Hinglaj also is to be seen on the mountains at midnight mounted on a horse; it produces a thundering noise in the interior of the mountains.

The Chandrakoop - a well sacred to the moon - can talk. One who once passes through Yoni Yantra is never born again. By tying a thumra a man becomes great. As long as a man does not go to Hinglaj, however holy he may be, he is only semi-great. Are these things not credible?

A. ~ No, that fire issues forth form the volcanic mountain called Jwala Mukhi. The impostures of the priest at that place are simply wonderful. When melted clarified butter is placed in a spoon on a flame, it takes fire at once, but when it is taken off or the flame is blown out, it is found that little of the butter has been consumed, while the rest of it remains in the spoon. The same thing happens in the case of Jwala Mukhi. Just as the fire of a fire-place consumes everything that is put into it and when fire breaks out in a jungle or a house it destroys everything, in like manner the fire of Jwala Mukhi consumes everything that is placed in it. There is nothing miraculous in this.

No goddess mounted (on a horse) is to be seen at Hinglaj nor is there anything else but a temple, a small reservoir of water and few water pipes here and there. There is nothing much besides the trickery of the popes at that place. They have also got a marshy pool of water from whose bottom bubbles (of gas) rise to the surface of water. The idiots call it Saphalyatra (literally successful pilgrimage).

The yoni Yantra is a mechanical contrivance invented by these popes to rob the pilgrims. The wearing of Thumras is also a priestly fraud. If he wearing of Thumras makes a man great, would

not they also make a donkey loaded with them a mahapurush (great man)? It is the doing of great works righteously that makes a man great (mahapurush).

PAGE 393

Q. - The lake at Amritsar is verily nectar itself. One half of a fruit of Sapindus Detergens is sweet (whist the other half is bitter). There is a wall (at Gurdaspur) which (when shaken) bends but does not fall sown. At Rewalsar rocks float on the surface of the water. At Amarnath lingas (of ice) form by themselves, (several) pairs of pigeons are seen to come out of the Himalaya mountains to give Darshan and go back to the place whence they came. Are these things also not worthy of belief?

A. ~ no. that lake is Amritsar (Amrit - nectar, sar - lake) only. When the place (where the town of Amritsar is sutuated) was a jungle, the water must have been good and sweet, hence it was named Amritsar (lake) or a lake of sweet water. Had it been real nectar, no one (as held by the followers of the Puraanas) ought to have died there. That wall (at Gurdaspur) must have been constructed in such a manner that it would been (when shaken) but would not fall.

As regards the fruit of Spindus Detergens being sweet, it can be accounted for in two ways; either asclepias pulchella must have been grafted on it, or it is only a yarn. With regard to the Rewalsar miracle, there must be some mechanism by which the rocks are made to float. At Amarnath glaciers of ice are formed, what to say of small lingas of ice. Those pigeons must have been tame ones and are let fly by men hidden behind the mountains. By such means these scoundrels rob the ignorant of their money.

Q. - Haridwaar is the gate of heaven. If one bathes on the steps of Hari, he is freed from his sin. A man who resides in Tapovana (grove of austerity) becomes an ascetic. Gomukh the (mouth of a cow) is seen at Gangotri, Gupta (hidden) Kashi and Triyugi Narayan (god of the three periods of time) at Uttar Kashi, Kidar and Badri Narayan are worshipped by men for six months and by gods for the other six months of the year.

The mouth of Mahadeva called Pashupati is Nepal, his buttocks at Kidar, his knees at Jaggan Naath and his feet at Amarnath. By making pilgrimage to these places and bathing there one obtains salvation. Should a man desire to go to heaven from Kidar and Badri he could easily do so. What do you say to all this?

A. ~ Haridwaar is the starting point of the road that leads to the (Himalayas mountain) in the north. Har ki pauri are the steps that lead to the pond close by, and are meant for facilitating

PAGE 394

bathing therein. To tell you the truth it is Har ki pauri (steps of bones) as the bones of the dead from all parts of Aryavarta are thrown in there. One is never freed from his sins until he ahs suffered for them. The Tapovana may have been a grove of austerity in ancient times, but now-a-days it is only a grove of beggars. One does not become an ascetic by living in Tapovana but by practicing austerities, as there are plenty of untruthful shopkeepers who also live there.

The water that falls from the top of the mountain (Gangotri) forms the river Ganges. Some scoundrel must have shaped it like the mouth of a cow in order to rob the ignorant. It should also be remembered that very mountain is the heaven of the popes.

Uttar Kashi and the like places are very good for those who engage in meditation and contemplation, but imposters can practice plenty of trickery even there. As regards Deva Prayaga being the abode of gods, hence called Deva Prayaaga, it is also an invention of the Purana. It is

mere nonsense. Prayaga is situated at the junction of the Alakhanda and the Ganges. It the Puranas were not to spin such yarns, who would go there and offer money to the popes?

Kashi is not hidden at all, it is quite visible. The fire there may have been kept up for ten or twenty generations (of these popes), but it has certainly not been burning for the last three generations.

the water in the tapta kunda (pond of hot water) is not, because it gets heated by its passages through the interior of the mountains where there is plenty of natural heat. In another pond close by, the water is cold as it comes from the surface or such part of the mountains hat are not hot. Kidar is a rpetty and healthy place, but even there the popes or their dupes have got a temple built on a firm rock

The chief priest and other popes fleece many a man who have more money than brains and indulge in sexual pleasures. Similarly, at Badri Narayan there are plenty of these thugs. Rvaljee is their chief. Let alone one, he keeps many women. They call the temple there Pashupati and the idol therein panchmukhi (five-mouthed). It is only where there is not law to punish such frauds, that they become so rampant. But it must be borne in mind that the natives of these hills are not such rogues as the residents of the holy places of pilgrimage who denude the pilgrims of their money. This part of the country is very beautiful and clean.

PAGE 395

Q. -

1. *On the Vindhyaachal mountain the goddess Vindhyeshwari,* Kali** and Ashtabhuji*** are all visibly present.*
2. *Vindhyeshwari assumes three different forms in a day. There is not a single fly to be found in the premises of the temple.*
3. *Prayaaga (Allahabad) is the king of the places of pilgrimage. By having one's head shaved there, one attains perfection. By bathing at the confluence of the Ganges and the Yamuna, one obtains his heart's desire.*
4. *Similarly, the town of Ayodhya has with all that inhabited it flown to heaven many a time.*
5. *Mathuraa is the greatest of all tirthas (sacred places).*
6. *Vridaavana is the scene of (Krishna's) dalliance (with the milkmaids).*
7. *Pilgrimage to Govardhan and Braj only falls to the lot of the fortunate.*
8. *at the time of a sun eclipse, hundreds of thousands of people gather together at Kurukshetra (and this is held very meritorious).*

Are these things false?

A. ~

1. What is visible to one's eyes is that there are three idols and hat they are made of stone.
2. The assumption of three different forms on three different occasion sin a day by Vindhyeshwari is due to the cleverness with which the priests dress and adorn the idol with ornaments. As regards the absence of flies. Why, there are myriads of them there. We have noticed this fact with our own eyes.
3. There must have been a barber in olden times at Prayaaga who composed some verses (or prayed some pope to do it for him) to the effect that it was a meritorious act to have one's head shaved there. Had it been true that by bathing at Prayaaga people went to heaven, no one should have seen them returning home but the fact is that they are all seen coming back to their homes, and even if one gets drowned there, his soul wafted on air is carried up into space and born

---

* The mistress of Vindhya -Tr
** Literally Kali means black.-Tr.
*** Literally Ashthabhuji means eight-armed.-Tr.

PAGE 396

again. The name of the king of tirathas has been given to it by these lovers of Mammon. The relation of king and subjects cannot be predicated of material objects, hence it is absurd to call Prayaaga the king of sacred places.

1. It is impossible to believe that the town of Ayodhya along with all that was to be found in it - dogs, donkeys, street sweepers, workers in skin privies, etc. - has been to heaven three times. It never went to heaven, on the other hand, it is where it was, but is only in stories invented by the popes that Ayodhya flew away to heaven. This story has, indeed, passed from mouth to mouth. All that is said about Naimisharanya is also an invention of these very priests.
2. As regards the belief that Mathuraa is altogether different from the three worlds, it is quite false; but it is true in the sense that there are three creatures at Mathur that are very troublesome, indeed so much so that of their account no one can get any rest on land, in water or in air. One of them is the Mathuraa priest. Whosever goes to bathe in the Jumna finds him there waiting for exacting his toll and jabbering senselessly, "Give me alms wherewith I may enjoy myself by drinking infusion Cannabis Ind, eating pepper and sweets and bless you.

   The second is the tortoise that will bite do what you will, and their number is so great that it is only with the greatest difficulty that one can bathe at the bathing-place. The third is the red-mouthed monkey that lives up in the air (i.e., on the tops of tees and houses). It would run away with anything it van get hold of, such as a turban, a cap, an ornament or a shoe, would bite, push and even kill a person.

   All these three are regarded as fit objects of worship by the pope and his dupes. Several maunds* of gram and sugar are offered to the tortoises and the monkeys, cash and sweets to the popes. Thus they are all served by their votaries - the ignorant laity. Vrindaavana may have been a beautiful grove in ancient times, but now-a=days it is more like a grove of prostitutes, wherein young men and women, mendicants and their female dupes carry on most immoral

---

* A maund is an Indian measure of weight, it is equal to 82 lb.-Tr.

PAGE 397

practice. In like manner, the popes are highly successful in fleecing pilgrims on the occasion of the Dipmaala fair at Govardhan and in religious gatherings at Braj. Similar religious frauds are practiced at kurukshetra by the popes in order to make a good living for themselves. Good and righteous men among them, who have the public good at heart, keep aloof from these popish practices.

Q. - Idol-worship and pilgrimage to holy places have been in vogue since time immemorial. How can they be false?

A. ~ What do you call time immemorial? If you say that by the use of these words you mean that these practices have always been in vogue it cannot be right, otherwise how would you account for the fact that there is not mention of these things in the Vedas, the Braahmanas and other ancient books of sages an seers.

The practice of worshipping idols originated with the Vaama Maargis and the Jainees a little under 2,000 or 2,500 years back. It did not exist in India in ancient times, nor were there any places held sacred (tirathas) then. When the Jainees instituted Girnar, Palitana, Shikhar, Shatrunjaya and Abu as places of pilgrimage (Tirathas), the Puranics followed suit and established their own Tirathas.

Should a man desire to inquire into the origin of these Tirathas, he should examine the oldest records and brass plates kept by the pandaa priests. He would, then, be satisfied that they were all instituted within a period of 500 to 1,000 years. Hence Tirathas are not ancient but of a recent origin.

Q. - Is there no merit, then, in making pilgrimage to Tirathas (sacred places) or taking the name of gods? It is said that "By making pilgrimage ot Kurukshetra one is freed from all his sins committed in other places." Are these things true or not?

A. ~ No, they are not. If sins could be destroyed, the poor should become rich and prosperous, the blind get sight and the lepers be cured of their leprosy, but it is not so. Hence sin and virtue can never be destroyed.

PAGE 398

Q. - "Whosoever repeats the name of the Ganges, thousand of miles distant though he be (from it), his sins are forgiven and he goes to heaven (the realm of Vishnu) the utterance of Hari - a word composed of two letters - destroys all sins. (in like manner there is great merit in taking the name of Rama, Krishna, Shiva Bhagvati, or some other god or goddess."

If a man sees the idol of Shiva or the lingam in the morning, all his sins committed in the previous night are forgiven, if at noon, his sins committed in the whole life, if in the evening those committed in the seven previous births are destroyed." So you see that there is a great merit in seeing the idols of Shva, etc. Is this false?

A. ~ What doubt can there be in its being false? No sin can ever be destroyed by taking the name of Hari, Rama, Krishna, Narayan, Shiva, Bhagvati, otherwise none in the whole world should suffer or be afraid of sinning. Now this is the reason that now-a-days sin is on the increase among the popes and their dupes. The idiots are convinced that they can be freed from their sins by taking the name of some god or making pilgrimage to some holy place. Acting on this conviction, they sin freely and thereby forfeit true happiness in this world as well as in the next. But (God has ordained that) whosoever commits a sin must suffer for it.

Q. - Is there any kind of Tirath or any mode of taking the name (of the Lord) which is desirable?

A. ~ Yes, there is. The study and teaching of the Veda and the Shaastras, association with righteous men of learning, promotion of public good, righteous living, the practice of yoga, freedom from malice and hypocrisy, truthfulness in word, deed and thought, the practice of Brahmacharya, the service of one's father, mother, tutor and the learned guests, worship of God, mental tranquility, control of the senses, gentleness, activity, acquisition of knowledge, both material and spiritual, and of other good works are all Tirathas, as they help one to cross the ocean of misery and sorrow. Land* and water** can never be called Tirathas, since that which helps one to swim across (an ocean of) misery and sorrow alone constitutes a Tiratha.

* Land stands for temples, etc. -Tr.
** Water stands for rivers, lakes, etc.-Tr.

PAGE 399

Land and water do not possess this property, on the other hand water can help one to get drowned (if he be so bent). A boat or a ship can be called a Tiratha as by means of it one can get across a river or an ocean. "Those Brahmachaaris who study under the same teacher and the same book are spoken of as serving the same Tiratha. (Samaan tiratha vaasi). So says the sage Panini.

"Let food and raiment, etc., be given to those who study the Veda and Shaastra and possess qualities like truthfulness in speech that constitute righteous living, and let the people in return acquire learning from such persons."YAJUR VEDA 16.
This is what the Yajur Veda says. Such people alone are entitled to be called Tirathas. As regards the method of taking the name (of God) in the Yajur Veda says:- "Taking the name of the Great God consists in performing great works of righteousness." YAJUR VEDA 32:3.

The nature, attributes and characteristics of God.

God is called by hundred different names (such as Brahma, Parameshwara, Ishwara, Niyaayakari, Dayalu, Sarvasshaktimaan, etc.) by virtue of possessing manifold nature, attributes and characteristics. He is called **Brahma** because He is the greatest of all. **Parameshwara** (Great God) because He is the Lord of the powerful, **Ishwara** because He is Almighty, **Niyaayakaari** (Just) because He is Just, never unjust, **Dayaalu** (Merciful) because He is Merciful to all, **Sarvashaktimaan** (Omnipotent) because He creates and sustains the world and resolves it into its elementary condition by His power alone and does not need the help of an other being.

Vishnu because He pervades all and protects all. He is called **Mahaadeva** because He is the Lord of all devas - all material and spiritual objects that possess brilliant or useful properties as well as sages, seers and wise men.

Rudra because He is the cause of the dissolution of the world. Let a man, therefore, try to imbibe His virtues) i.e., to be like God in nature and attributes, etc.). Thus let him be great by the performance of great works let him be powerful among the powerful, let him augment his power, let him never commit a sinful act. Let him be kind to all. Let him perfect his means of progress. Let him develop technical arts and with their help, make different kinds of things. Let him do unto others as he would be done by. Let him

PAGE 400

protect all. Let him be learned amongst the learned. Let him diligently punish the wicked and protect the good. In short, molding one's nature, attributes and character in accordance with those of God alone constitutes the true method of taking His name.

Q. - "The Guru is Brahmaa, the Guru is Vishnu, the Guru is the Almighty Lord, the Guru is even Brahmaa (Great Lord); therefore, we bow unto the Guru." Is this kind of Guru-worship right? Is it right to drink the water in which his feet have been washed, to obey him in all things, to look upon him as Bavan (an incarnation of the Deity) if he be covetous, as Nara Singh (half man and half lion -incarnation of God) if he be wrathful, as Rama, if he be attached to worldly things, as Krishna, if he be sensual, never to lose faith in him commit whatever sin he may, to believe that every step one takes in going to see his guru or a sant (so-called holy person) is as meritorious as the performance of an Ashwamedha Yajna?

A. ~ No, it is not right. **Brahmaa, Vishnu, Maheshewara** and **Paara-brahmaa** are all names of God, the guru can never equal Him. This book (from which the verse quoted above has been culled), called Gurugitaa which teaches the great sanctity of the guru, is the work of some pope. It inculcates extremely popish practices. The true gurus are one's father, mother, tutor, and atithis (altruistic teachers)

To serve them and acquire knowledge and culture from them is the duty of the children and pupils, but if a guru be covetous, worldly, sensual or possesses a nasty temper these men (i.e. the so-called gurus or holy men) should be left alone (but it is the duty of the king) to correct these men first by gently admonition, if still intractable to inflict bodily punishments or ever to put them to death.

There is nothing wrong in punishing them, such men do not become gurus by virtue of possessing learning and other good qualities. They are false gurus who tie strings of beads round the necks of their (chelas) dupes, make marks on their foreheads called tilakas, and teach mantras (mystic words), etc., quite oppose to the teachings of the Vedas.

They are not gurus but shepherds, because just as shepherds keep goats and sheep for the purpose of obtaining milk, etc., likewise these so-called gurus have male and female disciples (chelas and chelis) in order to strip them of their money with which they enjoy themselves. It is said of them by some one: "The greedy

PAGE 401

guru and the avaricious disciple play tricks with each other. They are drowned in the sea of misery (like those who try to cross the sea in a boat made of stone)." The Guru thinks that his male and female disciples are sure to give him something, whilst the latter think that even if the guru is of not other use he is good enough for swearing (falsely) by or for obtaining absolution from sins.

They are both selfish and embodiments of hypocrisy. They get drowned in the ocean of misery in this world like those who try to cross the sea in a boat made of stone. Fie on such gurus and disciples. Let no one associate with such persons, but whoever does so, will sink to the greatest depths of misery.

The imposture of these shepherd gurus is just like that of the Puranic priests. They are extremely selfish people. Those who have the good of the public at heart may have themselves to suffer, out never do they cease doing what is good for the world. Both the guru-mahatamya (doctrine of the sanctity of the person of the guru) and the Gurugita are the inventions of these immoral, wicked gurus.

Q. -

1. *"Vyasa is the author of the 18 puranas. Whatever he has declared must certainly be held as authoritative."*
2. *"Let a man learn the meaning of the Veda by the help of Itihas (historical books such as the Mahaabharat) and the 18 Puranas as they are all in harmony with the teachings of the Veda."*
3. *"In Pitrikarma (i.e., the ceremony in which oblations are offered to the manes of one's ancestors) let a man hear stories from the Purana and the Harivansh recited."*
4. *"On the completion of an Ashwamedha Yana, let a man hear portions of the Purana recited on the 10th day."*

PAGE 402

5. "The Purana is the Veda as its teachings are in harmony with those of the Veda."

6. "Itihas (History) and the Puranas are called the fifth Veda." SUTRAGRANTH.

These quotations conclusively prove that the Puranas are authoritative books, and once this is admitted, idol-worship and pilgrimage to sacred places are proved to be desirable, as both of them are inculcated by the Puranas.

A. ~ Had Vyasa been the author of the 18 Puranas, thee would not have been so many stories in them, as it appears from the perusal of his other works, such as his commentary on the Yoga Shastra, and the Vedanta Shastra, that he was a very truthful and righteous man of vast learning and a great Yogi. He could never have written such falsehood (as are recorded in the Puranas).

Those sectarians - so hostile to each other - who wrote the so-called Puranas (ancient books) such as the Bhagvat, which are in fact apocryphal and of recent origin , did not possess a particle of the noble qualities of Vyasa. It is not learned men like Vyasa who could write what is false and oppose to the Vedas and other true Shastras. It is the work of the selfish, ignorant and malevolent men.

Besides, Purana is not the name of such books s the Shiva Purana, since it is said in the Brahmanas and Sutra books:-
"Ithihas, Puana, Kalpa, Gatha and Narashansi are five names given to the Brahman books.*

> They are called Itihas (history) as they record such events as the discussion between king Janak and the sage

---

* i.e., the Aittreya, Shatapatha, Sama and Gopatha.

Those who say that Vyasa had collected the Vedas are altogether wrong, since even his father (Parashara), grandfather (Shakti), and great-grand-father (Vaisishtha), and Brahma and other sages, who lived long before him, had read all the four Vedas; this would have been impossible, had it been Vyasa who collected them.

PAGE 403

1. Yajnavalka. They are called Puranas (ancient) as they discuss such subjects as Cosmogony, Kalpa and because they discuss the power of the Vedic words and clearly demonstrate their true meaning, Gatha because they narrate stories by way of illustrating certain truths, Narashansi because they chronicle human acts - praiseworthy or otherwise.
2. By the help of these (books) alone can the true meaning of the Vedic mantras be understood.
3. Let a man hear something in praise of the learned.
4. In this question also the same Brahman books are meant by the words Purana as the books written by Vyasa could possibly be recited after his birth (and never before this event), but is a fact even long before the birth of Vyasa expositions of the Vedas (Puranas), such as the Shrimad Bhagvat or the Shiv Purana, which are really of a very recent origin, and are replete with mythology and filthy stories.

When Vyasa read the Vedas and taught them to others and thereby disseminated their knowledge, he was named Veda Vyasa. Now Vyasa (in Sanskrit) means the diameter (of a circle) which is a line that passes right through the center of a circle from one end to the other Vyasa was called so, because he read and mastered all the four Vedas, from the Rig Veda to the

Atharva Veda, and taught them to his pupils such as Shuka and Jaimini. Vyasa was his title only. His real name was Krishna Dwipayana.

The myth of the Hindu Puranas.

Q. - Is everything that is said in the Puranas false? Is there nothing true in them?

A. ~ They are mostly false but there may be a thing here an there that is true, but that is taken from the Vedas and the Shastras, while that which is false is the invention of the popes. In the Shiva Purana, Shiva is described as the Lord of all, while Vishnu, Brahma, Indra, Ganesha, and Svrya are spoken of as his servants, whilst in the Vishnu Purana, Vishnu has been held as the Supreme Spirit and

PAGE 404

Shiva an other gods, as his servants. Again, in Devi Purana, Devi Purana, Devi is described as the Supreme Deity and Shiva, Vishnu, and the like as her servants. In Ganesha Khand, Ganesh is called the Lord of all, while the other gods as the servants. Why! If this is not the invention of the sectarian priests, whose else could it be?

Such self-contradictions are not possible even in the writings of an ordinary man, to hold the first statement as true, the second naturally must be false, and if the second statement be held to be right, the third must be wrong, and if the third be considered a correct, all the rest must be incorrect.

Again, the Shiv Purana describes Shiva; the Vishnu Purana, Vishnu the Devi Purana, Devi; the Ganesh Khand, Ganesha; the Surya Puran, Surya; Vay Puran, Vayu, as the author of the creation and dissolution of the Universe and then each of them considers them as created beings. If the Pauranics (Hindus) were asked how the author of the creation, sustenance and dissolution of the Universe could be created being and how a created being could be the First cause of the Universe, they would never be able to answer this objection.

Besides, the bodies of these beings must have been formed out of the matter composing the universe. When they form part of the created world and are localized, how can anyone of them be the author of the universe? Moreover, Cosmogony is described differently in the different Puranas and in a manner which is altogether impossible.

For instance, its written in the Shiva Purana - "Shiva wiled 'Let me create the world.' "Thereupon he create an expanse of water called Narayana from its navel sprand up a lotus plant, out of which issued forth Brahma who say that it was all water. He took a handful of water, looked at it and threw it back (into the ocean) which caused a bubble to rise from its surface. Out f this bubble came a man who addressed Brahma thus, "O My Son! Create the world." Brahma replied. " I a am not your son, rather you are my son."

Thereupon they began to quarrel over it and continued fighting with each other on the surface of the water for one thousand years of the gods. Then Mahadeva began to think that as those whom he has sent forth to crate the world were fighting with each other, he must adopt some method of settling this dispute. For this reason he created out of them a bright linga, which immediately spread heavenward. Both were puzzled at its

PAGE 405

sight. They agreed that its beginning and end should be found out and he that returned first, after having discovered its limits, should be considered as the father, while the other who returned later or without having discovered its two ends as the son. Thereupon Vishnu assumed the form of a tortoise and went down, whilst Brahma embodied himself as a swan and flew upwards along the linga. Both traveled for on thousand years (of the gods) at the same speed as the human mind and yet they could not fathom it.

Therefore, Brahma above and Vishnu below began to think that if the other came back sooner after having found its end he would have to become the son. Whilst Brahma, was thinking in this strain, a cow and a tree, called Strychnos Potatorum descended down from above. Brahma asked them, "Whence have you come?" They replied that they has been travelling along that linga for one thousand years. Brahma enquired "Has this linga any limits?" they replied in the negative. The Brahma said to them, "Both of you accompany me and let the cow give evidence to the effect that she has been pouring milk over the head of the linga and let the tree say that it showered flowers over it, if yu do this I shall take you to a resting-place."

They refused to give false evidence. This enraged Brahma and he cried, "If you refuse to give the desired evidence, I will reduce you to ashes (i.e., annihilate you) at once." This frightened them both and consequently the promised to give the desired evidence. The all of them began to descend and continued in their downward course till they got back to the place whence Brahma had started. Vishnu had already got back there. Brahma asked him fi he had found the limits of the linga. Vishnu replied, "I have not been able to fathom it." Brahma, then, said, "But I have succeeded." Vishnu wanted him to produce his evidence.

Thereupon the cow and the StrychnosPotatorum tree gave evidence to the effect that they were both above the head of the linga. Upon this a voice came out of the linga and cursed the tree saying, "Since thou hast told a lie, thy flowers shall never be offered to me or any other god in the whole world, and whosoever offers them shall be destroyed." It then cursed the cow saying, "Since thou hast uttered a lie with thy mouth thou shalt eat excrement with it and no one shall ever worship it. But in its stead thy tail shall be worshipped." It also curse Brahma saying, "Since thou hast told a falsehood, thou shall not worshipped anywhere in the world." It blessed Vishnu saying, "since thou hast spoken the truth, thou shalt be worshipped all

PAGE 406

over the world." After this both (Brahma an Vishnu) glorified the linga. This highly pleased it and out came a man from the inside of the linga with tresses of hair twisted on the top of his head who said " I sent you both to create the world, why have you been quarrelling with each other." They replied, "How could we create the world without some material?" Thereupon Mahadeva took a ball of ashes out of his matted hair an gave it to them saying "Go forth and create the world out of this ball."

The authors of the Puranas should be asked where the bodies of Brahma, Vishnu and Mahadeva, the expanse of water, the lotus, the lingas, the cow and the Strychnos Potatorum tree and the ball of ashes came from when even the primordial matter - atoms and the five subtle principles (Mahabhuts)* did not exist?" they could never answer this objection satisfactorily.

The story of Creation in the Bhagvat Purana.

The story of Creation is given thus in the Bhagvat: -
A lotus came out of the navel of Visnu, And Brahma out of the lotus, Swayambhava out of the right big toe of Brahma's right foot and the queen Satyrupa out of his left great toe. Out of his forehead were born ten sons such as Rudra and Marichi who begot tem Prajapatis, whose thirteen daughters were married to Kashyapa. Out of these thirteen wives of Kashyapa, Diti gave

birth to fiends, Danu to demons, Aditi to the sun, Vinata to birds, Kadru to snakes, Sharma to dogs, and jackals, etc., and others to elephants, horses, donkeys, buffaloes, grass, straw and trees such as acacia with thorns and all. Fie on you! O you senseless, idiotic author of the Bhagvat Puranana. What a shameless creature you were! You did not feel a bit of shame or hesitation in writing such falsehood! You became so utterly blind.

Human beings are, no doubt, the result of the union of the male and female reproductive elements of human parents but never animals, birds, snakes, etc. Such a thing being against the laws of nature as ordained by God is quite impossible; besides, how can there be any room for elephants, camels, lions, dogs, donkeys and trees in the womb of a woman? Moreover, why did not the lions and the like animals, after their birth, eat up their own parents? How can it be possible for animals, birds and trees to be born out of a human body?

It is a great pity that these people should have practiced such impostures as hve kept the world in darkness and doubt even up to this day. These blind popes and their blind dupes hear and believe in such utterly false things. One wonders if they are even men! Oh! Why did not the writers of Bhagvat and other

---

* See chapter 3 for further information on this subject.

PAGE 407

Puranas die in their mothers' wombs or as soon as they were born? Had the people (of India) been saved from the hands of these popes, they would have been spared the pain and suffering that they are afflicted with.

Q. - There can be not contrariety in these different versions of the Creation as the old proverb says, "Songs on marriage occasions are sung in praise of the person whose marriage it is." When the devotee praises Vishnu, he regards him as the All-mighty God, whist all other gods are treated as his servants; when he begins to glorify Shiva, he looks upon him as the Supreme Spirit and on all others as his attendants or slaves. Everything is possible with God. Even other than human beings can be produced by the sexual union of men and women, if God wills it so. Behold! He ahs created the whole universe out of nothing by virtue of Maya. There is nothing that is impossible for him. He can do whatever he likes.

A. ~ O you simpletons! On marriage occasions you, no doubt, sing praises of the person who is to be married, but you never call him the greatest of all, nor belittle or revile others, nor regard him as the father of all. Now, pray tell us do not you popes leave behind even wheelers, fawners, and flunkeys in the art of flattery and story telling? Whosoever you follow, you call him the lowest of all. What have you to do with truth, justice and righteousness? You have your own selfish interests alone at heart.

Maya is only possible in man as he is very often deceitful and hypocritical. They alone can be called Mayavi. If it be true that animals, birds, snakes, trees, etc., were the offspring of Kashyapa and his thirteen wives in the beginning of Creation, why are they not produced in the same way in our time.

The order of creation we have described is alone true. It seems that the pope having been misled by the following text of Shatapatha Brahman must have talked this nonsense. "Therefore, all this world was created by Kashyapa." Now "God is called Kashyapa because He is pushyaka or Seer of all, in other words, witnesses the entire creation - animate and inanimate

PAGE 408

- the souls and their acts and clearly sees all kinds of knowledge." NIRUKTA 2:2.
By the rule of Mahabhashya which say that "the first and last letters of a word change places with each other," P of pashyaka* changes its place with k and becomes kashyapa. Being ignorant of the true meaning of these texts, and (probably) intoxicated with Cannabis Indica decoction they (i.e., the authors of the Puranas) wasted their lives in writing what was opposed to the Laws of Nature.

The fallacies Markandeya Purana.

In the Markandeya Puranam, in the section devoted to the goddess Durga, it is stated that out of the bodies of the gods issued forth light which formed a goddess who killed a demon called Mahishasura or Raktabija. A drop of blood fell from his body and the like demons were produced in such large numbers out of this drop of blood that the whole world was filled with them (i.e., Raktabijas). Again blood fowed from his body i such a large quantity that it actually formed a stream.

The book is foll of similar other cock and bull stories. Now where was the goddess Devi, her lion and her army when the world became full of Raktabija demons. If you say that they were at a considerable distance from the goddess, the whole world was not then filled with Raktabijas. Had this been the case where would have been (room for) animals, birds, human beings, water, land, crocodiles, tortoises, fishes (big and small), plants and trees? One feels convinced that all these must have taken refuge in the house of the author of Durgapatha! What a wonderfully incredible story has he told whilst under the influence of Cannabis Indica!

Exposing the trickery of the Shrimad Bhagavat.

Now we shall expose the trickery fallacies of what is called the Shrimad Bhagavat. Narayana (God) taught Bhagavata to Brahma in 4 verses thus: "earn thou, O Brahma, from me my highest and secret knowledge. It is also (highest) and hidden. It leads to the acquisition of righteousness and wealth, gratification of legitimate desires and attainment of Eternal Bliss."

When the knowledge was called Vijana (i.e.,highest) why should it also have the qualifying word highest? When it has already been called secret, it is a mere repetition to call it hidden also. When the verse which forms the basis of the book is

---

* Pashyaka literally means a seer.

PAGE 409

meaningless, why would not the whole book be the same? In the 2nd Chapter, Narayana blesses Brahma saying, "Thou shalt never be a victim to infatuation, either during Creation or Dissolution," but in the tenth Chapter we find that Brahma through infatuation stole calves!! Now only one of these two contradictory statements can be true, while the other must be false or both may be false.

When you hold that there is no such thing as love, malice, anger, jealousy or pain to be found in heaven (Baikutha), why d id Sanaka and others become angry at the gate of heaven. If anger was there, it was no heaven. Jaya and Vijaya being gate-keepers, were bound to obey their master's order and if they stopped Sanaka and others from entering the gate, what wrong did they do?

Being blameless, the could not be cursed, but a curse was pronounced against them, viz., "You shall fall on the earth." From nature of the curse it is clear there was no earth (land) there, but water, air, Agni and Akasha were probably there. What did the palace, its gate and water, etc., then rest on?

Thereafter, Jaya and Vijaya glorified Sanakas and begged to be told when they would be allowed to enter heaven (Baikuntha). They were informed that if they worshipped Narayana through love, they would gain entrance into heaven in their seventh re-birth, but, if through malice, in there third re-birth.

Now it must be considered here that Jaya and Vijaya were the servants of Narayana, therefore, it was his duty to protect and help them. If a master were to allow his servants to be oppressed by others and do nothing to punish the oppressors, the consequence will be that everyone will trample on them.

It was incumbent on Naryana to reward Jaya and Vijaya for having discharged their duty faithfully, and punish Sanaka and others for having persisted in attempting a forcible entry into Biakuntha (heaven) and quarreled with his servants and cursed them. It would have been an act of justice on Narayan's part to have thrown Sanak, etc., instead of Jaya and Vijaya, to the earth. When there is such an utter lack of justice in Narayan/s kingdom, the more his devotees - called Vaishnavites - are ill-treated, the better it would be for them.

PAGE 410

Again, later on, it is said in the Bhagvat that after Hiranyaksha and Hiranyakashypa were born, Hiranyaksha was killed by a boar (who was an incarnation of Vishnu)> this story is narrated thus. Hiranyaksha folded the earth like a mattress and made a pillow of it which he placed under his head and went to sleep. Vishnu incarnated himself as a boar, and caught hold of the earth from under his head. This woke him and a duel between the two followed. The boar killed Hiranyaksha.

If the followers of the Bhagvat Purana were asked whether the earth was round or flat like a mattress, they would never be able to answer this question as they are enemies of the Science of Geography. Well! When Hiranyaksha rolled the earth into a pillow, and placed it under his head, what did he himself sleep on and what did the boar walk on, since held the earth in his mouth?

What did they Hiranyaksha and the boar -stand on whilst fighting, as there was no other resting place? It seems that they must have fought on the chest of the pope who wrote this Bhagvat Pruana, but then the question arises what did the pope lie on? Now, this is all like what happens when liars and gossipers meet each other. There is not end of idle talk, of telling tales and spinning yarns.

Now, as regards Hiranyakashyapa, his son Prahlada was a great devotee of Naryana. When his father sent to school, he would ask his teachers to write the word Rama on his slate. When his father heard about it, he asked him why he worshipped his (father's) enemy, the boy made no answer; he simply would not obey his father who, at last, had him tied hand and foot and pushed from the top of a mountain and thrown into a well but he wan not at all hurt. Thereupon his father had a red hot iron pillar heated in fire and said to the boy "If your God Rama whom you worship be the true God you should not be burnt by embracing the pillar."

Prahlada made a start to embrace the pillar; doubt arose in the mind as to whether he would escape being burnt or not. Naryayana made rows of ants crawl on that pillar. That gave Prahlada heart, off he went and embraced the pillar which burst and man-lion came out of it who caught hold of his father and ripped his belly and then began to lick Prahlada lovingly and asked him to

utter a wish. He requested that his father should be saved. The man-lion blessed him saying "Twenty-one of thy forefathers have been saved."

Now, this is another yarn like the previous ones. Let a man who recites Bhagvat or hears it read be thrown down a hill; if this

PAGE 411

story be true, he should reach the bottom unhurt. No Narayana will come to his help, the poor man will simple be hacked to pieces. Prahlada's father sent him to school, not what wrong did he do? That the boy was such an idiot that he wanted to leave off all studies and renounce the world (i.e., become a Vairagi).

Let him who holds it true that ants did crawl over the red-hot iron pillar and Prahlada was not burnt by touching it be placed in contact with a red-hot pillar; if the suffers no harm, we could be believe that Prahlada might not have been burnt. Again, why was not the man-lion burnt?

Now did your Narayana forget that Sanak and others had been granted this boon that they would enter heaven int heri third rebirth. According to the Bhagvata, Prahlada was only in the fourth generation from Brahma. First was Brahma. He begot Kashyapa whose sons were Hiranyaksha and Hiranyakashyapa. The latter begot Prahlada. To say then that twenty-one of Prahlada's forefathers were saved, when he had only three, is nothing short of idiocy.

Then the same Hiranyaskha and Hirayakashyapa were reborn as Ravana and Kumbhakaran and as Shishupala and Dantavakra. What became of the man-lion's boon granted to Prahlada. Only idiots can hear or talk such nonsense and not men who are possessed of learning and wisdom.

It is written about Putana and Akrura that "Akrura on being sent by Kansa left Mathura in a carriage drawn by horses that ran as fast as the wind at sunrise and reached Gokula which is 4 miles distant from Mathura' at sunset." Now it seems that those horses must have been going round and round th author of Bhagvat., or the drivers lost their way and along with Kansa gone to sleep in the house of the author of the Bhagvat Purana.

The body of Putana, it is mentioned, was 8 miles broad and good many miles long. Shri Krishna slew him and placed his body between Mathura and Gokul. Had this been true, both these towns as well as this pope's house would have been buried (under his body). There is a story related of Ajamil which is altogether absurd. It runs as follows:-
Ajamil name his son Narayana at Narada's advice. When he was dying, he shouted for his son (by name). In came Narayana (God) instead of his son. Now did not Narayana know what was passing in Ajamil's mind, viz., that he was calling his son, not Him? If such be the Nama-mahatamya, i.e., if taking the name of the Lord be such a meritorious act as

PAGE 412

evidenced by the above story, why does Narayana not come now-a-days to free those, who take his name, of their misery and suffering? Why can prisoners not get their liberty by repeating His name?

In the like manner the dimensions of the Sumeru mountain given in the Bhagvat are quite at variance with the teaching of the Science of Astronomy. Oceans were caused by the tracks of the wheels of King Priyabrata's carriage. The earth was 2,450,000,000 miles in diameter. These and similar other stories are given in the Bhagvat. They are simply countless.

This book was made by Bobadeva whose brother Jayadeva wrote Gitagovind. He has written some verses in his book called Himadri to the effect that he was the author of shrimad Bhagvat. We had 3 leaves of that book with us, out of which the first one was lost. We have composed the following two verses of the same purport as those that were on the leaf that was lost. Whosoever cares to see the original verses should consult the Himadri.

"The Prime Minister Himadri said to Pundit Bobadeva, I have no time to read your book called the Shrimad Bhagvat or hear it read. Please make a brief summary of it in verse so that by reading it I may be briefly acquainted with the story of the bhagvat." There were altogether 10 verses on the leaf that was lost. The following verses beginning with No. 11 that are giving below are all the composition of Bobadeva:-

> 11. "……certainly the story of the Bhagvat, retold is as follows:- The five questions of Shaunaka and Sutas's answers (are given) in three (verses)." HIMADRI.
>
> 12. questions and (subject of) invarnations, Vyasa's disinclination for (writing) work, Narada's convincing speech supported by arguments and (an account of his) own birth.

PAGE 413

> 13. Murder (of Arjuna's children) while asleep by Drona, protection of Paarikshaita while he was in his mother's womb by the Pandavas with arms, attainment of his position by Bhishmama, and Krishna's arrival at Dwarka.
>
> 14. The birth of Parikshita, who had heard Bhagvat read, Dhritrashtra's going away, Krishna's shuffling off his moral coil and then the Pandvas' departure for the Himalayas (have all been described in the Bhagvat).
>
> 15 Thus have 18 Chapters of the first Book of the Bhagvat been summarized in 18 padas* (of this summary) in consecutive order. The king (ydhishtra) renounced his extensive kingdom in which justice was meted out to all, etc.,**

This completes (the summary of)Book 1."

Thus was a brief summary of the 12 Chapters of Bhagvat prepared by Pundit Bobadeva and given to the Priime Minister Himadri. Whosoever wants to see a detailed account of it should consult the book called Himadri.

---

* A pada is the fourth part of a verse.-Tr.
In the original these verses that are in Sanskrit have not been translated into Bhasha - the language win which the original is written. I have translated them into English directly from Sanskrit.

PAGE 414

The same kind of imposture has been practiced by the authors of the other Puranas.

Now the life-sketch of Krishna given in the Mahabharat is very good. His nature, attributes, character, and life-history are all like that of an apta (altruistic teacher). Nothing is written therein that would go to show that he committed any sinful act during his whole life, but the author of the Bhagvat has attributed to him as many vices and sinful practices as he could.

He has charged him falsely with the theft of milk, curd, and butter, etc., adultery with the female servant called Kubja, flirtation with other people's wives in the Ras mandal,* and many other vices like these. After reading this account of Krishna's life, the followers of other religions speak ill of him. Had there been no Bhagvat, great men like Krishna would not have been wrongly lowered in the estimation of the world.

In Shiva Purana, the linga has been spoken of as possessed of twelve lights. Now in this linga there is not a trace of light, nor can it be seen at night without a lamp. All this is nothing but the trickery of the popes.

Q. - When the ability needed for studying the Vedas was lost, the Smirits were composed, and when the intellect was so weakened as to render men unfit to grasp the Smritis, the Shastras were made, and when the mental vigor diminished to such an extent that the people were unable to study the Shastraas, the Puranas were written. They are only meant for women and the Shudras, as they are denied the privilege of reading the Veda or hearing it read.

A. This quite wrong; mental power can only come from studying and teaching. Besides, all men have a right to read the Veda or hear it read. History bears testimony to it, as for instance it is written in the Chhandogya Upanishad that Gargee and other women of yore had read the Veda, and even Janshruti, a Shudra by birth, had studied the Veda under Raikyamuni.

Moreover, it is clearly written in the 2nd mantra of the 26th Chapter of the Yajur Veda that every one irrespective of caste or sex, has a right to read the Veda or hear it read. Such being the case, why were not all those, who wrote false books, thereby led the people astray from

---

* This name is given to the circular dance of Krishna and the cow-herdess of Vrindavana. Tr.

PAGE 415

the study of the true books and ensnared them in their own nets to serve their selfish interests, the greatest sinners?

The trickery of Astrology

Now what a wonderful net of Astrology they - the popes - have spread! By means of it they have ensnared all who are destitute of knowledge. They say that different hymns are dedicated to different planets thus:-

1. Akrishnena Rajasa, etc, to the sun.
2. Imam Deva Asapatanam su Vadhawam, etc., to the Moon
3. Agnimurdha divah kakutpath, etc., to Mars
4. Vrihaspate atiyadaryo etc., to Jupiter
5. Udbudhya swagne, etc., to Mercury.
6. Shukramandhasah, etc. to Venus
7. Shanno devirabhishtaya, etc., to Saturn
8. Kaya Nashchitra, etc., to Rahu
9. Ketun Krinvanna Ketave, etc., to Ketu

But their interpretation of these hymns is altogether wrong. Thus

1. Relates to the attraction between the sun and the earth.
2. describes the attributes of a good king.

3. describes (the properties of) heat.
4. Refers to the performer of Yajna
5. speaks of (qualifications and duties of a) learned man.
6. describes (the relation between) the food and the reproductive element.
7. describes (the nature and properties of) water, nervauric force and God.
8. discusses (the qualification of a good) friend
9. discusses (the importance and necessity) of acquiring knowledge.

These hymns have nothing to do with the planets (and their influence on men and his actions). Being ignorant of their true meaning, the people have been led astray.

Q. - Have planets any influence over us?

A. ~ Not the kind of influence the popes tell you about. It is true though that the sun and the moon by their heat and cold and

PAGE 416

by their influence on the seasons are the cause of pleasure and pain to human beings according as they i.e., heat and cold, etc., agree with there nature or not. But the popes deceive you when they say "Hear us O great banker! The sun or the moon, by virtue of his or her being in the 8th sign of the Zodiac, is maleficent to you or her." "The Saturn has chiefly affected your feet, for 2 and half years you will suffer greatly through it.

It will make you leave your home and hearth, wander in foreign lands, but should you give alms, have the sacred hymns chanted, the holy books recited and their worship performed and thereby propitiate the planets, you may escape their wrath and the consequent suffering." They should be asked, "Tell us O popes what relation do the planets bear to you? What is the nature of these planets." (We are sure they would never be able to answer these questions).

Q. _It has been said, "The whole world is under the governance of the gods, and the gods are under the authority of the mantras, while those mantras are under the control of the Brahmans, hence the Brahmans are called gods. We (the Brahmans) alone are privileged to invoke any deity (we like with the aid of the mantras, propitiate him and thereby obtain our heart's desire. Had we not been possessed of this power, such atheists as yourself would not have even suffered us to live in this world."

A. ~ Are even thieves, robbers and other wicked people under the authority of your gods? It is gods, then, that prompt them to do evil deeds? If this be the case, there can be no difference between your gods and fiends. If the mantras are under your control and, by their help, you could do anything you liked, why do you not, then, bring gods under your control and make them steal the king's treasures, carry them to your houses, fill your coffers and thereby enable you to live in ease and comfort?

Why are you, then, going about from door to door begging for oil (given in charity by the laity, in order to propitiate the Saturn)? Why do you not bring the god whom you call Kuvera - the god of wealth - under your control and get as much wealth as you desire, instead of robbing the ignorant poor? You say that the sun and other planets are pleased when you are given charity in their name and displeased when no charity is given. Give us some positive roof

PAGE 417

of their pleasure and displeasure. Now, let any two persons be made to walk bare-footed on the heated ground in June - the hottest month of the year - the feet and body of the one with whom the sun is pleased should not be burnt, while those of the other with whom the sun is displeased should get scorched. Or let any two persons, with one of whom the moon is pleased while angry with the other, be stripped naked and exposed to cold all night on the day of full moon in December - the coldest month of the year.

If one of them feel cold and the other not, one could believe that the planets are maleficent as well as beneficent. Are they related to you any way? Are you in postal or telegraphic communication with them? If you possess the power conferred by the mantras, why do you not yourselves become kings or millionaires or bring you enemies under control?

An atheist is he who does not believe in God and the Vedas, and is the author of popish practices opposed to the Vedas. What harm can there be if a person who is supposed to be under the evil influence of a star, keep what is given in the name of the star and enjoy it himself? Should you say that the stars can only be propitiated when charity (in the name of stars) is given to you alone and not otherwise, we ask: have you got the monopoly of the stars? If so, send for the sun and the like planets to you houses and burn yourselves.

The fact of the matter is that the sun and the other planets are inanimate, they can do nothing to give us pleasure or pain, but all of you who live on the charity given in the name of the planets are real grahas, as the meaning of this word is truly applicable to you alone. Grahas mean those that accept (charity). As long as you do not go to a king, a millionaire, a big man or a banker, no one ever things of the Navagrahas (i.e., nine planets) but as soon as you - the very personification of the sun, the Saturn or other planets - attack any one, you never leave him till you have got something out of him and whosoever tries to escape your grip, you revile him and call him an atheist and so on.

Q. -Look at the positive (visual) results) of the Science of Stars! The eclipses of the heavenly bodies, such as the sun and the moon are predicted. In like manner, the results of the science of the influence of stars on human beings are no less positive. One man is a millionaire, the other a beggar, one is a prince, the other a peasant; one happy, the other miserable. Is not this all due to the influence of the star?

PAGE 418

A. ~Eclipses and the like events are foretold with the help of Science of Astronomy and not of Astrology. Astronomy is a true science, while Astrology, excepting in so far as it is relates to the natural influence of the planets such as the heat of the sun, coolness of the moon, is false. By noting ht position of the earth and the moon that rotate in opposite directions to each other. (* the earth moves from west to east, whilst the moon from east to west) with the help of Astronomy, on can exactly know that at such and such time and such and such place there will be seen an eclipse of the part or whole of the sun or the moon.

In the fourth verse of the 4th Chapter of Grahlaghva it is written that when the moon comes between the sun and the earth, an eclipse of the sun occurs whilst when the earth intervenes between the sun and moon , and eclipse of the moon follows. In other words, in the first case a shadow is cast upon the earth by the moon, and in the second case it is just the reverse.

The sun being a luminous body no shadow can be cast on it. Just as in the case of the sun or a lamp various objects held in front of it cast their shadows in the opposite direction, so does it happen in the case of an eclipse. The people are born rich or poor, princes or peasants, as the result of their past deeds, and not as that of the influence of the planets. Many an astrologer

marries his children in the most auspicious hour fixed according to the teachings of Astrology, and yet some of those marriages turn out to be unhappy.

Now why should such a thing take place and why should there by any widows or widowers (after such marriages), if astrology be a true science? Hence it follows that one's deeds (past and present) are the only factors in the causation of pleasure and pain to him and not the influence of stars. It is strange that when the stars and the earth are situated in space so distant from each other that no relation whatever between them and man and his deeds can be demonstrated, how could stars influence human destiny?

It is human soul that is the author of deeds and reaps the fruit of its acts. If, as you believe, the stars could shape the destiny of man, tell us,* whether more than person is born at the same moment on this earth or not. If you reply in the negative, you cannot be right, but if you say yes, why does not then one man become an Emperor

---

* The moment of one's birth is called Dhruva truti which helps an astrologer to cast the horoscope of a person.

PAGE 419

like other? We could very well believe it, if you were to say that all this has been invented by you simply to earn your living.

Exposing the trickery of the Garur Purana.

Q. - Is the Garur Puraana also false?

A. ~ Yes, it is so.

Q. - Then, what becomes of the soul after death?

A. ~ The soul suffers or enjoys according to the nature of its deeds.

Q. - It is said in the Garur Purana that Yamraaja (the King of Death), his minister Chitra Gupta, and his host of messengers, who are very fearful looking and whose bodies are like mountains of lampblack , are always at work. These latter get hold of the soul after death and put it in heaven or hell according to the nature of its deeds. Alms are given to benefit the dead, oblations to the manes are offered, ceremonies are performed to satiate the spirits of the dead and cows are given away to the Braahmans to help the departed soul to cross the Vaitarnee river. How can all these things be false?

A. ~ These are yarns spun by the popes. When the souls, after death, go there (from other planets i.e., to the region of Yama), the King of death, with the help of his minister Chitra Gupta, judges them according to their deeds, but if the souls residing in Yamloka were to sin, there ought to be another Yamloka, (region of Yama) and another Yamraaja, etc., to judge them. If the bodies of the messengers of Death were as big as a mountain, why are they not visible, then? Being so big, one would think that not even one finger of Yamdut (a messenger) of death, who came to take the soul after death to the region of Yama, could get admitted through small door into the room in which a dying person may be lying.

Why are they not obstructed in their way on roads or in streets? If it be said that they can also assume a subtle form, where else but in his own house could the pope place the big bones of their mountainous bodies? When a forest takes fire, hundreds and thousands of ants and other

insects lose their lives, the number of the messengers of Death that come to fetch the souls of those creatures must, indeed, be countless and consequently their huge bodies ought to darken the horizon. Besides, in their rush to get hold of the souls of the dead, they would knock against each other. And just as huge rocks come off the tops of big mountains and fall to the earth, so would big pieces of heir bodies, fall into the premises of those who read the Garur Purana and hear it read. They would, indeed, get buried under them and die. On the gates

PAGE 420

of their houses or the road on which they are situated will get obstructed; it would be, then, very difficult for them to come out of there houses or walk on the roads. Oblations offered to the manes and alms given in the manes and alms given in their name do not reach the spirits of the dead, but they do reach the house, stomach or hands of their representative, the pope. The cow that is given away to help the departed soul to cross the river Viatarnee never gets to that river, but it does reach the house of the pope or the (the slaughter-house). Whose tail would, then, the poor soul get hold of to cross the Vaitarnee? Besides the hands of a dead person are buried or cremated here, how would his soul be able to catch the tail (of the cow)? There is apt story to illustrate it.

Once upon a time there was a peasant who had a fine cow that yielded 4 gallons of mild per day. This milk was very delicious. Now and then even the pope (the priest attached to the family of the peasant) had the pleasure of drinking it. He was always thinking of somehow or other making the peasant give that cow away (in charity) to him on the occasion of the death of his father.

At last, when the father was at the point of his death, lost the power of speech, was taken down from his bed and laid on the ground and the friends and relations of the peasant were also present, the pope cried out. "O Yajman, let a cow now be given away (in charity) by your father." The peasant took ten rupees out of his pocket; placed them in his father's hand, and asked the priest to read the Sankalpa.* The pope said: "How funny! Is your father going to die more than once that you have substituted money for a cow.

At this moment you should bring a real cow that yields milk, is not old and is good in every other respect. Such a cow should be given away in charity. (The peasant) "I have got only one cow and my family cannot do without her. I cannot, therefore, part with her. Come, now, I give ten rupees more. Read the Sankalpa. You could buy a milder with this money." (the pope) "Well! Well! Do you, then, hold your cow even dearer than your father? You are, indeed, a dutiful son!" Thereupon all the relatives backed the pope who had previously been misled and brought round to his opinion by him. He dropped a hint to them even

---

* Sakalpa is the formula read by the priest whenever anything is given away in charity by a person.- Tr.

PAGE 421

at that time, whereupon they all combined together and, through sheer obstinacy, compelled the poor peasant to make a gift of that very cow to the priest. At that time he kept quiet, his father died, the priest took the cow, her calf and the mild-pail home, and, having tied the cow there and placed the pail in a safe place came back to the peasant's house, followed the bier to the crematorium, and helped in cremating the body of the deceased.

Even there he resorted to trickery, fleeced the poor peasant in the performance of such rites as dash gatra and sapindi, the Mahaabraahman* also fleeced him and the beggars got a great deal out of him. As long as the kriya** ceremony was not over, somehow or other he managed to get

milk by begging from his neighbors or relations, but on the 14th day after the death of his father, early in the morning he went to the house of the pope. On his arrival he saw that, having milked the cow and filled the mil-pail, the pope was about to get up. As soon as the pope saw the peasant, he said, "Come, O Yajman! And seat yourself. The peasant answered, "Rather you come hither. O Revered Sir!" (PP)*** Let me first place the mild-pail safely.

(P)**** No, No! bring the mil-pail hither. The priest went towards the peasant and seated himself by him and placed the milk-pail in front of him. (P) You are a big liar. (PP) What lie have I uttered? (P) Tell me, pray what did you get the cow for from me. (PP) To help you father to cross the river Vaitarnee. (P) Well! Then, why did not you cause the cow to be sent to the bank of the river Vaitarnee. I trusted all along that you must have done it, whilst you have kept the cow in you own house. Who knows how my poor father must have suffered in crossing the Vaitarnee. (PP) Oh no! By virtue of this gift of a cow to me here, another cow must have been created there to help your father to cross the river. (P) How far is the river Vaitarnee from here and on which side is it?

---

* Mahaabraahmans, a class of priests who accept charity given away by the relations of a dead person.-Tr.

** This ceremony is performed on the 13th day after death.-Tr.

*** stands here for the priest. -Tr. (PP)

**** (P) stands for the peasant. -Tr.

PAGE 422

(PP) It is nearly 300.000,000 kosas* from here, as the diameter of the earth is 490,000,000 kosas and is situated in the south-west. (P) You must have sent a letter or a telegram to such a distant place. If you have got a reply to the effect that a cow had been created there by virtue of the gift of a cow to you which helped such and such a person's father to cross the Vaitarnee, please show it to me.

(PP) I have got no letter nor telegram to that effect. I have only the authority of the Garur Purana to assure you (that your father ahs safely crossed the Vaitarnee by the help of the cow that was made to me). (P) That book was written by one of your forefathers to enable you to make a good living by it, as none can be so dear to a father as his own sons. How can I believe what is written in it? When my father sends me a letter or a telegram asking for a cow, I will cause her to be sent to the banks of the Vaitrnee, help my father to cross that river and bring her back home.

Members of my family and myself will drink her milk. Bring hither that pail full of milk, the cow and her calf. He got hold of all these and returned to his house.(PP) As you take back what you had given in charity, you shall perish. (P) Hold your tongue, otherwise I will make up for all that we have suffered from want of milk for thirteen days. This silence the priest and the peasant went back to his house with cow, her calf and milk-pail.

If there were more people like this peasant of the story, there would not be so many popish practices extant in the world. Again, these people (priests) say that by offering cakes to the ten parts of the body of the manes, ten bodily organs are produced and by the performance of Sapiindi** the soul is united to this body consisting of ten parts (which is about the size of a thumb in size) and departs to the region of Yama. Now, if this be true, the coming of the messengers of Death at the time of one's death must be useless. They ought to come after the 13th day of death. If it be true that the body is again brought into being by performing the ceremonies above alluded to, why does not the deceased come back home through love fro his wife and children?

Q. Nothing is to be got in Heaven except what has been given here in charity, hence all kinds of things should be given in charity.

* A kosa is equal to a mile and quarter.

** Sapindi is a funeral rite performed on the 13th day after death.-Tr.

PAGE 423

A. ~ It seems that even this world is better than your heaven wherein there are rest-houses for the weary, people give alms to the needy, (dinner) parties to their friends and relations, and get pretty clothes and enjoy themselves in other ways. According to your statement, nothing is to be got in heaven. Let the popes go to such a heartless, poverty-stricken, miserable heaven and live in wretchedness. No sensible person, will have anything to do with it.

Q. - When you hold that there is no Yama and No Yamalaya, where do the souls go after death and who judges them?

A. ~ What is said in your Garur Purana about them (Yama and Yamalaya to be) is false, but the Vedic teaching regarding them is true. From such passages in the Vedas as "Yamena Vayuna," etc., it is quite clear that Yama is another name ofr air or the atmosphere. The souls after death live in space supported by air, and the True, Just, Supreme Spirit, the King of Righteousness alone judges them all.

Q. - It seems from what you have said that no one should give alms, nor should one ever give away cows, etc., in charity.

A. ~ Your assertion is altogether absurd, as gold, silver, diamonds, pearls, rubies, food and drink, clothes and houses must be given away in charity to the deserving recipients, who have interest of others at heart, for the promotion of public good, but never to unworthy recipients.

Who should not be given charity.

Q. - How do you distinguish between a worthy recipient and an unworthy recipient?

A. ~ Whosoever is deceitful, hypocritical, selfish, sensual, lustful, wrathful, avaricious, and subject to infatuation, injures others, is greedy, untruthful and devoid of learning, associates with bad people, is lazy, repeatedly begs for alms from the same donor, compels a person to give alms by sitting at his door and causing him annoyance, does not take a refusal and keeps on begging, is never contented, reviles, curses or abuses those that do not give him anything in charity, turns into a enemy of one who has refused him alms once, though he has always helped him before, is a wolf in sheep's skin, misleads others and cheats them, pleads poverty even when he has plenty, serves his selfish purpose by coaxing and cajoling others, is engaged in begging day and night, when invited to a dinner stimulates his appetite by the use of

PAGE 424

intoxicants such as Cannabis Indica and eats to excess at the expense of others, and then gets intoxicated and neglects his duties, opposes the path of righteousness and follows that of unrighteousness to gain his selfish ends, teaches his disciples to respect and serve him alone, never other good and learned men whoa are worthy of respect, opposes the dissemination of light and knowledge, brings about discord in one's relations towards his wife and husband, father , mother, children, friends, kings and fellow-subjects by teaching falsely that all these relations are unreal and the world is also an illusion, is an unworthy recipient.

Who should be given charity..

While he who leads a haste life keeps his senses under thorough control, studies and teaches the Vedas and Vedic books, is gentle, truthful, loves to promote public good, is of active habits, generous, helps to disseminate knowledge and righteousness, is virtuous, keeps an even mind, is not influenced by praise or censure, is fearless, full of courage and hope, is a yogi, is enlightened, acts in accordance with the laws of nature, the teachings of the Veda and Nature, attributes and characteristics of God, preaches truth justly, with out favor or fear, examines scholars of the Vedas and other true Shaastraas, flatters none, answers questions to the satisfactions of his questioners, loves others like his own-self, is free from ignorance, obstinacy, prejudice and conceit, and regards the censure of the world as nectar and public praise as poison.

Even when compelled to beg for alms in time of emergency and is refused does not feel hurt nor speaks ill of him who did not give him alms and leaves that place at once, is contended with whatever one gives him through love, is friendly towards the happy, kind to those who are in trouble, pleased with the righteous and indifferent to wards the sinful, in other words free from inordinate love or malice, is truthful in word, deed and thought, free from hypocrisy, jealousy and malevolence, is a man of high ideals, is highly virtuous and altogether free from any vice, is devoted to the promotion of public good with all his heart and with all his soul, , even sacrifices his life for the happiness of others, and is possessed of such other excellent qualities, is verily a worthy recipient. But in time of famine and want all living creatures can be considered as entitled to get food, water, clothes, medicines and other necessaries of life.

The three kinds of donors.

How many kind of donors are there?

A. ~ Three - **Best kind**, middling and lowest. The best donor is the who takes time and place and worthiness of the recipient into consideration before he gives charity and does it for the purpose

PAGE 425

of furthering the cause of enlightenment, righteousness and public good. The donor of **middling kind** is one who gives charity for the love of fame or some other selfish gain; whilst the donor of the **lowest kind** is one who does not do anything for his own good or for that of others, but simply wastes his money on prostitutes, flatterers and buffoons, bestows gifts in an insulting manner, makes no distinction between a worthy and an unworthy recipient, and gives alms to all like the shopkeeper in the proverb who sold all kinds of food stuffs at the rate of 9 stones a rupee, inflects sufferings on the good and the righteous to benefit himself. In other words, he who honors those about whom he makes himself sure, after a thorough enquiry, that they are good, learned and righteous men is the best kind of donor, whilst he, who may or may not care to enquire whether a person is a worthy recipient or not but bestows gifts for gaining public applause, is the middling kind of donor; but he who grants gifts blindly without making an enquiry into the worthiness or unworthiness of recipient is indeed the lowest kind of donor.

Q. - Are the fruits of charity raped her or in the next world?

A. ~ Everywhere.

Q. - Does one reap the fruits (of his charity) himself or is there any other power that makes one do it?

A. ~ It is God who distributes the fruits of deeds. Just as a burglar or a dacoit does not himself want to go to goal (jail); but is sent there by the order of the king who looks after the comfort of the righteous and the good and protects them from the hands of dacoits, etc., and thereby keeps

them in happiness; in like manner does the Supreme Spirit distribute the fruits - pleasure and pain - of deeds - virtuous and sinful.

Q. - Do the Garura and other Puranas support the Veda and Vedic teachings or not?

A. ~ No; on the other hand, they are opposed to the to the Veda, and teach what is contrary to its dictates. The same is true of the Tantras. A believer in the Puraanas and the Tantras is like one who is a friend of one person and an enemy of the whole world, because the teachings of these books create bad blood among the people; no man with any pretensions to learning could ever believe in them. A belief in them is a clear indication of the lack of learning.

PAGE 426

The fasting days according to the Puranas.

Now, the following are the fasting days according to the different Puranas, etc. The 13th day if (each) month andMonday (in each week) according to the Shiva Purana, Sunday according to the Aditya Purana; Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday, Saturday according to Chandra Khand; the 11th day of each lunar month, according to the Vishnu Purana, the 12th is sacred to Vaaman, the 14th to Narishinha and Ananta; the day of full moon to the moon, the !0th to Dikpaalas; the 9th to the goddess Durgaa; the 8th to Vasus; the 7th to Munis; the 6th to Swami Kaartik; the 5th to Naaga; the 4th to Ganesha; the 3rd to Aauri; the 2nd to Ashvani Kumar; the 1st to adya Devi; and Amavasya- the 15th day of the dark half of each lunar month - to the manes.

These are all fasting days according to the Puranas and it is written everywhere (in these books) that whoever partakes of food or drinks on these days or dates shall got to hell. It is incumbent on the pope and his dupes that they should not take on any day or date, otherwise they shall have to go to hell. To Nirnay Sindhu, the Dharma Sindhu, the Vratarka and other such books as have been written by lunatics have played such havoc with everyone of these fasts that the Shivites fast on the 11th day of each lunar month, while others fast on the 12th holding it to be the 11th.

What a strange state of affairs has been brought about by popish practices that people quarrel even over fasting! The object of instituting a fast on the 11th day (day of every fortnight of a lunar month) could be nothing else but selfish gain on the part of the popes. There is not a trace of fellow feeling in hem. The pope says, "all sins reside in food on the 11th day (of every fortnight of a lunar month)." Now this pope should be asked whose sins reside in food? Your sins or those of your father?

If it be true that all sins reside in food on the 11th day, no one should suffer from and be afflicted with pain on that day, but such is not the case. On the other hand, there is a great deal of suffering on account of hunger and thirst. Pain or suffering is the result of sin, hence it is a sin to fast. The popes have declared fasting to be a meritorious act and many a simpleton is taken in by hearing some such sill stories as the following:-

"There was a prostitute in heaven (the region of Brahma). She did some wrongful act, thereupon she was cursed and hurled back on earth. She praised (the God) and begged to be told how she could re-enter heaven, she was told that she would regain entrance

PAGE 427

into heaven whenever some one gave up the reward of a fast on ekaasashi (11th day of fortnight of a lunar month) in her favor. She came down in her airship to some town on earth. The king of

that place asked her who she was. She repeated her story and said that if some one renounced the reward of fasting on ekaasashi she could go back to heaven.

The king had the whole town searched for a person who had kept that fast, but none could be found. One day a man and his wife, through anger had not taken her food for the whole day and night, and it happened to be ekaadashi on that day. Upon being questioned by the king's messengers she answered that she had not knowingly kept fast on that day but had only accidentally gone without food.

They brought her before the king who ordered her to touch the airship she did as ordered and instantly the airship flew upwards." When such is the reward of fasting unknowingly one ekaadashi, that of keeping a fast willingly on ekaadashi can have no bounds. O you blind people! if what you say be true, we should like to send a betel-leaf to heaven. It is a thing which is not be found here. Let all who fast on ekaadashi renounce the consequent reward in our favor. we succeeded in sending one betel-leaf to heaven in this manner, we shall also keep this fast; on the other hand if one betel-lead failed to reach heaven, we shall save you from fasting and the consequent pain and suffering.

they (i.e., the popes have given different names of the 24 Ekaaadashis (of the year). One they have called Shanada or "bestower of wealth", the other Kamda, i.e., one that gratifies one's desires, another Putrada or bestower of sons, another still Nirjala or waterless. Many a poor, needy or childless man has kept the ekaadashi fast all his life and grown gray and even died without obtaining wealth, the object of his desire or a son.

The popes have instituted this waterless ekaadashi fast in the bright half of the month of Jyeshtha (corresponding to June) when it is so hot that it is enough to overpower a man if he goes without water even for one hour. Those who keep this fast suffer terribly from hunger and thirst. the widows of Bengal especially are indeed the greatest sufferers from this fast. The heartless butcher - who instituted this fast - had not got the least pity, otherwise he could have called it Sajala (with water) instead of waterless, and in its

PAGE 428

place could have named the Ekaadashi of the bright half of the month of Pausha (corresponding to December) waterless. Had he done so, it would have been a little better. But what had this pope to do with feelings of pity and compassion. He acted on the proverb "Let a man live or die, but either case he should feed the pope well."

When fasting is a correct practice.

A pregnant woman, a child or a youth should never fast: but if one must fast at all, one should do so when one has no appetite, and got indigestion or in sickness. On such an occasion one should take syrup (of fruits) mixed with water or milk. Whosoever does not eat when hungry and eats when not hungry suffers terribly from diverse diseases. Let no one, therefore, believe in the writings of these lunatics -e.g., the founders of these books, etc.

The doings of Gurus and their disciples, of the various sects and their teachings.

Now we shall discuss the doings of Gurus (so-called preceptors), and their chelas (disciples), the various sects and their teachings:-
The idol worshippers and others of the orthodox cult say that the Vedaas are endless; the Rig Veda has 21 Shaakhaas (branches), the Yjur Veda 101, the Saama Veda 1,000 and the Atharva Veda, 9; out these only a few shaakhaas are available now-a-days, the rest have been lost; the

latter must have contained authorities for the practice of idol-worship and pilgrimage to sacred places, etc., otherwise they could not have found their way into the Puraanas?

Since the cause can be inferred by observing its affects, there can be no doubt in the truth of idol-worship when it is taught by the Puranas. We answer by saying that the branches of a tree, be they small or large, are always like (its trunk) and not unlike it, likewise when the Shaakhaas, that are extant, do not sanction idol-worship, pilgrimage to sacred places, such as rivers, and the like practices, it is not possible that they were sanctioned by the lost Shaakhaas. Besides the four Vedas are found in their entirety, the Shaakhaas could never be opposed to the Vedaas and whatever is opposed to the Vedaas could never be proved to be their Shaakhaas.

This being the case, the Puraanaas are not the shaakhaas of the Vedaas, they are on the other hand books that contradict each other and have been written by sectarians. If you hold the Veda to be the word of God, why do you regard such books as go under the name of sages and seers as Ashwalayana and the like Divine in origin? Just as trees like the Ficus Religiosum, Banyani and Mango are known by their distinctive branches and leaves, so are the true meanings of the Vedaas.

PAGE 429

known by the study of the Vedangas, the four Braahmanas, the Angas, the Upangas, and other books written by sages and seers; hence it is that they are called Shaakhaas. What is oppose to the Vedaas can never be held as authoritative, nor what is in conformity with them as unauthoritative. Should you say that idol-worship and the like practices were sanctioned by the lost Shaakhaas, one could retort by saying that very likely according to the lost shaakhaas the system of Classes and Orders was the reverse of what obtained in the shaakhas that are extant, viz., a Shoodra or an outcast was called a Braahman and vice-versa, what is unlawful regarded as lawful, duty as not-duty, untruthfulness in speech, a virtue, while truthfulness in speech a sin.

Now how could you meet such and objection except by saying what we have already said. In other words, we are bound to believe that the lost Shaakhaas were in conformity with the Veda and the Shaakhaas that are extant in the teachings with regard to the system of Classes and Orders, viz., a Braahman was called a Braahman, while a Shoodra a Shoodra, otherwise the whole system Classes and Orders and the like institutions will be topsy -turvy. Don't you think that all the Shaakhaas were extant till the time of Jaimini, Vyaasa and Patanjali? If you answer in the affirmative, how is it then that they do not even mention such practices as idol-worship in their works? But if you say no, what proof have you then of the fact that those lost Shaakhaas even did exist?

Now Jaimini describes the whole Karamankanda (duty of man) in his Mimaansaa. Paatanjali the whole Upaasnakaand (methods of communion with the realization of God) in his Yoga Shaastra, and sage Vyaasa the whole Jananakaanda (Divine knowledge) is his Shaaririka Shaastraas quite in accordance with the teachings of the Vedaas. There is no mention even by name of idol-worship or pilgrimage to Prayaga andother sacred places to be found in their writings, and how could they have mentioned such things when they did not exist in the Vedaas. Had all these things been in the Vedas, they would not have but mentioned them in their books.

Hence it is clear that the worship of idols was not sanctioned even by the lost Shaakhaas, nor are these books included in the term Veda - the Word of God - because they take certain mantras of the Veda as texts and then expound them, and also because they contain biographies of various men and women.

These things are not possible in the case of the Vedaas, because they simply teach principles of knowledge for the guidance of man. There is

PAGE 430

not the least mention of any man's name in the Vedas. The practice of idolatry is, therefore, absolutely condemned (by all authoritative books).

The inclusion of Krishna, Rama, Shiva, etc., in the practice of idolatry.

Mark now! How the practice of idolatry has brought Shri Krishna, Rama Chandra, Shiva, Narayana, and other great men into public contempt and ridicule. Everybody knows that they were great Emperors and their wives Sita, Rukmani, Lakshmi and Paarvati, etc., were great queens, but the priests place their idols in the temples and beg for alms in their name (i.e., they turn them into beggars) thus:- "Come, O Great Banker! Come Sir! And see the idol, seat yourself and take charanamrit* adno offer something (to the God). O Sir! Sita, and Rama, Radha and Krishna, Lakshmi and Narayana, or Mahadeva and Parvati have not had a morsel of food or a drop of water for the last three days and they have absolutely nothing to-day (to eat or drink).

Come, O Queen! Come, Great lady! Get a nose-ring made for Sita. Send us some food to enable us to offer it to (the idol of*) Rama or Krishna. All their garments are tattered and torn, all the corners of the temple have come down, and it also leaks. Whatever the idols had, the wicked thieves have made away with. Some of their property was destroyed by rats. One day the rats did such an awfully wicked thing as to take one of the eyes of the idol out of its socket and ran away with it. We could not afford to replace it by a silver eye, hence we have merely put a sea-shell in its place."

These people - the priests and laity - also have Raaslilaa (a dance which enacts the amorous pastimes of Krishna with cow-herdesses) and Raamlila (a Pauranic play in which deeds of Rama are represented). (During the course of these performances) Sita and Rama, Radha and Krishna dance while the priests and princes - their servants - are seated at their ease watching the dance! Sita and Rama are standing in the temple while their priests or devotees ae comfortably seated on cushioned seats (with their heads or elbows) resting on bolsters.

Even in the hot season they lock the idols in, while they themselves enjoy their siesta in comfortable beds in a place where a pleasant , cool breeze blows. Many a priests puts his Narayana (god) in a small box and wraps a piece of cloth round it and wears it hanging from his neck just as a female monkey carries about her little one hanging from her neck. When anyone breaks an idol, the priests laments pitifully

---

* Charanamrita (literally nectar of the feet) is the water in which the idol had been washed.-Tr.

PAGE 431

and beats his breast nd cries out: "The devil has broken the idol of Sita, Rama, Radha, Krishna, Mahadeva or Parvati. Now it should be replaced by an idol of marble made by a clever scuptor." "Food cannot be offered to Narayana without some clarified butter. Please do send a little if you can't send much." The priests say this and similar such other things about Sita, Rama, etc.,

At the end of Raaslila or Raamlilaa they send (the boys taking the parts of Radha and Krishna or Sita and Rama, round to beg (from the spectators). Wherever there is a festival or a fair, the get hold of a boy, and place a Mukuta (a kind of tiara peculiar to Krishna) on his head; he thus is transformed into Krishna, placed on a a public road and made to beg.

The reader can judge how disgraceful it is to do such things. Now tell us, pray, were Sita and Rama, etc., such poor, miserable beggars (as you represent them)? What is all this if not holding them to contempt and ridicule? Such things bring out great men into great disrepute. Had a priest placed Sita, Rukmani, Lakshmi and Parvati, when they were alive, on a public road or in a house and said, to the people "Come and see them and place something by way of an offering before them." (Sita, etc.,) would never have done or allowed these idiots to do, what they pleased (with them.).

Had anyone done anything to hold them to public ridicule, they would never have suffered them to go unpunished. But as these men were allowed to go unpunished, their misdeeds have helped them to get a good thrashing at the hands of iconoclasts, they are still getting it and will continue to do so as long as they do not cease committing such sinful acts.

Can there be any doubt that the daily ruin of Aryavarta (India) and subjection of the idolators are due to their misdeeds, since the fruit of sin is misery and sorrow? Bear in mind that belief in the idols made of stones, etc., has chiefly been the cause of your downfall and if you don't leave off the worship of stalks and stones even now, lower and lower you will sink everyday. Among all these (idol-worshippers) the Vaama Maargis are the greatest sinners. When they make a man their disciple (chelaa) they teach him, if he be an ordinary person, the following mantras:-

> Dam Durgayai namah [we bow unto (the goddess) Durga], Bham Bhairavayai namah [we bow unto Bhairava (Indian Bacchsu)], Ain hrim kalim chamundayai vichche.

PAGE 432

In Bengal the mantra that is chiefly taught consists only of one word such as Harim, shirm or Kalim. If the disciples be rich, they are taught the complete mantra.

The mantras of the ten kinds of higher knowledge are like the following:-

Hram hrim hrum bagalamukhayai phat swaha. Or Hrum phat swaha.

They also resort various practices in which mantras are put to practical use for killing other persons, seducing women, or causing them to dislike their lovers, or bringing about subjugation of lovers, etc. Of course mantras are of no use in helping them to achieve these objects. When they resort to practices whose object is ti kill some person, they take the stipulated price of murder from the person who wants somebody to be removed. On the one hand they make a effigy of flour or clay, stab it with big knives in the chest, navel and throat, drive nails into its eyes, hands and feet, make an idol of Bhairava or Durga above it, give a trident in one of its hands and touch the effigy in the situation of its heart, also make an altar on which they burn the flesh (of animals) as an offering, while on the other they send a man secretly to poison the would be victim or employ other means of killing him. If they succeed in killing him, while special rites for the purpose are going on, they call themselves Sidhas (men possessed of miraculous powers) of the goddess Bhairava, and recite such mantras as Bhairava Bhuta nathashcah," etc.

They also mutter such mantras, s, "Maraya, Maraya Uchchataya etc.," * eat meat and drink wine to their heart's content, and draw lines with vermillion on their foreheads in the space between the eyebrows. Sometimes they would get hold of a man and kill him and offer his flesh as a sacrifice to the goddess Kali, etc., and burn it on the altar, and even eat it. Whosoever joins

---

* It literally means kill, kill, cause dislike (between the lover and the beloved), cause hatred (between them) cut off. Split, pierce, bring under control, eat, swallow, break, destroy, subjugate my enemies.-Tr.

PAGE 433

their Bhairavi circle, but refuses to eat meat and drink wine is killed by them and his flesh burnt on the altar. Those who are aghorees among them will even eat the flesh of a dead human body, while ajarees and Bajarees will even eat excrement an drink urine.

The sects of Vaama Maargis.

There are two sects among Vama Margis; one is called Choli Margi - the path of bodies, while the other is called Bija Margi - the path of Bija or seed (semen).

Choli Margists - their wives and husbands, boys and girls, sisters and mothers, daughters-in-law - meet together in a secret place, eat meat and drink wine together. They strip a woman naked, all men worship her private parts and all her Durgadevi (the goddess Durga). The women strip a man naked and worship his private parts. When they get quite intoxicated with drink, they take bodice of all the women present and shuffle them together and place them in a big earthen vessel. Each man goes there, puts his hand into the vessel, picks up a bodice, the owner of the bodice, be she his mother, sister, daughter or daughter-in-law, becomes for the time being his wife, and has sexual intercourse with her. When they get highly intoxicated, they would even fight each other with shoes, etc. early in the morning when it is still dark they go back home where they treat their mother, sister, daughters and daughters-in-law as such.

The Bija Margists - at the time of sexual intercourse drop the semen in water and mix it well with it and take this drink. These vile wretches believe that such acts lead to salvation! They are as a rule altogether destitute of learning, culture, understanding and other good qualities.

The sect of the Shivites.

Q. - Well! Are the Shivites then good?

A. ~ How can they be good? The proverb "As is the Lord of spirits, so is the Lord of ghosts" is applicable to them. Just a the Vaama Maagis teach their mantra and thereby rob their dupes, so do the Shivites teach their mantra of five words: "We bow unto Lord Shiva," wear rosaries of Rudraksha (berries of the Eleocarpust ganitrus tree), smear their bodies with ashes, worship lingas made of clay and stone, should Har (Lord), Har (Lard), Bam Bam and

PAGE 434

make a noise somewhat like the bleating of a goat. The reason they give for doing this is that the clapping of hands and the shouting of Bama Bam* pleases Parvati and displeased Mahadeva, because when the latter ran away from the demon Bhasma, derisive cheers were given, and Bam Bam was shouted. Whilst making of the noise like the bleating of a goat pleases Mahadeva and displeases Parvati, because when her father Daksha Prajapati's head was cut off and put into fire and instead of it a goat's head was placed on the top of his body, he made a noise like the bleating of a goat. This imitated by striking with fingers the blown out cheeks alternately in quick succession.

The Shivites also keep a fast on the day of Shivaratri.** they look upon all these things as means towards the attainment of salvation. They are as much mistaken as the Vama Margis, Arnyas, Parvatas and Sagaras and many householders are also Shivites. Some ride both horses, i.e., are Shivites and Vama Margis at the same time, whilst others are Vaishnavites as well. On of the Tantra books says, "Inwardly they are Vama Margis, but outwardly they are Shivites, i.e., wear

Rudraksha, smear their bodies with ashes, while in the midst of an assembly they aver that they worship Vishnu. Thus do the Vama Margis go about the world in various guises.

More on the Vaishnavite sect.

Q. - Are the Vaishnavites good?

A. ~ Not a bit. They are just as bad as the Shivites. Look at the imposture of the Vaishnavites! They declare themselves to be the servants of Vishnu. Among them Shrivaishnavites also called Chakrangkitas hold themselves to be the best of all, which is altogether absurd.

Q. - Why, we (Shri Vaishnavites) are, indeed, superior to all.
We make marks on our foreheads like the sacred food of Narayana and draw a yellow line called Shri - the wife of Narayana - in the center. This is the reason we call ourselves Shri Vaishnavites. We believe in none but Narayana, do not even look at the linga of Mahadeva, because the Shri is present on our foreheads who feels ashamed. We recite Stotras, called A'll and Mandara, worship Narayana by chanting the mantras sacred to Him. We do not eat meat, nor do we drink wine. Why are we not good, then?

---

* Bam Bam has the same significance as booing in English.-Tr.
** Shivaratri is the night of the birthday of Shiva.-Tr.

PAGE 435

A. ~ It is absurd to believe the marks on your foreheads to be impressions of the foot of Narayana, and the yellow line a Shri since they are made with your own hands. Your foreheads are painted like those of the elephants when they turn out in procession. How did the imprssion of the foot of Narayana come to be formed on your foreheads? Did anyone go to (Vaikunth), Vaishnavite's heaven and had the impression of Narayana's foot taken on his forehead? Besides, is Shri animate or inanimate?

Q. - Animate?

A. ~ Then this yellow line (drawn on the forehead) being inanimate could not be Shri. Moreover, is Shri brought into being or is it self-existent? If the latter, the yellow line on your froe head cannot be Shri as you draw it with your hands every day. Had it been Shri - beauty - on the foreheads of Vaishnavites, so many of them wound have been ugly-looking. When you have Shri - prosperity or wealth on you foreheads, why should you be begging from door to door and live on alms given by charitable people. It is, indeed, like obstinate and shameless people to have Shri on their foreheads and act like those who are in abject poverty.

There was a man among Vaishnavites, called Parikal, a great devotee of the Lord Vishnu. It was his great delight to steal or rob others of their wealth or acquire it through fraud, hypocrisy, and present it to Vaishnavites. One day it so happened that he did not meet a single man whom he could rob, nor did he get a chance of stealing anything. He was, therefore, greatly putout and was going about in this condition when Narayana thought that his devotee was in trouble.

He disguised himself as a banker and put on finger-rings and other ornaments, seated himself in a carriage and came before Parikal who, as soon as he saw the carriage went towards it and shouted to the banker. "Take off everything (valuable you have on) and give it to me, otherwise I will kill you." Narayana was a little slow in taking off one of his finger-rings, thereupon Parikal cut his finger off and God hold of the ring. Narayana was highly pleased with Parikal and manifested himself in his four-

PAGE 436

armed body and said, "You are my dearly beloved devotee as you serve the Vaishnavites with everything you get through robbery, theft or murder. You are, therefore, blessed." Parikal then went and place all the jewelry before the Vaishnavites.

On another occasion Parikal took service with a merchant who took him along with him to a distant country in a ship. On the return journey, the merchant loaded his dhip with cargo of areca-nuts. Parikal took an areca-nut and cut it into two equal halves and asked the merchant to put one of the two halves in his ship and write down to the effect that one half of the nuts on board the ship belong to Parikal. The merchant replied that there was no occasion for doing it, he could take a thousand nuts, if he liked. There upon Parikal said that he was not a dishonest person that he would falsely take what did not belong to him, he wanted only his half nut.

The merchant was a simple-minded, credulous person. He wrote down as desired by Parikal. When the ship reached the port of destination and the cargo was about to be discharged, Parikal demanded half of the nuts. The merchant offered him his half nut but Parikal contended that half the nuts on board the ship belonged to him and he would have his share. The matter was taken to a Court of Law where Parikal produced the written document in the Court in which the merchant has agreed to give half the nuts on board the ship to him.

The merchant strongly protested against it, but Parikal would not give in, the Court was compelled to give the verdict against the merchant. Parikal took away half his share of nuts and offered them to the Vaishnavites who were highly pleased with Parikal. The idol of that thief and robber is kept to this (day in the temple) of Vasihnavites. This story is narrated in Bhagtamala. Now, let the wise see whether the Vaishnavites, their disciples and Narayana, all these three, are asset of priest of thieves or not.

It is true that a man can be good in certain respects, though he may belong to one of these various sect. Now observe how the Vsihnavites are divided among themselves with regard to their tilak and rosaries. Rama Nandees make their tilak with sandal marks on the sides and red in the center, Madhav, a black central line. Gaur Bengalees a dagger-like mark, Rama Prasadists draw a half moon on either side and a white round mark in the center. The significance of these marks is also different with these different sects. For instance, Ramanandists hold that the red line

PAGE 437

represents Lakshmi seated in the heart of Narayana while Gosaeens say that it represents Radha seated in the heart of Sri Krishna.
There is a story recorded in Bhagatmala which runs as follows:-

A man was sleeping under the shade of a tree. He died in his sleep, a crow sitting above on the tree passed its excrement that fell on the dead man's forehead and formed itself into a tilak. The messengers of Yama came to fetch the body, Vishnu's messengers also got there at the same time. There arose a quarrel between them over the body. Both said that they had their respective masters' orders to fetch the corpse.

The messenger of Vishnu, in support of their claim, pointed to the mark on the forehead of the dead man that was sacred to Vishnu and said. "With that mark on the dead man's forehead, how could you take him with you." Thereupon the messengers of Yam kept quiet and went away, whilst the messengers of Vishnu carried him comfortably to Vaikutha wherein he was admitted by Narayana.

When such is the merit of a tilak made accidentally, can there be any wonder then if those who make their tilaka lovingly and with their own hands escape the terrors of hell and go to Vaikuntha? Now, what we should like to say is that if a man goes to heaven by making a small tilak on his forehead, he is sure to go to a place further than heaven by plastering or blackening his whole face or plastering his whole body.

It is clear, therefore, that all these things are altogether absurd,. Now many a Khaki* among Vaishnavites wear a small piece of cloth round their lions and sit before wood-fire, grow long-matted hair and assume the appearance of a saint, sit as if in deep meditation, smoke hemp (Cannabis Ind.) and Charas** awfully, and thereby keep their eyes red and congested, beg for handfuls of flour and grain, coppers and shells, dupe the children of the householders and make them their Chelas (disciples).

Khakis are chiefly men form the working class. If the find a man engaged in acquiring knowledge, the dissuade him from doing it by saying, "What have godly persons (santas) to do with studying, since those who read die and so do others who do not. Why should a man, then, wear out his teeth by reading? It bhoves Sadhus (so-

---

* Khakis (from Khak) - dust are called so because they besmear their bodies with dust and ashes.-Tr
** One of the products of Indian hemp. -Tr.

PAGE 438

called holy men) to roam about the world, serve the santas (so-called saints) and sing the praises of Rama."

Whosoever has never seen an incarnation of ignorance and idiocy, let him, then, go and have a look at a Khaki. He calls everyone who visits him, be he or she as old as his father or mother, a child. As is the Khaki so are the Rukhars, Sukhars, Godaryes, Jamatwala, and Suthreshahees, Akalees, Logees with pierced ears and Augars, etc. The following story related of a Khaki will serve to truthfully depict his character.

A Chela (disciple) of a Khaki was repeating his lesson, which consisted of Shriganeshaya namah, frequently in order to learn it by heart; whilst doing it he went to draw water from a well, hearing the Sadhu repeat Shriganesh Janamen Said, "O Sadhu! You are repeating incorrectly, you should say Shriganeshaya namah instead of Sriganesha Janamen." He filled his jug with water and off he went to his guru (preceptor) and told him that a certain Bamman* alled his reading wrong.

On hearing that the Khaki got up at once and went straight to the well and addressed the Pundit thus, "You have been misleading my pupil. Curse you, what have you read? Look here! You know only one reading of the text, while I know three, viz., Shriganeshayanamen, Shriganesayannamen, Shriganesayannamen. "The Pundit replied, "Hear, O Sadhu! It is difficult to acquire knowledge. You can't acquire it without studying" The Khaki retorted "Get away. I have licked all the (Sanskrit) scholars, ground them all in pestle and mortar and drunk them off in a cup of the infusion of Cananbis Ind.

Great is the might of the santas. What can you a tattler know?" The Pundit rejoined, "Had you been a learned man; you would not have called me names. You would have known hoe to behave." The Khaki cried out, "Hallo! You want to become my guru! I will stand no sermons from you." The Pundit answered, "How can you listen to good advice when you have no understanding. One must possess some sense in order to be able to profit by good advice." The Khaki retorted, "He who reads all the Vedas and the Shastras but does not respect or serve the

santas is indeed likeone who has not read at all." The Pundit added, "I do respect and serve the santas but not disorderly men like you, because the santas are those who are

---

* It is a corruption of the word Brahamana.-Tr.

PAGE 439

good, learned and righteous and promote public good."

(Khaki). - Look here we (khakis) remain naked day and night, sit before fire-wood in all weathers, smoke hemp and charas furiously, drink as many as three jug-fuls of Cannabis Ind. Infusion in twenty-four hours, cook leaves of Indian hemp and dhatura eating them like vegetables; even bolt down arsenic and opium, remain intoxicated day and night and have no cares and worries, do not care for (the opinion of) the world, live (on alms), have such dreadful fits of coughing during the night that it becomes impossible for a man to sleep near by. Such are our powers and saintly qualities. Why do you then run us down? Bear in mind you old tattler! If you bother me again, i will at once reduce you to ashes.

Pundit ~ All these are the qualifications and characteristics of rogues nd charlatans and not of saintly men (Sadhus). A Sadhu is one who does righteous deeds, is always engaged in furthering public good, is free from vices, learned, and benefits all by preaching the truth.

Khaki - Get away. What do you know of the duties and qualifications of a sadhu. Great is the might of the santas! Don't you try to measure with a santa, otherwise he may strike you wit a pair of fire tongs and break your skull.

Pundit ~ Alright Khaki! Go back to your place. Don't get so angry with me. Don't you know what a just government it is that watches over us now-a-days. If you beat anyone, you may be arrested, sent to jail or caned for it or you may be paid in your own coin. What will you do, then? This not the qualification of a Sadhu.

Khaki - Come along, my pupil! What a fiend you have introduced me to!

Pundit ~ you have never been in the society of a great soul, otherwise you would not have remained densely ignorant.

Khaki - I am myself a great soul and have, therefore, nothing to do with anyone else.

Pundit ~ Most unfortunate are they whose understanding is perverted like yours and who are do filled with pride as your are.

The Khaki went back to his seat, while the Pundit wended his way back home. After the evening-prayer was over, many

PAGE 440

Khakees thinking him old and therefore worthy of respect came to see him and said, "salutations unto thee" and, after having prostrated themselves before him, took their seats. Tlhat old Khaki then addressed one of them, "What have you read? O Ramdas - servant of Rama!"

Ramdas replied " Reveren Sir! I have read the Vishnusahasar nama."

Then he asked another, "What have you read? O Gobindas - Servant of Gobind!" The latter replied that he read the Ramasatvaraja with such and such a Khaki. Thereupon Ramdas asked that old Khaki, "What have you read? O Great Sir!" The Khaki replied, " I have read the Gita." Ramdas rejoined, "O Whom?" The Khaki retorted, "Get away child! I never had a mater. Look here - when I lived in Paryagraja (Allahabad) I could not read a word. Whenever I happened to meet a Pundit with along Dhoti* I would take my Gita and point out a certain letter and ask him the name of the letter with a crown. In this way I went through all the 18 chapters of the Gita but did not call a single man my master."

Now, if ignorance would not make such people its permanent home, where else should it go? These people do nothing useful but instead drink, and remain intoxicated (most of the time), quarrel, eat, sleep, beat symbols, ring bells, blow conches, sit over a smoldering fire, bathe (frequently) and roam about uselessly in all parts of the country. It is easier to melt even stones than knock sense into the heads of these Khakees, as most of these men are really servants, laborers, peasants or water-bearers who have given up their work and become Vairagees or Khakees by just smearing their bodies with ashes.

They can never understand the great advantages of acquiring knowledge or associating with good men. All these sects have their respective mantras which is a sort of watchword. For instance, the Nathas have: "I bow unto the Lord Shiva." The Khakees: "I bow unto the Man-lion." The Ramavatars: "I bow unto the great Rama Chandra" or "I bow unto Sita and Rama;" the followers of Krishna: "I bw unto the Great Radha and Krishna or " I bow unto the great Vasudeva," and Bengalees: I bow unto Govind." They make their disciples by simply repeating these mantras into their ears and teach such things as the following:- O my son! Learn the mantra of the

---

* Dhoti is a loose garment for the lower part of the body.-Tr.

PAGE 441

water-gourd* "Sacred is the water, sacred is the ground and sacred is the well. Shiva says, hear O Parvati! Sacred is the water-gourd."

Now can such men ever be considered Sadhus, learned men, of fit persons for promoting the good of the word.

The Khakes burn wood and bramble day and night, they consume wood worth many a rupee in one month. If they were instead to buy blankets and other warm clothing with the price of one month's fuel, they would live in great comfort at a cost fo one hundredth part of what they spend on wood in a year, but where are they to get the sense to understand it.

They call themselves Tapaswis, austere devotees simply because they sit over wood-fire. If this could make men Tapaswis, savages would be greater Tapaswis. If growing of long-matted hair, smearing the body with ashes and making tilakas on the forehead can make a man tapaswi, anyone would become a tapaswi. Outwardly they pretend to have renounced the world but at heart they are engrossed in it.

The Kabirpanthees sect.

Q. - Are, then, Kabirpanthees good?

A. ~ No.

Q. - Why ar not they good? They condemn idol-worship, etc., Karbir was born among flowers and (in the end) became a flower. Kabir lived even before Brahma, Vishnu or Mahadeva was born. He possessed great and miraculous powers. What the authors of the Vedas and the Puraanas did not know he knew. It is Kabir alone who has shown the right path. His mantra is: "Kabir is the true name, etc."

A. ~ Leave alone idol-worship, his followers worship even beds, cushioned seats, pillows, wooden sandals and lamps. The worship of these objects is nothing short of idol-worship. Was Kabir a flower insect that he was born among flowers and became a flower after death. It seems that the rumor current about Kabir is, after all, true. This is as follows:-
There lived a weaver in Kashi (Benares), he was altogether childless. One day, a little

---

* It is a hollow gourd in which mendicants carry water.

PAGE 442

before dawn while he was passing through a street, he happened to see a newly-born infant lying amidst followers in a blanket and took it home to his wife. She reared that child out of the basket and took it home to his wife. She reared that child till he grew up when he began to follow the business of a weaver. He went to a Pundit to learn Sanskrit with him, but he insulted him by saying that he would not teach a weaver.

In a like manner, he went to several other Pundits but no one would teach him, thereupon he began to compose hymns, etc., in incorrect and unidiomatic language and sing them to weavers and other low-class people to the accompaniment of a Tambura.* He especially spoke ill of the Vedas, the Shastras and the Pundits. Some ignorant persons were ensnared into his net. After his death his followers made a great saint of him. His disciples kept on reading whatever he had composed in his lifetime.

The noises that are heard on closing one's ears are called Ahhat Sabda by them. This their chief doctrine. They call the activity of the mind Surati. To direct that in hearing anhat shabda is the highest contemplation of God and the chief qualification of a Santa (holy man). It is beyond the reach of time. The followers of Kabir make tilakas of the form of a dagger, wear strings of beads made of sandal-wood round their necks. Now a little reflection will show that these things can be of no help in the betterment of the soul and increase of knowledge. All this is more like a child's play.

Sikhism - the sect of Guru Nanak.

Q. - Nanak has founded a sect in the Punjab. He refuted idol-worship, and saved many people from embracing Mohammmedanism,. More over he never became a Sadhu and, instead, remained a house-holder. He taught the following Mantra:-
"He whose name is Truth, is the Maker (of the Universe), the all-pervading Being who is Nirbhau (free from fear and enmity), is beyond the reach of time, is never born andis the all-glorious Being. Worship Him, (O Disciple!) May your preceptor help you to do it. That Supreme Spirit lived in the beginning of Creation, lives in the present and shall live in the future." JAPAJAU PAUREE.

---

* A tambura is a musical instrument with 6 wires.-Tr.

PAGE 443

A. ~ The aim of **Nanak** was, no doubt, good; but he did not possess any learning and was merely acquainted with the dialect of the (Punjabi) villagers among whom he was born. He was quite

ignorant of the Vedas and the Shastras and of Sanskrit, otherwise why should he have written Nirbhau instead of Nirbhaya.

Another proof of his ignorance of the Sanskrit language is his composition called Sanskrit hymns (Satotras). He wanted to show that he had some pretentions to the knowledge of Sanskrit. But how could one know Sanskrit without learning it. Is is possible that he might have passed for a Sanskrit scholar before those ignorant villagers who had never heard a man speak Sanskrit. He could never have done unless he was anxious to gain public applause, fame and glory. He must have sought after fame or he would have preached in the language he know and told the people that he had not read Sanskrit.

Since he was a little vain, he may possibly have even resorted to some sort of make-believe to gain reputation and acquire fame, hence it is that in his book called the **Grantha** the Vedas have been praised as well as censured, because had he not done so, some one might have asked him the meaning of the Vedic Mantra and as he would not have been able to explain it he would have been lowered in the estimation of the people.

Anticipating this difficulty, he, from the first, denounced the Vedas here and there, but occasionally also spoke well of the Vedas, because had he not done so, the people would have called him a Nastika, i.e., and atheist or a reviler of the Vedas. For instance, it is recorded in the Grantha, "Even Brahma who constantly read the Vedas died. All the four Vedas are mere fiction. The Vedas can never realize the greatness of a Sadhu." SUKHMANI, 7: 8.

"Nanak says that a man versed in Divine knowledge is himself God." SUKHMANI 8:6.

If the scholars of the Vedas like Brahma are dead, have not Nanak, etc., also shared the same fate. Did they consider themselves immortal? The Vedas are a mine of all kinds of knowledge. Whatever a man, who calls the Vedas mere fiction, says, is a mere fabrication. If the word Sadhus is another name

PAGE 444

for idiots, how can they ever understand the greatness of the Vedas? Had Nanak held up the Vedas alone as the supreme authority, he would not have succeeded in founding his sect, nor would he have been recognized a Guru (Master). As he was quite ignorant of Sanskrit, he would not have been able to teach others and thereby make them his disciples.

It is true though that in Nanak's time the Punjab was altogether destitute of Sanskrit learning and was groaning under the tyranny of the Mohammedans. He did save some persons from embracing Mohammedanism. Nanak in his lifetime had not had many followers, nor did his sect flourish much. But it is a habit with the ignorant that they make a saint of their Guru after his death, then invest him with a halo (of glory) and believe him to be an incarnation of God.

Nanak was neither a rich man, nor was he one of the aristocracy and yet his followers have written in Nanak Chandrodaya and Janamsakhi that he was a great saint who possessed miraculous powers, met Brahman and other (sages of yore), had long talks with them, all paid him homage on the occasions of his marriage when he went to marry his bride, he had a long procession of horses, carriages and elephants ornamented with silver, gold, pearls and diamonds. All this is recorded in the above-mentioned books. Now what are these but yarns spun by his followers. It is his followers who are to blame for this and not Nanak.

After his death, the sect of Udasees originated with his son, while that of Nirmalas with Ram Das, etc. Many a successor to the throne of Nanak have incorporated his writings in the Grantha. The tenth Guru of the Sikhs was **Guru Gobind**. Since his time no addition has been made to it, but,

instead, all the smaller books that were extant then were collected together and bound in one volume (and the name of Granth was given to it). The successors of Nanak wrote various treatises: some of them invented fictitious stories like those of the Puranas and, acting on the precept "The man versed in Divine knowledge is himself God," arrogated to themselves Divine privileges.

Their followers renounced the practice of good works and Divine contemplation and, instead, paid their Gurus the homage due to God. Thus has been done a great mischief. It would have been very good had these men kept on worshipping God in the way pointed out by Nanak. Now, the Udasees claim to be superior to all others, while the Nirmala make the same claim for themselves. The Akalees and Suthreshahees hold that they are above all, Gobind Singh was indeed a very brave man among the followers of Nanak. The Mohammedans had oppressed his people very much. He was

PAGE 445

anxious to revenge himself on them, but he had neither the men nor the necessary material for the purpose whilst the Mohammedans were at the zenith of their power. He, therefore, resorted to a strategem. He gave it out that the goddess had given him a sword and a blessing saying: "Go forth and fight against the Mohammedans. You shall win." He gained many supporters from amongst the people. he (appointed) five kakars, i.e., five articles all beginning with the letter K as the signs of his faith just like five makers of he Vama Margis - and five Sanskars of the Chakrankits. The five Kkars of Sikhs were of great use in fighting. The are as follows:-

1. **Kesha** - long unshaven hair - this protects the head, to some extent, against blows from sticks and sword thrusts.
2. **Kangan** - a big iron ring worn by akalees on their turbans.
   Kara - an iron bangle worn on the wrist which helps to protect the wrist and the head.
3. **Kachha** - a kind of knickers used in running and jumping, very commonly used by wreslters and acrobats for the same purpose. It protects the most vital parts of the body as well as makes the movements free.
4. **Karda** - a double -edged knife useful in hand -to-hand fight with the enemy.
5. **Kangha** - a comb for dressing the hair.

Gobin Singh, through his wisdom, started the practice of wearing these five articles. They were very useful for the time in which he lived, but they are of no use at the present time. (It is strange - that) those things which were required to be used because of there being of great service in fighting (with the enemy) have now come to be regarded as part and parcel of the religions of the Sikhs. It is true that they do not practice idolatry but they worship the Grantha even more than idols. Now is not this idolatry?

To bow down before an material object or worship it is idolatry. They ply their trade just like all other idolators and make a good living by it. Just as the idolator priests show their idols (in the temples) to the visitors and receive (gifts offered by them to idols). .Likewise do the followers of **Nanak** worship the Grantha and teach others to do the same and receive what is offered to it. The followers of the Grantha do not show the same amount of respect to the Vedas as do the Puanics. Of course it can be urged in their

PAGE 446

defense, that these people had neither even read the Vedas, nor heard them being read, they could not, therefore, be blamed for showing scanty respect to them. If they were to read the Vedas or hear them being read, those among them, who are free from prejudice and bigotry, would not doubt embrace the Vedic religion. It is greatly to the credit of these people that they

have done away with various troublesome and useless restrictions in the matter of eating and drinking, it will be a very good thing indeed if the would also free themselves from sensualism, vanity and false pride and advance the cause of the Vedic religion.

The teachings of the Dadupanthee sect.

Q. - Are then the teachings of the Dadupanthee true?

A. ~ The only true path is that of the Vedas. Follow it if you can otherwise you will always be sunk in ignorance and misery. According to his followers **Dadu** was born in Gujrat. Late on he lived at Amera near Jaipur where he followed the business of a taili.* Wonderful are the workings of the laws that operate in tis Universe created by God, that even **Dadu** came to be worshipped.

Now they - the **Dadupanthees** - have renounced the teachings of the Vedas and Shastras and taken, instead, to the muttering of **Dadu Ram Ram**** which alone is held to be the means of obtaining salvation. It is only in the absence of true teachers that such malpractices come into vogue. It is only a short time ago since the Ram Snehi (lover of Rama) sect came into existence at Shahpura.

They have given up the performance of duties enjoined by the Vedic religion, and have, instead, come to believe that the repeating of the word Rama is a very good thing, it alone leads to the attainment of true knowledge, concentration of mind necessary for Divine contemplation, and salvation, but it is a pity when hungry they cannot get bread and vegetables by the repetition of this name, as food and drink can only be had from the house-holders.

They also decry idol-worship but have themselves become objects of worship (like the idols). They mostly live in the company of women, as Rama*** can never be happy without Ramki.

---

* A taili is one who manufactures oil.

** Lit. Dadu, God, God, which may mean verily Dadu is God or an incarnation of the Deity. O Dadu? Repeatedly take the name of Rama.-Tr.

*** This a play upon words. As these men are always repeating the word Rama, they are called Rama; Ramki literally means of Ram - a female devoice of Rama. Tr.

PAGE 447

The Rama Charan sect.

There was a Sadhu named Rama Charan. Eh founded a sect at Shahpura (udeypur State). His followers believe the repetition of the word Rama to be the highest Mantra and the holiest doctrine. The following is written in one of their books which records the utterances of Sant Das and others.

"When a man repeats the name of the Lord, all his doubts are dispelled, diseases afflict him no longer and the Great Judge, Yama, tears his record into pieces and all his sins are forgiven."*

Now, let the intelligent reader see how, by the mere repetition of the word Rama, doubts, which is another name for ignorance, can be dispelled , the judgment of the Great Judge given in accordance with the nature of one's deeds, good and bad, averted or sins forgiven. Such teachings simply tempt men to live in sin and thereby waste their lives.

The following are the utterances of **Rama Charan**, the founder of the sect, *"Hear, O friend most attentively how great is the might fo the name of the Lord! By repeatedly taking the name of Rama one is freed from all sins. Whosoever has taken His name has*

---

* *A document in which are noted all the good or evil deeds done by a person.-Tr.*

PAGE 448

crossed the ocean of misery but whosoever has forgotten Him shall fall into the hands of Yama. It has been said that all but Rama is false. By the worship of Rama one ceases to do all (evil) deeds. The sun and the moon shall dance attendance on him. Rama says he has nothing to fear, all the three worlds shall sing his praises. Yama has no power over him who repeats the name of Rama. By repeatedly writing the name of Rama (on a slate or paper, etc.,) rocks have been floated (on water).

The Lord has incarnated for the good of His devotees. Whosoever makes a distinction (between men) on account of caste, high or low, surely wastes his life. The Santas see no inequalities (among men) on account of caste. Repeatedly mutter the name of Rama, as Rama pervades all. He who sings the praises of Rama is great, his power cannot be gauged. Rama (says) the limit of Santas' greatness can never be reached. Let a man sing His praises according to his own understanding."

For the perusal of the books of **Rama Charan** and the like it appears that he was a simple villager who was quite illiterate, otherwise he would not have spun such yarns. They are altogether mistaken who teach that, bye the mere repetition of word Rama, one' s sin is forgiven. By teaching such false doctrines these people waste their lives as well as those of others.

One is not freed even from the fear of police constables, thieves, dacoits, wolves snakes, scorpions and mosquitoes, let alone that of Yama which is very great indeed, even if he repeats the name of Rama day and night.

Just as by repeatedly saying the word sugar one's mouth does not become sweet, in like manner the mere repetition of the word Rama can be of no avail. It is the practice of righteous deeds such as truthfulness in speech that can free a man from the fear of death. If Rama would not hear his devotees when the utter his name once, it is not likely that he would ever hear them even if they were to repeat it all their lives. But if he hears them when they take his name once, it is useless then to take it a second time.

They have started these frauds to make their living by robbing others and thereby waste their lives. It is strange that these people should call themselves lovers of Rama, while they conduct themselves lovers of widows. Had not such frauds flourished in India, it would not have been reduced to its present wretched condition. These people give the leavings of their food to their

PAGE 449

disciples and eve women pay homage to them by prostrating themselves on the ground. Their Sadhus and women very often also sit together in retirement.

The Ram Das sect.

The second branch of this sect originate at Kherapa in Marwar. Its history is as follows: There was a man clled Ram Das who was a Khera* by caste. He was a very clever man. He had tow

wives. First of all he led the life of an aghori, and ate with dogs, then he became a Vama Margi of the kunda panth (lit. the Path of Kunda or an earthen pot) type and later a kamaria** of Rama Deva and went about from place to place, singing hymns along with his two wives till he met Ram Das, the Guru of Dheras, at Seethal who taught him the doctrine preached by Rama Deva and made him his disciple.

This Ram Das established himself at Khaerapa. His sect flourished.there, while that of Rama Charan, at shahpura whos history is related thus:
He was a Bania (shopkeeper) of Jaipore. He got himself initiated into the Fourth Order, i.e., of Sanyas by a Sadhu and made the latter his Guru, when to Shahpura and set up there. Imposture soon takes root among the ignorant and so it happened in this case. Following the teachings of rama Charan regarding making no distinction of caste, the people of this sect receive in their fold men of all castes from Brahmans down to outcasts.

They are even to-day very much like Kundapanthees as they eat out of earthen pots only. The lay people of this sect eat the leavings of their Sadhus who lead the people astray from the path of the Vedas, cause them to forsake their parents and give up their business. They make people their chelas and hold the name of Rama, one is freed from the sins of his countless previous lives. No one can obtain salvation without it.

Whoever teaches that the name of Rama should be taken with every breath is looked upon as the true guru who is regarded even

---

* Dhera is one of the lowest classes in India. The higher class people regard that even the touch of a person belonging to this class is enough to pollute them.-tr.

** Chamars are low class people who follow the business of shoe-making. Those who wear ochre-colored garments and sing hymns composed by Rama Deva, which they call shabda (the Word) to people of their own caste as well as to others, are called Kamaris.

PAGE 450

greater than God. His image is worhipped. The lay people wash the feet of these Sadhus and drink that water. When a chela (disciple) lives away from his guru, he is directed to keep the nails and a few hairs of the beard of his guru with him and daily wash them with water and drink it.

They show greater respect to the books containing the utterances of Ram Das and Har Ram Das than the Vedas, walk round it and pay homage to it by lying down on all fours. They teach men and women the same mantra. The followers of this cult believe that their happiness consist in taking the name of Rama alone and consider it a sin to read.

It is recorded in one of their books:- *"Learning is useless, it is sinful to read. All works are useless unless one repeatedly takes the same of Rama. Even the study of the Vedas, the Puraanas and the Gita is of no avail if it is not accompanied by the uttering of the name of Rama.'*

Such are their teachings. They further teach that it is a sin for a woman to serve her husband but it is a meritorious act on her part to serve Sadhus. They have no faith in duties of each Class and Order. They call a Brahman who does not belong to their sect, low, but an outcast who belongs to their sect is considered superior to a Brahman who is not of their cult.

On the one hand, they say that they do not believe in the above quoted utterance of rama Charan, viz., *The Lord has incarnate for the good of His devotees."* All this fraud and trickery, which they practice, is highly detrimental to the interests of the Indian people.

We have but very briefly criticized their creed in the belief that a few words on the subject will be quite sufficient for the wise.

The cult of the Gokuliey Gosaeens.

Q. - The cult of Gokuliey Gosaeens is undoubtedly very good. Mark! How they are rolling in wealth and luxuries. Can it ever be possible to enjoy such luxuries unless they were possessed of Divine powers?

PAGE 451

A. ~ The luxuries the Gosaeens enjoy are not the result of their own efforts. It is at the expense of the house-holders that they live such luxurious lives.

Q. - Nonsense! It is all due to the Divine powers of Gosaeens otherwise why don't other people enjoy the same pleasures as they?

A. ~ Should they resort to the same kind of fraud and deception as the Gosaeens do, they would surely obtain all those luxuries that they enjoy. Whilst those who would practice greater rascality might be still more prosperous.

Q. - What rascality is there in it? It is all lila (work) of Golaka.

A. ~ It is not the work of Golaka but of Gosaeens; if it be not that Golaka must be like this (world). This sect originated in Telung. Its founder was a Telung Brahman by the name of Lakshmanbhatt who, after he was married, deserted his parents and wife - it is not known why - went to Kashi and took sanyasa. At the time of his initiation into this order he told a lie to the effect that he was not married.

By chance his parents and wife happened to hear that he had turned a Sanyasi at Kashi, they came there and remonstrated with his guru for having initiated him into sanyasa while he had a you wife living. His wife asked him to initiate her also into sanyasa, if he could not send her husband back with her. He sent for Lakshman and told him that he was a liar, bade him renounce sanyasa, and live with his wife as he had taken sanyasa through telling a lie.

He did what he was bidden, i.e., renounced Sanyasa and went back with his wife. It is worth remembering that this sect was founded in falsehood and hypocrisy. When they went back to Telung, their caste people refused to take him back into the caste. Then they took to wandering from place to place. When he, along with his wife, was passing through a jungle, called Champaranya, near Charna Garha aplace not far from Benares, he found that some one had left a child there, after having lighted up fire all round at some distance from the child.

The object of the deserter seems to have been to save the child from immediate death at the hand of wild animals. Lakshmanbhatt and his wife took the boy and adopted him as their son. They went to Kashi and began to live there. When the boy grew up, his parents died. He had read a little in his boyhood. He went to the temple of a Vishnu

PAGE 452

Swami and became his chela (disciple). He happened to kick up a row there and consequently came back to Kahi and became a sanyasi. Later on the he came across a Brahman who was also an outcast like himself. He had a daughter and asked him to leave off sanyasya and accept the

hand of his daughter. He did the same. Why should not the son have done what the father had done before him?

After marriage he went back to the same temple of Vishnu Swami where he had taken Sanyasa. But he was turned out if it on account of his marriage. Then he went to Brajdesha where ignorance is rife and began to spread his net of fraud and hypocrisy and falsely gave out that Shri Krishna had met him and asked him to send back to Golaka all the godly souls, that come down from Golaka to this mortal world, after having purified them by means of Brahma Sambanddha, i.e., (bringing about union with Brahma or God), by telling the ignorant people alluring stories, he gained over a few persons. He made altogether 84 converts. He also adopted the following Mantras as his watch-words which are of different kinds:-

"The Great Krishna my shelter", "unto the beloved Krishna of cowherdesses." These are the two mantras for ordinary purposes. But the next mantraa is for Brahma Sambandha, i.e., for bringing about union with Brahma as well as for samarpana (offering). *"The great Krishna is my shelter. I who am overpowered by (ananta) eternal tapa and kalesha (pain) caused by separation from Krishna for a thousand years offer my body, senses, vital airs and their functions, my wife, house, son and wealth to my Master Krishna. I am thy servant, O Krishna!"*This the mantra for both male and female disciples.

Now the second mantra begins with the word kleem which is only to be found in the Tantras - books on Vama Marga. This shows that this (Ballabha) sect is a branch of Vama Marga. This is the reason that the Gosaeens pass much of their time in the company of women. Was Krishna only beloved of cowherdesses and

PAGE 453

not others? He alone is beloved of women who are engrossed in sensualism. Was Krishna such a man then? Ti si useless to use the words a thousand as Ballabha and his disciples are not omniscient that they could tell with such exactness the number of years since Krishna lived. The world had been suffering from Krishna's separation for thousands of years before the birth of Ballabha and his cult, but no one was sent down for the salvation fo the souls that had come down on this earth from Golaka.

Tapa (pain) and Kalesha (pain) are synonymous words, one of them ought to have been used and not both. It is also useless to use the world ananta (eternal) as the word sahasra (a thousand) had already been used. Only one of the two words could be used. Either the word thousand or the word eternal ought to have been omitted. It is most absurd to use both.

Besides, even the birth of Ballabha cannot be of any use to one who has been eternally overpowered by pain or sorrow, since what is eternal or endless can have no end. Moreover, why should one's body and bodily senses, vital oars, the internal organ of thought, and their functions, wife, house, son and wealth be offered to Krishna? He being Puranakama - one whose desires are completely fulfilled - cannot desire for anyone's body, etc.; besides the body and the like cannot, properly speaking, be offered as the term body includes all parts of it from top of the head to the nails of fingers and toes.

By offering the body even everything that is fouls in it, such as urine and foeces,is offered. Now, how could you like to do that? Besides, all the sins and virtues of the devotee having been offered to to Krishna - it is Krishna who will have to rap the fruits thereof. It is a curious thing that the Gosaeens ask people to offer all these things to Krishna, while the offerings are appropriated by themselves.

Why don't the Gosaeens also accept all the foul excretions such as the urine, that are to be found in the body (which is accepted as an offering)? Do they act on the proverb that says "Gulp down all that is sweet and spit out what is bitter"? It is also written (in their books) that an offering should be made to Gosaeens only and never to one who belongs to some other sect,. Is not this extreme selfishness? All this fraud had been invented to

PAGE 454

rob others of their money and uproot the pure religion of the Vedas, by the perusal of the following verses from Siddhant Rahasya - the book on which the Gosaeen sect is chiefly formed - let the reader observe what kind of trickery was practiced by Ballabha?

1. *On the 11th of Shravan, in the middle of night , I was thus spoken to by the Mighty Krishna Himself:-*

   Criticism ~ Now these people should be asked how it could be possible for Ballabha to meet Krishna who died about 5,000 years ago back.

2. *Whosoever becomes a chela (disciple) of Gosaeen and presents everything to him by way of offering (thereby comes in contact with Brahma) is freed of all sins - physical and spiritual - which are of five kinds.*

   C. ~ This falsehood was invented by Ballabha to mislead people in order to allure them into is net. Why should the male and female disciples of Gosaeens suffer from disease and poverty, if it be true that they are freed of all sins?

   (i) "Sins that ar natural, such as are caused by animal passion and anger.
   (ii) Sins that are related to time and locality.
   (iii) Sins that are declared to be such by public opinion (such as the use of prohibited food) and by the Vedas, such as untruthfulness in speech.
   (iv) Sins that are the result of bad company, such as theft, illicit intercourse, sexual intercourse with one's mother, sister, daughter-in-law, or tutor's wife, etc.
   (v) Sins caused by touching those that should not be touched (such as outcasts. -Tr)

   let no disciple of Gosaeen ever believe in such sins, in other words, he can do as he likes."

   PAGE 455

   4. "There is no other way but the Gosaeen faith to free one of his sins, therefore, let not the followers of this faith ever enjoy things - animate and inanimate - that have not previously been offered to the Gosaeen.

   C. ~ This is the reason that these people even offer their wives, daughters, daughters-in-law and their wealth, etc., to Gosaeens. The rule regarding the offering of females is that no one should co-habit with his wife unless she had previously been to the Gosaeen."

   5. "Therefore let the followers of this faith first offer all things to Gosaeens as nothing can be offered after the owner had enjoyed it himself."

6. Hence let the disciples of Gosaeens, in whatever they do, first offer all things to them. Let them offer their wives to Gosaeens before they have sexual intercourse with them."

7. "Let not the male and female disciples of Gosaeens ever hear or accept a word of the teachings of faiths other than the Gosaeen cult. It is well known that such is their practice."

8. "Let a man of his faith offer all things, and just as all the streams that flow into the river Ganges lose their individuality and their water takes the mane of Ganges water, so do all who join the Gosaeen faith lose their bad qualities and embrace good qualities. Let them, therefore, always declare that their faith is supremely excellent and had no defects."

Now let the reader see whether it is true or not that of all faiths that of Gosaeens is the most selfish. Well, Mr. Gosaeens!

PAGE 456

You do not possess even one attribute of Brahma, how could you then ring about union of your disciples with Brahma? If you answer that you are yourself Brahma and, therefore, by coming in contact with you one is unite with Brahma, we cannot believe you as you do not possess a single attribute, characteristic or power of Brahma. Have you then become Brahma simply in order to live in luxury and ease, and have sensual enjoyment? You purify your disciples - make or female - by having them offered to you, but you yourself as well as your wife, daughter, daughter-in-law and other relations must remain impure, as you and they are never offered.

Now you believe that what has not been offered is impure, why are not you yourself, who are born of impure mothers impure? Hence it behoves you to offer your wife, daughter, daughter-in-law to persons of other faiths (in order to have them purified). If you say, "No, no, that won't do." Why is not right ten that you should also give up the practice of having other people's wives and wealth etc. offered to yourself. Let by-gones be by-gones. Henceforth you should give up all your false and evil practices and tread the path of the Beautiful and Divine religion of the Vedas, realize the object of man's existence on earth and reap the four-fold fruit (of human life) viz., practice of righteousness, acquisition of wealth, gratification of legitimate desires and attainment of salvation and thereby enjoy happiness.

Now mark again! These Gosaeens call people of their cult followers of the path of nourishment. In other words, eating, drinking, waxing fat and enjoying oneself by having sexual intercourse with all sorts of women constitutes the path of nourishment. They alone must know how they suffer from most terrible diseases such as Fistual-in-ano and die a lingering and painful death (in consequence of sexual excesses). The Truth is that it is not the path of Pushti (nourishment) but of kushti (leprosy). Just as all the tissues of a leper's body disintegrate, liquefy and are discharged and he groans most fearfully and finally dies; in like manner the Gosaeens are seen to suffer terribly and die most miserable deaths. Hence the name of the path of hell can be very well applied to the Gosaeen cult, as hell is another name for pain and suffering, whilst heaven is another name for happiness.

These Gosaeens have thus cast their net of hypocrisy and fraud and ensnared the poor simpletons into it. They declare themselves to be incarnations of Shri Krishna and hence

Masters of all. They say that they who are the best among men are born to save all those daivi (angelic) souls who have come down on this

PAGE 457

earth from Golaka. As long as one does not become their disciple he shall never enter Goloka, wherein there is only one man and that is Krishna, all others are women. Bravo! Yours is a fine faith! All the disciples of Gosaeens will become Gopees (cowherdesses), - mistresses of Krishna. One can imagine the wretched plight of a man who has the ill-fortune of having two wives but pity the man who has millions of wives. His sufferings can have no bounds. Now what will you say to this Mr. Gosaeen if you say that Krishna possesses might powers, he can please all of t hem, his wife called Swamini (mistress) must possess powers equal to Krishna as she is his other half.

Animal passions are equally strong in men and women or rather a little stronger in woman than in men, why would the same not hold good in Goloka. This being the case, wives of Krishna other than the mistress will quarrel and wrangle with her, as wives of the same husband are, as a rule, very jealous of each other, and consequently Goloka compared to heaven will be not better than hell and such terrible diseases as Fistula-in-ano which are the result of sexual excesses will be rampant in Goloka as here. Tut! Tut! Tut!

Even this poor mortal world is better than your Goloka. The Goseens who declare themselves to be incarnations of Krishna live most sensual lives and consequently are afflicted with such diseases as Fistula-in-ano, Spermatorrhoea, why would not Krishna, the Lord of Goloka, suffer from the same kind of diseases as his representatives, the Gosaeens here. If you say he would not, how is it then that his incarnations, the Gosaeens, suffer, so much here?

Q. - Disease can afflict incarnations (of Krishna) in this mortal world but not in Goloka. Disease cannot approach Krishna there.

A. ~ No, this cannot be true as disease is sure to follow sensual enjoyment. Are any children born of those millions of wives of Krishna? If you answer in the affirmative, we ask, are those children male or female or both? If you say they are all girls, whom are they married to, as there is not other man but Krishna there? If you say there are other men besides Krishna, you will be contradicting your original proposition. If you say that all the children are boys, the same objection will hold good, viz., whom are they married to? Or shall we believe that they manage to arrange the whole affair with so many female inmates of Goloka. If you say there are other women besides the Gopies - wives of

PAGE 458

Krishna - you contradict what you said in the beginning, viz., "There was no man but Krishna and no women but his wives in Goloka." If you hold that there are no children born in Goloka, impotence will be attributable to Krishna and sterility to his wives. This Goloka looks more like the harem of the Emperor of Delhi with its army of women.

Again the Gosaeens cause their disciples - male and female - to offer their bodies, hearts, and wealth to them. Now this cannot be right, because at the time of marriage the body of the husband has been offered to the wife and that of the wife to the husband, hence they wholly belong to each other, how can their hearts then be offered to some one, else, because the body cannot belong to one while the heart is in some other place.

When the heart has been offered to one i.e., the husband or the wife, it is nothing short of adultery to offer the body to another.

The same holds good of wealth; in other words, nothing can be offered to one person when the heart has been offered to another. The real object of Gosaeens in inventing these frauds is that they want their disciples to work and themselves to enjoy the fruits thereof. All the Gosaeens of Balabha sect are outside the pale of the caste of Telung Braahmans and whoever, through mistake, gives his daughter's hand in marriage to one of them is turned out of his caste and considered as polluted, because the Gosaeens are outcasts. They are destitute of knowledge and lived most indolent lives.

Mark! How a Gosaeen behaves when he is invite to the house of one of his disciples. When he gets there, he quietly sits down and remains silent like a wooden doll, he does not say a word. The poor Gosaeen would undoubtedly speak if he were not an idiot as it has been said, "The strength of the ignorant leis in silence." Were he to speak, he would betray his ignorance. He keeps on staring at women most attentively and whoever is looked at by him thinks herself mostly lucky and her husband, brother, father, mother and other relations are highly pleased.

All the women touch his feet and whosoever becomes the object of his favor or choice has one of her fingers pressed a little by his big toe. That woman and her husband and other relations consider themselves most fortunate. Her husband and other relations address her thus. "Go there and serve the feet of the Gosaeen." But if the husband and other relation are not pleased with this kind of favor from the

459

Gosaeen, he accomplishes his object through the help of go-betweens and touts. The truth is that there are plenty of such people in and about the temples of Gosaeen. Now as regards their method of extorting money (from their disciples), they ask for it in the following fashion: "Bring an offering for the Gosaeen his wife, son, daughter, and chief servant, the footman, the musician and the god (i.e., idol of Krishna."

Thus they rob their disciples of their money in the name of seven persons. When a disciple of the Gosaeen is bout to die, the Gosaeen puts his foot on his chest and avariously accepts whatever he gets. Is not it more like the work of Mahaa Braahmans? Occasionally a disciple of the Gosaeen, when about to marry, sends for him and makes him accept that hand of his bride at the ceremony.

At the saffron bath men and women, especially the latter, rub a paste containing saffron on the Gosaeen's body, seat him on a wooden board placed in a tub and help him to wash. Then he puts on a pitamber - lower garment and his wooden sandals - and comes out of the bath. his dhoti - the garment covering the lions and legs worn at the time of bathing - is then thrown into the tub. His disciples then use the water of the tub as a sacred drink and offer the Gosaeen betel leaf containing condiments which he chews, swallows a little of the juice and spits out the rest in silver cup held up by a disciple near his mouth. This is distributed among his disciples as a special gift

Now what kind of men are they? Can stupidity and irreligious conduct go any further? A great many of the Gosaeen who accept offerings (from their followers) would eat of the hands of Vaishnavities alone, other would never do so much so that they would even wash their firewood. Now aren't they polluted by using their flour, sugar (red and white) clarified butter, etc., unwashed? But they are helpless in this matter, because should they wash these articles, they would lose them altogether.

They also say that they spend a great deal on the amorous sport and sensual enjoyment of Sri Krishna, but it is really Gosaeens themselves on the gratification of whose sensual appetites all this money is spent. The Truth is that most abominable things are done by these Gosaeens, for instance during Heli* days they fill syringes with colored water which they discharge at the private parts of women. They also sell eatables which is not permissible to Braahmans.

---

* This is a festival celebrated in spring all over India. It chief feature is that the people throw colored water at each other. -Tr.

PAGE 460

Q. - The Gosaeens do not themselves deep an open shop for selling eatables, such as bread, dal (split-peas), curry, rice, vegetables and sweets. They distribute leaf-plateful of these articles to their servants who sell them but not the Gosaeens.

A. ~ Why would the servants accept these things if the Gosaeens would pay them their monthly wages instead. The Gosaeens sell the eatables such as rice and dal in the hands of their servants in lieu of wages. They then go and sell them at shops, etc. Had the Gosaeens themselves sold these articles, they would have at least saved their servants, who are Braahmans, form the doing of an act which is forbidden (by the Shastra).

In that case, Gosaeens alone would have been responsible for the sin of selling eatables. Thus the Gosaeens themselves first commit a sin and then drag others down with them. In some places, such as Nathdwara, even the Gosaeens themselves sell these things. To sell eatables is the work of the low and not of the high. It is such men who have reduced Aryavarta (India) to its present

The Swami Narayana Cult.

Q. - What do you think of Swami Narayana Cult?

A. ~ The proverb "Like the goddess Shitla, like her beast for riding the donkey" aptly applies to thissect. Inother words, the followers of Swami Narayana resort to the same sort of wonderful trickery in order to fleece others as the Gosaeens. The brief history of this sect is as follows:-

There was a man called Shjanand. He was a native of a village near Ayodhya. While he was wandering as a Brahmachari through Gujarat., Kathiawar, Kutch and the like countries, he noticed that the natives of those countries were very ignorant and guileless, onw could easily lead them to believe in whatever religion one liked. He, therefore, cast his net of fraud and hypocrisy there and mde three or four disciples who took counsel among themselves and gave it out that Sahjanand was an incarnation of Narayana and possessed of great miraculous powers.

He could assume the four-armed body of Narayana Himself for the pleasure of those who are devoted to him. One of this disciples asked Dada Khachar, a great landowner of Paran in Kathiawar, that if he desired to see the four-armed Narayana they could request Sahjanand to grant his wish. He answered that he thought, it would be a very good thing, if Sahjanand could do it. That Dada Khachar

PAGE 461

was a perfect dunce. Sahjanand in dark room put a diadem on his head and held a conch-shell in one hand and a discus in the other - both hands lifted upwards.

Another man stood behind him with a mace in one hand and a lotus in the other and then thrust his hands forward under his armpits and lo there was a veritable four-armed Narayana! The disciples of Sahjanand instructed him to have only one peep at Narayana and then immediately close his eyes and come out of the room, otherwise if he looked at him too long Narayana might get angry with him.

They took him to the dark room in which Sahjanand was standing motionless, like a statue, wearing shining silk garments. They turned light on him by means of a lantern. The moment Dada Khachar saw the form of the four-armed Narayana, light was turned off. All of them fell down on their knees andpaid their homage to Narayana and came out of the room. At the same tiem they said to Dada Khachar that he was a very lucky man, he should now become the disciple of His Holiness. He assented to their proposal. By the time they got to another room, Sahjanand had change his dress and was found seated on a cushioned seat there.

They pointed out to Dada Khachar that His Holiness had assumed another form and was present there. He fell in their tap and from that very moment the Swami Narayana cult took root as Dada Khachar was a great landowner. Sahjanand made that place his headquarters. He wandered here and there preaching to all. He initiated (sadhus) many of his disciples into the Order of mendicants.

Occasionally he would press some nerve in the neck of a sadhu (disciple) and render him unconscious and tell people that he had caused him to attain the clairvoyant state. The simple, guileless people of Kathiawar were ensnared by him by such acts of scoundrelism. After his death, his followers practiced a great deal of fraud and hypocrisy. Their case will be aptly illustrated by the following story:-

A man was caught burgling. The judge ordered his nose and ears to be cut off by way of punishment. As soon as his nose was cut, that scoundrel began to sing, dance and laugh. The people asked him why he did it. He replied it was not a thing that could be told. They, again, inquired what kind of thing it was that

PAGE 462

could not be talked about. He answered it was such a thing that he had never heard of it before. They again said; "come, come, tell us what it is." He rejoined that he could see the very four-armed Narayana Himself standing before him and that is the reason that he sang and dances and blessed his stars that he had seen the Lord face to face. The people wanted to know why they could not see Narayana. He replied that their noses were in the way, they could only see Him when their noses were cut off, and not otherwise.

Some dunce among the people wanted to see Narayana even at the sacrifice of his nose. He offered his nose to be cut so that he could see Narayana. That rogue chopped off his nose and whispered in his ears, "you should also do like me, otherwise we shall be laughed at." Thereupon that man also began to sing, dance, skip about, play and laugh, and say that he could also see Narayana. By and by, the mumber of the people who had their noses cut in order to see Narayana, reached about 1,000. There was then a great hallabaloo, they called their sect "The cult of Narayana-seers."

An ignorant king heard of it and sent for those people. when they got there, they began to sing, dance and laugh. The king asked them the reason of all this. They replied that they saw the Narayana Himwself face to face. The king asked why he did not see Him. The Narayana-seers

answered that he could not do so on account of his nose. A soon as he would have his nose cut, he would see Narayana face to face.

The King thought that it appeared to be right. He, thereupon, asked his astrologer to findout the most auspicious time for having his nose removed. He replied: "May it please Your Majesty! O giver of food! * o'clock on the morning of the tenth instant, is the most auspicious time for having Your Majesty's nose cut and for seeing Narayana." Well done, O Pope! Is in your almanack recorded even the time for chopping off one's nose.

When the king made up his mind to have his nose cut off, he ordered that all those thousand men be fed at the expense of the Stat. On this they went into ecstasy and began to sing, dance and skip about. The ministers and some other wise people of the State did not like this affair. There was an old man 90 years old who was Prime Minister four generations back. His great grandson who was Prime Minster at the time told him everything. Thereupon he said: "That man is a scoundrel, take me to the king." He did

PAGE 463

as he was asked to do. When he had taken his seat, the king gladly told him everything about the Narayana-seers. The old Diwan, i.e. the ex-Prime Minister answered, "Hear, O King. Do not be in such a hurry. One soon repents of what one has done precipitately without properly inquiring into it."

King - Could all those thousand men be telling a lie?

Diwan ~ They might be telling the truth or a lie. That cannot be decided until the matter has been properly investigated.

King - How to investigate

Diwan ~ By the help of our knowledge of the Laws of Nature and the eight kinds of evidence, such as Direct Cognition.

King - How can one, who has not read, inquire into a matter?

Diwan ~ By advancing his knowledge, by associating with the learned.

King - What should one do if one could not find a learned man?

Diwan ~ Nothing is impossible for one who strives after a ting.

King - Pray, then, tell us what is to be done in this case

King ~ I am an old man, live an indoor life, and have only a few days more to live, let me then first test the truth of the contention of these men. You can afterwards, do what ever you thing proper.

King - it is a very good suggestion. Find out, O Astrologer, the most auspicious time for our beloved Diwan (to have his nose cut).

Astrologer - May it pleas Your Majesty! 10 a.m. on the 5th of the bright half of the current month is the most propitious time for this purpose.

On the appointed day the old Diwan went to the King at 8 a.m., and asked him to take a couple thousand soldiers with him)to the place where his nose was to be cut).

King - What is the use of the soldiers there?

Diwan - Your Majesty is not so well-versed in state-craft. Have the kindness to do as I suggest.

King - "Well General! Go and get the soldiers ready."

The King formed a procession and set out with ministers and other influential men at 9:30 a.m. When the Narayana-seers saw the king coming

PAGE 464

towards them, they began to sing and dance. The King sent for their leader who was the founder of this sect and was the first one whose nose was cut, spoke to him thus: "Show Naryana to our Diwan to-day." He assented. When it was ten o'clock, a man held a plate under the nose of the old Diwan, while the leader of the Narayana-seers chopped off his nose with a sharp knife and placed it on the plate. A stream of blood began to flow from his nose, and the Diwan's face became pale. The rascal, then, whispered into his ear. "You do also laugh and tell the people that you see Narayana now. Remember a cut nose cannot be made whole and if you don't say what I tell you, everybody will laugh at you."

After he had said this, he stood apart. The Diwan took his handkerchief and pressed it against his cut nose. The king asked him, "Tell us pray if you see Narayana now." He whispered in the King's ear, "I see nothing. This rascal has, without any cause, disfigured and misled these thousand people." the king, then, asked him what he advised him to do. The Dwan answered, "Arrest them all, inflict heavy punishment on them and keep them in prison as long as they live, whilst the scoundrel who led them all astray should be place on the back of a donkey.

Let various indignities be heaped upon him and let him, then, be put to death. When the Narayana-seers saw the King and his Diwan whispering into each other's ears, they made preparations for running away, but being surrounded on all sides by the soldiers they could not escape. The ing ordered. "Let all of them be arrested and fettered. Let their villainous ringleader's face be blackened. Let him be made to ride on a donkey and wear a necklace of torn and tattered shoes and pass through all the principal streets of the town in this condition. Let the children throw dust and ashes on him.

Let him them be beaten with shoes in all the chief thoroughfares and finally out to death by being torn to pieces by dongs. If this rogue be suffered to go unpunished, nothing will deter other from following his evil example." Thus did the cult of the Narayana-seers come to an ignominious end. Like them there are plenty of other people opposed to the teachings of the Veda who are very clever in defrauding other of their money. Such are the evil doings of various sects.

The followers of the Swami Narayana cult resort to trickery, fraud, and imposition in order to fleece others. Many among them, in order to milead the ignorant, declare on their death-bed that Sahjanand seated on a white horse has come to convey them to heaven and that he always came to that temple once a day. On the occasion of a fair the priests remain inside the temple while down below a

PAGE 465

shop is kept open which communicates with the temple through an opening. Whenever a cocoanut has been offered in the temple, it is thrown down into the shop through that hole. That cocoanut is again bought and offered by some other worshipper. Thus the same cocoanut is sold about a thousand times in a single day. Other articles are sold in the same way.

There is another thing peculiar to this sect. A Sadhu of this sect is made to do the work of the caste he belongs to, for instance, a barber Sadhu shaves, a potter Sadhu makes pots, a Sadhu who belongs to the artisan caste does the work of an artisan. A Sadhu, who is a bania (a shopkeeper) by caste does the work of bania. A Shudra Sadhu that of a Shudra..

The priests of this sect have imposed assort of tac on their followers and by their quackery amassed millions which go on multiplying everyday. whoever succeeds to the Sahjanand throne marries and becomes a householder, wears jewelry (ornaments). Whenever he is invited to the house of one of his disciples, like the Gosaeens he accepts offerings in his own name as well as in that of his wife, children, etc. The followers of this sect call themselves good company, whilst other they call bad company!

They never serve anyone or show respect to anyone, however good and learned he may be. If he belongs to some other faith, as it is considered a sin by them to do so. In public the Sadhus of this sect do not even see the face of a woman but in private who knows what evil practices are rampant among them.

Not much has come to light. Here and there a few cases of sodomy have come out. When those who hold high positions among them are about to die, their disciples throw them sown into a secret well and give it out that such and such a holy man with body and all has gone to heaven.

Sahjanand himself came to take him away. He carried him away, in spite of our repeated requests, to let that holy man remain here as he was of great use here on this earth, but he replied that he was badly needed in heaven. They would say that they saw Sahjanand and the air-ship with their own eyes. He seated that holy man in the air-ship with their own eyes. He seated that holy man in the air-ship and carried him up, while flowers were being showered on him.

Whenever a Sadhu falls ill and there is not hope of his recovery, he declares that he will go to heaven tomorrow night. The rumor has it that even if he did not happen to die that night but merely lost consciousness, he is nevertheless thrown (alive) into a

PAGE 466

well for fear of his prophecy turning out to be false. Similarly, when a Gokalaya Gosaeen dies, his disciples say that the Gosaeen has spread out his lila (sport).

The mantra that is taught by the Gosaeens and Swami Narayana priests is the same, viz., "Shri Krishna my shelter" which they say, means "Shri Krishna is my shelter" but may also mean "let Shri Krishna seek my shelter."

All these sects compose mantras of absurd construction quite contrary to the rules of Grammar, etc. Their leaders being illiterate, cannot be acquainted with the laws of Grammar and Logic.

The Madhawa faith.

Q. -Is the Madhawa faith good, then?

A. ~ The **Madhwists** are like other sectarians. They are also Chakrankits with this difference that the latter, i.e., the followers of Ramanuja have themselves branded (with red-hot iron) only ones in life whil the Madhwists brand themselves once a year, the Charankits paint a yellow line on the forehead while tlhe Madhwists paint a black one. A certain Mahatma (great soul) had the following discussion with a Madhwa Pundit.

Mahatama ~ Why have you traced that black line and a moon-like mark on your forehead?

The Pundit - It will lead me to heaven (Baikuntha). Besides the great Krishna was also dark, and that is another reason for our tracing a black line on the forehead.

Mahatama ~ If, by drawing a black line and painting a moon -like mark on the forehead you go to heaven, where will you go if you were to blacken you whole face. If you want to become like Krishna, you will have to blacken your whole body as he was black all over his body.

It is clear, then, that the Madhwists are no better than other sectarian.

The Lingankit faith.

Q. - What do you think of the Lingankit faith?

A. ~ It is quite like Chakrankit cult. Just as the Chakrankits are branded with a red-hot iron ring and believe in none but Narayana, in like manner the Lingankits are branded with a red-hot ling a (phallus) and believe in none but Mahaadeva, with the addition that a lingankit wears a linga of stone covered with silver or gold hanging from his neck. Even before he drinks water, he shows it to the linga. The mantra of the Lingankits is like that of the Shivites.

PAGE 467

Brahmo Samaj and the Prarthna Samaj.

Q. - Are the Brahmo Samaj and the Prarthana Samaj people on the right path?

A. ~ Their system of belief has a few good points and many that are objectionable.

Q. - The Brahmo Samaj and the Prarthna Samaj are the best of all, as their principles are very good.

A. ~ Their principles are not altogether good, since it is impossible that the work of men ignorant of the Vedas could ever be altogether good.

Their good points are:-

1. They have saved a small number of people form embracing Christianity.
2. They have helped to abolish idolatry so some extent.
3. They have freed people to some extent from the shackles of false books.

Their objectionable points are:-

- The people belonging to these Samajes are very much wanting in patriotism, have imitated the Christians in many things, have even altered the rules and regulations governing marriage and eating and drinking with others.

- Let alone being proud of their country and the greatness of their forefathers, they run them down to their hearts' content, laud the Christians and Europeans to the skies in their lectures. They no only never mention the names of Brahmaa and other sages in their discourses of yore, but, on the other hand, say that since the Creation there have never been men so learned as the Europeans. The people of Aryavarta (India) have always been ignorant and have never made any progress.
- Leave alone speaking well of the Vedas and the Shastras, they have not even kept aloof from speaking ill of them. In the sacred books of the Brahmo Samaj the names of Christt, Moses, Muhammad, Nanak, and Chaitanya are mentioned in the list of holy men but not a single name from among the sages and seers of the past. One can easily infer from this that these people hold the same

PAGE 468

beliefs as have been taught by those whose names are recorded in their sacred book as holy men. Though these men are born in Aryavarta, have lived on its products and are still doing the same, yet they have renounced the religion of their fore-fathers and are, instead, inclined too much towards foreign religions, call themselves scholars, while they are quite destitute of indigenous Sanskrit learning, and, pluming themselves on their knowledge of English, have been so precipitate in founding a new religion. Now how can these things conduce to lasting happiness and progress of mankind?

- They eat and drink most indiscriminately, ie., they even eat and drink with Europeans, Mohammedans and out cast people, etc. They must have thought that promiscuous eating and drinking and the breaking of caste alone will lead to their reformation as well as to that of their country but such things can bring about no reformation, on the contrary may cause great mischief.

Q. - Is class-distinction God-made or man-made?

A. ~It is both God-made and man-made.

Q. - Which distinction is God-made and which man-made?

A. ~ The division of living beings into men, animals, birds, water-creatures, has been created by God , and again, division of animals, into such classes as cows, horses, elephants, and of trees into such classes as Ficus Religiossum, banyan and mango, and of birds into swans, crows, herons and the like, and of water-creatures into fish and crocodiles is God-made, in like manner the divisions of men into Braahmans, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras is God-made (but this does not mean that men are born as Brahmans, Kshatryas, etc., it only mans that in every community men naturally fall under four heads, Braahmans, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas ans Shudras). The system of Classes and Orders should be instituted in accordance with what has been written before; in other words men should be divided into different classes according to their respective temperaments, attributes, qualifications and performances. Now, this the work of man himself, hence it is said that this distinction of classes is man-made. It is the duty of the king

PAGE 469

and other good and learned men to examine all men thoroughly and them place everyone of them into one of the four classes - Braahman, Kshatriya, Vasihya, and Shoodra according to his qualifications and deeds.

Even the differences of food are God-made and man-made. For instance, the lion is a carnivore whilst the rhinoceros is a vegetarian. This difference in their foods is God-made. But the

differences in food among men vary with the customs and manners of different countries and ages. These differences are man-made.

The advanced life styles of the Europeans.

Q. - Look at the Europeans! They wear boots, jackets and trousers, live in hotels and eat of the hands of all. These are the causes of their advancement.

A. ~ This is a delusion, since the Mohammedans and low-caste people also eat of the hands of everyone and yet they are so backward. The causes of their advancement are:-

- The custom of child-marriage does not pevail among them.
- They give their boys and girls sound training and education.
- They choose their own life-partners. Such marriages are called Swyamvara, because a maid chooses her own.
- They do noat allow their children to associate - with bad consort, people. being well educated, they do not fall into the snares of any unprincipled person.
- What ever they do, they do after discussing it thoroughly among themselves and referring it to their representative assemblies.
- They sacrifice everything, their wealth - there hearts , a ye their very lives - for the good of their nation.
- They are not indolent, on the contrary, they live active lives.
- They allow boots and shoes made in their country (or those made after their patter in this country) to be taken into courts, and offices, but never Indian shoes. This must suffice to convince you that they value their boots much more than they do the natives of many other countries.
- They have been in this country for more than one hundred years, and yet they wear thick clothing, as they used to do at home, up to this day. They have not

PAGE 470

changed the fashion of their country, but many among you have copied their dress. This shows that you are foolish, while they are wise. No wise man will ever imitate others (blindly).

- Everyone among them does his duty most faithfully.
- The always obey the orders of their superiors).
- They help their countrymen in trade, etc.

It is the possession of such sterling qualities and the doing of such noble deeds that have contributed to the advancement of the Europeans. They have not become great by wearing boots, shoes, and eating in hotels and doing such other ordinary things or by doing evil things.

Besides, caste distinctions are also to be found among them. Whenever a European, however high his rank or state in life may be, marries a girl of no-European parentage or one whose religion is different from his own or when a European girl marries a non-European, they stop all intercourse with him or her. He or she is an outcast.

They do not invite him or her to their social functions, nor do they eat at the same table with him or her nor do they have such relations as of marriage with him or her children. What are these if not caste distinctions? They mislead you simpletons by saying that there are no caste distinctions among them, and you, through your simplicity, are even foolish enough to believe what they say.

Hence, whatever you do, do it after giving it a most careful though and attention, so that you may not have to repent of it afterwards.

It is a sick man that needs a physician and his medicines, but not one who is in good health. An enlighten man is like a healthy man whilst and ignorant man is like one who is afflicted with disease. His disease is ignorance. To cure him of this disease, the teaching and preaching of truth and the imparting of true knowledge are the proper remedies.

Through their ignorance the orthodox imagine that religion consists in regulation - eating and drinking alone. Whenever they find a person conducting himself improperly in the matter of eating and drinking, they at once infer and say that he is polluted and forthwith cease to pay any attention to what he says and to associate wit him. Now pray

PAGE 471

tell us whether your knowledge is for your selfish good or for the good of others. Of course, it would have been for the good of others, had those ignorant people profited by it. If you say that you can't help it if they do not profit by it, it cannot be true. You are to blame and not they, because had you behaved properly, they would have loved you and consequently profited by your knowledge. You have sought after your happiness and consequently destroyed the good of thousands.

You have greatly sinned in doing so, since it is a sin to do others harm while it is meritorious to promote public good. Hence it behoves an enlightened man to conduct himself properly and help the ignorant to cross the ocean of misery. He should not act like a fool. On the contrary, he should act in such a manner as would help him as well as others to make some progress everyday.

5. *Q. - We do not believe that any book is revealed by God or contains nothing but truth, since no man is infallible, all books made by him must be fallible. Hence we accept truth from all quarters and reject untruth. Truth, be that in the Veda, the Bible or the Qoran, is acceptable to us but not untruth found in any book.*

A. ~ That which helps you to embrace truth, will also cause you to accept untruth. When all men are fallible, you being men cannot be otherwise. Consequently whatever you say or write cannot be altogether true, hence you cannot be entirely depended upon. This being the case, your beliefs deserve to be rejected like the food which is mixed with poison. No one can, therefore, accept your sacred book as authoritative.

You are no more omniscient than others, hence occasionally you would, through error of judgment, be liable to reject a truth and accept an untruth. It, therefore, behoves us all, whose nature and knowledge ar finite, to lean on the Word of the Infinite, Omniscient, Omnipotent, Supreme Spirit as we have state in the 7th Chapter of this book which treats of the Vedas as revealed books.

You should also believe the same otherwise the proverb "Lost on one side as well as on the other" will be applicable to you. When truth and nothing but truth is to be found in the Vedas, you do yourselves as well a others harm in hesitating to accept them (as the Supreme Authority in the ascertainment of truth). This is the reason that the people of this country (Aryavarta) do not look upon you as their own (flesh and blood). You not been of

PAGE 472

help in the advancement of your country as you beg from door to door, i.e., have borrowed a few religious beliefs (truths) from the Mohammedans, and a few others from the Christians and so on. You think that by doing so you will be able to do good to yourselves as well as to others, but that you will never be able to do. Just as if the parents of a child were to take upon themselves to nurse all the children in the world, it will be impossible for them to succeed in it, on the contrary, they will lose even their own children) i.e., their own children will die from want of care), the same is true of you.

Now how can you test the truth or error of your beliefs or bring about the advancement of your country without accepting the Vedas an the Shaastras as the Supreme authority. You have no remedy for the disease this country is afflicted with. The Europeans do not care for you, whilst the natives of this country look upon you as followers of an alien religion.

Even now it is not too late for you to recognize your mistake and further the cause of your country with the help of the Vedas and other true Shaastras. When you hold that all truths come from God, why don't you then, accept the truths embodied in the Vedas revealed to the sages by God? Since you have neither read the Vedas nor have any desire to do so, how can you profit by the knowledge embodied in them?

6. You believe in the creation of the world without a material cause and also that the soul was created just as the Christians and the Mohammedans do. We have discussed this subject in the 7th and 8th Chapters of this book and shown therein that this position is quite untenable. It is altogether impossible for an effect to come into being without a cause and it is equally impossible for a created object not to cease to exist.

The fallacies of Forgiveness of sins.

7. Another objection against your faith is that you believe in the forgiveness of sins through prayer and repentance. This doctrine is responsible for the increase of sin in this world. For, according to the Pauranics (Hindus) a man can get rid of his sins by making a pilgrimage to holy places, according to the Jainees by muttering the mantras called Navakaar and making pilgrimage (to sacred places), according to the Christians by (believing) in Christ, and according to the Mohammedans by saying 'I repent'. There being nothing in these faiths do deter people from the commission of sins, the tendency towards sinful life has greatly increased. You

PAGE 473

are quite like the Pauranics in this respect. Had you read the Vedas or heard them being read, you would have known that no sin can be remitted till one has suffered for it. This would have deterred you from sinning and cause you to tread the path of righteousness. If one could be freed of his sins without having previously suffered for them, God would stand guilty of being unjust.

8. You believe in the eternal progress of the soul. Now, this belief is altogether untenable, since the finite nature, attributes, and actions of the soul can only produce finite results.

Q. - God being Merciful can award infinite merit for finite actions

A. ~ Should he do so His justice will be destroyed. Besides, no one will make any progress in the practice of virtue, because even a few good works will suffice to produce infinite results. Such doctrines as the forgiveness of sins, however numerous, through repentance and prayer lead to the increase of sin and decay of virtue.

Can language evolve by instinctive knowledge?

Q. - We believe that the instinctive knowledge is even superior to the Vedas, had there been not instinctive knowledge given to us by God how could we have learnt the Vedas and taught them to others? Hence our faith is very good.

A. ~ This is all nonsense. The knowledge given by another cannot be called instinctive. What is instinctive is natural, it can neither increase or decrease nor can it help any one to make any progress, since the savages also possess this instinctive knowledge and yet they have not made any progress. The acquired knowledge alone is the cause of progress.

Now, mark you! All of us during our childhood did not possess accurate knowledge of right and wrong, virtue and vice, but after having studied under our learned teachers, we were enabled to distinguish between right and wrong, virtue and vice. Hence it is wrong to hold that instinctive knowledge is all-sufficient.

Disbelief in the pre-existence of the soul.

9. You must have copied the Christians and the Mohammedans in your disbelief in the pre-existence of the soul and its re-birth (after death). For a full discussion of the subject the 7th Chapter of this book may be consulted, wherein we have refuted various objections urged against this doctrine (of metampsychosis). You should understand that the soul is eternal (beginningless and endless), its actions also must be eternal like the flow of a river.* the doer and the deed are eternally related to each other

---

* See Chapter 9 for an explanation of the expression eternal like the flow of a river. -Tr.

PAGE 474

(i.e., the relation between the doer and the deed is indissoluble). Was the soul, then, sitting idle before its present birth or will it remain idle after death? If your belief be pushed to its logical conclusions, it will end in showing hat even God (will be) idle (after the present Creation). Disbelief in the previous existence of the soul and its rebirth after death attributes to God the injustice of conferring benefits or inflicting suffering for deeds never done and of depriving the soul of the fruits - pleasure or pain - of its labor, respectively.

For, if there were not re-birth of the soul after death, all the deeds done in this life will bear no fruit (be lost) since the fruits of virtuous or sinful acts done in this life cannot be reaped till the soul is re-embodied. And, again, how can it be consistent with justice of God to bestow no previous life (and, there fore had not done any deeds to merit reward or punishment).

If it were otherwise, i.e., if the pleasure or pain in this life be not awarded in accordance with one's deeds done during his previous life, God will be guilty of injustice and besides, the deeds done in this life will go un-awarded (as the soul will not be re-embodied). Therefore, it is not right not to believe in the doctrine of metampsychosis.

10. it is also wrong on your part not to believe in other devas, such as those objects that possess useful and brilliant qualities or learned men, besides God, because God is called Mahaadeva (or the Lord of all devas). How would he have been called Mahaadeva had there been no devas.

11. It is also not good of you not to regard the performance of homa and other useful acts that promote public good, as duties incumbent on every individual.

12. It is also not right on your part not to feel grateful to the sages and seers of your who have conferred so many benefits on mankind and, instead, incline so much towards Christ, etc.

13. The belief that the various kinds of knowledge, science and philosophy - the effect- came into existence without the help of the Vedas, the source of all light and knowledge - the cause - is altogether untenable.

14. it is also absurd to do away with the Yajnopavita (the sacred thread) and Shikha - (the symbolic tuft of hair on the

PAGE 475

scalp - signs of learning that distinguish the literate twice-born Classes from the illiterate shudras - and become like the Mohammedans and the Christians - when you dress in English clothes to look respectable and educated, and seek medals, etc. Has the Yajnopavita and Shikha become too cumbersome for you?

15. There have many good and learned men since the time of Brahma. You never say a word in their praise, while you are never tired of singing the praises of the Europeans. Now, what would you call it but flattery and prejudice?

16. It is self-contradictory to believe that the soul was the result of the inanimate with the animate, just s a sprout comes out as the result of the union of the seed with soil, to deny its existence before it was created and then to say that, though created, it shall never cease to exist.

If there was nothing, animate or inanimate, besides God, before Creation, where did the soul come from? Whose union took place (which resulted in the production of the soul)? Of Course, it will be alright if you were to believe that the soul and matter are eternal (beginningless). But this will go against your belief that, before the Creation of the world, nothing but God existed.

Hence if you are anxious for the advancement of your country, you would do well to join the Arya Samaj and conduct yourselves in accordance with its aims and objects. Otherwise, you (will simply waste your lives) and gain nothing in the end. It behoves us all to lovingly devote ourselves with all our heart, with all our wealth, and aye even with our lives, to the good of our country, the land of our birth, the land of the products of which we have lived, the land which sustains us still and will continue to do so in the future.

No other Samaj or Society can equal the Arya Samaj in its power to raise Aryavarta. It will be a very good thing, indeed, if you would all help this Samaj, as the capability of a Samaj or society to do good depends not, on any single individual but on all the members that support it.

Are all religions good and therefore, not deserving of criticism?

Q. - You have all along been refuting everybody. All religions are good, hence it is not good to criticize anyone (of them). Why do you tell us this is better than what others teach. Even if you do, has there been no one equal to you or greater than you? It does not become you to so vain. In this universe,

PAGE 476

created by God, there are men of all grades. Let no one, therefore, harbor conceit

A. ~ Does the same Dharma (religion) hold good for all? If you say no, we ask, are the different religions opposed to each other or otherwise? If you answer they are opposed to one another, one of them can only be true, but if you aver that they are in harmony with each other, it is useless to have different names. If follows, therefore, the same dharma (religiona) and adharma (irreligion) hold good for all. This what we teach differently from others.

If an Emperor were to make a list of all the different religions (extant in the world) they would not be less than one thousand but the chief among them are only four in number. Viz., the Pauranic (Hindu), the Christian, the Jain (or the Buddhistic) and the Mohammedan. All other sects are included in these four. If he should not turn an inquirer after truth and ask a Vaama Margi "Reverend Sir! I have never had a preceptor before, nor embraced any religion yet. Tell me, pray, which you think is the best religion in the world, so that I should embrace it."

Vama -Our religion is the best.

Inquirer ~ What do you think of the remaining nine hundred and ninety-nine?

Vama - They are all false and lead their followers to hell. It is also written "There is no religion higher than the Vama Marg."

Inquirer ~ What is your religion?

Vama - If consists in believing in the Goddess Bhavati, in using five things beginning with the letter M, such as Mans (meat), Madira (wine), etc., and holding the 64 Tantras, such as Rudrayamal, etc., as sacred books. If you want to be saved, embrace our faith and become our disciple.

Inquirer ~ Alright, I will see other holy men as well and make inquiries about their religion. I will, afterwards, embrace the religion is which I have the greatest faith and for which I feel the greatest love.

Vama - O My good man! Why are you in doubt! These people will mislead and ensnare you into their nets. Don't you go to any other religionist, take refuge in our faith or you will repent. Mark you! Our faith holds out the prospect of enjoyment of sensual pleasures as well as the hope of salvation.

PAGE 477

Inquirer ~ Well, anyhow I will inquire into this question (from others).

He, then, went to a Shivite and put him the same question as he had done to the Vama Margi who gave him the same sort of answer as latter had done, with this addition that, without believing in Shiva wearing Rudraksha and smearing the body with ashes and worshipping phallus, no one could be saved. He left the Shivite and went to a Neo-Vedantis and addressed him thus, "Tell me, O reverend Sir! What is your Dharma?"

Neo-Vedantist - we do not believe in religion or irreligion. We believe ourselves to be God, we cannot be affected by religion or irreligion. The whole world is an illusion. Shouldest thou desire to be possessed of true wisdom and pure consciousness, get it out of thy mind that thou are soul, believe thyself to be Brahma and thou shalt be saved forever.

Inquirer ~ If your are Brahma (God), Who is Eternally-free, why don't you possess the nature, attributes and characteristics of Brahma, and why are you imprisoned in this (human) body?

N. - Thou seest the body while I don't. This is because thou art in ignorance. We see nothing but Brahma.

Inquirer ~ Who are you that see, and whom do you see?

N. - It is Brahma that sees and Brahma sees Brahma.

Inquirer ~ Are there two Brahmas, then?

N. - No, Brahma sees His Ownself.

Inquirer ~ Can anyone stand on his own shoulders? There is no sense in what you say. You talk like a mad man.

He, then, went further and inquired from Jainees what they thought was the true religion. They answered the same fashion as the other three had done but with this addition that " All other religions but the Jain, are false. There is no eternal God, the Maker of this world. The world has been eternally existing as it is and will continue to exist forever. Come, become our disciple, since, we are good in all respects, and all our doctrines are true. All faiths except the Jain are false."

Then he proceeded further and put the same question to Christian as he had done to others, who answered him in the same strain as the Vama Margi, but with this addition that "All men are sinners, and cannot free themselves from sin by their own exertions. No one can be saved until he has been purified through faith in Christ who revealed

PAGE 478

(his infinite) mercy by sacrificing his life by way of atonement for the sins of mankind. Come and become a Christian." Having heard this, he went to a Maulvi (Mohammedan priest) and asked him the same question. He gave him the same answer as others had done, with this addition that, "No one could obtain salvation without believe in One God Incomparable without a second, His prophet and the Holy Qoran. Whosever refused to believe in this religion would go to hell. He was an infidel and deserved to be put to the sword."

He, then, went to a Vaishnavite andhad the same sort of conversation with him who also added that even Yamaraj (king of death) "trembles with fear at the sight of our tilak* and chhap."** The inquirer thought in his mind: "Well, if these things had no terror for mosquitoes, police constables, thieves and robbers, and one's enemies, who should the messengers of death fear them?" As he went further he found that every religionist called his own religion the best and the truest.

One said that his religious teacher Kabir was a true prophet. Another said our Guru Nanak was the greatest teacher. Another said that Ballabhu was the greatest among men, he was God incarnate whilst others said the same of Sahjanand and Madhava, etc.

Having questioned all those thousand religionists and found that they were all opposed to each other, he came to the conclusion that there was not one among them whose religion he could embrace as there were 999 witnesses against everyone of them (who could swear that he was wrong). They were no better than the lying shopkeepers, prostitutes, and buffoons who bragged about their own commodities (at the expense of others) and cried down others. Then he thought of those verses of the Upanishad which say,:-
"Let a seeker after truth, the, repair to a preceptor well versed in the Vedas, who has realized God, with a suitable present in his hands (and avoid the snares of hypocrites). He should initiate

such an inquirer as is possessed of self-control, contentment and tranquility of mind, into the truly divine science, - which treats of the nature, attributes and characteristics of God - and do all in his power to teach him what means he should adopt to learn the true nature of righteousness, wealth, legitimate desires, emancipation and God." MUNDAKA !: ii, 12, 13.

When he met such a man he addressed him thus, "O Reverend Sir! My mind is greatly perplexed by the wrangling of these

---

* A mark made on the forehead.

** Marks of having been branded with red-hot iron. -Tr.

PAGE 479

various sects. Should I become the follower of one of these, I shall make the remaining 999 my enemies. How can one be happy who has 999 enemies and only one friend? Teach me, Sir, what I should accept."

The true teacher. ~ All these religions are the product of ignorance. They are the enemies of knowledge, mislead the ignorant, the foolish and the unenlightened and ensnare them into their nets, and thereby gain their selfish ends; these poor, ignorant people miss the object of their lives and waste them. In whatever they agree with each other, know that to be the Vedic religion worthy of being accepted, but in whatever the all disagree, know that to be wrong, false, sinful and unacceptable.

Inquirer. - How am I to test what you say?

The true teacher. ~ You go and ask them all the following questions,* they will be unanimous in their answers.

There upon the seeker after truth went to the assembly of 1,000 religionists and said with aloud voice, "All you people! Lend me your ears. Tell me pray, whether it is dharma (right) to speak the truth or otherwise." They all answered with one voice, "It is right (dharma) to speak the truth and wrong (adharma) to tell a lie."

Similarly, on being questioned they declared unanimously that Dharma (true religion) consisted in acquiring knowledge, controlling the sensual passions, marrying in the full bloom of life, associating with te good, cultivating active habits and being honest in dealings with others, whilst it was irreligion to remain ignorant, become a slave of the senses, commit adultery, keep bad company, be dishonest in dealings, practice fraud and hypocrisy, bear malice and do harm to others.

Thereupon he asked them, "Why don't you agree in this manner and advance the cause of true religion and eradicate false religions." They replied, "Should we do so, who will care for us. Our disciples will leave us, won't obey us, we shall lose our

---

* These questions are the same as the inquirer puts to religionists in the next paragraph.-Tr.

PAGE 480

livelihood. We are now enjoying ourselves, all this enjoyment will be lost to us, therefore even when we know what true religion is, we continue to teach our false, sectarian religions and refuse

to abjure falsehood and embrace the true religion, acting on the proverb 'Cheat the world with your cunning and enjoy yourself."

Look here! It is like this. No one in this world gives anything to a man who is honest and true, nor does anybody care for him. But that resorts to hypocrisy and fraud lives in plenty."

I. -~ Why does not the king punish you for swindling others by means of fraudulent practices?

R. - We have made even the king our disciple. So you see, our arrangements are perfect. None shall escape us.

I. ~ You rob others through fraud and thereby injure them, what answer will you give to your God? You will undoubtedly fall into an awful hell. You commit such sins for enjoying yourselves for this short span of (human) life. Why can't you give up these frauds?

R. - When that happens we shall see what hell we all into or what punishment God inflicts on us, when we do not take anything from others by force, the people give us wealth of their own free-will.

1. ~ You are just as punishable as a man who robs a child by coaxing him, for it is said, "He who is ignorant is a child. He who is wise, is called a father or an old man." Whosoever is leaned and wise does not fall into your snares but the ignorant who are like children fall as easy prey to your trickery and fraud. You ought to be punishable by law for defrauding them.

R. -Who can punish us when both the ruler and the ruled are our followers. When our profession is made punishable by law, we will change our program, and make a different one.

I. ~ You now sit idle and swindle others, would it not be to your good as well as to that of the house-holders if you would pass your time in acquiring knowledge and teaching their children?

R. - Why should we give up life-long pleasures, pass our childhood and youth in acquiring knowledge and the rest of our lives in teaching and preaching? What shall we gain by it. We can now get hundreds and thousands of rupees without doing any

PAGE 481

thing, live in ease and comfort and enjoy ourselves, why should we give up this easy life?

I. ~ But it has awful consequences. You are afflicted with terrible diseases, die young, are looked down by the wise and you don't understand.

R. - Friend! You are a mere child yet and do not understand the world. Nothing can be done without money, no religion can exist without money, no good works can be performed without money. He who had no money always talks of money, looks at the good things of (this world) with avidity and sighs.

All men hear of the Indivisible, All-powerful, Beings described as possessed of powers, but no one has seen Him. On the other hand, the Rupee of 16 annas is the real and visible God, hence it is that everyone is engaged in the pursuit of making money, since all things can be accomplished with the help of money.*

I. ~At last, the cat is out of the bag and we know you in your true colors. All this fraud that you have set up is for your selfish gain, but tends to ruin the world. Just as the preaching of truth

benefits the world. Just as the preaching of truth benefits the world, so does the teaching o untruth injure it. When what you want is only wealth, why don't you engage yourselves in trade and make your pile.

R. - But, then, we shall have to work hard and run some risks of loss as well, while now in our present trade it is all profit and no loss. Now, mark! We make nectar water and give a few drops of it to a man, tie a string of beads round his neck (make him our chela) or disciple. He is like a beast of burden for us as long as he lives. We can, then, drive him about as we like.

I. ~ What do these people give you all this money for?

---

* an Anna is equal to a penny.

PAGE 482

R. ~ When you are not yourselves saved, nor know the nature of salvation, not the way to attain it, what would they get who serve you?

R.- Is the reward for service ever to be got in this world? No, Sir! They are compensated for it (in the next world). Their reward will be commensurate with their services (to us) here.

I. ~ Whether they will get anything in return for their services or not (is rather doubtful), what I should like to know is what will you, who accept their services (and money, etc.) get? Hell or something else?

R. - We devote ourselves to prayers, we shall gain happiness in consequence thereof.

I. ~ All your prayers are for gold which will all be left here after death, and even the lump of flesh (i.e., human bodies) which you nourish so fondly will be (cremated) and reduced to ashes and remain here. Had you worshipped God (instead of Mammon) your hearts would have been pure.

R. -Are we impure then?

I. ~ Your hearts are very impure, indeed.

R. - How do you know that?

I. ~ From you conduct and dealings (with others).

R. - The conduct of great men is like the teeth of an elephant. He has one set of teeth to eat with whilst another set (tusks) for show. In like manner, we are pure at heart but outwardly we resort to these (fraudulent) practices by way of division.

I. ~ Had you been pure at heart, you would have been upright in dealings with others. But you are not so, hence you have very dirty interior.

R. - We may be anything but our followers at least are good.

I. ~ Like masters, like pupils.

R.- There can never be one religion for all mankind, for people differ so much in their nature, temperaments and characteristics.

I. ~ If all were educated alike in childhood and would practice dharma (righteousness) such as truthfulness in speech, and abhor

PAGE 483

adharma (unrighteousness) such a untruthfulness in speech, they would all certainly be of one religion. It is true though that there will always be two kinds of men, viz., righteous and unrighteous. But that does matter. As long as the righteous outnumber the unrighteous, there is happiness in the world, but when the unrighteous preponderate, suffering and misery increase. Were all good and learned men to teach alike, there will be one religion among all men in no time.

R. - It is the Kaliyuga (Iron age) now. Don't you expect things of the Satyuga (Golden age) in this age.

I. ~ Kaliyuga is the name of a period of time. Time is actionless. It cannot be a factor in the causation of righteousness or unrighteousness. You yourselves are the incarnations of Kaliyuga. Virtue and vice in men are not natural but the result of the influence of association (education), and environment, etc.)

Having said this, he went to the A'pta (the true teacher) and addressed him thus: O Reverend Sir! You have, indeed saved me, otherwise I should have fallen into the snares of one of these sects and ruin myself. Now I will expose the fraud of these hypocrites and preach the true religion of the Vedas."

The true teacher. ~ This is, indeed, the duty of all men, especially of leaned men and Sanyasis, to teach all men how to defend truth and refute untruth and thus, by the preaching of truth, promote public good.

More on today's Brahmacharis and Sanyasis.

Q. - Are the Brahmacharis and Sanyasis (of today) good?

A. ~! These two Orders are good in principle, but there is a great deal of hypocrisy rampant even among them now-a-days. There are many among them who assume the name of Brahmachari, grow long-matted hair, pretend to possess wonderful powers, but are engrossed in muttering the name of some deity and in rituals.

They never even take the name of studying. They do not at all exert themselves for the study of that Brahma - Veda - which gives them the name of Brahmachari. All these Brahmacharis are as useless as the teats (loose flesh) hanging from the neck of a goat. There are also any number of Sanyasis who are destitute of knowledge, and carry staffs and water-gourds - symbols of hteir Order - with them, but do nothing to further the cause of the Vedic religion. Such men generally enter into Sanyas when they

PAGE 484

are quite young, leave off their studies and wander about begging from place to place. Such Brahmacharis and Sanyasis waste their time visiting sacred places (such as rivers, hills, temples, etc.), and stone images, and paying homage to them, do not preach even when they are well-versed in learning, and find hypocrisy and false practices rampant in the land, eat and drink and

live in ease (not caring a brass farthing for their country). They are engrossed in their little jealousies and feuds, revile each other and conduct themselves improperly (in various other ways). It is thus that they pass their time.

They seem to think that they have done their duty simply by wearing ochre- colored garments and carrying their staffs and water-gourds, believe themselves to be superior to all, never do any good works. Such sanyasis live useless lives in this world. Of course, those among them who are engaged in altruistic works are alright.

Pantheism

Q. - Are the girls, the Puris and the Bhartis and other Gosaeens good? The go about in groups, help thousands of Sadhus to enjoy themselves, preach Vedanta (pantheism) wherever they go, and read and teach a little, therefore, they must be very good people, indeed.

A. ~ All these ten names such as Giri, Puri, etc., are not ancient but of recent origin. They form themselves into groups for the sake of getting good food. There are plenty of Sadhus who join these companies for good only. They practice a great deal of hypocrisy as well.

For instance, they make one of their company their Mahant (religious superior) who is also their head man. Every evening he sits on a raised cushioned seat, all the Sadhus and Brahmans stand up before him with followers in their hands, read such couplets as "Unto Narayana, Padammbha, Vasishtha Shakti, his son Parashar, Vyaasa, Shuka, and the great Gaurpada," and the shout Hara Hara (God, God), shower flowers on him and prostrate themselves before him.

Whosoever does not want to do it, finds it hard even to live among them. They practice all this hypocrisy for mere show so that they may get a name for holiness in the world, and thereby obtain plenty of money to enjoy themselves. There are nay number of abbots, (heads of convents or sacred places) who, though married, pride themselves on being Sanyasis. They do nothing (useful). They

PAGE 485

never perform the duties of Sanyasis (Vide Chapter 5) and simply waste their time. They even oppose one who gives them good advice. Mostly these people smear their bodies with ashes and wear Rudraksha. Some of them are proud of belonging to the Shaiv sect. In religious discussions they advocate Shaivism as taught by Shankarcharya and refute Chakrankitism. They never engage in advocating the Vedic religion nor in refuting false faiths.

These Sanyasis hold that they have nothing to do with the advocacy of truth or the refutation of untruth, because they are great souls. Such people are a mere burden to the community.

No wonder then that religions and sects opposed to the Vedas, such as the Vama Marg, the Christianity and Mohammedanism have multiplied and are still on the increase while they (i.e., the followers of the Vedic religion) themselves are being decimated and yet their eyes won't open, but how is it possible when there is no zeal in their hearts for promoting public good and doing their duties.

These people set a higher value on their dinner than on anything else, are very much afraid of the censure of the world. Sanyasis are enjoined to abjure love of public applause, love of wealth and sensual enjoyments and love of kith and kin and disciples. How can they be called Sanyasis when they have not been able to renounce these passions?

It is the paramount duty of a Sanyasi to devote himself day and night to the promotion of the good and happiness of the world by impartial preaching of the Vedic religion. It is useless for them to call themselves Sanyasis as long as they do not dos the duties obligatory on their Order. It is only when the Sanyasis devote themselves to the promotion of public good more earnestly than do the householders, actuated by self-interest, to their own affairs, that all Orders remain progressive.

Mark you, false faiths are increasing before your very eyes, the people are even turning Christians and Mohammedans, you do not make the least effort to protect your own people and convert others to your faith (i.e., the Vedic religion)?You could do it only if you had a mind (to do it). As long as you Sanyasis do not improve yourselves, the inhabitants of Aryavarta and other countries will not make any real progress.

A country makes genuine progress only when the causes of advancement such as the study and teaching of the Vedas and other true Shastras, the keeping of Brahmacharya and other Orders in good condition, and the preaching of truth, are in operation. Bear (you Sanyasis) in mind, there are many false and hypocritical

PAGE 486

practices in vogue which you really know to be such. For instance, a Sadhu with trading propensities declares himself to be a saint (Sidha). He claims to possess miraculous powers such as making the childless women bear children. On hearing this many women go to him and, with folded palms, pray for sons. The fraud of a saint blesses them all saying, "You shall bear sons."

Whosoever among them bears a son, attributers this happy even to the blessing of our Saint. Poor woman! What answer will she make if she were asked: "By whose blessing did pigs, donkeys, bitches and hens get their little ones? There are others who declare that they can bring the dead to life. The ignorant believe it to be true. Now, why should these people themselves die if they possessed the power they pretend to. There are other rascals, again, who invent such cunning devices to deceive the cleverest.

Take, for instance, the thugs of Dhanasari. They got to them looks robust and is of a taking appearance is appointed their ring-leader. Henceforth, he is a Sidha (saint). They place him in a sequestered place outside a rich town or village and themselves go into the town and ask everyone who comes across their way if he has seen or hear of such and such Mahatma (Saint). They are asked, "Who and of what kind is that Mahatama?"

They answer, "He is a great Saint. He can tell what passes in you mind. Whatever he say s comes to pass. He is the king of young is we have left our hearths and homes in his quest. We heard from some one that he had come this way." The house-holder rejoins: "When you happen to meet that Saint, please do not fail to inform me also of it. I shall also have the pleasure of seeing him and questioning him about my heart's desires."

All day long they repeat the same story to anyone who meets them. At night they all assemble together at the Rendezvo us, eat and drink together and sleep in the same place. They get up in the morning and all the four accomplices of our Saint again go into the town and repeat the same story. This goes on for two or three days. Then they go to a rich man and tell him that they have found a Saint and if he has a desire to see him they could take him to him. When he is about to accompany them, they ask him what he wants to inquire (from the saint). He says, that he wants to have a son or wealth to be cured of some disease or to overcome his

PAGE 487

enemy. They then take him to our Saint and seat him according to the understanding arrived at between the Saint and his accomplices. Thus if the visitor be desirous of getting wealth, they seat him on the right of our Saint, if of a son in front of him, if of getting cured of some disease on his left, if of overcoming his enemy, they bring him from behind and seat him among those who are in front.

The instant the visitor salutes him, our Saint, proud of his powers, cries out with a loud voice, "do I keep sons in store here that thou hast come with the desire of getting a son," or "Do I keep bags full of God here that thou hast come with the desire of getting wealth.

Mendicants never have wealth," or "Am I a doctor that I should cure thee. Go thou to a doctor." These rogues have also certain signs by means of which they indicate to the Saint what relation the sick man bears to the visitor; for instance, if it be this father, one of the accomplices raises his thumb, if his mother, index finger, if his brother, middle finger, if his wife, ring-finger, if his daughter, little finger; and therefore our Saint, can at once tell if his father, mother, brother wife or daughter is ill.

The visitor is quite captivated by these answers. The scoundrels say to him, "Is not he what we told you?" the visitor replies, "yes, he is the same a you told me, you have done me a great favor. I am, indeed, very lucky to have had the pleasure of seeing him." Thereupon the rogues say, "Look here, brother, this Saint is his own master. He is not likely to say here for long. If you want to have his blessing, serve him with all your heart and soul and wealth because it is said, "It is service that bears fruit. Should he get pleased with anyone, who knows what blessing he may give him as the old proverb says: Most inscrutable are the ways of Saints!"

The visitor having heard such soft and soapy words is highly pleased and wends his way back home praising the Saint. The swindlers also go with him, lest anyone should expose their fraud. He also praises our Saint before his friends oar other people who happen to meet him on the way. By and by, the news spreads all over the town and then there is a great halloobaloo.

Everyone is heard to say, "A great Saint ahs come and put up at such and such a place, let God to see him." When people go there and put questions to the Saint as to what their heart-felt desires agree, all order being lost he does not answer any question and remains quite silent except that he says, "Pray don't tease me." Thereupon all his accomplices begin to say, "If you tease him any more,

PAGE 488

he will go away." Sometimes a very rich man in the crowd takes one of the accomplices to one side and says, "Let the Saint tell me what passes in my mind and I shall believe him to be a true one." The swindler asks him what it is, the rich man tells him what his desire is; and the swindler, then, takes him an seats him according to the above understanding. The Saint at once tells him what his desire is.

The whole crowd hears his answer, it is in the mouth of everyone that he is indeed a very great Saint. Everyone brings an offering according to his position, such a sweets, copper, silver, gold, cloth and flour, etc. the swindlers fleece them as long a the presents keep pouring in.

Some times our Saint can come across one or two such men as have such men as have 'more money than brains', who pay him a thousand rupees or so in return for which he gives them a pinch of ashes and his blessing for a son in the following words: "If thy devotion be true, thou shalt get a son".

There are many such thugs who can only be found out by the men of intelligence and enlightenment. The study of the Vedas and association with the good and the learned enables one to escape the clutches of such swindlers since the true visual organ of man is knowledge. Without education and culture, there can be not enlightenment.

They alone are entitled to be called men and scholars who receive good education and training in early life, whilst those who live in bad company, become wicked and sinful, remain most foolish and thereby suffer terribly. Hence it is declared that knowledge is the highest thing in the world. Whosoever knows believes.

It is said: "Whosoever does not know the merits or the properties of an object always runs it down just as a Bhil rejects the beautifully- fragrant Gunja flowers and, instead, wears a garland of Gajamuktas. In like manner, he alone, who is learned, wise, and virtuous and associates with the good, is a Yogi, is studious, energetic, possesses self-control and is gentle, reaps the fourfold fruit of human life, viz., practice of righteousness, acquisition of wealth, gratification of legitimate desires, and attainment of salvation and thereby lives in happiness here in this world as well as in the life to come.

PAGE 489

We have thus briefly discussed the religions of the people of India (Aryavarta). We shall now publish, for the information of all, a brief history that we have come across of the Arya kings.

We give a list of the Arya kings of Aryavarrta which includes all the rulers from the Emperor Yudhishthir to the Emperor Yashapal. The history of the Aryan Emperors of India from Swaymbhava to Yudhishthir is given in such books as the Mahaabhaarata. The reader will get an idea of the history of the Aryan Rulers from Yudhishthir downwards.

This is a translation of what appeared in the fortnightly, called Hari Chandrika, and Mohan Chandrika issued from Shrinathdwara at Chittore, the capital of Udypur State in Rajputana.

It will, indeed, greatly benefit the country if the Arya people (i.e., the natives of India) will make a continue search for books on ancient history (of India) will make a continued search for books on ancient history (of India) and on other branches of knowledge and publish them. The Editor of the said fortnightly got a book in manuscript written in 1782 Vikama (1725 A.D.) from a friend of his and published a brief summary of the Aryan Emperors in the two issues of his Journal, Nos. 19 and 20, in the year 1939 Vikrama (1882 A.D.) which is given below:-

Genealogy of the Aryan Emperors of Aryavarta (India).

The Aryas ruled in Indraprastha (Modern Delhi) from the time of the Emperor Yudhistir down to that of the Emperor Yashpal. The total number of the Rulers is about 124, the period covered by their rule 4, 157 years, 9 months and 14 days. Its detail is as follows:-
About 30 Emperors belonging to the House of Yudhishthir ruled in Indraprastha collectively for 1, 770 years, 11 months and 10 days. Its detail is as follows:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Yudhishthir	36	8	25
2	Parikshita	60	0	0

3	Janamejaya	84	7	23

PAGE 490

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
4	Ashwamedha	82	8	22
5	Rama II	88	2	8
6	Chhatra Mala	81	11	7
7	Chitraratha	75	3	18
8	Dushtashailya	75	10	24
9	Ugrasena	78	7	21
10	Shurasena	78	7	21
11	Bhuvanapati	69	5	5
12	Ranajita	65	10	4
13	Rikshaka	64	10	4
14	Sukhdeva	62	0	24
15	Naraharideva	51	10	2
16	Suchiratha	42	11	2
17	Shurasena II	58	10	8
18	Parvatasena	55	8	10
19	Medhavi	52	10	10
20	Sonachira	50	8	21
21	Bhimadeva	47	9	20
22	Nriharideva	45	11	23
23	Purnamala	44	8	7
24	Karadavi	44	10	10

PAGE 491

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
25	Alammika	50	11	8
26	Udayapala	38	9	0
27	Duvanamala	40	10	26
28	Damata	32	0	0
29	Shimapala	58	5	8
30	Kshemaka	48	11	21

The Prime Minister Vishrava killed his Emperor Kshemaka and began to rule himself in his place. Fourteen Emperors belonged to his House who ruled collectively in Indraprastha for 500 years, 3 months, and 17 days, thus:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Vishrava	17	3	29
2	Puraseni	42	8	21
3	Viraseni	52	10	7
4	Angashayi	47	8	23
5	Harijit	35	9	17
6	Paramseni	44	2	23
7	Sukhapatala	30	2	21
8	Kadruta	42	9	24
9	Sajja	32	2	14
10	Amarchura	27	3	16

PAGE 492

11	Amipala	22	11	25
12	Dashratha	25	4	12
13	Virasala	31	8	11
14	Virasalsena	47	0	14

The Prime Minister Viramaha killed his Emperor Virasalasena and began to reign in his place. Sixteen Emperors of his House ruled (in Indraprastha) collectively for 445 years, 5 months and 3 days, thus:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Viramaha	35	10	8
2	Ajita Singh	27	7	19
3	Sarvadaita	28	3	10
4	Bhuvanapati	15	4	10
5	Virasena	21	2	13
6	Mahipala	40	8	7
7	Shatrushala	26	4	3
8	Sanghraja	17	2	10
9	Tejapala	28	11	10
10	Manika Chanda	37	7	21
11	Kamaseni	42	5	10

PAGE 493

12	Shatrumardana	8	11	13
13	Jivanaloka	28	9	17
14	Harirava	26	10	29
15	Virasena II	35	2	20
16	A'dityaketu	23	11	13

King Dhanadhara of Prayaag (Allahabad) killed Emperor A'dityaketu of Maghda and began to reign in his place. Nine kings of his House ruled for 374 years, 11 months and 26 days, thus:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Dhanadhara	42	7	24
2	Maharshi	41	2	29
3	Sanarachchi	50	10	19
4	Mahayudhai	30	3	8
5	Duranatha	28	5	25
6	Jivanraja	45	2	5
7	Rudrasena	47	4	28

8	Arilaka	52	10	8
9	Rajapala	36	0	0

Samanta Mahapal killed the Emperor Rajapala and reigned for 14 years. Raja Vikrammaditya of Avantika (Ujjain) invaded his territory and put the Emperor Mahanpala to death. He reigned

PAGE 494

for 93 years. He ws killed by a minster of King Shalivahana called Samudrapala Yogi of Paithana who began to reign in Raja Vikramaditya's time. Sixteen kings of his House ruled collectively for 372 years, 4 months and 27 days, thus:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Samudrapala	54	2	20
2	Chandrapala	36	5	4
3	Sahayapala	11	4	11
4	Devapala	27	1	28
5	Narasinghpala	18	0	20
6	Sampala	27	1	17
7	Raghupala	22	3	25
8	Covindapala	27	1	17
9	Amritapala	36	10	13
10	Balipala	12	5	27
11	Mahipala	13	8	4
12	Haripala	14	8	4
13	Sisapala	11	10	13
14	Madanapala	17	10	19
15	Karmapala	16	2	2
16	Vikramapala	24	11	13

Vikramapala led an expedition against Malukh Chnnd Bohara, King of the West (India), and fought a battle with him in an open field and was killed at the hand of Malukh Chand who

PAGE 495

began o reign Indraprastha (Delhi). Ten kings of his house ruled collectively for 191 years, 1 month and 16 days, thus:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Maluk Chand	54	2	10
2	Vikram Chand	12	7	12
3	Amin Chand*	10	0	5
4	Ram Chand	13	11	8
5	Hari Chand	14	9	24
6	Kaliyan Chand	10	5	4
7	Bhima Chand	16	2	9
8	Lova Chand	26	3	22
9	Govind Chand	31	7	12
10	Queen Padmavati**	1	0	0

Queen Padmavati (wife of Govind Chand) died childless. All her ministers unanimously plaved Hari Prem Vairagee to rule in his name. Four kings of his House ruled collectively for 50 years and 21 days, thus:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Hari Prema	7	5	16
2	Govinda Prema	20	2	8
3	Gopal Prema	15	7	28
4	Mahabahu	6	8	29

---

* In some historical books he is called Manak Chand.

PAGE 496

Raja Mahabahu abdicated his throne and went to live in a forest, in order to engage himself in Divine contemplation. A'dhi Sena, King of Bengal, having heard this, came to Indraprastha and took possession of the capital and began to reign there. Twelve kings of his House ruled in Indraprastha for 151 years, 11months, 2 days, this:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan	Years	Months	Days

	Kings			
1	A'dhi Sena	18	5	21
2	Vilaba Sena	12	4	2
3	Keshab Sena	15	7	12
4	Madha Sena	12	4	2
5	Mayura Sena	20	11	27
6	Bhima Sena	5	10	9
7	Kalyana Sena	4	8	21
8	Hari Sena	12	0	25
9	Kshema Sena	8	11	15
10	Narayana Sena	2	2	29
11	Lakshami Sena	36	10	0
12	Damodara Sena	12	5	19

Damodra Sena oppressed his nobles very much. One of them, called Dipa Singh, revolted against him and got the army to join him. He slew the Raja in a battle and began to reign himself. There were 6 kings of his dynasty who collectively ruled for107 years, 6 months and 22 days. The detail is as follows:-

PAGE 497

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
1	Dipa Singh	17	1	26
2	Raj Singh	14	5	0
3	Ran Singh	9	8	11
4	Nar Soingh	45	0	15
5	Hari Singh	13	2	29
6	Jivan Singh	8	0	1

Raja Jivan Singh, for some reason, sent all his army to the North. Prithvi Raj Chauhan, King of Vairat, on hearing this, marched against him, killed him in a battle and began to reign* in Indraprastha. There were 5 kings of his dynasty who collectively ruled for 86 years and 20 days; thus:-

Nos.	Names of Aryan Kings	Years	Months	Days
12	Prithvi Raj	17	2	9
2	Abhayapala	14	5	17
3	Durjanapala	11	4	14
4	Udayapala	11	7	3
5	Yashpala	36	4	27

---

* It is written in other works on history that Sultan shahab-ud-din Ghaur marched against Prithvi Raj and had to return home defeated several times. In the end in the year 1249 Vikrama through mutual dissensions among the supporters of the emperor Prithvi Raj, shahab-ud-din defeated Prithvi Raj, blinded him and took him back home with him and took the reins of the government of Indraprastha in his own hands. The Mohammedan rule lasted for 613 years during which time there were altogether 45 (Mohammedan) rulers.

PAGE 498

**Sultan Shahab-ud-din Gauri of Ghazni iinvaded the kingdom of Raja Yashapala (defeated him) and imprisoned him in the fort of Prayaaga (Allahabad) in (1249 (1306 A.D.) and himself began to reign in Indraprastha (Delhi). The account of the reign of 53 Kings covering the remaining period of 754 years, 1 month and 17 days is given fully in many historical books, hence it has been omitted here.

In the next Chapter we shall discuss the Buddhistic or Jain religion.

END OF CHAPTER 11

---

* This is evidently a mistake. It was Mahmud of Ghazni - and not Shahab-ud-din - who marched against Raja Yashapala and defeated him.-Tr.

CHAPTER 12

AN EXPOSITION AND A REFUTATION OF THE CHARVAKA, THE BUDDHISTIC AND JAIN FAITHS ALL OF WHICH ARE ATHEISTIC.

PAGE 499

Introduction

When the people of **Aryavarta** gave up the study of the **Vedic** lore which alone enables one to discriminate between right and wrong, ignorance spread over the land and many sects sprang up, the **Jain** religion, whose teachings are opposed to science, took root in the country. We find no mention of the **Jainees** in the **Ramayana** by **Valmiki** and in the **Mahaabhaarata**, while in the Jain scriptures we find the life stories of **Rama**, **Krishna**, - the heroes of the two poems - in detail.

This goes to show that this religion came into existence after the period of the Epics, for, if the Jainees have been right in holding that their faith dates from remote antiquity references to it would surely have been met with in the books like the **Ramayana**. It is clear, therefore, that the Jain religion was later than the period of these books. If it be argued that the authors of the

Ramayanaand the**Mahaabhaarata** borrowed the stories from the Jain scriptures, the question may be asked as to why the sacred books of the Jainees are not referred to in the Epics, while the latter are adverted to in the holy books of the Jainees.

Is it possible for the son to be present on the occasion of his father's birth? Form this it may be safely inferred that the **Jain** and the **Buddhist** religions originated even after the **Shivite**and **Vaama Maarg** sects had come into existence. Whatever has been written about the Jain religion in this chapter has been supported by quotations from the Jain scriptures (for chapter and verse have been citied in each case). The Jainees shold not take offence at our comments, for in offering them we

PAGE 500

have been actuated solely by the desire of ascertaining what is true and what is false, and not by malice or the desire of injuring susceptibilities. The perusal of this chapter by the Jainees, the Buddhists and other people will engender in them the spirit of enquiry into truth and prompt them to life up their pen in their defense and study the subject with this end in view. So long as discussions, whether oral or written, are not carried on and the parties in the debate do not maintain a spirit of love, it is impossible to arrive at any conclusion as to the correctness or otherwise of a belief.

It is only when learned men do not act in this spirit, that the ignorant people are steeped in utter darkness and suffer extreme misery. Hence in order that the cause of truth may triumph and (that of) untruth may fail, it is the bounden duty of all men to conduct debates, whether written or oral, in a friendly spirit. Unless this course is followed, the human race can make no progress. It is believed that this chapter which treats of the **Buddhist** and the **Jain** religions will be of immense help to the followers of other religions and will considerably add to the stock of knowledge because the followers of the **Jain**religion do not let others read or copy out their books.

By dint of great efforts made by the author and especially Mr. Sevak Lal Krishna Das, secretary, Arya Samaj, Bombay, some books have been obtained. Again the study of the **Jain** religion has been facilitated by the publication of some books at the Benares Jain Prabhakar Press and by that of the book called Prakaran Ratnakar at Bombay. What would you think of those learned men who would monopolize the right of studying their sacred books and deprive other of the same. From this it is clear that the authors of these books were in constant fear that if the followers of other religions read their books, they would refute the doctrines of their faith and if their co-religionists read the scriptures of other religions they would lose all faith in the Jain religion, the reason being that there was a lingering doubt in the minds of the Jain writers that their works were replete with incredible absurdities. This, however, is patent to all that there are many people in the world who cannot perceive their own

PAGE 501

faults but they are ever ready to notice the shortcomings of others. This hardly just, for one should find out and remove his own shortcomings before he proceed to discover and remove the faults of others. And examination of the doctrines of the Jain and Buddhist religions is now submitted to the judgment of al impartial readers.

This introduction, though short will, we hope, satisfy the discerning reader.

PAGE 503

Vrihaspati, founder of the Charvaka

Once there lived (in India) a man named **Vrihaspati** who did not believe in the existence of God, in (the revealed character of) the Veda and in the efficiency of good works, such as **Yajnas**. this is what he believed.

O. ~ " No living creature - not even a human being - is immortal.All are subject to death; let a man, therefore, live in ease and comfort so long as he draws breath. If it be objected that the practice of virtue entails suffering, while deviation from the path of rectitude brings on misery in the nest birth, in reply to this it may be urged that, after death, the body is burnt to ashes and, therefore, the man who enjoyed himself during his lifetime never returns to this world after his demise.

Let a man, then, enjoy himself to his utmost capacity, deport himself in this world as expediency may direct, accumulate wealth and spend it on the gratification of his desires. All our interests are centered in this world. There is not hereafter."

The four elements, earth, water, fire and air, have entered into the composition of the human body; consciousness results from their combination even as inebriation results from the use of intoxicants. Similarly, the soul takes its births simultaneously with the body and is dissolved with its dissolution. The reaping of the fruits of good or evil deeds is, therefore, an utter impossibility.

"The soul is called into existence as the result of the combination of the four elements and is annihilated synchronously with

PAGE 504

the dissolution of the body, for, the existence of the soul, after death, is not demonstrable by direct cognition only. We believe in direct cognition only. Because the inferential and cognate modes of reasoning have for their basis direct cognition, Direct cognition being, therefore, of primary importance, all the rest sink into secondary importance, and are, therefore, not acceptable. The enjoyment that results from embracing a beautiful woman is the greatest reward of human effort.

A. ~ Your so-called elements are devoid of consciousness, therefore consciousness cannot result from their combination. Just as in our day the human today is formed as the result of sexual intercourse between the husband and the wife, likewise it was impossible for the bodies of men and other living beings to come into shape without the author of the Universe causing them to do so. It is wrong to say that consciousness is called into existence or annihilated even as inebriation is produced or removed, for it is a conscious being that is susceptible to the effects of inebriation, but not one devoid of consciousness.

All things are destroyed, i.e. pass into a state of invisibility, but nothing is ever annihilated. Similarly it is a rational belief that the soul becomes non-existent, because it is not an object of visual perception. The existence of the soul is made manifest only when it is embodied. When it leaves the body, the latter suffers dissolution and ceases to be the habitation of consciousness.

It is even this which the **Vrihadaranyaka Upanishad** declares. (Yajnavalka says to his wife) "O Maitreyi! What I say is not prompted by infatuation. The soul is immortal. Being united with, it, the body becomes possessed of conscious effort. When it is separated from the body, consciousness is altogether dislodged from the latter. If the soul be not distinct from the body, how could it be that its union with the latter produces consciousness, while its separation from the same makes it devoid of consciousness. The eye sees all objects but cannot see itself, even so the soul, which possesses the power of sensuous perception, cannot itself be an object of that mode of

perception. Though the instrumentality of the eye, the soul sees all (visible) objects, such as pitcher or a

PAGE 505

piece of cloth, but it is conscious of the existence of the eye by inferential reasoning. The seer is always a seer and can never be transformed into an object of visual perception. Just as the thing supported cannot exist without a supporter, an effect without a cause; constituent parts without whole, and act without a doer; even so there can be no sensuous perception without the perceiver.

If the ultimate aim of human effort be the pleasure resulting form sexual intercourse with a pretty woman, it cannot be true because it is momentary. Again, this act* also produces some undesirable results, and it cannot be said that they are the aim of human effort. Otherwise, the carnal pleasure not being an unmixed pleasure, suffering will result. If it be said that the aim of human endeavor should be to obtain exemption from pain and an increase of pleasure, that aim will be frustrated. Hence carnal pleasure cannot be the aim of human effort.

Charvaka. ~They are foolish who renounce (carnal) pleasure, because it is mixed with pain. Just as a farmer thrashes out the corn, keeps the grain and throws away the husk, likewise, a wise man should enjoy pleasure and reject pain, for those people that renounce immediate pleasures of this world and desire to obtain mediate and uncertain joys of paradise and, with that end in view, perform ***Homa*** *do righteous deeds, offer worship, devote themselves to the acquisition of spiritual knowledge - all these practices having been enjoined by the Vedaas which have been composed by rogues - are sunk in ignorance.*

It is foolish to hope for heavenly bliss when it is clear that there is no hereafter. "Vrihaspati (the founder of the Charvaka faith) says that the performance of Homa (sacred) recitations from the three Vedas, the use of three staves, the smearing of the body with ashes have been turned into means of subsistence by people devoid of understanding and activity." In our opinion physical pain such as caused by puncturing the body with a thorn constitutes hell. Salvation is nothing but attaining to the position of a king - who is in point of act God - possessed of glory or the dissolution of the body.

---

* The loss of the reproductive element brings on physical weakness which brings, in its train, disease and decay. There is no carnal pleasure, which has not its attendant disadvantages. _Tr.

PAGE 506

A. ~ It is sheer folly to believe that the aim of human endeavor is the gratification of bestial appetites and that the realization of the heavenly state and the faithful discharge of duty consists in getting rid of pain which accompanies sensual gratification. Performance of **Yajnas** like **Homa** contributes to the purification of air, rain and water and thus promotes health and enables one to acquire virtue, wealth, gratify natural desires and obtain salvation.

Whoever does not understand this and scoffs at God and the Veda and the teachings of the Vedic religion is a scoundrel. The author of this verse is right in denouncing the use of the three (sacred) staves and the smearing of the body with ashes. If the pain caused by pricking the thorn constitutes hell, why should not terrible maladies, which bring on greater suffering, be designated by the same name. It is, no doubt, quite true that a king, who is possessed of glory and is the protector of his subjects, is deserving of homage, but none except a perfect dunce would accord divine honors to an unjust and wicked king. If salvation is only another name for the dissolution of

the body, wherein then lies the difference between human beings (and beasts) like dogs and donkeys excepting in the external appearance?

Eleven arguments in favored by the Charvaka Faith.

Q. ~

- *1."There is no author of the universe*. All things combine together by virtue of properties inherent in them."*
- *2."There is neither heaven nor hell, nor is there any entity like the soul to reap, hereafter, the fruits of deeds done in this life,*

---

* *Charvakas, Buddhists, Jainees and Abhanakas - all these four orders of atheists hold the same view with regard to Cosmogony, i.e., there is no author of the universe.*

PAGE 507

*nor does the performance of duties pertaining to one's Class and Order bear any fruit."**

- *3."If the animal offered as sacrifice goes to heaven, why does not the Yajmana (master of ceremonies) send his parents, etc., to heaven, by killing them by way of sacrifice."*
- *4."If oblations offered to the manes of departed ancestors satisfy the latter, what need is there, then, for people going abroad to take with them victuals, clothes, cash, etc., for maintaining themselves during the journey. If a thing offered in the name of a departed ancestor reaches him in heaven, why cannot things, offered in the name of the person, gone abroad, by his relations staying at home reach him in foreign lands. If it be impossible to convey anything to foreign lands in this way for the benefit of a traveler, how much more so would it be to convey things to heaven (for the benefit of the departed ancestor)?"*
- *5. "If the physical wants of an ancestor in heaven cant be satisfied by offerings made in his name in this mortal world, why cannot the cravings of hunger, felt by a person in the upper story of a house, be satisfied if eatables are offered in his name by some one in the lower story."*
- *6. "Therefore, let a man pass his life in ease and comfort; if he has got nothing with him, let him borrow money from others. No obligations exist to pay back debts hereafter, for a particular individual (combination of the body and the soul) that contracted the debt will never return to this world. Who will, then, demand payment and who will have to pay?"*
- *7. It is wrong to say that, after death, the soul leaves the body and is transported to the next world, for if it be otherwise, why does not the departed soul return home, impelled by love for its family."*

---

* *The Charvakas have no belief in the existence of the soul and in a future life but the Buddhists and Jainees do not subscribe to that belief. In other matters their beliefs are almost identical.*

PAGE 508

- *8. "Hence, all these practices have been invented by the priests for their own pecuniary benefit. The ceremony of offering rice balls on the 10th day after death, and other funeral ceremonies like this have 'been devised for the same selfish purpose."*
- *9. "The authors of the Vedas were buffoons, scoundrels and devils. The words like jarfari and tarfari are symbolic of the rascally teachings of pundits."*

- *10. "Mark! What the rascals teach. Who but a scoundrel can promulgate that the wife of the master of ceremonies should have sexual intercourse with a horse and obscene jokes should be cracked at the expense of the bride."*
- *11. "The portion of the Veda which inculcates indulgence in flesh-diet has been composed by some fiend (in the garb of a man).*

Rebuttal of the eleven arguments.

A. ~

- 1. Dead and inert substances cannot combine together of their own accord and according to some design unless the Conscious Being - God - fashions and shapes them. If they could combine together by virtue of inherent properties, why does not another set of the sun, the moon, the earth and other planets spring into existence by themselves.
- 2. The enjoyment of happiness constitutes heaven while the suffering of (extreme) misery constitutes hell. If there be no soul, who would enjoy happiness or suffer misery, just as in this life the soul enjoys and suffers, likewise it will enjoy and suffer in the next birth. Will the cultivation of even such virtues as veracity in speech and benevolence by people belonging to a particular Class and a particular Order go unrewarded?
- 3, 4, 5. The Veda and other Shaastras do not at all sanction animal sacrifice; the practice of offering oblations to the manes of departed ancestors is an invention of priests, because it is

PAGE 509

opposed to the Vedic and Shaastric teachings and finds sanction only in the Puraana like the Bhagvat. We have, therefore, nothing to say against the refutation of this doctrine.

- 6. Whatever exists cannot cease to exist. The soul is an entity, therefore it can never become non-entity. It is not the soul but the body that is reduced to ashes (when it had been cremated). The soul (after death) passes into another body. Whoever, therefore, enjoys himself by borrowing from others and does not pay back his debts is verily a sinner and will, doubtless, suffer terribly in the next birth.
- 7. After leaving the body, the soul is transported to another place and takes on another body; it forgets all about its previous birth and its family, hence it is impossible for it to return to its previous family.
- 8. Yes, it is true that the priests have devised these funeral rites from motives of pecuniary gain, but, being opposed to the Vedas, they are condemnable.
- 9. It cannot, therefore, be gainsaid that if the Charvakas had read or heard them read, they would never have reviled them by saying, that they had been composed by buffoons, scoundrels, and devils. It is, no doubt, true that commentators like Mahidhar were the real buffoons, scoundrels and devils.

  It is on account of their rascality that such teachings have been fathered upon the Vedas. What a pity that the Charvakas, the Abhanakas, the Budhists and the Jainees never cared to study the four Vedaas in original with a learned man. This was the reason why their intellectual vision was blurred and distorted and they began to revile the Vedas in a foolish and nonsensical fashion. There read only the un-authoritative, absolutely wrong, and dirty commentaries by wicked Vama Margis, turned against the Veda and fell deep down in the bottomless pit of ignorance.

- 10. No sane man would believe that any people except the Vaama Maagis are capable of sanctioning such practices as the co-habitation of the wife of the master of ceremonies with a horse and poking obscene fun at his daughter. Who but these vile reprobates (i.e.,

Vama Margis) could have thought out such a filthy, incorrect exposition quite at variance with the Vedic text?

PAGE 510

It is much to be deplored that the Charvakas, etc., took to a thoughtless vilification of the Vedas. They ought to have made some use at least of their sense. But they were greatly to be pitied because they did not possess enough knowledge to enable them to sift truth from falsehood, to champion the cause of truth and denounce error.

- 11. Flesh-eating is not all enjoined by the Veda, it is only the Vama Margi commentators who have perverted the Vedic texts to yield this meaning, they verily deserve to be called demons in human shape. The Vama Margi commentators and those, who have thoughtlessly reviled the Vedas without having properly studied them or picked up any reliable information about them, will doubtless suffer for having committed this sin.

  To tell the truth, all those, who have opposed the Vedas in the past, do so now, or will do the same in future, being steeped in dense ignorance, suffer great pain and misery instead of happiness. It is, therefore, the duty of all men to mould their conduct according to the teachings of the Vedas.

  The Vama Margis, in order to gain their selfish end - which was to be free to resort to wicked practices such as the use of flesh and spirituous liquors, and adultery with impunity - invented their creed - which finds no sanction in the Shaastras - in the name of the Vedas, and thus brought them into disrepute.

  The Charvakas, the Buddhists and the Jainees began to revile the Vedas when they saw that that the professed believers in these scriptures followed such wicked modes of conduct. The founded a new religion which is atheistic and anti-Vedic. Had the Charvakas, etc., read the originals, they would never have been misled by false commentaries into forsaking the Vedic religion. They are very much to be pitied. When ruin is at hand, understanding is warped and perverted.

.

The doctrinal differences between the Charvaka and allied faiths.

We shall now point out the doctrinal differences between the Charvaka and allied faiths. They are alike in most respects.

- The **Charvakas** believe that the soul comes into being simultaneously with the body and ceases to exist as soon as the body is dissolved.
- They do not believe in metempsychosis, nor in a future life.
- The reject all kinds of evidence except that of direct cognition.

PAGE 511

The etymological meaning of the word Charvaka is a person who is clever in speech and is extremely fond of wrangling.

On the other hand, the Buddhists and the Jainees believe in the four kinds of evidence, such as direct cognition, the immortality of the soul, metempsychosis, the future life and emancipation. These are the main differences between the Charvakas on one hand and the Buddhists and the Jainees on the other.

The points of agreement are following:-

1. Atheism.
2. Reviling God and His Word - the Veda.
3. Malicious antagonism against other religions.
4. Belief in the efficacy of six acts to be described later on.
5. Disbelief in the first cause.

We have briefly explained the doctrines of the Charvakas.

Buddhism.

Back to contents

Now, we shall briefly discuss Buddhism.
The **Buddhists** believe that there is an "inseparable relation between cause and effect, i.e., "the cause invariably suggests the effect and the effect the cause. In this mental process Inference follows Direct cognition. Without the help of the Inferential mode of reasoning the affairs of the world cannot be satisfactorily carried on." The Buddhism, therefore, attaches special importance to Inference and, therefore, constitutes a system of belief different from that of the Charvakas.

The following are the different forms of Buddhism:-

1. Madhyamika.
2. Yogachara.
3. Sautrantika.
4. Vaibhashika.

Etymologically the word Buddha (Buddhist) means 'one who acts in accordance with the dictates of reasoning' that is one who accepts reasoning as the supreme and final authority.

- **Madhyamika**. - It teaches that all is nought, i.e., all things originally proceeded from nought and will ultimately resolved into nought. Whatever we perceive continues to exist only so long as our perceptive faculties.

PAGE 512

are at work. When they cease to act, the objects of perception recede into naught. For example, no pitcher was inn existence before it was made, it ceases to exist after it was broken. It seems to exist when it is an object of perception on our part, but when our consciousness is concentrated on other objects it passes out of its range (and therefore ceases to exist). Hence naught is the sole entity.

- **Yogachara** teaches that nothing exists outside human consciousness, i.e., all objects seem to exist in the mind. For example, the knowledge of the existence of the pitcher resides in the soul (consciousness), that is why a man calls a particular object by the name of pitcher. If this delusion had not previously existed in consciousness, how would he have clothed it in words?
- **Sautrantika** teaches that the existence of objects of the universe is mainly inferred. There is nothing that can be wholly known by direct cognition. It only affords the data but complete perception is arrived at by means of inference only.
- **Vaibhashika** teaches that when a thing is known by direct cognition, no mental images of the outside objects are formed in consciousness. For example, when one says, "Here is a blue pitcher," he means that the blue substance in the form of a pitcher appears to exist outside his consciousness.

Although the founder of the (Buddhistic) faith was one - Buddha, yet on account of intellectual differences among his disciples it came to have four forms. Take an example. When the shades of the evening close in, a rake meets his inamorata, while a good and learned man busies himself with the performance of righteous acts such as truthfulness. Thus at one and the same time two different persons act differently; each acting according to his understanding.

Of the four forms, the **Madhyamika** teaches that all perception is of a transient nature, i.e., each individual state of consciousness being of momentary duration, the perception of a thing at one moment differs from what it was a moment before. All knowledge is, therefore, transient.

The **Yogachar** form (of Buddhism) teaches that all enjoyment results in pain, because gratification of desires does not bring one

PAGE 513

contentment. When one desire is satisfied, a new one takes its place (and thus peace of mind is never secured).

The **Sautrantika** form (of Buddhism) teaches that all things are known by their Lakshanas,* just as the cow is known by its distinctive Lakshanas and the horse by its won distinctive Lakshanas. Lakshanas always reside in objects of which they are attributes.

Vaibhashika form teaches that naught is the sole entity. In this matter there is an agreement between the **Madhyamika** and **Vaibhashika** forms. Hence, there are many antagonistic forms of belief among the Buddhists. The chief of them are these four.

A. ~ If all be naught, the knower of naught can never be naught, for if he also be naught be cannot (being himself naught) know naught. It is, therefore, clear that (even from the Buddhistic point of view) there must be two entities - the knower who perceives the naught and the thing known - the naught.

As regards the Yogachara form of belief according to which nothing exists outside consciousness, it may be said that even big objects like a mountain must be believed to exists in the seat of consciousness. But this is absurd, because it is incapable of holding a mountain. The mountain, therefore, exists outside consciousness and a perception of this object is formed in consciousness - the soul.

The **Sautrantika** form (of Buddhism) teaches that nothing is known by direct cognition** (all knowledge is gained by inference).(We say in reply that) if it be so, the declaration of belief and the existence of the person making it must be held to be the result of inference. This being the case, it would not be logically right to say, "This is pitcher." It rather ought to be said, "This is part of the pitcher,: but the name pitcher cannot be applied to a part to a part of it, it is applicable to all the constituent parts of the pitcher taken as one object.

"This is a pitcher" is a proposition which can only be made by one who has gained knowledge by direct cognition and not by inference, because the whole pervades its constituent parts, and, therefore, as soon as the whole is perceived by direct cognition, all its constituent parts may be said to have been

---

* A Lakshana is that by means of which an object is known. Attributes are also lakshanas but the two terms do not coincide in extension.-Tr.
**In inferential reasoning we proceed from the part to the whole, from particulars to generals, from

example to rules, etc. It is by direct cognition alone that the knowledge of an object as a whole is gained all at once.-Tr.

PAGE 514

individually perceived in the same manner. In other words, the pitcher is perceived as composed of constituent parts.

The **Vaibhashikites** are not right in holding that when a thing is known by direct cognition, no mental images of the outside objects are formed in consciousness. for, direct cognition is impossible unless there be the perception of an object and a knower. Although the object of perception is outside consciousness, yet perception is impossible, unless a mental image of the outside object is formed in consciousness.

7. An examination of the four schools of Buddhism.

We now proceed to examine other doctrines of the aforesaid four schools of Buddhism.

1. If all perception be of a transient character, there should be not recollection of past events, but the fact is that we do recollect what we had seen or heard in the past, hence this belief in the momentary character of perception is erroneous.
2. It is not right to say that in this world there is nothing but sorrow and misery, and there is absolutely no happiness, even as one can conceive of the night only in relation to the day, and vice versa.
3. It is wrong to believe that lakshana always resides in the object (of which it is a lakshana) sometimes it does, and at others it does not). Take for example, light is always perceived by the eye and, therefore, the latter is the lakshana of the former, while light is the lakshya (i.e., that which is known by means of lakshana). But the eye - the lakshana is distinct from light, the lakshaya.

   This proposition can also be demonstrated by taking the relation between the color of the pitcher and the eye as an illustration. [Now we offer an illustration to show, that a lakshana may also reside n the lakshayas.] The power of exciting olfactory impulses is a lakshana of Prithivi. It resides in Prithvi and can never be separated from it. It is, therefore, clear that lakshanas do not necessarily reside in their lakshayas.

4. The belief about the naught being the sole entity has already been examined and refuted.

The Jainees believe in the same tirathankaras (perfect beings or incarnations) as the Buddhists. Both these religions are, therefore, identical.

PAGE 515

They hold that the four kinds of beliefs stated above constitute the means towards the attainment of freedom from all (worldly) desires which leads to Nirvana, or extinction (of the soul). This is their salvation. They teach their pupils the path of **Yogachara** and also that whatever falls from the lips of one's preceptor is worthy of belief and that the beginningless intellect, being clouded by passions and desires, appears to assume different forms.

The five mundane forms of Consciousness:-

1. Perception of objects, such as color by the senses such as eyes, constitutes Rupa Skandha.

2. Knowledge of the activity of the thinking faculty constitutes Vijnana Skandha.
3. Sensations of pleasure or pain - the result of Rupa Skandha and Vijnana Skandha - constitute Vedana Skandha.
4. The belief in the relation of the words, such as cow, with the objects signified by them constitutes Sanjna Skandha.
5. Different kinds of Klesha (affliction) such as inordinate love and hatred, or upaklesha (minor kinds of affliction) such as hunger and thirst, ardent passion, negligence, vanity, virtuous and sinful acts - the result of Vedana Skandha - constitute Sanskara Skandha.

The **Buddhists** hold that one should realize that the whole world is full of sorrow and pain, it is a vale of tears. With this belief one should exert himself so as to be freed from (the troubles of) this world. This constitutes the highest form of salvation according to the **Charvakas**. The **Buddhists** also believe in the Inferential mode of reasoning and deny the existence of the soul. One of their scriptures says:-

*"It is the duty of the Buddhists to believe in one who understands all about the Lords of the worlds, otherwise known as Tirathankaras such as **Buddha**, who possessed of perfect knowledge and has renounced the world and attained the blessed state of*

PAGE 516

beatitude in this life, who preaches all things separately and has been described minutely and in different ways."

"One should also believe in the teachings (with regard ot naught, etc.) of different gurus (preceptors) which have a clear and deep significance and have briefly been described before openly or covertly."

"The Dwadashayatanapuja (or the worship of twelve places) alone can lead to salvation. Let a Buddhist, therefore, collect all kinds of material for offering this kind of worship and build twelve places and worship them in the proper manner. Why should he worship anything else?"

"The Buddhistic Swaddashayatanapuja consists in showing respect to the five organs of sensation, such as ears, eyes, nose, mouth, and the organ of touch, five organs of action such as those of speech, locomotion, excretion and reproduction, the principle of attention and the principle of discernment by giving them unlimited license. This the Buddhistic faith."

A. ~ Had there been nothing in this world but pain and sorrow no living soul would have had inclination for anything in this world; but it is our daily experience that the souls do desire for the objects for this world, hence it cannot be true that in the whole universe there is nothing but pain and sorrow. Both happiness and misery are to be found in this world.

If the **Buddhists** really believe in the above doctrine, why do they attend to the health of their bodies, and for this purpose take food and drink and follow the laws of health and in case of sickness take medicine, etc.? Why do they believe that these things are conducive to one's happiness? If they believe that these things are conducive to one's happiness? If they answer that they certainly do these things but at the same time believe that they lead to misery and pain, it can never be true

PAGE 517

because the soul takes to what is conducive to its happiness and shuns what entails misery and suffering. Practice of virtue, acquisition of knowledge and wisdom, association with the good and

the like undoubtedly are conducive to man's happiness. Now wise man can ever assert that these result in pain and sorrow. It is Buddhists alone who hold such a belief. As regards the five skandhas (given above), they are not exhaustive, since if one were to classify skandhas like that, one does not know where he would end. They believe that the Tirathankaras were the teachers and lords of the world, while they refuse to believe in the Eternal, Supreme Spirit who is the Lord of lords.

Now, we should like to know who was the teacher of those Tirthankaras. If they answer that they evolved knowledge out of their own minds, it cannot be right, because no effect can come into existence without a cause. Besides, if what they assert be true, why don't the Buddhists in our day become learned, without studying with others or hearing what they teach and associating with the learned men? Such being the case, their assertion, which is altogether groundless and opposed to reason, is as valueless a the mutterings of a patient suffering from delirium due to high fever. If, a negation of all that exists be the belief of the Buddhists, it can never be valid since that which exists can never cease to exist, though it can be converted into its subtle causal form - the elementary matter from which the whole universe has proceeded. Hence, this statement (of the Buddhists) is also erroneous.

If they believe that it is only through the acquisition of wealth and other worldly possessions that the above-mentioned Swadashayatanapuja (worship of the twelve* places), which leads to salvation, can be offered, why don't they also worship the ten Paranas - nervauric forces and the soul (which is eleventh)?

If the worship of the senses and the mind (i.e., becoming a slave to them) is held to be the means of attaining, what difference is there, then, between the Buddhists and the sensualists? When the Buddhists did not escape being slaves to the senses, how could they ever attain salvation? People who are slaves to their senses can never have an idea of what salvation really is. What a wonderful progress have hey (i.e., the Buddhists) made in ignorance? They have really no equal in this respect. It is certain that this is the result of

---

* These twelve places represent the ten organs of sense and, action and the manas - the principle of attention and the principle of discernment.-Tr.

PAGE 518

their opposing the Veda and God. First they imagined that in the whole world there was nothing but sorrow and suffering and then they formulated this doctrine of Dwadashayatanapuja consist in worshipping objects which are outside the world? If this mode of worship could lead to salvation, we should think a man, with closed eyes, could as well find diamonds.

These people have come to believe in such stupid things by rejecting the Veda and God. Even now if they seek happiness, they should lean on the Veda and God andthereby realize the true aim of human life.

A description of the Buddhist religion by the Vivekavilasa.

The book called **Vivekavilasa** thus describes the Buddha religion:-

- 1. There are four first principles recognized as articles of faith by the Buddhists, viz.:-
    1. ***Sugatadeva**, otherwise known as Buddha, is the Lord worthy of homage.*
    2. *The universe is transient in nature.*
    3. *All men and women should endeavor to be good.*

4. *All should study the science of tatwas or true principles.*

- *2. "Let a man first understand that this world is a vale of tears, it is , then, that he can make any progress. Here follow the successive steps of this (progress)."*
- *3. "There is nothing but sorrow and suffering in this world. Let a man realize that there are five Skandhas or mundane forms of consciousness which are as follows:-*
    1. *Rupa Skandha*
    2. *Vijnana Skandha*
    3. *Vedana Skandha*
    4. *Sanskara Skandha.*

PAGE 519

- *4. The five organs of sense and their five objects, the principle of attention, the principle of discernment are the twelve Ayatanas (seats) of dharma (righteousness).*
- *5. The springing up of passions, such as love and hatred, in the heart of man is called Samudaya. The soul, and its nature (and attributes) constitute Akhya which, again, gives rise to Samudaya."*
- *6. "All impressions are of a transient nature; cessation of desires is the path of Buddhists and the resolution of the soul into nothing constitutes (their) salvation."*
- *7. "The Buddhists believe in only two kinds of evidence - Direct Cognition and Inference. Vaibhashika, Sautrantika.*
  Yogachara and Madhyamika.
- *8. "Vaibhashika holds that all objects, whose knowledge exists in our consciousness, have an objective existence, because a perfect man (i.e., a Buddhist) cannot believe in the existence of what is not present in his consciousness; while Sautrantika holds that all objects have only a subjective existence, they do not exist in the outside world."*
- *9. Yogachara believes that the reasoning faculty has a form, while Madhyamika believes in the existence of the ideas of objects exist (in the outside world)."*

PAGE 520

- *10. "All the four kinds of Buddhists believe that salvation consists in the cessation of love and the like passions in (human) consciousness."*
- *11. To use deer skin (as a seat) and water-gourd)for carrying water), shave the head, beard, and moustache, etc., wear garments made of bark, eat before 9:00 A.M., avoid seclusion and wear re-colored clothes constitute the fashion of the Buddhistic mendicants."*

A. ~

- 1. If Sugatadeva, otherwise called Buddha, alone is the deva or Lord of the Buddhists (we should like to know) who was his teacher?
- 6. If the world is transient in nature, one on seeing an object again after a long time should not be able to recollect that it is the same as he had seen before, nor should that object have been there, no one, hence would have been able to remember it. If the Buddhists really believe in the doctrine that the world is transient, their salvation will also be of momentary duration.
- 8. If all objects that are perceived be possessed of consciousness, even inert substances should possess consciousness and conscious exertion. Now how could that which is perceptible to the senses be nothing?
- 9. If the intellect possesses a form, it should be visible. If the outside world exist only our consciousness and has no objective reality, it can never be true, since there can be no perception without the existence of objects whose percepts are formed in our consciousness.

- 10. If the cessation of passions and desires constitutes salvation, sushupti (dreamless sleep) should also be regarded as salvation, but such a belief opposed to the dictates of knowledge is not worthy of acceptance.

We have very briefly discussed some of the doctrinal points and beliefs of the Buddhists. All enlightened and thoughtful men after going through this (description of their beliefs, etc.) will know

PAGE 521

how much learning the writers of the Buddhistic scriptures possessed and what kind of religion Buddhist is. The Jainees also share these beliefs.

Now we shall mainly discuss the Jain religion.

The belief in four substrata.

It is written in the **Prakarnaratnakara**, Part 1, called Nyaychakrasara, that the Buddhists believe in five substrata (which are renewable in different ages) viz:-

1. Akasha - a subtle form of matter, something like ether.
2. Time.
3. The soul.
4. Pudgala - material atoms.

A. ~ The belief of the Buddhists with regard to the substrata being new in each age is quite erroneous, as Akasha, time, the soul and atoms can never be new or old, since they are beginningless and imperishable on account of being factors in the causation (of the universe). How can then such terms as new and old be applicable to them.

The belief in six substrata .

The Jainees believe in six substrata which are as follows:-

1. *Dharma.*
2. *Adharma.*
3. *Akasha.*
4. *Pudgala - material atoms.*
5. *The soul.*
6. *Time.*

They also hold that out these six, time is not an astikaya (a substratum), it is only supposed to be a substratum but it is not really so.

- *1. **Dharma** is the substratum, which exists in the soul and Pudgala - material atoms - (in which changes are brought about by changes in motion), and becomes the emans of sustaining motion. It is to be found in countless places, worlds and in an unlimited measure.*
- *2. **Adharma** is that substratum which is the means of maintaining rest in the soul and the material atom in which changes have been wrought by rest.*
- *3. **Akasha** is that omnipresent substratum which is the support of all souls and material atoms and in which they move about and their ingress and egress take place.*

- *4. **Pudgala** (primordial matter) is that substratum which is the cause (of the universe); it is also invisible, eternal and simple. It is known by its effects such as taste, color and smell, and is subject to development and disintegration.*
- *5. The**Soul** (the soul) is that substratum which is the seat of consciousness, and is of service in acquiring knowledge and*

PAGE 522

is affected by countless changes (wrought in its environments). It is the doer (of acts) and reaper (of fruits).

- ***Time** (Kala) is that which is indicative of the above-mentioned five substrata being near or far, new or old and in which all the present events take place.*

A. ~ The belief of the Jainees (in the existence of the above-mentioned six substrata) is also untenable, since Dharma (righteousness) Adharma (unrighteousness) are not substrata but attributes (of the soul), hence they have no separate existence from the soul. it would have been alright, if they had believed in (four substrata viz.), Akasha, atoms, the soul, and time.

The Vaisheshika Shaastra teaches that there are nine substrata, viz., Prithvi, Apa, Teja, Vayau, Akasha*, time, space, the soul (human or Divine) and the manas. This teaching alone is the right one, because these mine distinct substrata have been ascertained (by the philosophers). It is sheer prejudice on the part of the Buddhists to believe in one conscious entity - the soul - and refuse to believe in the other - God.

The seven Bhangas of the Buddhists and the Jainees.

The seven Bhangas or Periphrases and Syadvada** of the Buddhist and Jainees are as follows:-

- *1. To affirm the existence of an object constitutes the first Bhanga. For example, when we say "The pot exists," we affirm its existence and negative its non-existence.*
-
- *2. To affirm the non-existence of an object constitutes the second Bhanga. For example, when we say "The pot does not exist," we negative its existence.*
- *3. To affirm the existence of an object but to deny its being different from what it is not constitutes the third Bhanga. For example, when we say, "The pot exists but it is not a*

---

* These terms have already been explained in the 3rd chapter of this book.-Tr.

**Syadvada is an assertion of probability (Philosophy), it also means a form of Scepticism.

PAGE 523

(piece of) cloth." We affirm the existence of the pot and deny its being a (piece) of cloth. This is quite distinct from the first two Bhangas.

- *4. To affirm the existence of an object and deny its existence if looked upon as a second object of the dame kind constitutes the fifth Bhanga. For example, it is wrong to call a pot a (piece of) cloth. It is right to affirm ghatship* (i.e., the fact of its being a pot) of a ghat (pot) and wrong to affirm potship* [i.e., the fact of its being a (piece of) cloth.*
- *6. To affirm, that it is not right to call an object what it is not, and that whatever it is and that it is, it is right to speak of its as such, constitutes the sixth Bhanga. For example,*

whatever is not a pot should not be spoken of as a pot, and whatever is a pot is so and should be spoken of us as such.

- *7. To affirm that it is desirable to speak of another (object) such as a pot, constitutes the seventh Bhanga.*

Similarly:-

- *1. "To affirm that the soul is, but does not exist in the dead, inert objects is called the first Bhanga.*
- *2. To affirm that the soul does not exist in the dead, inert matter constitutes the second Bhanga.*
- *3. (To affirm that) the soul is indescribable constitutes the third Bhanga.*
- *4. To affirm that when the soul is embodied, it becomes manifest, but when it leaves the body, it remains non-manifest constitutes the fourth Bhanga.*
- *5.To affirm that the soul is but is indescribable constitutes the fifth Bhanga.*

<* I owe the reader an apology for coining these terms but I am constrained to do so.-Tr

PAGE 524

- 6. *To affirm that the soul not being cognizable by the senses and is not visible constitutes the sixth Bhanga.*
- *7. To affirm that the soul is, because its existence can be inferred, and at the same time it is not because it is not visible, that it is not unchangeable, on the other hand it changes every moment, and that it cannot be said of it that after being something constitutes the seventh Bhanga.*

In like manner there are eternal and non-eternal Saptabhangas (seven periphrases). Saptabhangas can be spoken of every object by virtue of its special characteristics and common characteristics, properties and changes (taking place in it).

This is the Saptabhangi and syadvada philosophy of the Buddhists and the Jainees.

A. ~ All the above could be expressed by the use of the terms Anyonyabhava* (or reciprocal negation of identity), Sadharmya (similitude) and Vaiddharma (Dissimilitude). To discard such easy expressions and concoct circumlocutory methods of expressing tho9ught could have no object other than that of ensnaring the ignorant.

Now mark! The soul as a soulless object does not exist, nor does the soul-less object exist as a soul-possessing. The fact of the mere existence of the soul and the dead, inert matter constitutes their similitude, while the fact of one being possessed of consciousness and the other devoid of it constitutes their dissimilitude, in other words consciousness exists in the soul but inertness does not. In like manner, their Saptabhangas and Syadvada become easily intelligible by reflecting a little on the similarities and dissimilarities between the characteristics (of different objects).

---

*It is one of the different forms of non-existence described in Chapter3.-Tr

PAGE 525

Why should then such circumlocutory and absurd expressions be conocted?

Bith the Buddhists and the Jainees equally believe in saptabhanga and syadvada, though there are some minor points on which they are divided.

Discussion on the Jain religion.

1. The Jainees believe in "two principal entities only, viz., one possessed of consciousness, and the other devoid of consciousness; Viveka consists in distinguishing one from the other. A Viveki is one who accepts what is worthy of being accepted and rejects what is worthy ob being rejected."

2. "It is best to reject that senseless religion which teaches that there is a Maker of the Universe, free from passions and desires, Who created the world, and to embrace (the Jain religion which teaches that) the souls is possessed of the highest light and can be realized through (the practice of)Yoga."

They do not believe in any other conscious entity - God - besides the soul. the Buddhists and the Jainees hold that there is no Eternal, Perfect God. Raja Shiva Prasad writes in his book called the Itihas Timirnashak that they have got two names - Jain and Boudddha (Buddhist). These two terms are synonymous. But some of the Buddhists are Vama Margis and eat meat and drink spirituous liquors.

The Jainees differ from them. Mahavira and Gautama Gandharas (lords of hosts) are called Buddhas by the Buddhists, while they have been named Ganthara and Kinavara by the Jainees. Raja Shiva Prashad whose forefathers have been Jaiinees for generations together writes in their Chapter of his book called Itihas Timirnashak that Jina lived altogether about 1,000 years before Swami Shankarcharya.

The Buddhist or the Jain religion prevailed in the whole of Bharatavarsha (India). He then adds the following footnote. "By the term Bauddha (Buddhist religion) we mean that anti-Vedic religion which prevailed in all India from the time of Gandhar Mahavir, or Gautama Swami to that of Swami Shankar and was believed in by the Emperors Ashoka and Samprati. The Jain religion cannot but be included in it. The words Kina from which the word Jain is

PAGE 526

derived and Buddha - from which the word Bauddha (Buddhist) is derived - are both synonymous. The dictionary gives the same meaning of both these words. Both (the Jainees and the Buddhists) believe in Gautama. Besides, Shakyamuni Gautama Buddha is often called Mahavira in the ancient books, such as Dipavansha, of the Buddhists.

it is clear then that in his time at any rate both these religions were one and the same. The foreigners (Europeans) have in their books called them by the name of Buddhists, it is only for the reason that we have not used the term Jainees for the followers of Gautama and have instead called them Bauddha (Buddhists)."

The Amarkosha* says the same thing.:-

"He is called Sarvajna Sugata Buddha, dharmaraja, Tahtagata Samantabhadra, Merajit, Lokajite, (and) Jina, etc." AMARKOSHA 1: 1:8. 9. 10.
Is it not clear even now that Baudha and Jina, or Bauddha (Buddhist) and Jainee, are one and the same?

The ignorant Jainees neither know anything about their own religion nor that of others. Being blinded by prejudice they simply talk nonsense, but those who are learned among them know very well that the word Buddha is synonymous with Jina and Baudha (Buddhist) with Jainee. There is not the least doubt about is.

13. Denial of the existence of God.

The Jainees hold that soul itself becomes God, their Thirthankaras having attained salvation become God. They do not believe in an eternal God.

---

* It is the name of a big Sanskrit lexicon. It was written by Amar Sing who professed Jain religion.-Tr.

PAGE 527

Sarvajna (Omniscient), **Vitaraga** (free from passions of love,, etc.)**Arhan** (worthy of homage),**Kevali** (saved), **Tirthankrit** (sanctified) and **Jina** (victorious) are the six names of the gods of the atheists (Jainees and Buddhists).

Chandrasuri thus describes the nature (and attributes) of the Supreme Deity in his book called the **Aptanishchayalankara**:-
Q. -

1. *"Verily He that is free from such evils as passions of love, etc., worthy of being worshipped in the three worlds, rightly expounds all branches of knowledge is Omniscient and Adorable is the Supreme God."*

   ***Trautatitas** have written to the same effect:-*

2. *"There is no Omniscient, Eternal God demonstrable by ocular evidence, since we do not see one at the present time. In the absence of ocular proof there, can be no inferential evidence, because the inferential proof of an object can only be available after direct perception of a part of it."*
3. *"In the absence of direct perception and inference, testimony or verbal authority also cannot be available in order to prove the existence of an Eternal, Immortal, Omniscient Supreme Spirit. These three proofs being unavailable, Arthavada (praise and dispraise), Prakriti (or life-sketch) and Itihasa (history) can be of not good."*
4. *"Like bahubrihi* compound the existence of the Invisible Supreme cannot be demonstrated. Without hearing about God from the preachers, the reiteration of His nature, attributes, etc., is impossible."*

---

* It is one of the principal kinds of compounds in Sanskrit. In it, two or more nouns in opposition to each other are compounded, the attributive member (whether a noun or an adjective) being placed first and made to qualify another substantive, and neither of the two members separately, but the sense of the whole compound, qualifies that substantive - The Practical Sanskrit-English Dictionary by V. S. Apte, M.A.

PAGE 528

14. Proof of the existence of God.

Besides, one that is first possessed of such faults as passions of love, etc., and then later on

becomes free from them, cannot be God, because when the causes, whose operation helps the soul to free itself from the bondage of evils (such as passions of love, etc.,) cease to act, their effect - the salvation - will come to an end. One that is possessed of finite power and finite knowledge can never be Omnipresent and Omniscient.

Since the soul is by nature circumscribed and possessed of a finite nature, and finite attributes and activity, it can never expound perfectly all the different branches of knowledge, hence your **Tirthankaras** can never become God.

2. Do you only believe in what is perceptible to the senses, and not in what is otherwise? Just as color cannot be perceived by ears, nor sound by eyes; in like manner, the Eternal Supreme Spirit is not perceptible to the senses. He can only be seen by a pure soul through the purity of heart, acquisition of knowledge and the practice of yoga. Just as one cannot reap the advantages of knowledge without acquiring it, likewise the Supreme Spirit cannot be seen without the practice of yoga and gaining the highest knowledge.

Moreover, just as the earth is made directly cognizable by observing its properties, such as form, etc., which are inseparably related to it similarly we become directly cognizant of God by observing the wonderful design of this world. Again, when we are inclined to commit a sin, feelings of fear, shame and hesitation arise in our soul. nor, these feelings are given rise to by the Omniscient Supreme Spirit. We, thus become directly cognizant of the presence of God.

3. The evidence of direct cognition as well as that of Inference being thus available, the evidence of Testimony in support of the Eternal, Beginningles, Omniscient God is also valid. All these

PAGE 529

proofs being available it cannot but be right to praise his powers and attributes, because the nature, attributes and characteristics of an eternal substance are also eternal, hence, there is nothing to prevent us from glorifying the Eternal Supreme Spirit.

4. Jus as no human work can be done without the doer, likewise, this great master-piece - the universe - could not possibly have come into existence without a Maker. Such being the case, even an idiot cannot doubt His existence. On hearing about God from preachers, it also becomes easy to reiterate what one has heard.

Hence, it is wrong on the part of the Jainees to deny the existence of God on the ground that such proofs as direct cognition, etc., are wanting.

15. Denial of the Vedas as the eternal revelation.

Q. -

1. *"It cannot be said of an eternal Shaastraa that it is create, because how could a non-eternal and, therefore, unreliable book correctly explain an Omniscient God?"*
2. *"If the existence of God, is proved on the authority of His word, it comes to this that the truth of an eternal revelation rest on the authority of an Eternal God, while the existence of an eternal God is proved on the authority of His Eternal Word. This is an argument in a circle."**

3. *"When you hold the Veda to be true, because it is the Word of an Omniscient God, hoe can you, then, prove the existence of God on the authority of that very Veda? In order to prove that God exists and the Veda is His Word, you will have to look for some other authority. Hence there will be no finality in authority.***

---

* Literally it would mean that they, i.e., God and the Veda will be subject to anyonyashraya dosha, i.e., the charge of being dependent on each other or arguing in a circle.-Tr.
** In Sanskrit philosophy it is called anavastha dosha and is regarded as one of the faults of reasoning. It means absence of finality or conclusion, or an endless series of statements or causes and effects.-Tr.

PAGE 530

16. Response to the denial of the Vedas as the eternal revelation.

A. ~ We (believers in the Veda) hold that God, His nature, attributes and actions are eternal. Eternal and beginningless substances cannot be subject to anyonyashraya dosha, i.e., the charge of being dependent on each other for authority. Just as an effect is known by its cause an vice versa, and the nature and properties of a cause reside permanently in its effect, while those of an effect in its cause; in like manner, God and His infinite attributes, such a knowledge, etc., being eternal, the Veda which is God's Word, cannot be charged with anavastha dosha (absence of finality in authority).

You believe your tirthankaras to be God. Now, this can never be true, because unless they had parents, their bodies could not be formed. How could they have, then, practiced austerities and attained knowledge and salvation? What is the results of combination must have a beginning, since combination presupposes separate existence (of the constituent elements).

Hence you should believe in an Eternal Creator of the world. However great siddha* a man may be, he can never perfectly understand the construction of the human body. Besides, when a siddha passes into the condition of dreamless sleep, he does not remain conscious of any thing. Again, when a man is afflicted with (physical or mental suffering, his knowledge also diminishes.

no one but Jainees with warped intellects could believe an entity which is possessed of finite power and is circumscribed as God. If you say that those tirthankaras were born of their parents, whose children were their parents and so on. There will thus be an absence of finality.

17. A DISCUSSION ON THEISM AND ATHEISM.

Now we give here question** set forth, in part II of the Prakarna Ratnakar on theism and atheism, with our answers:-

Q. - Nothing happens in this world as the result of the Will of God. Whatever happens in this world as the result of the Will of God. Whatever happens is the result of deeds.

---

* A siddha is one who has attained the highest state of perfection possible to a man.-Tr.
** These have been approved of, and published by many a well-known Jainee.

PAGE 531

A. ~ If everything is the result of deeds, who is the doer of deeds? If you answer that the soul is the doer (of deeds) we ask who created the organs such as ears with which the soul does deeds? If you answer that they are beginningless and it is in their nature to come into being, we rejoin that what is beginningless can never cease to exist, hence salvation will be impossible.

If you say that like Pragabhavavat (that kind of non-existence which did not exist before it came into being) it has no beginning but has an end, all will be freed of the necessity of doing deeds without any effort on their part. If there were no God, (the giver of the fruits of their deeds to souls) no soul will ever, of its own free-will, suffer punishment for its sins, just as burglars and other criminals do not voluntarily suffer punishment for their crimes such as burglary, it is the law that compels them to do so; in like manner, it is God Who makes the soul reap the fruits of its actions, - God or bad, otherwise all order will be lost; in other words, one soul will do deeds while the other will reap the fruits thereof.

Q. - God is actionless, because of He did any deeds He would have to reap the fruits thereof. Hence you should also believe like us in the perfect beings who have attained salvation and are actionless.

A. ~ God is not actionless, on the other hand, He is active. Why is He not active when He is a Conscious Being? When He is active, He cannot be actionless. No enlightened man can believer in your fictitious God who is not other than your tirthankaras - human souls who have attained the state of salvation, since whoever becomes God through the operation of certain causes would become non-eternal and dependent on causes etc.

Such a God was a mere human soul before he attained God-head and then, through some cause or another, he became God, some day he will again become a soul as it can never get rid of its own nature. It has been a soul for an infinite number of years and will remain so eternally. Hence it is right to believe in the Eternal, Self-existent God.

Now mark! The soul at the present time does acts - virtuous or sinful - and reaps the fruits thereof - pleasure or pain, but God does not. Had God not been active, He would not have been able to create the world. If you believe acts to be beginningless but perishable like pragabhvavat, they will not stand in intimate, inseparable relation to the soul, and if this be the cause, they will be sanyogaja (the

PAGE 532

result of union*) and hence perishable. If you believe that the souls in the state of emancipation are actionless, (we should like to know) if they are possessed of consciousness or not. If you answer in the affirmative, then it is clear that they do possess mental activity, but if you deny them consciousness (we ask) do they, then. Become dead, inert like stones in the state of emancipation, lie in one place and remain idle? If you say yes, you salvation is no salvation at all but darkness and bondage.

Q. - God is not All-pervading, because if He be so, all objects could be possessed of consciousness, and men should not be divided into four Classes, viz., Brahman, Kshatriya, Vaishya and Shudra some of which are higher than others. The same God pervading all there should be no inequality among human beings.

A. ~ The 'pervader' and the pervaded are not one and the same; on the other hand, one that is pervaded is localized, whiles the pervader is present in all places, just as ether pervades all, while the earth and other objects such as a pot and a piece of cloth are localized, but the ether and the earth are not one; in like manner, God and the Universe are not one. Just as ether pervades all objects but they do not become conscious (like God).

Just as a learned man and an ignorant man, a righteous man and an unrighteous man are not equal, in like manner, on account of differences in their qualities, such as knowledge, in actions such as truthfulness in speech, and in disposition, such as gentleness (Brahmans, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Shudras and outcast are regarded unequal). The duties and qualifications of the four Classes, have already been dealt with, (Vide Chapter 4).

18. The act of creating of first human beings without parents

Q. - If God be the author of creation what is, then, the use of parents?

A. ~ Males and females created by God in the beginning of creation were not the result of sexual congress. This is called aishwari shrishti; but He is not the Authorof Jaivi Srishti (i.e., creation which is the result of sexual union). God cannot do what is the work of the soul. God has created trees, fruits,

---

* i.e. not inherent in or inseparably related to the soul but united to it in other words, they are a sort of accretion.-Tr.

PAGE 533

medicinal herbs and cereals, etc.; if man would not take cereals, etc., thrash and grind them and make them into bread and eat it, will God do these things in his place? The soul could not even exist if it did not do its work. Hence it rests with God to create (human) bodies in the beginning of Creation (but after He has done so) it becomes the work of man to procreate children, etc.

19. Why did God get Himself involved in the troubles and worries of the world?

Q. - Why did God get Himself involved in the troubles and worries of the world, when He is Eternal, Beginningless, Conscious, All-Blissful and All-knowledge? Even an ordinary man would not give up his pleasures and take to what entails pain and suffering, why should God have done such a thing?

A. ~ The Supreme Spirit is never involved in troubles and worries of the world, nor does He ever give up His Blissful state, since he that he that is circumscribed is involved in pain and ignorance but not one who is All-pervading. Who but the Eternal, Conscious, All-Blissful and Omniscient Supreme Spriti could create the world.

The soul does not possess the power of creating the world nor does inert matter possess the power to mold itself, hence it is the Supreme Spirit alone Who creates the world ad also remains in blissful state. Just as God has created this world out of the material atoms, likewise it is He who has ordained that children should be born of their parents, - their efficient cause.

Q. - Why did give up the bliss of Emancipation and bother Himself with the creation, sustenance and dissolution of the universe?

A. ~ God is Ever-free and Eternal. He does not act like your Tirthankaras who lived in one place and were in bondage before they were emancipated. He that possesses an infinite nature, infinite powers, infinite attributes, infinite activity does not become subject to bondage by creating, sustaining and dissolving this little - compared to God - world.

Bondage and emancipation are correlated. Bondage has reference to Emancipation and vice versa. How could emancipation be predicted of Him Who was never in bondage. It is the circumscribed soul that becomes subject to bondage and emancipation. The Infinite, All-pervading, Omnipresent God does not become subject to bondage or emancipation, dependent upon particular causes. That Supreme Spirit is, therefore, called Ever-free.

Q. - The soul can reap the fruits of its deeds without the instrumentality of a higher power even as intoxicants such as

PAGE 534

Indian hemp (Cannabis Indica) inebriates a man without any extrinsic aid. Hence, God is not the giver of fruits (of deeds).

A. ~ Just as a dacoit or a burglar does not voluntarily go to jail, nor does (a homicide) of his free-will, mount the gallows it is the king by whom those sentences are executed.

Likewise God justly punishes the soul for its sins in accordance with the laws ordained by Him because no soul wants to suffer punishment for its evil deeds. Hence the necessity of a Just Ruler of the Universe is established.

Q. - There is not one God in the universe, all the emancipated souls become God.

A. ~ This assertion is altogether absured, because the soul, being emancipated after having been in bondage, must necessarily become subject to bondage again, because it is not free by nature. Your twenty-four Tirthankaras were in bondage before they were emancipated, hence they will necessarily become subject to bondage again. If there are many gods, don't they quarrel and wrangle with each other just as men do here?

20. Did the universe came into existence by itself?

Q. -O Idiot! There is no Maker of this world. The Universe has come into existence by itself.

A. ~ This is a great blunder of Jainees. Can an act ever be done without a doer? Can an effect ever come into being without any effort on the part of the doer? Has anyone ever seen wheat being ground into flour and flour made into bread without the agency of man and the bread going without any effort on their part down the throats of the Jainees?

Cotton is never see n to be transformed except through the instrumentality of man, into thread and clothes such as a coat, a dhoti,* a handkerchief, a jacket, a turban in the cotton fields before it is sent into towns? When such is not the case, how could this multifarious world with its wonderful construction, come into being without a Maker?

If you, through sheer prejudice, hold on to the belief that the universe came into being without the instrumentality of a higher power, you ought to prove to us by ocular demonstration that the above-mentioned articles, such as clothes, come into existence without the agency of man. When you can't do it, how can a sensible man, then, ever believe in your most unwarrantable statements.

---

* Clothing covering the lower half of the body (male).

PAGE 535

Q. - Is God Virakta (one who has renounced all pleasure) or Mohita (one who is attached to worldly objects)? If HE be Virakta why did He bother himself about creating this world? But if He be Mohita, He could not possess the power to create the world.

A. ~ Neither Vairagya (Renunciation) nor Moha (infatuation) can be predicated of God, because He that is all-pervading can neither accept nor renounce anything. There is nothing higher than God, nor is there anything that is unattainable to Him, hence He cannot be attached to anything. Renunciation and infatuation can be predicated of the soul and not of God.

Q. - Should you hold that God created the world and gives souls the fruits of their deeds, He would be involved in the manifold affairs of this world and will consequently be afflicted with misery.

A. ~ When a righteous, and learned judge of this world, who discharges manifold duties and awards men just fruits of their deeds, does not get involved in his affairs nor is afflicted with miser, why should the Great God, possessed of Infinite powers, be involved in the affairs of this world, and afflicted with misery?

You, through your ignorance, seem to think that God is also like you or one of your Tirthankaras. Now, this is the result of your lack of knowledge. Should you desire to rid yourself of your ignorance and the like evils you should depend on the Veda and other Shaastraas for guidance. Oh, why do you doubt and stumble?

21. Discussion of the Scriptural aphorisms of the Jain religion.

Now we shall show, on the authority of their (scriptural) aphorisms, what the beliefs of the Jainees with regard to the universe are. We shall briefly give the meaning of the Sutras (Scriptural aphorisms) and then discuss them in order to show how far they are right and how far wrong.

"This world has no beginning nor an end. Neither it was ever created, nor will it ever perish; in other words, this world has never been created by anyone." Ratnasara Part2: 60, 2.

In the above-mentioned discussion on theism and atheism it has been stated.
O, idiot! There is no creator of the world. It was never made, nor will it ever perish." (A discussion beteen Mahavira and Gautama)

PAGE 536

A. ~ That which is the result of combination (of different elements) can never be beginningless or endless. An effect must have a beginning as well as an end. All objects of this world are the result of the combination of their constituent elements, and are subject to creation and dissolution, why is not this world, then, subject to creation and dissolution, had your Tirthankaras possessed correct knowledge, they would not have written such impossible things (in their books).

You are as ignorant as the founders of your faith were. A man who believes what you Jainees say can never know the true nature of things. Why can't you believe that which is clearly the result of the combination of its constituent elements is subject to creation and dissolution? It is clear, then, that the teacher or the founders of the Jain religion were not acquainted with he sciences of Geography and Astronomy, nor do the Jainees, at the present moment, possess any knowledge of these subjects, other wise how could they have believed in, and taught, the under-mentioned incredible things.

Mark! According to the Jainees, even the earth is the body of a soul: they also believe in such creatures whose bodies are made of water. No man could ever believe in such things.

Now, her are a few samples of the false teachings of their Tirthankaras whom the Jainees believe to be possessed of correct knowledge and the state of God-head.

22. Time or age of creation.

*Time has been described in the **Ratnasarabhaga** [The Jainees believe this book to be authoritative. It was printed and published at the Jain prabhakar Press, Benares, by Nanak Chand Jati, on the 28th April, 1879 A.D.] on page 145 thus:-*
Samya is called Sukshmakala (smallest period of time).

Asankhyata Samyas =Avati
1, 67, 70, 216 avalis =Muhurtta.
30 Muhurittas =1Divasa (day).
15 Divasas =1 Paksha (fortnight).
2 Pakshas =1 Masa (month)
12 Masas =1 Varsha (year).

[7,000,000x10,000,000+56,000x10,000,000] Varshas= 1Purva.
Asankhyata Purvas = 1 Palyopamakala.

PAGE 537

Now, as to the exposition of the meaning of the word Asankhyata.

Let a pit, square in shape, each side of which is four Kisas* ling and the same in depth be dug, let it be filled with pieces of the hairs of the body of juguli men in the following manner:-
The hair of a juguli man is , 4,096 times finer than that of an ordinary man of our days, in other words, 4,096 hairs of a juguli man make one hair of an ordinary man.

Now, take the hair of a juguli man about one finger's breadth and length and divide it into 8 parts and then repeat this process seven times and you get altogether 2,097,152 pieces. Fill the above-described pit with such pieces of hair. Then get one piece of hair out of the pit in 100 years, when all the pieces of hair have been removed in this way and the pit is emptied, the time occupied by this process is still Sankhyata (not Asankhyata).

When each of those pieces in again divided into Asankhyata pieces and the pit is again filled with such pieces of hair so compactly that even if the army of an Emperor of the whole earth were to pass over the pit, it should not make any impressions on it. Then let each piece of hair be taken out once in one hundred years, when that pit is thus emptied, the period covered by the whole process is called purva,. Such Asankhyata Purvas make one Palyopamakals.
10,000,000 x 100,000,000 Palyopamakals = 1 Sagaropama kala.
1,000,000 x 10,000,000 Sagaropawakals = 1 Utsarpani.
1 Utsarpani+1 Avasarpani = 1 Kala Chakrat Kala (or one cycle of time).
Ananta Kalachakras = 1 pudgala paravrita. Ananta Kala is that which is beyond the calculation of time given in the Jain Scriptures and has been exemplified by nine illustrations.
Such Ananta Pudgala paravritas have passed since the soul has been wondering about.

Now, will you, mathematicians be able to calculate the time given in the Jain books, and will you be able to believe it to be correct? The Tirthankaras of the Jainees had studied a novel kind of mathematics, such are the teachers and followers of the Jain faith. Their ignorance is unfathomable. We give here a few more specimens of their dense ignorance.

* 1 mile = 1 and three quarter Kosa. 'n some parts of India 2 miles = 1 kosa. -Tr.

PAGE 538

In the Ratnasarabhaga, on page 133, begins what is called the essence of the Jain Scriptures written by their Tirthankaras from Rishabhdeva to Mahavira who are 24 in number.

23. The bodies of plants and creatures.

On page 148 of the same book it is written that the clay and stones, which are different forms of earth, should be regarded as Prithvi Kayu creatures. The bodies of such creatures are the minutest part of a finger's breadth, on other words, they are very small. Their age is 22,000 years at the most.

There are countless souls in one plant. These are called ordinary plants. Bulbous roots, roots, etc., and Anantakyay, etc., are the souls of ordinary plants. Their age is Anta muhurtta, but this muhurtta is the Jain Muhurtta that has been described above. The simple plant s one which possesses only one sense, (i.e., of touch) and only one soul. the body of such a soul measures 4,000 yojanas in length. [According to the believers in the Puraanas, 1 yojana = 4 kosas but, according to the Jainees, 1 yojana - 10,000 kosas.] Its age is, at the most 10,000 years. (Ratnasarbharga page 149).

Now, we come to the souls which possess a body with two senses, i.e. one body and the other mouth, such as a conch-shell and a louse. Their physical bodies measure, at the most, 48 kosas in length and their age, at the most, is 12 years. The writer has made a mistake here. A creature with such a big body should have a longer duration of life.

Lice with bodies 48 kosas long will surely be found on the bodies of the Jainees alone and they alone must have seen them,. Other people could never be so lucky as they.

Their scorpions, bugs and flies have bodies 1 yojana long. (Ratnasarbhaga page 15o) Their age, at the most, is 6 months. We are sure no one besides the Jainees has ever seen a scorpion 8 miles long. Scorpions and flies 8 miles long are to found according to the Jain faith alone. Such scorpions and flies must be surely found in the houses of Jainees alone and they alone in the whole world must have seen them. Should one of such scorpions sting a Jainee, it is hard to imagine how he would suffer.

The watery creatures such as fish have bodies 1,000 yojanas. One yojana being equal to 10,000 kosas, the body of a water creature must be 10,000,000 kosas long. Their age is 10,000,000 Purva varshas. None but the Jainees could eve have seen such big creatures. The bodies of quadrupeds, such as elephants, range between 2 and 9 losas in length and their age is 84,000 years. No one but he Jainees could ever have seen them,

PAGE 539

and it is they alone who could believe in their existence. No sensible man could believe in such things.

The mammals that live in water have bodies 1,000 yojanas or 10,000,000 kosas long and their age is 100,000,000 years. (Ratnasarabhaga page 151). The founders of the Jain faith alone must have seen such animals with such huge bodies in their dreams. Now are these not huge lies? These things are so utterly incredible.

24. Measurements of the earth.

Now, we come to the measurements of the earth:-
On this crooked planet there are Asankhyata lands and Asankhyata oceans. By the term Asankhyata is here meant the period covered by 2 and half Sagaropamkala. On this earth Jambudwipa is in the midst of all islands. Its area is 100,000 yojanas or 1,000,000,000 kosas. This island is surrounded on all sides by the salt sea. Its are is 200,000 yojanas or 2,000,000,000 kosas. Next to it is the ocean called Kalodadhis; its area is 8,000,000,000 kosas. Further back is Pushkaravarta island. Its interior is divided into zones. One-half of it is occupied by men. Further than this there are countless oceans and islands in which crawling creatures live. (Ratnasarbhaga page 153).

In the Jambu island there are 6 continents:-
1. Himavanta. 2. Airanyavanta. 3. Harivarsha. 4. Ramyaka. 5. Devakru. 6. Uttarkuru.

A. ~ Geographer please! Have you made a mistake in taking measurements of the earth or the Jainees? Will you please correct the Jainees of it be their mistake or correct yourselves if you have made a mistake. Anyhow settle this little matter between yourselves. A little reflection will show that the writers of the Jain scriptures and their disciples were quite ignorant of Geography, Astronomy, and Mathematics.Had they been conversant with these braches of knowledge, why would they have concocted such cock-and-bull stories? Now wonder! Such people believe the universe to be uncreated and deny the existence of God.

The Jainees do not let learned men of other faiths have their books to read, because the books they believe to have been written by their reliable Tirthankaras are full of such things as are opposed to the dictum of knowledge. They do not let other people see them, lest some one might expose their absurdities. No one, besides the

PAGE 540

Jainees, who possesses a grain of sense can ever believe in such yarns. They have introduced all these absurdities, in order to prove that the world is beginningless, but is altogether wrong.

It is true though that the material cause of the world (called prakriti) is beginningless, because those paramanus - the minutest particles of matter which cannot be further divided by any means are the basic principles and are uncreated, but they do not possess any power for ordered formation and disintegration. The paramanus are simple entities. They are separate from each other and inert by nature. They cannot combine with each other in an ordered manner, hence it is imperative that there should be a Conscious Being to combine them who should also be Omniscient.

It is the work of the Beginningless, Eternal, Conscious Supreme Spirit to regulate the sun and the earth and other planets. The physical world, in which combination (of different elements) and a special design are to be seen, can never beginningless.

Should you believe the effect to be beginningless, it will have no cause; in other words, it will be both an effect and its own cause and, therefore, atmashrayi. But this can never be true since a man cannot stand on his own shoulders, nor can one become his own father or son. Hence the necessity of a Maker of the Universe is clearly demonstrated.

25. If God is the Maker, who is His Maker?

Q. - If God be held the Maker of the universe, Who is His Maker?

A. ~There can be no Maker of the (first) Maker, the Cause of the (firsts) Cause. It is only because the first Maker or the first Cause exists that (the world -) and effect - comes into being. That of which combination (with others) or separation (from them) cannot be predicated and which is the cause of the first combination or disintegration can never have another maker or cause.

This subject has been fully discussed in the 8th chapter of this book. The reader is advised to consult that Chapter for further information. How can the Jainees understand the abstruse Science of Cosmogony when they do not even properly understand simple and easy things?

The belief of the Jainees with regard to the world being beginningless and endless, to formation in each substratum being also beginningless and endless, and to attribute each substratum being also endless which is recorded in the Prakaranratnakar is quite untenable, because attributes and other characteristics that are finite must have an end. Even if by the world endless you

PAGE 541

mean countless, you cannot be right. It may be alright from the point of view of the soul but cannot be true from that of God.

The belief that because each object of the world is distinct from all objects and cannot be classified with any other objects, possesses the power of producing an effect, of being transformed into its causal forms and, because there are an endless number of objects in the world, the number of forms will be infinite, and the power residing in objects will also be infinite betrays the ignorance (of the Jainees).

How could a paramanu (an atom) contain endless unclassified formations when it ahs limits? In like manner it is childish to believe that an object can possess endless formations in its attributes, because when a space has limits how can its contents be endless. There are many other cock-and-bull stories told in the scriptures of the Jainees.

Now, we shall set forth (and discuss) the belief of the Jainees with regard to Jiva (the soul) and ajiva (inert matter). In the Jindatsuri it is written:-
"What possesses consciousness is Jiva (the soul) and that which is devoid of it is ajiva (dead, inert matter). Good and righteous atoms constitute virtue and evil atoms constitute vice."

A. ~ The soul and inert matter have, of course, been rightly defined, but it is wrong to say that the inert atoms are righteous or vicious, for, the power of doing the right and wrong can exist only in a conscious entity. Mark! All inert substances are incapable of doing deeds - good or bad.

The doctrine of the immortality of the human spirit is sound, but it is foolish to believe that the human soul, whose capacities are limited, can, when emancipated, attain to a state of omniscience, for whatsoever is finite can never attain infinite power.

The Jainees believe that, the universe, the soul, the actions of the soul, and the concatenation of births, and deaths are eternally co-existent. Here, too, it seems, that Tirthankaras of the Jainees have fallen into a error, for it is impossible that the created universe (i.e., the world which is the product of the combination of elements), the natural process called into being after creation, the actions of men and metempsychosis should be eternal.

If it be so, how can the Jainees believe consistently that the concatenation of existences and the necessity of doing deeds may come to an end? Whatever is eternal can have no end. If it be said that eternal substances are subject to destruction, all eternal substances believed in by the Jainees will naturally be

PAGE 542

thought to be capable of existing only for a limited period .if, however, the word eternal be taken to mean "that which can never come to an end" it is impossible not to believe that human actions and metempsychosis will exist for ever.

This being the case, it is clear that salvation, being dependent on a particular cause, viz., the temporary cessation of actions, will last only for that limited period and not forever. Moreover, on account of the relation between the doer and his actions being perpetual, actions will never cease to exist. The conclusion subverts the Jain beliefs that the Tirthankaras have attained salvation forever and that the ordinary Jainees can also attain to that state.

26. Is emancipation of the soul eternal?

Q. - If a rice-grain be divested of its outer covering or be brought in contact with fire, the seed cannot grow; even so a soul once emancipated (from physical bondage) can never again become subject to births and deaths.

A. ~ The relation between the soul and the necessity of doing deeds does not resemble that which subsists between a rice-grain and its outer covering. It is one of inseparable inherence. The soul is eternal and from eternity action and the soul's power of doing deeds are intimately related. If it be believed that the human spirit is devoid of the power of doing deeds it will naturally follow that all souls are inert like stones and , therefore, incapable of enjoying the bliss which falls to the share of emancipated spirits.

If the soul is emancipated from the bondage of actions, the power of doing which has inhered in the soul from eternity, ti will surely after attaining salvation which (according to the Jain belief) is perpetual, again become subject to metempsychosis, for it is possible that a soul being freed from the necessity of doing deeds - which are the means of salvation - can attain to the state of final beatitude, it is equally possible for it to revert from perpetual salvation to the bondage (of births and deaths).

An effect which is due to the operation of certain causes can never be perpetual. If, however, you believe that salvation is attainable without the adoption of the means of attaining it, what then is the difficulty in believing the soul's (reversion to the state of) bondage is possible without its being under the necessity of doing deeds,

A piece of cloth which has become dirty on account of contact with dirt is cleaned by washing, and can again become dirty; similarly, the soul is placed under the necessity of doing deeds when it has committed sins like dissimulation and been dominated by malice, etc. If you believe that the soul is purified

PAGE 543

by the attainment of true knowledge, by keeping good company and by righteous conduct and is contaminated if the causes which go to contaminate it are in operation, you cannot escape the conclusion that souls in a state of emancipation can revert to the bondage (of births and deaths) and vice versa, for it adventitious circumstances can remove dirt, they can, likewise, bring on pollution. The sound belief, therefore, is that the soul has been subject to metempsychosis and emancipation since creation and is not so eternal.

27. Is the soul always pure or somewhat contaminated?

Q. - The soul was never pure. It is always (somewhat) contaminated.

A. ~ If it was never quite pure, it cannot ever be so. It is possible to remove by washing the dirt that may have soiled a sheet originally clean, but it is impossible to remove its naturally white color. The dir can soil the sheet again, even if it has been once washed; similarly, the emancipated soul can be branded once again with the taint of sin.

28. The belief of reincarnation without the existence of God.

Q. - It is foolish to believe in the existence of God, for a man can take on a new body as a result of deeds done in the past birth.

A. ~ If it be in the power of the soul to take on a new body without Divine instrumentality, it is inconceivable that it will, of its own free will, be re-incarnated amidst happy environments.

The plea that the soul is subject to the fruits of its deeds will not hold good, for even a thief does not go to jail voluntarily, nor does (a homicide) mount the gallows of his own free will. It is the king by whose authority these sentences are executed. You cannot, therefore, but believe that God exists in order to cause the soul to take on new bodily forms and to reward or punish it according to its (good or evil) deeds.

Q. - Even as drinking causes intoxication (without extrinsic aid) so does the soul receive the fruits of its deeds without the instrumentality of any other power.

A. ~ This is absurd! Inveterate drunkards do not fell the effects of intoxication as do those who are not addicted to the

PAGE 544

vice. If your contention be right, those that are sinners of the deepest dye should be punished less severely than those who are not given much to sinful practices.

Q. - Each man is punished according to his natural instincts.

A. ~ If the punishment is due to natural instincts, it cannot be predicated of it that it has begun or ended (for it must always endure). (It is, therefore, clear that the award of reward or punishment is not due to adventitious causes) even as accidental causes soil the clean sheet and their removal restores to it its former purity.

Q. - combination is essential to the production of a result, just as clarified butter cannot be produced unless milk and some acid thing are combined. Why not, then, believe that (reward or punishment) is the result of the union of the soul with an action?

A. ~ Milk and an acid thing are combined through the instrumentality of a third entity. There ought, therefore, be a third entity - God - to establish a relationship between the souls and the fruits of the deeds done by it, for inert substances can never, of themselves, combine methodically and the soul, being possessed of finite power, cannot of itself, receive the fruits of its actions. This shows that, without the operation of laws made by God, the system of rewards and punishment according to deeds done by men cannot work.

Q.- Whoever is freed from the necessity of doing deeds (attains salvation and) becomes God.

A. ~ The power of doing actions, being eternally inherent in the soul, the latter can never be deprived of it.

Q. - The necessity of doing deeds is not beginningless.

A. ~ If it is so, there must have been a time when the soul was incapable of doing deeds, and thus the capacity of doing actions was planted in an entity which did not possess it. Why cannot, then emancipated souls be made to perform deeds? The relation between the doer and the deeds is of an inseparable character and can never cease. What we have written on this subject in the 9th Chapter is, therefore, worthy of belief. The soul can never be equal to God, no matter how extensive its knowledge and power

PAGE 545

are, these latter being necessarily limited. Of course, by force of psychic practices, the soul can secure the development of its knowledge to the greatest possible extent. The arhats among the Jainees believe that, like the body, the soul also possesses the property of extension. This is absurd, for, if it be so, the soul of a little insect could not be contained in the body of an elephant and vice versa.

The soul is a fine entity which can reside even in an atom. Its powers, however, are linked with nervauric and electric forces and the nerves, etc., and it is, therefore, kept informed of all that goes on in the body. If healthy influences operate, it becomes virtuous, and if unhealthy influences operate, it becomes sinful. The following verses clearly set forth the Jain beliefs:-

(1)O man! Only by following that Dharma pain and caused by the concatenation of births and deaths and pursuit of mundane aims is destroyed which has been expounded by a deified Jain saint (lit. one who has subdued his passions). Do thou believe that only Jain preceptors are good teachers and real Devas; Brahma, Harihar and in fact all except the Jain saints, the first of whom was named Rishabhdeva and the last Mahavir, are not worthy of adoration. Whoever worships them with the desire of securing his well-being is a dupe." The upshot of all this is that no good accrues if one does not follow the good Jain faith and its good saints and follows the bad religion and the so-called saints of others.

A. ~ Learned men should mark how stupid the Jain scriptures are.

The regeneration of people groveling in misery is only possible if they follow the system of conduct expounded by Jin who is the God of gods, glorious deified saint, possessed of all knowledge, the expounder of scriptures, pure, free from the stain of vice -, possessed of the qualities of mercy and clemency.

The religion taught by Harihar is not such as can promote the well-being of the world.
The four virtues expounded by the supreme saints are exalted. They are:-

PAGE 546

(1) Mercy, (2) forgiveness, (3) possession of correct knowledge, (4) good company and good conduct.

A. ~ If mercy is not shown to all mankind, it is of no use. The same may be said of forgiveness. It is not good to remain ignorant while boasting of knowledge, to grope in the dark while talking of good company and to mistake starvation (fasting) for good conduct.

The following has been said in praise of the Jain religion:-
"O man! Even if thou canst not perform austerities, reform thy conduct, read the aphorisms, meditate upon the teachings of the Prakaran Ratnakar and other scriptures and bestow charity upon the deserving, do thou believe that the arhat (the Jain saint) alone is the God to whom and to other true preceptors, worship is due from thee and the Jain religion is the best. This is a beautiful belief which will be the cause of your regeneration." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part2, Sutra 2

29. The true meaning of Mercy and compassion.

A. ~Although mercy and forgiveness are good qualities, yet if they be prompted by unreasoning prejudice, mercy becomes equivalent to cruelty and forgiveness becomes as bad as revenge. What we mean to say is that it is not possible to enforce the principle of not causing pain to any living creature on all occasions. Punishing the wicked is, in fact, a act of mercy. If a wicked person be exempted from punishment thousands will suffer at his hands.

This act of (misplaced) mercy will be as much fruitful of mischief as cruelty, and this act of forgiveness will prove as bad as revenge. It is quite true that mercy consists in endeavoring to promote the happiness of all sentient beings and to wean them from sorrow. It does not consist in merely drinking water filtered by means of a piece of cloth or in saving the lives of tiny creatures. This species of mercy is only theoretically believed in by the Jainees; they do not show it in their practical conduct. It is not

PAGE 547

an act of true mercy to feed the needy without distinction of of creed and to reverence and serve the learned men professing a religion other than one's own. If (the teachers of the Jain religion) had the right conception of mercy, they would not have preached as follows:-

"The Jains are strictly prohibited to

1. *praise a person belonging to another religion or to talk of his good qualities.*
2. *T salute him.*
3. *To talk much to him.*
4. *To talk to him frequently.*
5. *To bestow upon him food and clothes.*
6. *To supply odoriferous substances and flower to enable him to worship his idol." Vivekasar page 121.*

Let the wise consider with what feelings of hatred, malice, and hostility the Jainees are actuated in their relations with those who profess a religion different from theirs. Those who show so little consideration for people who do not belong to their religion surely deserve to be called merciless. It is not a act of very great piety to serve the members of one's own family. The Jainees may be called members of one great household (fraternity).A person, therefore, who has absolutely no regard for others will not be called merciful by the wise.

In the Vivekasar (page 108) it is written that the Jainees murdered Namuchi, the Prime Minister, of the then king of Mathura, because they thought him their enemy and the murderers were purified by the performance of penance. Was not this an act calculated to destroy all feelings of mercy and forgiveness?

People whose malice against those who differ from them in religion is so great that they do not scruple to murder them should rather be termed actively hostile than merciful. The definition of good company, etc., are given in Parmagamansar which is a synopsis of the teachings of the Jain saints.

Right faith, good company, knowledge and good conduct - these four - lead to salvation. Yogdeva has given an exposition of these duties.

Possession of a firm and perfectly sincere faith in what the Jain scriptures teach about the soul and other entities and a love for the Jain religion constitute true faith and good company.

"One must believe in those entities in which Jin believed and no others."

The wise call a full or a superficial knowledge of the entities believe in by Jain - a knowledge of them as they really exist - "correct knowledge".

PAGE 548

Good conduct is the renouncing of all connection with other religions - which deserve to be denounced.

30. Five obligatory duties of the Jains.

Again there are five Bratas (obligatory duties):-

- **Ahinsa** - abstention from killing any sentient creature.
- **Sunrita** - sweet speech.
- **Asteya** - abstention from encroaching upon the rights of others.
- **Brahmacharya** - thorough control of the sexual impulses.
- **Aparigraha** - renunciation.

Most of these injunctions are sound, such as those relating to abstention from killing and to the he giving up of theft and other evil practices but the behests enjoining hatred and denunciation of other religions are likely to mar the wholesome effect of these sound teachings also.

In the very first aphorism quoted above it is laid down that the religions expounded by Hari Har, etc., cannot help forward the regeneration of the world. The denunciation of a religion, the study of which makes one learned in all sciences and virtuous, is surely a malicious act.

People who extol to the heavens their tirthankars (saints) who teach doctrines which are absolutely opposed to the laws of nature cannot be prompted by wrong-headedness and unreasoning prejudice.

How absurd that a Jainee should be regarded a good man merely because he declares that the Jain religion is a true religion, even though he be not possessed of good conduct, of knowledge, and of habits of benevolence, while philanthropic and virtuous people who are non-Jainees should be regarded bad men, merely because they do not profess a belief in the Jain religion.

We wonder what to say about such people, except that they are possessed of a defective and childish understanding. The only conclusion that can be drawn from all this is that their teachers were not deeply learned men. They were, on the contrary, selfish. If they had not denounced all religions, no body would have been seduced from the right path and led to believe their false teachings and they would surely have been baffled in their object. Mark! It can be proved that the Jain faith is calculated to ruin people (morally and spiritually) and the Vedic Religion tends to the redemption of this world and that Hari Har. Etc., were the true devas, while Rishabhdeva, etc., were

PAGE 549

the false devas. How would the Jainees like being told this by other people?

31. Further errors of the Jain faith.

We should now expose further the errors of the Jain teachers.

"Whoever disobeys the behests of the Jain saints by deviating from the path carved out by them and thus falls into moral turpitude commits a sin and is involved in misery. It is very difficult to follow duties like - laid down by the Lord of Jain (Tirthankaras) therefore, it is best to always act in such a way that his behests may not be violated." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:6-11.

It is foolish to indulge in self-praise, to extol one's own religion and to denounce other religions. That alone is worthy of praise which is praised by learned men belonging to another faith. Even thieves praise themselves. Does this prove that thievishness is worthy of praise?

Again, the Jain teachers teach:-
"Jus as a ruby, which is embedded in the head of a venomous snake, should not be sought after, even so it behoves the Jainees to shun the company of a non-Jainee, no matter how virtuous and learned he is." Prakaran Pratnakar, Part 2:18.

How erroneous is this teaching! If the Jain teachers and their disciples had been learned men, the would have (tried to inculcate) a love for the learned. When even their tirthankaras were ignorant, how could they be expected to reverence the learned? Who would not like to take hold of gold even if it be lying in filth or dust? It is clear, therefore, that no sectarians are so much biased, perverse, wrong-headed and ignorant as the Jainees are.

Again, the Jaiin scripture says:-
"Let not the Jainees even look at those that are opposed to the Jain religion." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:29

PAGE 550

How stupid this injunction is, the wise can find out for themselves. Theire is no doubt about it that he who preaches the true religion stands in no dread of any body. The Jain teachers know very well that their teachings were absurd and could not stand the test of discussion and, therefore, thought it best to denounce all thus to ensnare fools in their net.

Again, it is taught in the Jain books:-
"All religions that are opposed to the Jain faith lead mankind to sin. It is, therefore, best to shun all other faiths and believe in the Jain religion only." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:6, 27.

This show that the Jain religion teaches its followers to hate, denounce and regard with malice all that does not belong to it. It thus makes people wicked. No sectarians are so unreasonable and violent in their hatred of others as are the Jainees. It is the wicked only who denounce all indiscriminately and praise themselves in hyperbolic terms. Discerning men - no matter to what religion they belong - praise the good points in a religion and express disapproval of the weak points therein.

Here is another specimen of Jain teachings:-
"The other faiths and their teachers dwindle into insignificance, when compared with the Jain faith, the teachings of the Omniscient Jins and the teachers of the Jainees. It means that the Jain

teachers are the true devas and the Jain religion is the true religion; while the teachers of other religions are the false devas and their teachings are false." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 35.

PAGE 551

It seems that the Jainees are like the market -women that sell plums - who always trumpet forth that their plums are sweet, even though they be sour, and invariably run down the plums sold by others. The Jain religion teaches that it is a sin for the Jainees to serve people professing other creeds.

We have already stated that, according to the Jainees, it is best to shun even the good and virtuous among the Non-Jainees even as it is advisable not to seek he ruby embedded in the head of as snake.

But Jains have gone a step further in their denunciation of other religions. Say they:-
All except the Jain teachers are false teachers and are worse than snakes. It is, therefore, not right to see them, to serve or to associate with them, because snakebite kills a man once only but by association with false teachers belonging to non-Jain religions one becomes subject to a concatenation of births and deaths. O good man! Do thou never stand by the side of a non-Jain teacher because thou wilt court misery, if thou served him even a little." Prakaran Tranaakar2:37

Who can possibly be hard-hearted, mistaken, hostile in a greater degree than are the Jainees. Perhaps, the Jain teachers think that if they will not denounce others and praise themselves, no body will serve and respect them. But in reality they are very unfortunate, for so long as they will not associate with, and serve, good and learned men, they will never obtain true knowledge and attain to a right conception of duty. It, therefore, behoves the Jainees to give up their false beliefs and to accept the truths taught by the Veda. In this consists their real well-being.

Again, the Jain saints teach:-
"One must always shun company of him who is past all reform, refractory, and skilful in doing evil deeds. Such a person is sure to compass the ruin of his benefactor. The man who seeks to do good to a false teacher (belonging to another religion) seeks his own ruin even as a person who, prompted by compassion, undertakes to

PAGE 552

remove the bandage from the eyes of a blindfolded lion is eaten up by the animal. It, is therefore, safest to keep away from a false teacher." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:40.

If the Jainees were regarded by others with the same amount of hostility with which the (are taught to) regard all non-Jainees, their lot would become intolerable. If nobody were to do them a good turn, they would grovel in misery and much of hteir work would remain undone. Why do not the Jainees do unto others as they would be done by.

Again, the Jain books teach:-
"What a wonder that the more people respect and reverence preachers whose very sight is abhorrent, who are so wicked that they can be purified only by penance, who are deserving of punishment and vicious, who keep with them (with a view to dupe others) three staves which are the symbols of the fourth, Order, who are Sanyasis or Brahmans, the more the true knowledge, possessed by the Jain saints (that are possessed of discernment) is manifested."Prakaran Ratnakar Part 2: 42

Mark! How can it be possible for anybody to be possessed by vindictiveness, hostility and unreasoning prejudices against others in a greater degree than are the Jainees. Other sectarians have also these weaknesses but not the extent to which the Jains have them. Vindictiveness is at the root of all sins. What wonder, then, if some Jainees are wicked!

Again, the Jain teachers say:-
"People belonging to non-Jain sects which are composed of thieves do not shun (moral) deterioration even as ignorant people who mix with thieves shake off all fear of their noses being lopped off (by way of punishment)." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2f: 75.*

A man's own inner-self is often reflected in his judgment about others. Can it ever be true that the Jain sect alone consists of

---

* This was the punishment usually awarded to thieves in ancient times.-Tr.

PAGE 553

honest men, while other sects are composed of thieves? It is only ignorant persons and those whose intellect has bee perverted on account of association with the wicked that are hostile and vindictive in their treatment of others. There is no religion which enjoins so much hostility towards people belonging to other faiths as does the Jain faith.

Again, the Jain books inculcate:-
"In a former aphorism it has been stated that all to belonging to the Jain religion are preachers of falsehood and the Jainees alone are possessed of true knowledge. Whoever, then, helps forward the cause of a religion started by a preacher of false hood is a sinner." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 76.

If the naumi fast observed in the honor of Chamunda, Kalka and Jawala is a sinful act, why are not the Jain fasts like 'Pajusan' sinful acts. Their fasts involve much pain. The Jainees are right in denouncing the hopus copus of Vama Margis but there seems to be no reason why they should not denounce the worship of their own goddesses like Shasan and Marut.

It cannot be said in reply that these goddesses do not favor cruelty, for it is recorded about the goddess Shasan that she had taken out the eye of one man and of one goat. Why should not that she-fiend be regarded the real sister of Durga or Kalka. It is the height of foolishness on the art of the Jainees to call their fasts Pachchakkhana virtuous acts and to denounce fast like Naumi. True Vratas (fasts) observed by Jainees and others are not good.

Again, their book say:-
"Those who admire prostitutes, mimics and bards, and Brahmans, are in favor of Yajnas and worship false gods and goddesses like Ganesha who should never even be looked at, are themselves sunk in ignorance and mislead others, because they expect those goddesses to gratify all their desires and, therefore, keep away from Jain ascetics." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:82

PAGE 554

It is sheer prejudice on the part of Jainees to call the gods of others false and their own gods true. They denounce the goddess of the Vama Margis but it is strange that they do not call their goddess Shasan cruel. It is recorded about her in the Shardhadin Kritya (page 46) that she aimed a blow at a man and took out one of his eyes, because he had taken supper on a night (on which

he ought to have fasted). Then she took out the eye of a goat and put it in the empty socket of the man. Just see what is written in the Ratan Sagar (Part 2, page 67). The goddess Marut transformed herself into a stone idol to help the wayfarers.

Again, the Jain teachers say:-
It would have been very much better if the non-Jainees - the preachers of falsehood - had not been born at all or had not attained growth, even if born." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 81

Just mark! The Jain religion which has been enjoined by saints and it professed to be based upon mercy enjoins that the death of non-Jainees should be desired. The truth is that the Jainees only talk about mercy (i.e., they do not practice this virtue) and if they do show mercy, it is to tiny creatures and beasts, not to non-Jainee human beings.

Again, it is written in Jain scriptures:-
"It is no wonder if man born in a Jain family attains salvation, but is it surprising if one born in a non-salvation, but is it surprising of one born in a non-Jain family and belonging to a false religion attains final beatitude." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 83.

The upshot of this is that only Jainees attain salvation. All who do not accept that religion got to hell. Is there no wicked man among the Jainees or none that deserves to be sent to hell? Do all of them attain salvation? It is sheer madness to assert that. Who but a simpleton can believe in such absurdities.

PAGE 555

"It is a good thing to worship Jain idols but worshipping idols of non-Jain is no good. Whoever obeys the commandments of the Jain religion is a philosopher, whoever does not is not so." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 90

How funny! Are not Jaiin idols like the idols of the Vaishnavites inert and lifeless? Idol-worship is bad - no matter whether that form of worship is Jain, etc., or Vaishnavite. The Jainees call themselves philosophers and do not consider others so. This shows they know nothing of philosophy.

Again, the Jain religion teaches:-
"Virtues like mercy and forgiveness taught by God Jin constitute Dhaarma (the true ideal of conduct). The commandments of all other teachers lead to sin." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 92.

How unjust is it to assert that none among the non-Jainees is truthful and virtuous? Should not one respect a non-Jainee, even if he possesses a righteous character. This (i.e., the monopoly of religious conduct) could have been claimed for the Jainees if their bodily make had been different from that of others. The Jainees, in lavishing and unbecoming excessive praise upon their books, their saints and their sayings, excel even hired bards.

Here is anther quotation from the same book:-
The increase in the influence and power of gods (i.e., teachers) like Harihar will lead people to hell, the Jainees cannot view this without feelings of horror. When violation of orders promulgated by an earthly sovereign entails upon the offender penalty of death, why will not one who goes against the behests of the Jain God (great teacher) become subject to metempsychosis." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 95

PAGE 556

Look at the Jain's teacher! Now, their real inner motives have been disclosed - not to speak of the trickery and deceptive practices. They cannot hear the enhancement of the temporal influence of Harihar and his followers. If people belonging to other sects accumulate riches, they are consumed with jealousy. Perhaps, they desire that all the worldly belongings of non-Jainees may be transferred to them and that (their adversaries) may be reduced to poverty.

They have compared the commands of their teachers to those promulgated by a king, because these people are liars and cowards. Ti is absolutely necessary to obey all the commands of a king - even those that conflict with the ideals of truthful conduct. We do not think that there are any people more vindictive and malevolent than the Jainees.

Here is another citation from the same work:-
"Only fools are opposed to the Jain religion. Religious preachers, recluses, householders and authors described by the great Jain teacher (Jin) are equal in position to the tirthankaras, noe can equal them." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 1.

How funny! If the Jainees had not been possessed of childlike intellects theyw ould not have pinned their faith to such absurd sayings. These teachers are like the devi monde who take delight in dwelling on their personal charms.

Here is another verse from the same book:-
"If does not behove the Jainees to ease paying homage to the great god (Jin), the Jain preacher, and to give up their faith in the doctrines propounded by the former." Prakaran Ratnakar.

PAGE 557

It appears that the Jainees are perverse, ignorant and biased other wise they would never have said so. The truth is that almost all the teachings of the Jain religion are unacceptable. If even a man possessed of a limited understanding has an occasion to learn something about Jain gods, their books and their preachers, he is sure to make up his mind to have nothing to do with them.

Only those that act in accordance with the teachings of Jin deserve to be adored - not those that contravene those teachings. One must follow the Jain preceptors and none others." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 108

If the Jain teachers had not ensnared ignorant people and driven them before them like dumb cattle, the latter would have been enabled to avail themselves fully of the advantages of life and thus to fit themselves for the attainment of salvation. Would not the Jainees feel aggrieved, if they were addressed as misguided people, liars and preachers of falsehoods? By addressing others in these terms they surely cause them pain. These religious teachers teach many more foolish things like this.

Here is another verse from the Jain literature:-
"Let the Jainees never engage in trade and agriculture, even though they risked their lives by obeying this injunction. These occupations lead one to hell." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2: 109

It is, indeed strange that the Jainees take to these occupations (in defiance of the behests of their religion) and do not give them up. If they gave them up, they could not support themselves. If all people followed this Jain commandment, the Jainees would get nothing to eat and could not live. It is foolish to preach such absurdities. But the Jain teachers are not much to blame. They

PAGE 558

were devoid of learning and had never associated with the learned and , therefore, thoughtlessly wrote down such things.

Here is another verse from the same book:
"People that believe scriptures whose teachings are oppose to those of Jain scriptures are extremely wicked. Let no one believe or speak anything against the Jain religion even if by doing that he can gain his end. Let no other religion be accepted even if by so doing some be gained." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:121

All the Jain teachers, not excepting founder of the religion, have done nothing but indulged in vilification of other religions. Nor is it expected that future Jain teachers will depart from this course. When, a selfish object is to be gained, the Jainees are found willing to enlist as disciples of those who themselves are disciples of others. What then, is the use of indulging in boggodocia like the above. It is a pity that they feel no shame in doing this.

We quote another verse from the same book:
"If a man were to say that the Jain ascetics are virtuous and so are others, he would be doomed to pass billions of years in hell and thereafter will be re-born as a despised creature." Prakaran Ratnakar

How stupid! These enemies of enlightenment have laid down this damning injunction, so that none may dare contradict their teachings. But this is impossible. How can one go on arguing with these people. They think it a pleasing occupation to indulge in misrepresentation and to gain their (selfish) object by denouncing and crying down other religions.

Here is another specimen of their teachings:
"Even if a man cannot act up to the precepts of the Jain religion, he crosses the sea of pain and misery if he only believes this to be the only true religion in the world." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:127

PAGE 559

What a nice trap have the Jainees set to attract fools who would like nothing better than to be placed in the way of attaining salvation without having to do (righteous) deeds. We do not think that there exists a religion more idiotic than this.

Mark! What the scriptures of this religion teach:
"If a man has only a desire to believe in Jain scriptures and never to pin his faith to non-Jain books he can cross the sea of misery." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:128.

These verses have been composed solely with a view to entrap simpletons, for no one can cross the sea of misery in this world, simply by ent4ertaining this desire, and escape suffering pain of evil deeds done in the past birth. If the Jain teachers had not preached such false and foolish notions - notions oppose to the dictates of knowledge -, their followers would have taken to the study of the Vedas and other true Shastras, found out the truth and renounced all belief in the teachings of their foolish books.

Ignorant fools have, however, been completely entrapped. It is possible that some wise, man, who associates with learned men, may snap asunder these chains but a fool can never do that.

Here is another Jain teaching:
"Only those people attain happiness and become virtuous that study books on Grammar,

Annotations Books containing authoritative expositions and codes of Law written by the Jain teachers - not those who study books written by others." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:138

Is it righteous conduct to suffer the pangs of (self-imposed) starvation (fasting)? If going without food and drink constitutes righteous conduct there is not reason why people that starve when famine decimates a country or those that starve because they have no means of subsistence should not become sanctified and thus attain righteous ends.

In point of fact neither such people are purified in this way nor are the Jainees. Such people, instead of attaining happiness, suffer pain, for they are consumed by internal heat (which gets no fuel). In reality,

PAGE 560

continence, equity and truthfulness in speech constitute various conduct and mendacity and inequity constitute vicious conduct. "Desirable conduct" may be defined as the establishment of living and benevolent relations with all. Going without food and drink - as the Jainees do - has nothing to do with virtue. Whoever accepts the guidance of the Jain aphorisms jumps into a sea of misery, for much of what they teach is false. Only very little of it is based upon truth.

Here is another Jain aphorism:
"The Jaine religion is accepted only by those that are possessed of good fortune; in other words, all non-Jains are ill-starred wretches." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:148

Is not this statement erroneous and false. Does fortune never smile on non-Jains and does fate never frown upon Jainees? The Jain teachers say that the Jainees should not quarrel among themselves, but, should love one another. This shows that no harm will accrue if they will quarrel with the followers of other religions. This is also foolish, for good men always make it a point to love good men and to reform bad men.

Again, the Jain teachers hold that Brahmans, ascetics, sanyasis and recluses are enemies of the Jain religion. How can the Jainees be said to cultivate the virtues of mercy and forgiveness when they regard all people with feelings of hostility and denounce them. Hostility towards others is inconsistent with forgiveness and mercy. Nothing is calculated to do greater injury to others than this attitude.

The a Jainees are the embodiments of hostility towards others - no other people approach them in this matter,. How would the Jainees take it, if all the 24 tirthankaras from Rishabhdeva to Mahavir were called jealous, vindictive and mendacious, and the Jainees are denounced as people suffering from insanity and their religion were regarded as a hellish faith inculcating venomous doctrines? The reason why the Jainees are suffering from incalculable pain is that they are given to an unreasonable denunciation of other faiths. It would be very much better if they gave up this habit.

Now we quote another aphorism:-

PAGE 561

"All true disciples (Jainees) have one God, one teacher, one religion. It is the highest virtue to protect the Jain idols, Jain temples and the property attached thereto and to worship Jain idols." Prakaran Ratnakar, Part 2:160.

The fact is that idol-worship with all its attendant evils originated with the Jainees and, therefore, the Jain religion is at the root of all fraud.

"All Shravaks (Jain disciples) should first prostrate themselves at the gate of a temple. When he has prostrated himself at the second gate he should say, 'i am a true disciple'. After prostrating himself at the third gate, he should say to himself, 'How many have we' saints.. after prostrating himself at the fourth gate, he should mutter to himself. 'Of the four principal aims of life salvation takes the foremost rank.

True knowledge is the means of attaining it and is, therefore, called yoga.' These are the six ways in which a man can be purified of all his sins. They also are said to constitute yoga. 'We shall realize them.' At the fifth gate, let him think of prostrating himself before the idol, of presenting offerings to it and of worshipping it in the mind. At the sixth gate he must think of the duty of repeating legends - the nine authoritative legends."

Further on, in the same book, it is written that at the time of supper the idols of tirthankaras should be worshipped and the temple-door should be worshipped. The ceremony connected with door-worship is very tedious. As regards temple-building, it is written that a man will attain salvation if he gets old temples rebuilt and renovated.

The worshipper is enjoined to sit in the temple in the prescribed manner, to offer his worship with great reverence, to mutter texts like "Salutation to the great God Jin" at the time of bathing the idol and to mutter texts like "offer water, sandal, flowers, incense and lamps" at the time of offering fragrant substances. It is written on page 12 of Ratnasar

PAGE 562

Bhaga that the Jain priest are not even subject to the authority of a king. On page 3 of Ratnasar Bhaga it is written that, by worshipping idols, one becomes immune form sickness and is freed from the principal vices. A man once offered to an idol a flower worth five shells and got in exchange sovereignty of 18 kingdoms. His name was Kumarpal, all these statements are mendacious and are meant only to ensnare fools.

There are many Jainees who worship idols and yet fall ill and by worshipping idols do not obtain the sovereignty of even one acre of land. If the offering of a flower worth 5 shells can secure sovereignty, why do not the Jainees become master of the entire world by offering to their idols many flowers worth 5 shells each. Why do they submit to punishment inflicted by the government of their country.

If idol worship enables one to cross the ocean of misery, what need is there, then, for acquiring true knowledge, good company, and practicing virtue.

On page 14 of the Ratnasar it is written that the water of immortality is to be found in the thumb of Gautam and that, by meditating on him one gains the desired end. If it be really so, all the Jainees would become immortal, but, as a matter of fact - they are subject to death. This shows that this story is simply meant to lead fools astray. There is o truth in it.

The verse which they chant at the time of offering worship is written on page 92 of the Ratnasar Bhaga. Ti means, "May we worship the (idols of) the Tirthankars - who had completely mastered their passions and offer to them water, sandal, rice, flowers, incense." This is the reason why we say that idol-worship is originated with the Jainees.

"In a Jain temple one is not dominated by inordinate affection. It enables one to cross the ocean of worldliness." (vide Vivekdar, page 21)

"Idol worship leads to salvation and by visiting a Jain temple one becomes possessed of admirable qualities. Whoever worships the idols of the Tirthankaras by offering them water and sandal is released from hell and goes to heaven." (vide Viveksar, pages 51 and 52.

"By worshipping the idol of Rishabhdeva, placed in a Jain temple, one attains righteous ends, wealth, the fulfillment of desires and salvation." (vide Viveksar, page 55).

PAGE 563

"One who worships Jain idols is freed from all worldly sorrow," (vide Viveksar, page 61).

Now, mark! How stupid and foolish are these statements! If it were true that in this way, i.e. (by worshipping idols) one is weaned from sin, ceases to be dominated by inordinate affection, crosses the sea of worldliness, becomes possessed of good qualities is released from hell and goes to heaven, attains righteous ends, wealth, fulfillment of desires, and salvation, and is freed from sorrow, how is it that all the Jainees are not happy and do not become possessed of all the good things of the earth.

On page 3 of the same book, it is written that those that have installed Jain idols solve the problem of bread from themselves and their ancestors. On page 225 of the same book, it is written that it is a very bad act to worship the idols of Shiva, Vishnu, etc. Their worship leads to hell. Now, it may be asked as to why Jain idols will not lead one to hell, if those of Shiva and Vishnu do so.. If it be said in reply that the Jaine idols are symbolic of renunciation, placidity and are such as confer blessings, the questions arises as to why Jain idols, which are installed in temples costing thousands of pounds, and to which sandal and saffron are offered, should be regarded as symbolic of renunciation, if the idols of Shiva, etc., which are sometimes under the canopy of the heaven cannot be so regarded. If you speak of placidity, all inanimate substances look placid because they cannot move.

Q. - Our idols are good, because they are not adored with clothes ornaments, etc.

A. ~ It is a beastly act to keep idols representing human beings in a state of primitive nudity exposed to the public view.

Q. - Jus as one's passions are excited if he looks at the idol of a female, so good qualities will be cultivated if one looks at the idol of saints, Yogis and sadhus.

A. ~ If you believe that, by looking at a stone idol, you become possessed of good qualities, why do you not also believe that

PAGE 564

attributes like inertness belonging to the idol are transferred to you? If you become devoid of intelligence, you will be utterly useless. Again, if you take to idol-worship, instead of keeping company with learned men, you will become greater dunces than you were before. An idol-worshipper falls prey to all the vices which have been enumerated in the 11th Chapter of this book. Just as the Jainees talk much nonsense about idol-worship, so their maniras also teach many absurdities.

Here is one of them:-
"Salutations unto Arthant, salutations unto Sidhas (perfect beings) etc."

This mantra is said to be holy. It is a mantra which is recited at the time of the initiation of a disciple into the Jain religion and it is said that the chanting of it confers incalculable benefits. In the matter of hyperbolic praise (bestowed) on this mantra) the Jainees have outstripped even the authors of the Puranas and the Tantras and the bards.

In the Shradhadinkritya is written that this mantra is holy and exalted. Among the mantras worthy of meditation of mediation it holds the foremost position. It is the most real of all realities. The Navakar mantra is as helpful for the worldly as a ship is for those that desire to cross the sea. This Navakar is like a ship; Those that do not seek its aid are drowned in the sea of worldliness and those that do are weaned from misery. The mantra alone keeps the soul from suffering pain, weans it from sin and enables it to attain salvation.

It is this which enables one to cross the sea of worldliness, i.e., releases one from pain consequent upon deeds done in many incarnations. At the time of the infliction of eight kinds of tortures like fire nothing is helpful except this mantra. The preceptor who is competent to teach this mantra is as much to be congratulated as the possessor of Vaidura (the prince of rubies), or of unerring weapon of warfare when one is in dread of his enemy. Of the

PAGE 565

twelve sacred mantras this navakar mantra is the most secret. It means:-

- Salutations to all the Tirthankaras.
- Salutations to all the Jain saints.
- Salutations to all the Jain teachers.
- Salutations to all professors of Jain theology.
- Salutations to all Jain Sadhus that are in this world.

The world Jain does not occur in the text, but we have added it in the translation, because in most Jaine books it is recorded that no non-Jainee is worthy of being saluted.

On page 169 of the Tatvaviveh is written that whoever worships stones and wood, thinking them to be God is rewarded well for his pains. Now, if it be really so why do not all the Jainees gain happiness, even though they worship idols? On page 10 of the Ratansar Bhaga it is written that by offering worship to the idol of Parasnath one is absolved from sins. On page 51 of the Kalp Bhag it is written that 1 lac and 25 thousand temples were repaired. There are many other statements like those which go to prove that idol-worship was originated with the Jainees.

32. The evil practices of the Jain Sadhus.

NOW WE SHALL TREAT OF THE EVIL PRACTICES OF JAIN SADHUS

On page 228 of the Viveksar it is written that a Jaine sadhu, who was paramour of a prostitute named Kosha, renounced the world and went to heaven. On page 10 of the same book it is recorded that Arnak Muni (ascetic) departed from the course of righteousness, misconducted himself for years together in the family of Dutta, the banker, and then went to heaven.

Shalia spirited away Dhandhan Muni, the sonof Shri Krishna, and afterwards became a god. On page 193 of the same book it is written that the shravaks (the pain laity) should revere Jain sadhu, even if he only bears the symbols of the Order. These sadhus are worthy of reverence, no

matter whether they bear a good character or a bad one. On page 168 it is said that that a characterless Jain sadhu is to be much more respected than a sadhu of good character belonging to another persuasion. On page 71 it has been said that the Jain laity should serve the Jain Sadhus even if they be characterless,

PAGE 566

Reprobates. On page 276 it is related that a thief tore his hair, followed the rules of good conduct, adopted a penitent attitude and, in the sixth month after this, he became a perfect man on account of his having attained true knowledge. Now mark! Of what stuff the Jain sadhus and house-holders are made!

According to their religious beliefs, even a rakish sadhu attained to a state of blessedness, while Shri Krishna is believed to have gone to the third hell (vide page 106). On page 145 it is written that Dhanwantri* went to hell. On page 48 it is written that eh yogis and other Pauranic sadhus, Wazis (Mohammedan priests), and Mullahs (Muslim holy-men) attain to a lower state on account of their ignorance, even thought they practice austerities and consequently submit to much suffering.

On page 171 it is written that of the 9 Vasudevais, viz., Tripriashtha Vasudeva, Daviprishtha Vasudeva, Swayambhudeva Vasudeva, Parushotam Vasudeva, Sinha Purasha Vasudeva, Purushpundrik Vasudeva, Datta Vasudeva, Lakshman Vasudeva and Shri Krishna Vasudeva went to hell in the time of the 11th, the 12th, the 14th, the 15th, 18th, the 20th, and the 22nd Tirthankaras and the 9 Prati Vasudevas viz., ashvagrivaprati Vasudeva, Tarakaparti Vasudeva, Modakaprati Vasudeva, Madhuprati Vasudeva, Nishambhprati Vasudeva, Baliprati Vasudeva, Prahladprani Vasudeva, Ravanprati Vasudeva, and Jarasindhaprati Vasudeva all went to hell.

In the Kalpa Bhashya it is written that the 24 Tirthankaras of whom the first was Rishabhdeva and the last Mahavir all attained salvation.

Let the wise consider how wrong it is to say that the Jain sadhus, house-holders, and Tirthankaras, many of whom were adulterers, pramours of prostituties, all went to heaven and attained salvation, while might souls like Shri Krishna all went to hell. To tell the truth, a good man ought not to keep company with the Jainees or even look at them, for, if he does keep their company, he will also begin to believe in absurdities.

the company, of such bigoted and biased men leads to evil results. There is, of course, no harm in associating with good people among the Jainees. On page 55 of the Viveksar, it is written that not righteous ends can be gained by visiting places of pilgrimage like Hardwar and Kashi (Benares), while the Jain places of pilgrimage like Grinar Palitana and Abu are such that by visiting them we can attain even salvation. The point to be carefully noted is that Jain places of pilgrimage are on land and water just like those of the Shivites, Vasihnavites,

---

* He was a great sage who is an authority on Medicine and Surgery. He is the Indian Galen. Tr.

PAGE 567

etc. It is foolish act to denounce the latter and to hold up the former to admiration.

33. The Jain concept of Salvation.

NOW WE HALL DISCUSS THE JAIN (CONCEPTION OF) SALVATION.

On page 23 of the Ratsar it is written, that Mahadeva Trithankar, addressing Gautam said: *"There is a place in the higher region called Sidhshilla. It is higher up than heaven and 4 and half millions of leagues long and as many leagues broad. It is 8 leagues in thickness. It is whiter than a necklace of white pearls and cow-milk.*

It is situated at the top of the 18th region. It is more resplendent than gold and clearer than crystal. Higher up is Shivpura where also emancipated souls dwell. There they are not subject to birth and death and enjoy bliss. They do not return to this world and are not required to do deeds."

This is the Jain conception of salvation. On deep reflection, it appears that the Jainees have fixed upon Sidhshila and Shivpur as abode of perpetual bliss, even as the Pauraniks have fixed upon Vaikunth, Kailash, Golok, Shivpur, etc., the Christians, the fourth sky and the Mohammedans the seventh sky. Whatever is thought to be higher up by the Jainees will be thought to be lower down by people inhabiting certain portions of the globe.

Up and down are not absolute terms. Whatever is higher up for Jainees residing in India is lower down for the Americans and vice versa. Even if Sidhashila be supposed 9 millions of leagues long, the so-called emancipated souls will remain in a state of imprisonment, for the moment they leave the place, they will cease to be in the state of salvation.

It is also natural for the emancipated souls to feel an attachment for the place and a disinclination to go outside it. How can that state be called a state of salvation which involves special attachments, inclinations and disinclinations? The true state of salvation has been described by us in the 9th chapter. Salvation believed in by the Jainees in like unto a state of imprisonment. In the matter of the true conception of salvation, the Jainees have fallen into an error.

The truth is that the right conception of the state of blessedness cannot be attained without a right understanding of the Veda. Now, we hall relate a few more cock-and-bull stories believe in by the Jains. The following is taken from the Viveksar:-
"When Mahavir was born, he bathed with water contained in 16 millions of buckets (page 78). King Darsharam went to

PAGE 568

Mahavir to pay his respects and displayed some hauteur. To wean him from this, 16,777,216,000 men of the shape of Indra and 13,370,572,800,000,000 Indranis (female figures of the shape of the wife of Indra) appeared on the scene. The sight struck the king dumb with astonishment."

How many worlds (of the dimensions of our earth) were required to enable the Indras and the Indranis to find a standing place. On page 13 of this Shradhadinkritya (Atmaninda Bhawana) the injunction is laid down that wells should not be sunk, nor should tanks be dug out.

Now, if this injunction be followed, it does not appear how people will obtain their water-supply.

Q. - The Jainees do not do this, because they think that if tanks ar dug out, any sentient creatures die and the person at whose expense they are dug out commits sin.

A. ~ What an idiot you are! If you think of the sin involved in the destruction of tiny creatures, why do you not, likewise, think of the merit to be won by making arrangements for the supply of drinking water to higher animals like men and cows.

On page 196 of the Tatwaviveka it is written that a banker names Nandmanikar had a bauli (a kind of well) sunk in his town. He departed from the right course and was, therefore, afflicted with 16 terrible diseases. After he died, he was reborn as a frog doomed to pass his days in that self-same well.

When he (the frog) saw Mahavir he became conscious of his own self. Mahavir says that he recognized him as his Lord in the previous birth and ran to prostrate himself before him. He was crushed to death by the horse of a shrenik and, on account of this good thought, he became a great God named Dardurank.

On account of his limited knowledge, he thought that Mahavir was there prostrated himself and went back, after displaying his good fortune.

It is an act of folly to regard as very exalted Mahavir who could talk of such absurd things, which are opposed to the dictates of knowledge.

On page 36 of Sharadhdinkritya it is written that a Sadhu my possess himself of the clothes on the body of a dead man.

Are not these Sadhus like the Mahabrahmans? Who is to take the ornaments? Perhaps, the survivors keep them with them-

PAGE 569

selves on account of their value. Now, what is one to think of such people?

On page 105 of the Ratnasar it is written that it is a sin to roast, to use pestle and mortar, to grind and to cook.

Now, is not this an extremely foolish injunction? How can people live if these things be not done? Even the Jains would, in that case, die of suffering.

On page 104 of the Ratnasar it is written that the gardener who plants a garden is hundred thousand times a sinner.

How foolish of the composer of this verse not to think that if the gardener was 100,000 times a sinner, he was also millions of times a doer of meritorious act because the leaves, fruits, flowers and the shade of trees afforded relief to a countless number of sentient creatures.

Onpage L.202 of the Tatwaviveka it is written that a Sadhu named Labdhi once entered the house of a prostitute by a mistake and begged for alms in the name of righteousness. The prostitute replied that righteousness had no place in her scheme of life and that she thought only of wealth. On this he scattered 12 and half lacs of mohars in her house.

Now, who would believe in such nonsense except a dunce?

On page 67 of the Ratnasar Bhaga it is written that a stone-idol rides a horse and comes to the rescue, whenever and wherever its aid is invoked.

Now why are not the Jainees defended by that idol when they are attacked by thieves or robbers or are in dread of the enemy? Why do they look for redress at the police station.

The following verses have been composed by Jinadattasuri with a view to bring into prominence the good qualities of the Jain:-

- A yati is one who has conquered his lower self who keeps a Chowri,* begs his bread, keeps his head shaved, wears white

---

* A kind of brush carried by every Jain Sadhu for sweeping the place he sits on.-Tr.

PAGE 570

garments, is given to forgiveness and keeps away from the company of other men.

- "The Digambar Sadhus are those that do not put on any clothes, pull out their hair, and keep with them a woolen brush for sweeping the floor and eat what they get by way of alms. "Jinarshi Sadhus are those that take their food after the house-holders have partaken of it."
- The only difference between the Digambars and Shwetmbars (or Yatisa) is that, according to the latter, women can attain salvation, while, according to the former, they never can."

Such are the means of salvation believe in by the Jainees. It is generally known that the Jainees pull out their hair. It is also written in their books that five handfuls of hair should be pulled out.

On page 216 of the Viveksar Bhag it is written that a person was admitted into the Order of sadhus when he had pulled out five handfuls of his hair; on page 108 of the Kalpsutra Bhashya it is written that let the hair of a sadhu be pulled till only as much remains as covers the body of a cow.

In the face of this, how can the Jainees claim that they are merciful. The pulling out of the hair causes great pain, no matter whether the act is done by the candidate himself or by his preceptor. Hinsa consits in giving pain to any sentient creature.

In the Viveksar it is written that in the year 1033 Vikram (976 A>D) the Dhundias, a sect of the Dhundias) came into being. The Dhundias have not faith in the worship of stone-idols and they always keep a piece of cloth tied to their mouths, except at the time of study and at no other time.

Q. - It is absolutely necessary to tie a piece of cloth to the mouth, for the microscopic creatures that live in the air are killed by the hot breath and, therefore, those that do not tie the piece of

PAGE 571

cloth commit a sin (because they are responsible for the death of so many creatures).

A. ~ This argument is opposed to the dictates of knowledge and the canons of logical reasoning. The soul is eternal and cannot be killed by the hot breath. This what you also believe.

Q. - Of course, the soul does not perish but the hot breath expired by the mouth causes pain to many souls and one who causes pain to others is a sinner. For this reason it is right to tie apiece of cloth round one's mouth.

A. ~What you propose to do can never be done. The affairs of the world can never be carried on, without causing pain to some creatures or others. If, according to your faith, the hot air emitted by the mouth causes pain, why do not the bodily movements like walking, sitting, raising hands, or the winking of the eye cause pain. Therefore, by following your line of argument, one cannot but come to the conclusion that to live without causing pain to others is impossible.

Q. - On should try his best to protect creatures. What is to be done of sometimes a man is helpless and cannot do his duty in this matter. The air is full of creatures. If we did not tie a piece of cloth to our mouths a larger number would be killed.

A. ~ Your statement is foolish, because if the piece of cloth is tied, a greater amount of pain is caused to the creatures concerned, for, when this id done or the mouths remain shut up the air which is to be exhaled up by the mouth, getting no egress, is collected and then forcibly pushes itself at the sides in the first case and out of the nose in the second. The air will, thus, get hotter and will, therefore, according to you, cause greater pain.

Now, just mark! If all the doors of a house or a cell are shut up or screened, its temperature mounts up to a higher degree than it was when they were open. By following your line of argument it is therefore, proved that you cause greater pain to living creatures, for if the mouth is tied the accumulated air, which is pushed out through the nostrils, must needs strike against the living creatures with greater force and inflict great suffering on them.

Take another example. One man sets the fire ablaze by blowing with the mouth, another tries to produce the same result by blowing through a tube. Now, the air in the mouth, being scattered over a greater area strikes the fire with less force in the first case than does the concentrated

PAGE 572

air in the tube. The same may be said of the air which is concentrated in the nostrils on account of the mouth being closed. Those therefore, who do not tie the piece of cloth to their mouths are more righteous than those who do. Another disadvantage of this practice is that the letters cannot be properly articulated, enunciated and pronounced. Is it not faulty to utter with a nasal twaning words which ought not to be pronounced like that.

Again, the mouth begins to give forth stench which comes from within (and is not allowed to escape). All the air that comes out is foul. If it is not allowed to go out, it must give out bad smell.

A latrine which is ill-ventilated stinks more than one which is well-ventilated. The Jainees tie their mouths, do not clean their teeth, nor wash their faces, nor bathe, they, therefore, increase disease by emitting stench and thus commit a sin. Whenever there is a great fair, diseases like cholera spread on account of the increase of foulness in the air and decimate the people. if the foulness be less, the diseases do not spread so rapidly.

The Jainees contribute a good deal more to the foulness of the air than other people and are, therefore, greater sinners than those who do not tie the piece of cloth and are

particular about cleaning their teeth, washing their faces and bathing and keeping their clothes clean. The latter are much better than the former, even as those that keep away from dirty outcasts* are good men.

The intellect of a Jainee cannot but be obfuscated even as that of a person who keeps company with filthy latrine-sweepers is never illumined. A diseased person who has got a perverted intellect cannot follow the precepts of Dharma. This truth must needs apply to the case of the Jainees.

Q. - The flames of fire burnt in a closed house cannot escape and give pain to creatures outside the house, even so by tying the piece of cloth to the mouth, creatures outside it are not pained. When the fire is burning in front of one and he protects himself by keeping his hand traversely before his face, he does not feel so much the effects of heat. The creatures in the air possess bodies and are, therefore, subject to pain.

A. ~ This is a childish statement. In the first place, fire cannot be burnt in a house the walls of which possess no chinks and the air inside cannot communicate with the outside air and vice versa. You can see this for yourself. Put a lighted candle in a closed

---

*Such people as attend to latrines, etc.-Tr.

PAGE 573

vessel and it will be extinguished all of a sudden. Just as sentient creatures cannot live so long as they do not momentarily get fresh supplies of air from the atmosphere, so there can be no combustion without air. If the force of a flame be checked at one end, it will escape at the other with greater vigor. If the face is protected by the hand from the effects of heat, the had itself is exposed to it to a greater degree. You, therefore, are not the right point.

Q. - Everybody knows that when a man of an inferior standing desires to whisper something to a man of superior position or draws nearer to him for conversational convenience, he puts over his mouth either a piece of cloth or his own hand, so that his companion may not feel any offensive smell or the spittle be thrown at him. When a man reads aloud from a book particles of saliva do, undoubtedly, soil it. For the reasons explained above, it is highly desirable to tie a piece of cloth over the mouth.

A. ~ From you statement it may be safely inferred that it is foolish to cover the mouth with the object of affording relief to creatures. When a man is engaged in private conversation with a person of superior standing he covers the mouth with cloth or with hand so that the talk may not be overheard. If it be not so, why is it not covered when the conversation is not of a confidential character? Your mouth and other bodily organs give out an offensive smell, because you do no clean your teeth.

No wonder, then, that your proximity offends the olfactory sense of one who sits by you. The reason why the mouth is covered with the hand or the cloth is other than that stated by you. When something confidential is whispered in the presence of many people and the mouth be not covered, it is very likely that the vibrations of air (being unrestricted in their course) will carry the sound far and wide.

When the talk is carried on at a place where none is present except the speaker and the person spoken to, the mouth is not covered. If the object of covering the mouth is to save the face of man of superior position from being soiled with the particles of spittle (ejected from the mouth of the speaker) it may be concluded that there is no harm if the spittle falls on persons of an inferior rank. In fact, the spittle cannot but reach the person spoken to. Suppose the person talking to you is sitting at a safe distance but the air blows that way, the minute particles of spittle will, of a surety, be carried to his body with the current of air.

PAGE 574

It is foolish to thing that contamination of the heat of the exhales air could kill animalcules living in the air or give pain to them; becaus4e that case the heat of midsummer would kill them all. It is, therefore, wrong to say that they are killed that way. Your religious belief (as regards tying the cloth) is, therefore, false. If your Tirthankaras had been profoundly learned men, they would not have made such foolish statements.

34. Who feels pain?

Again, only those creatures are capable of feeling pain whose thinking faculty is provided with all the sense-organs.

Here is our authority for this statement:-
"The soul feels pleasure or pain only when the five organs of sense come in contact with their objects." SANKHA SHASTRA., 25 -27.

Just as a shower of vituperative epithets cannot produce any change in the consciousness if one is deaf; the flitting in front of one of various forms and animals like the snake and the wolf cannot affect him who is blind; odors cannot affect one whose olfactory apparatus is out of order; tactile sensations cannot be felt by one suffering from anesthesia, and sensations of taste cannot be experienced by one who had got no tongue. In like manner these little creatures do not feel pain.

Just Mark! At the time of profound slumber the soul of man does not feel pleasure or pain; for though it is even then present in the body, its connection with the bodily organs is interrupted. When a surgeon puts his patient under chloroform with a view to operate on his diseased organ, the patient is quite insensible to pain; similarly the atmospheric and other (microscopic) animalcules are not sensible to pleasure and pain (because they do not possess the sense-organs). Just as a being who is comatose cannot feel pleasure or pain, so cannot these creatures, because they are always in a state of stupor. Why, then, talk of saving them from pain?

Q. - When all souls are subject to pleasure and pain, why are not theirs so?

A. ~ Credulous people! tell us why you do not feel pleasure or pain, when you are in the enjoyment of dreamless sleep. The cause of pleasure and pain is evidently the connection (between the soul and the sense-organs). We have already stated that when surgeons amputate limbs, or open bodily cavities of their patients under chloroform, they are not at all sensible to a pain; similarly,

PAGE 575

the souls that are in perpetual stupor cannot experience the sensations of pleasure or pain, because they have not the means of doing so.

< those pain inflicting killing sin committing be shall we things, these eat were If them. number infinite an latter creatures many contain former because tubers, roots vegetables, green Mark>

A. ~ This belief of your has its roots in ignorance. How can it be believed that, by eating vegetables, any creatures are pained or killed? Do you know by direct cognition that they feel. If so, please tell us how we many also attain this knowledge. Neither you know it yourself, nor can you demonstrate it to us. If this knowledge cannot be gained by direct cognition, it is no use appealing to the inferential mode of reasoning, analogy and authority.

Again, as we have explained above, it is a mistake on the part of your tirthankaras to think that souls that are enveloped in great darkness and are in an extreme stupor or coma can experience pleasurable or painful sensations. Your tirthankaras have preached to you doctrines utterly opposed to sound reasoning and dictates of knowledge.

How can an infinite number of creatures reside in an object which is limited as regards extension? When we know that a great root such as a radish is limited in size, how can it be believed that it can hold an infinite number of animalcules. The argument advanced by you is, therefore, foolish.

Q. - You commit a sin in drinking water that has not been heated by fire. You should, like us, drink the water that has been heated.

A. ~ This is also foolish. When you heat the water, all the animalcules in it must needs die. The particles of their bodies are so thoroughly mixed with water which is being boiled, you in a way drink a decoction of the dead bodies of those tiny creatures.* You are, therefore, very great sinners.

Those that drink water that ahs not been heated commit no sin because when the cold water will be heated in the stomach the animalcules will escape with the hot air which will be exhaled. To speak the truth, neither the one set of people commits a sin nor the other, for the tiny (microscopic) creatures, as has been proved above, are insensible to pleasure and pain.

---

* The author has here tried to fight the Jainees with their own weapons. It should not be understood that he is against the use of boiled water.-Tr.

PAGE 576

Q. - If the fire in the stomach can send up the animalcules, why cannot the heat, applied externally, drive them away?

A. ~ Of course, they are driven away. But, according to you, animalcules are killed even by the hot exhalations from the mouth, why will they not, then, be killed by the heat of the water or be excessively pained before they go out of their bodies or be completely mixed up with the water. Will you not be greater sinners in that way?

Q. - We never heat water with our own hands, nor do we ask any householder among us to do so. We, therefore, commit no sin.

A. ~ If you refused to sue boiled water or to drink it, the householder would not heat it (for you), you are, therefore, answerable for the sin. You are, we think, greater sinners than the householders, because if you had asked a particular householder to heat water, it would have been heated only once at a time. Now, because the householders do not know when one of you sadhus will turn up, each one keeps boiled water are, therefore, the chief sinner.

By following the same line of argument, it may be proved that it is you that are chiefly answerable for the sin involved in combustion, in cooking of food and in carrying on agricultural operations and, therefore, deserve to be sent to hell. Being the chief cause of water being heated and the chief preachers of the desirability of drinking boiled water and not using cold unboiled water you are the chief sinners, and those that follow are also sinners.

Again, it cannot be gainsaid that you are engrossed in ignorance. Is it not a sin to take pity upon tiny creatures and to malign and injure non-Jainees? If the doctrines preached by your Tirthankaras are true tell us why (your) God ahs caused so many rivers to flow and created so much water since the beginning of the world. He ought not to have produced even the sun, for, according to your belief, its heat must be causing the death of billions of creatures. When those to whom you ascribe Divine power (i.e., your Tirthankaras) have been eternally present, why did they not, out of their mercy, deprive the sin of its heat and stop the formation of clouds.

We have already proved that it is only the creatures and not those living on green roots and tubers, etc., creatures possessing

---

* The questioner here is supposed to be the Jain Sadhu as distinguished from a Jain householder.

PAGE 577

visible bodies that can experience the feelings of pleasure and pain. Again, it is a source of pain to be always merciful towards all creatures, for if all (these creatures) were, according to your belief, to be re-incarnated as human beings, and even the thieves and robbers among them were not punished, sin would increase fearfully. Hence (true) mercy consists in inflicting condign punishment on the wicked and protecting the righteous.

The reverse of this is a negation of mercy and forgiveness. There are many Jainees who are shopkeepers, tell lies in the course of business, gain money by fraud, and cheat the poor. Why do you not, in you sermons, lay special stress on the desirability of their giving up such wicked practices? Why do you resort to trickery like that of covering the mouth.

When you initiate a new votary (male or female) why do you lay yourself open to the charge of cruelty towards self and others by pulling the hair and compelling the novitiate to fast and thus giving him as well as yourself pain. Why do you not consider it a sin to ride elephants, horses, oxen and camels and so make other people labor for you?

If the ordinary men among you cannot prove to be true what is obviously foolish and nonsensical, even your tirthankaras cannot do it. When you recite portions of your religious books it is clear that, according to your belief, your disciples and yourself kill many creatures. Why should you become the chief factor in the commission of this sin?

We have not treated the subject in detail but is should be clearly understood that creatures in a state of stupor that possess bodies devoid of the power locomotion cannot experience sensations of pleasures and pain.

35. The height an age of the Jain 24 tirthankaras (teachers).

Now, we shall comment on few more fatuities taught by the Jain religion. It should be borne in mind that a Dhanush is for the purpose measurement, three and a half times the length of a human hand, the true measure we have already treated. In the Ratnasar, Part 1 (page 166 and 167), it is written:-
The body of -

Nos.	Jain Tirthankaras (teachers)	Dhanush long	Purva years old
1	Rishabhdeva	500	8,400,000
2	Ajitnath	450	7,200,000
3	Shambhunath	400	6,000,000
4	Abhinanadan	350	5,000,000
25	Somatinath	300	4,000,000

PAGE 578

Nos.	Jain Tirthankaras (teachers)	Dhanush long	Purva years old
6	Padmaprabha	140	3,000,000
7	Parehasnath	200	2,000,000
8	Chandraprabha	150	1,000,000
9	Suvidbinath	100	200,000
10	Shitalnath	90	200,000
11	Shreyansnath	80	8,400,000
12	Vasupujya swami	70	7,200,000
13	Vimalnath	60	6,000,000
14	Anantnath	40	3,000,000
15	Dharmanath	45	1,000,000

16	Shatninath	35	100,000
17	Kunthanath	30	95,000
18	Amarnath	30	84,000
19	Mallinath	25	55,000
20	Munisuvritt	20	30,000
21	Neminath	14	10,000
22	Neminath	10	10,000
23	Parisnath	9	100
24	Mahavirswami	7	72

The above-named twenty-four were the chief preceptors and teachers of the Jainees, who founded the Jain religion. The Jainees ascribe to them the attributes of God. All of them are believed to have attained salvation. Let the wise consider if it is possible for any man to have so gigantic a body and live so long.

If the globe were inhabited by people of such dimensions, very few would be contained by it. Following the example of the Jainees, the Pauraniks have written of persons who lived for 1,000 years and of others again who lived for 10,000 years and even for 100,000 years. All this is absurd and so is what the Jainees say. Here are few more absurd statements made by the Jain teachers.

- *Nagket lifted on his finger a stone as big as a village. - Kalp Bhashya, page 4).*
- *Mahavir pressed the earth with his finger. This caused the snake (which supports the earth) to tremble (ibid., page 46).*
- *Rice pudding was cooked on the foot of Mahavir but the limb was not burnt. (Ibid., page 47).*

PAGE 579

- *A camel was made to stand in a small vessel (Ibid., page 10).*
- *The dirt on the body should not be removed or rubbed away. (Ranasar, part 1, page 14).*
- *A Jain Sadhu, named Damsar who was beloved of the Tirthankar Mahavir, chanted the aphorism which brings on terrible calamities and a city was set on fire (Viveksar, part 1, page 15)*
- *The king must needs be obeyed (Viveksar, part 1, page 14).*
- *A prostitute named Koshar heaped up oil-seeds in a plate and fixed in the heap a needle covered with flowers and danced on it. The food, however, was not pricked by the needle, nor was the heap of oil-seeds scattered (Ibid., page 227).*
- *The sage Sothulmuni misconducted with this very prostitute for 12 years, afterwards he got himself initiated and attained final beatitude, and so did the*

prostitute, because she followed the precepts of the Jain religion (Tatvaviveka, page228).

- *The loose jacket of an ascetic always bestowed 500 mohars on a prostitute (Viveksar, part 1, page 185).*
- *If the precepts of religion are disregarded in obedience to the commands of a physically strong man, of a God, of a spiritual guide, of one's parents, family priest and relations and at the critical conjuncture of time in the jungle, the merit (to be earned by the following those precepts) is not lost (Viveksar, part 1, page 228.*

Now, mark! How false all these statements are? Is it ever possible for a man to lift a stone as big as a village on his finger or to press down the earth with his thumb? When there is no snake underground, hoe could it be said that it trembled? Why were the feet of Mahavir not burnt when pudding and rice was cooked upon them? Can a camel ever be contained in small vessel?

Those that do not wash away or rub away the dirt on their bodies must feel extreme discomfort on account of stench. The sadhu who burnt the city must be utterly cruel and merciless. When even the company of Mahavir could not purify his soul, hoe can the Jainees obtain salvation through him? Now that he is dead. Of course, it is right to obey the king but the Jains being banias* it is probable that this injunction was inspired by fear. It is utterly false to say that the prostitute Kosha - no matter hoe light her body was - could

---

* An Indian caste notorious for its cowardice.-Tr

PAGE 580

have danced on a needle fixed in a heap of oil-seeds, without her foot being pinched or the seeds being scattered. One must always follow the precepts of Dharma, not matter what happens.

How can a garment which is only cloth bestow 800 gold mohars for ever?

If we were to go on quoting such absurd stories, our books would become as voluminous as the Jain books. All that the Jain religion teaches is false, except a few injunctions.

Mark! What their books teach:-
The Jambu region has an area of 100,000 leagues. It is the first of the great regions. It contains two moons and two suns. In the salt-water ocean there are 4 moons. In the (Dhatki) metal, region there are 12 suns and 12 moons. 12 by 3 is 36 and add to this the 2 suns and 2 moons belonging to Jambu region and 4 belonging to salt-water ocean and you find that there are 42 suns and 42 moons in the Kalodahdhi black ocean.

In like manner 42 by 3 = 126, add to this number of suns and moons, the 4 suns and 4 moons belonging to the salt-water ocean, 12 belonging to the region of Dhakti and two belonging to the Jambu region and you will find that there are 144 moons in the Pushkar.

This calculation embraces only the inhabited portion of the globe which is half the whole. There are many suns and moons in the uninhabited portion also. But they are stationary.

144 by 3 = 432, add 2 of jambu, 4 of salt-water ocean, 12 of Dhatki, and 42 of Kalodadhi, and you will find that there are 492 suns and 492 moons in the Pushkar region.

All this has been taught by Shri Jina Bhadra Ganik Sahma Shramana in the large and important books in Sanghyani, Yetisakarandak Payanna, Charndrapannati and Surapannati - books which treat of Jain beliefs. Prakaran Ratnakar, 4-77.

Now mark! Ye scholars of Geography and Geology. The Jainees believe that in this earth there are 492 moons according to one mode of calculation and innumerable suns and moons according to anther mode of calculation. You are very fortunate that, by the study of Surya Siddhant andother astronomical

PAGE 581

works written by followers in the Veda, you have learnt the ral teachings of these sciences. If you have been enveloped in the darkness of Jainism, you would be groping in the dark as the Jainees are. These ignorant people must have thought that one sun and one moons world not do for the whole Jambu region, for it would be impossible for one sun and one moon to light up so huge a body as the earth in 24 hours. People who believe he earth to be larger than the sun fall into mistakes like this.

Again the Jain books teach:-
"Now we shall deal with the number of chains of the suns and the moons. There are two chains of the suns and the moons. Each moves at a distance of 10,000 leagues from the one next to it. There is a chain of moons next to a chain of suns and a chain suns next to a chain of moons. In this way there are 4 chains after circumvallating the Mound Meru of the Jambu region, move about in the inhabited portion of the globe.

When one sun moves to the south of the Meru anther moves to the north if it. In each direction of the salt-water ocean two suns move about, in the region of Dhatki 6 suns move about, in the region of Kalodadhi 21 and in the Pushkar region 26. in this way 66 suns fly about in the northerly direction and 66 in the southerly direction according to the laws of their motion. If we add up, we find that 132 suns and 132 moons move about in the inhabited portion of the globe.

There are many chains of constellations in connection with the moons." Prakaran Ratnakar, 4-79.

Now, mark! Perhaps 132 suns and 132 moons are to be found in the houses of the Jainees and, if they are, it would be a wonder how the inmates can stand the heat of so many suns and are not frozen by cold night. Such preposterous stories can e credited only by those that are ignorant of the sciences of Geography and Geology. When one sun actually lights up many planets like ours how can its capacity to light up our little earth be doubted?

If the earth were to remain stationary and the sun were to move round the earth, we would be in light or darkness fro many a year. Sumeru is another name for the Himalayas. It is even smaller in comparison with the sun as the mustard seed

PAGE 582

•

is in comparison with the pitcher. The Jainees will never understand these (scientific) facts and will continue to grope in the dark so long as they continue in their own religion.

Again the Jain teachers say:-
"Righteous souls that have attained salvation will, on account of being free, roam about the 14 kingdoms. This is due to the power of their psychic faculties." On the crest of the 14th kingdom a little above the flag of the airship which secures the gratification of all desires there is, according to the Jainees, Siddhshila or the Divyakash otherwise called Shivpura. Only perfect beings, that is those that have attained the state of omniscience and perfect purity, go this region and become All-knowing, on account of their psychic powers." Prakaran Ratnakar

Now, what is limited by space cannot be All-pervading, and what is not All-pervading can never be All-knowing. It can only be predicated of a soul which is circumscribed that it is enclosed (in a fleshy tenement) or emancipated, or possessed of knowledge or devoid of it.

This can be never be said of the All-pervading and All-knowing spirit. If the Trithankaras of the Jainees were of limited capacities and were circumscribed by space, they could never be Omnipresent and Omniscient, All-holy, and All-knowing. It is a pity that the Jainees do not believe in the Being who possesses these attributes.

Again, the Jain scripture say:-
"Human beings are divided into 2 classes. There are:-

1. *Man who are born as the result of sexual intercourse.*
2. *Those that are born without sexual congress.*

The latter live for 3 Palyopamas and are 3 kosas long." Prakarna Ratnakar.

We believe, very few men having so much age and such size can be contained in this world. Again, if they live for the full period, then the children that they will beget will also be like them. In a city like Bombay only 2 such men can live, and in a city like Calcutta 3 or 4. the Jainees say that in towns lacs of such people lived. Then those towns must have extended over lakhs of miles. The entire universe cannot form one such town.

PAGE 583

"Siddhshila, which is at a distance of 12 leagues above the flag of the air-ship that secures the fulfillment of all desires, is 45 lakhs of leagues in area.

Sidha bhumi is the abode of perfect saints which is located in the Didhshila, white, resplendent, golden and transparent like crystal. Some people call it Ishat pragbhra. At a distance of 12 miles from the air-ship that secures the fulfillment of all desire there is the Alok (the region that cannot be felt).

This mystery is known to the emancipated beings. The air-ship is 8 leagues thick in the middle. The Siddhshila is situated in 4 directions and then curbs from there. It is shaped like an open umbrella and is then like the wing of a very small fly. At the distance of 1 mile above that shila is the extremity of the region of bliss. Beings that have attained to a state of perfection dwell there." Prakaran Ratnakar

Now mark! The Jain abode of bliss is above the flag of the air-ship and ahs an area of 4 and half million of leagues. The emancipated souls are there in a state of imprisonment, no matter how beautiful and transparent it is, because the moment they quit they will cease to enjoy the bliss which is an accompaniment of a state of salvation. Besides, if the live cooped up in that abode they cannot breathe fresh air. All this is a net of fraud spread with a view to ensnare ignorant people.

Again, it is written in the Jain books:-
"The greatest length of the body of a creature possessing only one organ of sense is 1,000 leagues, of that of a creature possessing two organs of sense (like the conch-shell) is 12 leagues, of that of a creature possessing five organs of sense 1,000 leagues. Prakaran Ratnakar

If there were beings of the bodily length of 1,000 leagues, the entire globe would become full to overflowing and will, perhaps,

PAGE 584

accommodate only a few hundreds. If a that time, people ask them where they should live and also hoe to find their way, and what is written in the books would be looked up in their own houses. But for a person of the bodily length of 4000 kosas a house of the light of 320,000 kosas at least is required. Even if the Jain community were to spend all its accumulated wealth, a house of such dimensions could not be built. How will they obtain beams to build a roof extending over 8000 miles? How could a pillar be placed into a house like this? All that is, therefore, false.

Again, in the same book it is written:-
" A well 4 kosas in width and 4 kosas in depth is filled with hair each of the length of afinger. All the parts into which the hair of the length, of a finger can be divided are 2,097,152 in number. The hairs contained in a palyopama of the extent of 330,762,108, 246,562,542,199,609,753,610,000,000 constitute sankhyat kal number. If one conceives of so many parts of a hair that it is beyond the power of man to count them, he will be forming a conception of the Asankhyatqa." Prakaran Ratnakar, 4-4.

Now, look at the Jain mode of calculation! How can a hair be the unit of calculation? When it is adi that to form the conception of the asankhyata divisions of a hair must be imagined, it is implied that in the first calculation (that of sankhyat kal) the hair was divided into so many billions of parts by means of the hand. When the hand could not do this work, the powers of imagination were enlisted. Is it even possible to divide into sankhyat parts a hair of the length of a finger? Again the same book says:

PAGE 585

"The Jambu region is 4 lakhs of leagues in area and is hollow in the center. There are in all seven Dwipas like the Jambu Dwipa and seven oceans like the salt oceans, etc., on this earth (as mentioned before). Each is twice the size of the Jambu Dwipa, i.e., one preceding it in order." Prakaran Ratnakar, 4-12.

Now, how can the dwipas the second of which is 200,000 yojans greater in size than the Jambu Dwipa, the third 400,000 yojans, the fourth 800,000 yojans, the fifth 1,600,000 yojans, the sixth 3,200,000 yojans and the seventh 6,400,000 yojans, and the seven seas of an equal or a greater size be contained in the globe the circumference of which is 5,000 yojans?

Q. ~ There are 84,000 rivers within the area of Kurukshetra (ibid4, 63).

A. ~ Kurukshetra is a small plot of land. Did not the Jain writers feel ashamed when they wrote down a falsehood without having ever visited the place.

The same books says:-
There are thrones to the due south and due north of this shila. The place to the due south is called Atipandu Kambla and that to the due north Atirike kambla. The Tirthankaras sit on these thrones." Prakaran Ratnakar.

Such is the place wher ethe birth-day of the Tirthankaras is celebrated and such is the Jain abode of bliss.
There are many such cock-and-bull stories recorded in the Jain books. It is no use treating of them all. There are three good points in the Jain religion:-

3. Drinking filtered water.
4. Showing mercy to tiny creatures (even though th4e mercy is only nominal).
5. Abstaining from food at night-time.

All the rest of their teachings are absurd to thoroughly incredible extent. In order to discuss all the stupid things written in the Jain books such a large number of books will have to be written that it would be impossible to go through them all in

PAGE 586

a life-time. Just as a straw shows which way the wind blows, so the few specimens of the Jain teachings given by us will apprise the gently reader of the main current of the Jain thought. It is no use going into very great detail; a few words always suffice for the wise.

Now we shall treat of Christianity in the next chapter.

THE END OF CHAPTER 12

CHAPTER 13

AN EXAMINATION OF THE DOCTRINES OF CHRISTIANITY.

PAGE 587

INTRODUCTION

The Christian religion is not the only one that is based on the Bible, there are others as well, such as the Jewish religion. The reason, why we have only discussed Christianity (and omitted Judaism, etc.) in the thirteenth Chapter is that now-a-days it takes the first place among all religions founded on the Bible whilst the Jewish religion and the like are left in the background hence it may be understood that our criticism on the Bible will equally hold good in the case of Judaism, etc., the allied religions which are of secondary importance compared with Christianity which is of primary importance.

Our criticism is only directed against the Bible which is believed in by the Christians and Jews alike and upon which their respective religions are founded. There are many Bhasha and Sanskrit translations of the Bible by well-known Missionaries. The perusal of these has given rise to many doubts in our mind. Some of them we have set forth in this chapter for the consideration of all

(thinking people). Our sole aim in writing this chapter is to further the cause of truth and eradicate error, and not to injure the feelings of others or do them harm or bring false charges against them

After going through this chapter all our readers will know what kind of book (the Bible) is, and what doctrines it teaches. It (the discussion of Christianity in this chapter) will also make it easy for all men to examine the tenets of Christianity and make a comparative study of it. It will further augment the knowledge of men concerning religion and herby make it easy for them to discriminate between right and wrong, between desirable conduct and undesirable conduct; and to embrace truth and practice virtue, to reject error and shun vice. It behoves all men to carefully study the (sacred) books of all religions before

PAGE 588

they publish their opinions for or against them. If a person be illiterate, he could hear them being read because just as a man by reading becomes a scholar, likewise by hearing others read he can become what is called **bahustruta** (one who has heard much). Though the latter may not be able to explain anything to others, yet he can understand it himself. Those who are jaundiced can neither see their own merits and demerits nor those of others. The soul of man possesses the capacity for ascertaining truth. A man can decide whether what he has heard or read is right or wrong.

No subject can be mutually discussed if both parties are not well-acquainted with (the teachings of) each other's religions. The ignorant are very apt to fall into an abyss of superstition and error. It is in order to save them from such a fate that we have firefly discussed all the prevalent religions. The truth or error of other subjects (that have been discussed in this book) can be inferred. All that is true and (therefore) worthy of acceptance to all is alike in all religions. Differences arise over doctrines which are false or even when one party (in a discussion) is right, while the other wrong, but should both parties discuss a subject with the sole desire of ascertaining truth they can succeed in it.

Now we place our criticism of Christianity in the thirteenth chapter before all (our readers). They can form their own opinions about it.

We hope these few words will suffice to the seekers of truth.

PAGE 589

Now we shall discuss the Christian religion in order to make it clear to all whether this religion is free from faults and its sacred book called the Bible is the Word of God or not. We shall first deal with the Old Testament.

GENESIS

1. "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. (1:1, 2.)

C.* ~ What do you call the beginning?>

Christian. ~ The first creation of the world.

C. ~ Is this the first creation? Was the world never created before?

Ch. ~ We do not know whether it was created before or not. God alone knows that.

C. ~ When you do not know that, why should you believe in this book (i.e., the Bible) which cannot enlighten you on these points and pinning your faith to it, preach it to others and thereby ensnare them into this religion which is do full of doubts. Why don't you embrace the **Vedic** religion which is free from all doubts and enlightens one on all points. When you do not understand the world created by God - His handiwork, hoe can you then know God?

C. ~ What do you understand by the term heaven?

Ch. ~ The empty space and what is above.

C. ~ How was this empty space created? Besides, it is all-pervading and very subtle and uniform both above and below.

---

*In this chapter as well as in the next stands for the author. _Tr.

PAGE 590

C. Did space exist or not before the heaven was created? If it did not, wherein did God, the cause of the universe, and the souls live? Nothing can exist without space, but your Bible says that it was created, hence this statement can never be true. Is God inharmonious? Do His knowledge and works lack harmony, or is He as well as His knowledge and works harmonious?

Ch. ~ Harmonious.

C. ~ Why is it then recorded here that the earth created by God was misshapen or without form?

Ch. ~ The term without form means uneven, i.e., the earth was not then even.

C. ~ Who mad it even then? Is it not even now uneven? God's work can never lack harmony or be ill-shapen (without form). He being All-knowing, His works are always free from error or faults but the Bible teaches that the earth created by God was without form, hence this books can never be the work of God. First tell us pray what you think the Spirit of God is.

Ch. ~ He is a Conscious Being.

C. ~ Is he Formless or embodied, All-pervading or localized?

Ch. ~ He is Formless, Conscious and All-pervading but, He is more particularly present in such places as the Mount Sinai and fourth heaven.

C. ~ If He be formless who could have then seen Him? What is All-pervading could not move on the face of waters? It only (goes to) show, that His body must have been in some other place or He must have let a piece of His Spirit move 'on the face of the waters', but in that case He could never be All-pervading and All-knowing and consequently could not create, sustain and support the world, reduce it to its elementary condition, nor could He award the souls just reward or punishment for their deeds -good or bad-, because one who is localized or circumscribed by nature must have his powers and actions also limited.

Such being the case He can never be God but He has been described in the **Vedas**, as All-pervading, possessed of Infinite nature, attributes, and powers, Truly Conscious and All-Blissful, Eternal, Holy, All-wise and Free by nature, Beginningless and Endless, and so on. **Faith in such a God alone will save you.**

PAGE 591

2. "And God said, Let there be light: and there was light. And God saw the light that it was good and God divided the light from the darkness." (1:3,4)

C. ~ Was the dead inert light able to hear what God said? If so, why cannot the sun, the lamp and the light of fire hear us. The light is dead and inert and therefore cannot hear anyone. Did God only, after he had seen the light, know that the light was good? It appears that He did not know it beforehand he could not have been God. Hence the Bible is not the Word of God, nor is God mentioned in it an Omniscient Being.

3. "And God said, Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters. And God made the firmament, from the waters which were above the firmament: and it was so. And God called the firmament Heaven. And the evening and the morning were the second day." (1:6, 7, 8.)

C. ~ Did the firmament and the waters also hear what God said? Had there been no **akasha*** in water, where would it have existed. The creation of the heaven is mentioned in the first verse (of Genesis), it was useless the to create it again. If **akasha** be the Heaven it would also be everywhere. It is useless then to say that the heaven is situated somewhere above. How could there be the morning and the evening when the sun had not yet been created? The succeeding verses also treat of such impossible things.

4. "And God said, Let us make man in our own image, after our likeness: so God created man in his own image, in the image of God created He him; make and female created He them. And God blessed them. (1:26, 27, 28.)

C. ~ If God made man in his own image, why is not man then All-holy, All-knowledge and All-bliss, etc., like God in nature?

---

*The word firmament is translated into Akasha in the Sanskrit and Bhasha versions of the Bible. Now akdasha is held by Sanskrit philosophers to be an All-pervading subtle ether-like substance which fills all things in the universe, hence this objection. -Tr.

PAGE 592

This shows that man was not made in the image of God. Now man was created, and being in the image of God and after His likeness it follows as a natural consequences that His nature is also creatable hence he cannot be eternal. Besides, what did He create the man out of?

Ch. - Out of the dust (of the ground).

C. ~ What did he create the dust out of?

Ch. - Out of his power

C. ~ Is his power beginningless or has it a beginning?

Ch.- It is beginningless.

C. ~ It is clear that His power being beginningless, the cause of the (material) world is also beginningless. Why do you, then, believe that something came out of nothing?

Ch. - Nothing but God existed before the beginning of creation.

C. ~ Where did this world come from ?
Is the power of God a substance or an attribute? If it be a substance, there was then something besides God (before the creation of the world). On the other hand, if it be an attribute, as not substance can come out of an attribute (the world could not have been produced out of it), as for instance, fire cannot proceed from light nor water from fluidity. Had God been the Material cause of the World, the latter would have possessed all the attributes, nature, and characteristics of God but such being not the case, it is certain that it was not produced out of God but out of the Material cause, the primordial matter in atomic condition.

If behoves you therefore to believe that God is the Efficient Cause of the Universe as is recorded in the **Vedas** and other true **Shaastras**. If, as held by the Christians, Adam's inward nature be that of the soul and his outward (appearance) that of man, why is not God's nature the same, because since Adam was made in the image of God the latter must necessarily be like Adam.

5."And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man because a living soul. And the Lord God planted a garden eastward in Eden; and there he put the man whom he had formed. And out of the ground the Lord God made to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of knowledge of good and evil." (2:7 - 9.)

PAGE 593

C. ~ When God planted the garden at Eden and placed Adam therein did not He know then that he would have to turn him out of it?

Since God formed Adam of the dust of the ground, he was not made in the image of God, otherwise, God also must have been made of the dust. When God breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, was that breath God Himself or something else? If it was something different, man was not made in the image of God, but if it was so Adam and God are alike and being alike God also like man becomes subject to birth and death, growth and decay, hunger and thirst. how can then such a being be called God? For this reason this statement recorded in the Old Testament does not appear to be right, nor can therefore, this book be the Word of God.

6. "And the Lord God cause a deep sleep to fall upon Adam, and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof: and the rib, which the Lord God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man." (2:21, 22.)

C. ~ When God made man out of dust, why did He not make his wife out of the same material? If He made his wife out of a bone, why did He not make him as well out of the same. Now if woman was named so because she was taken out of a man,* the word man should also have been derived from the word Woman as he is born of woman. They should also love each other.

A wife should love her husband as a man loves his wife. Mark ye scholars! How wonderfully shines the beautiful philosophy of the (Biblical God)! If Woman was made of one rib taken out of Man, why are not all men short of one rib? Besides there ought to be only one rib in the body of a woman as he was made out of one rib. Could not God have made Woman of the same material

as He had used in the creation of the Universe? It is clear, therefore, that the teachings of the Bible on the subject of creation are opposed to the Laws of Nature.

7. "Now the serpent was more subtle than any beast of the field which the Lord God had made. And He said unto the woman, Yea hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden? And the woman said into the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden: but the fruit of the tree which is in the

---

**Vide verses 23 and 24 Chapter 2. "She shall be called Woman because she was taken out of man. Therefore shall a man cleave into his wife." -Tr.*

PAGE 594

midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, least ye die. And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not die: for God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then surely your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil. And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and, a tree be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat."

"And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons. And the Lord God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this, thou art cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days fo thy life: and I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel. Unto the woman he said, I will greatly multiply thy sorrow and thy conception; in sorrow thou shalt bring forth children and thy desire shall be to thy husband, and he shall rule over thee. And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground For thy sake; in sorrow shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life; Thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field." (3: 1 - 7, 14 - 18.)

C. ~ Had the God of the Christians been an Omniscient Being, why would He have created this 'Subtle serpent or Satan? But as he did create him, He alone is responsible for all the evil deeds done by Satan for had He not created him evil (by nature) he would not have done evil deeds. The Christian God does not believe in the previous existence of the soul, why did He then create him wicked without any fault on his part? To tell the truth he was not a serpent but a man, otherwise how could he have been able to speak the human tongue?

Besides, it is he who tells lies and directs others to do the same, that should be called Satan but in this case he (Satan) spoke the truth and, therefore, did not mislead the woman (Eve) but told her what was true. On the other hand God told Adam and Eve a lie when he said that by eating of the tree of knowledge of good and evil he would surely die. Since those trees were such as gave life perpetual and the knowledge of good and evil to those who ate the fruits thereof, why did God forbid them

PAGE 595

their use, but as He did it He stands guilty of having told a lie and misled them, as the fruit of those trees bestowed life and knowledge upon men, not death and ignorance. Moreover why did God create those trees and forbid their use for men? If He created them for His own use, was He ignorant and mortal, then, that He needed them? But if He did for others there could possibly be no sin (for them) in eating their fruits.

Besides such trees as give life and knowledge to those who eat the fruit thereof, are nowhere to be seen nowadays. Has God destroyed even their seeds? If a man behaves like this he is called the same since he alone who cheats others and practices hypocrisy deserves to be called a cheat and a hypocrite.

Again since God cursed them all, He stands guilty of having perpetrated injustice. It is God Who ought to have been cursed because He told a lie and He beguiled Adam and Eve. Could it have ever be3n possible for a woman to conceive and bear children without pain and 'sorrow'. What a fine philosophy! Could anyone earn his living without working for it? Were there no thorns and thistles before?

Since it is right for man to live on herbs and vegetables according to the commandment of God, why is it not wrong to sanction flesh diet which has been done later on in the Bible? One of the two statements must be wrong. Since no charge of sinful conduct has been brought home to Adam, why should the Christians call all men by virtue of being the descendants of Adam sinners? Can such a book (as the Bible) and such a God command any respect in the eyes of wise men?

8. "And the Lord God said, behold, the man is become as one of us, to know good and evil: and no2w, lest he put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live for ever: So he drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life." (3: 22, 24.)

C. ~ Why did God become so jealous of Adam's becoming His equal iin knowledge, and was it such a bad thing indeed? Why did He entertain such misgivings at all since no one can ever become God's equal? This also shows that he was not God but man. Wherever there is mention of God in the Bible it is related of Him as if He was a man. Now mark! How miserable Adam's progress

PAGE 596

in knowledge made God! How jealous He was of Adam's eating the fruit of the tree of life.

When he first placed Adam and Eve in the garden (of Eden), he was not aware that he would have to turn them out of it. It follows, therefore, that the God of the Christians is not Omniscient. That he had to place a flaming sword to guard the tree of life clearly shows that this was also the work of a man not of God.

9. "And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground and offering unto the Lord. And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering: But unto Cain and to his offering he had no respect. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell. And the Lord said unto Cain, Why art thou wroth and why is the countenance fallen." (4: 3,4.)

C. ~ If God was not a flesh eater why did he respect Abel and accept his offering of sheep and did not respect Cain and accept his offering? God is really responsible for this quarrel between the tow brothers and for the death of Abel. The Christian God here (in these verses) talks like a man. His planting of the garden (of Eden), coming into it and going out of it are quite like the doings of man. This shows that the Bible is the work of man, not of God.

10. "And the Lord said unto Cain, where is Abel thy brother? And he said, I know not: am I my brother's keeper? And he said, What has thou done? The voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto me from the ground. And now art thou cursed from the earth." (4:9 - 11.)

C. ~ Could not God known about Abel's death without inquiring from Cain? Can the voice of blood ever cry unto anyone from the ground? All these things are like the doings of the ignorant. This book could not, therefore, have been made by go or even by a learned man.

11. "And Enoch walked with God after he begat Methuselah three hundred years." (5:22)

C. ~ Had not the Christian God been a man how would Enoch have been able to walk* with Him? It behoves Christians,

---

*It is greatly to be regretted that those who translate the Bible into the Indian Vernaculars were so literal in translating this sentence as to lead our author to think that Methuselah actually walked about with God. Hence this criticism. Tr.

PAGE 597

therefore, to accept the formless Supreme Spirit of the **Vedaas** as their God. Their true happiness lies in this alone.

12. "And daughters were born unto them. That the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. There were giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bore children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown. And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And it repented the Lord that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart. And the Lord said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth; both man, and beast, and the creeping thing, and the fowls of the air; for it repented me that I have made them." (6:1-7.)

C. ~ Will the Christians tell us who are the sons of God and who are his wife, mother-in-law, father-in-law, brother-in-law and other relations? His sons having been married to the daughters of men God becomes related to them and the children born of those marriages are His grandchildren. Can such things be true of God? Can they find place in His book? It appears that the authors of the Bible were savages who had not the least idea of the true God. He that is not Omniscient nor knows the future is not God but human being. Did He before He created the world know that men would turn wicked?

The feelings of grief and repentance after dong something wrong through error of judgment can be attributed only to the Christian God since He is neither well-versed in learning nor a yogi with perfect control over his passions and feelings or He would have overcome His great grief and sorrow with the aid of mental equilibrium and wisdom.

Had even birds and animals become wicked, that He wanted to destroy them all? Surely He is not an All-knowing God, else He would not have been so destitute of sense. It is clear that neither he is God nor is the Bible the Word of God. Had the Christians believed and were they even now to believe in the Vedic God Who is free from all sin, pain, grief and sorrow, etc., and is the

PAGE 598

embodiment of al existence, consciousness and bliss, they would have realized and will even now realize the true aim of human life.

13. "The length of the ark shall be three hundred cubits, the breadth if it fifty cubits, and the height of it thirty cubits and thou shalt come into the ark, thou, and thy sons, and thy wife, and thy sons' wives with tee. And of every living thing of all flesh, tow of every sort shalt thou bring into the ark, to keep them alive with thee; they shall be male and female. Of fowls after their kind, and of cattle after their kind, of every creeping thing of the earth after his kind, two of every sort shall come unto thee, to keep them alive. And take thou unto thee of all food that is eaten, and thou shalt gather it to thee; and it shall be for food for thee, and for them. Thus did Noah, according to all that God commanded him, do did he." (6:15, 18, 19 - 22).

C. ~ Now can any enlightened mane ever believe a being, who uttered such impossible thins which are opposed to the dictum of knowledge, to be God? "How" could any ark of the said dimensions contain (male and female) elephants, camels and millions of other living things, and all the different kinds of foods and drinks that they as well as the whole family of Noah would need? This book is, therefore, a human work. Whoever wrote it was not a learned man either.

14. "And Noah builded an altar unto the Lord: and took of ever clean, beast, and of every clean fowl, and offered burnt offerings on the altar. And the Lord smelled a sweet savor; and the Lord said in his heart, I will not again curse the ground any more for man's sake; for imaginations of man's heart is evil from his youth; neither will I again smile anymore everything living, as I have done. While the earth remaineth, seed time and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease." (8:20 - 22.)

C. ~ The mention of the building of an altar and the offering of burnt offerings on the altar shows that there things have been borrowed by the Bible from the Vedas. Hs God even got a nose wherewith he "smell a sweet savor'? is not the God of the Christians so like a man in the finiteness of His powers, knowledge and capacity that sometime He curses, then he repents of it, again he says he will not curse the ground any more. He has cursed before, and he will curse again. First He destroyed all living

PAGE 599

creatures, now he says, he will never do so again. All these things are like the doings of children not of God nor even of an educated man for even he is true to word and keeps his pledges.

"And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth. Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things. But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat." (9: 1- 4.)

C. ~ Is not the God of the Christians destitute of mercy, since he helps some to enjoy at the expense of the lives of others? Are not the parents, who cause one of their children to be killed in order to feed the other, considered most sinful? The same is true on this case since all living creatures are like children to God. The Christian God (in their case) is more like a butcher. It is this that has made men so hare-hearted and cruel towards other sentient creatures. Why is not the Christian God sinful since he is destitute of tenderness of feelings.

16. "And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech,. And they said, Go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name,, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth. And the Lord came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men built. And Lord said, Behold, the people is one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do; and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do. God to, let is go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech. So the Lord scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city." (11:1, 4 - 8.)

C. ~ all men must indeed have been very happy when the whole world had one language, but what shall we say of this jealous God of the Christians who confounded their speech and destroyed the happiness of all. He did as most criminal thing. It is not worse than anything that Satan has ever done. Did not he even beat Satan in this? Thais also shows that the God of the Christians lived on the top of some mountain as Sinai and was not wishful of their welfare. Let alone God, even an enlightened man would not do such a thing. How can then such a book be the Word of God?

600

17. "He said unto Serai his wife, behold now, I know that thou art a fair woman to look upon: Therefore it shall come to pass, when the Egyptians shall see thee, that they shall say, This is his wife; and they will kill me, but they save thee alive. Say, thy sake; and my soul shall live because of thee." (12: 11 - 13.)

C. ~ Now reader mark! This Abraham, who is looked upon as a great prophet both by the Christians and the Mohammedans alike, tells lies and does such other wicked deeds. How can such people find the way to true happiness and knowledge whose prophets were men of such a low character?

18. "And God said unto Abraham, Thou shalt keep my covenant therefore thou, and thy seed, after thee in their generations. This is my covenant, which ye shall keep, between me and you and they seed after thee; Every man child among you shall be circumcise. And ye ahall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin; and it shall be a token of the covenant betwixt me and you. And he that is eight days old shall be circumcised among you, every man child in you generations, he that is born in the house, or bought with money of any stranger, which is not of thy seed. He that is born in thy house, and he that is bought with thy money, must needs be circumcised: and my covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant. And he uncircumcised, that soul shall be cut off from his people; he hath broken my covenant." (17:9 - 14.)

C. ~ Now look and at the most unnatural command of God. Had He approved of circumcision, He would not have made the foreskin at all in the beginning of creation. It serves to protect the (delicate structure) beneath just as the eyelids protect the eye-ball. This structure is so extremely delicate that the bite of an ant, or the most insignificant hurt will cause great deal of pain if there were no foreskin. It also serves, to prevent the soiling of clothes after micturition. These are few of its uses. Hence it is wrong to circumcise it. Why don't' the Christians obey this commandment now? This was an everlasting and not a temporary covenant. Besides, Christ's testimony as to the truth of the Law in the words "one jot or one title shall in no wise pass from the law" will turn out to be false.

PAGE 601

The Christians should seriously think about this matter, and give this question their whole attention.

19. "And he left off talking with him, and God went up from Abraham." (27: 22.)

C. ~ This shows that this God was either a man or a bird that went up and down. He seems to be more like a juggler.

20. "And the Lord, appeared unto him in the plains of Mamre and he sat in the tent door in the heat of the day. And he lift up his eyes and looked and , lo, three men stood by him; and when he saw them, he ran to meet them form the tent door, and bowed himself towards the ground. And

said, My Lord, if now I have found favor in thy sight, pass not away, I pray thee, from thy servant . let a little water I pray you, be fetched, and washed your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree. And I will fetch a morsel of bread, and comfort ye your hearts; after that ye shall pass on; for therefore are ye come to your servant. And they said, so do, as thou hast said., Make ready quickly there measures of fine meal, knead it, and make cakes upon the hearth. And Abraham ran unto the herd, and fetched a calf tender and good, and gave it unto a young man and hasted to dress it. And he took butter and mild, and he calf which he had dressed, and set it before them; and he stood by them under the tree, and they did eat." (18:2 - 8.)

C. ~ Now why should they, whose God eats calf's flesh, spare cows, calves and other animals? He that has no compassion (on dumb animals) an enjoys flesh eating cannot be God. He an only be a man who feels no scruples in injuring other sentient creatures for his gratification. We are not told who the other two men (besides God) were. It appears that there was a party of savages whose leader is is styled God in the Bible. It is such things (as flesh-eating, etc.) that prevent wise men from accepting this book as the word of God and its God as the true God.

21. "And the Lord said unto Abraham, wherefore did Sarah laugh, saying, Shall I of a surety bear a child, which am old? Is anything too hard for the Lord?" (18:13, 14.)

C. ~ Now look at this God of the Christians! How like women and children He is (so easily) vexed and how He taunt Sarah.

PAGE 602

22. "Then the Lord rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the Lord out of Heaven. And he overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground." (19:24, 25.)

C. ~ Now look at this Biblical God! He is so destitute of mercy that he did not take any pity even on the children and the like. Were they all so wicked that He overthrew cities and buried them all underneath. Such a thing is opposed to justice, mercy and reason. Why should not they, whose God is guilty of such things, do likewise?

23. "Come, let us make our father drink wine, and we will lied with him, that we may preserve seed of our father. And they made their father drink wine that night: and the first born went in, and lay with her father; let us make him drink wine this night also; and go thou in, and lie with him, that we may preserve seed of our father. Thus were both daughters of Lot with child by their father." (19:32 - 34, 36.0

C. ~ The vices of the Christians and others who are addicted to drink - the wicked drink that has degraded men and women so much that even a father and his daughters have not escaped from being guilty of misconducting themselves with each other - know no bounds. Good people, therefore, should not even think of drinking wine.

24. "And the Lord visited Sarah as he had said, and the Lord did unto Sarah as he had spoken. For Sarah conceived.' (21: 1, 2,.)

C. ~ Now let the reader judge what kind of thing this was. God visited Sarah and the result of this visit was that she conceived. Could there be anyone else besides God and Sarah who was the cause of her conception? It seems that Sarah conceived through the grace of God!!!

25. "And Abraham rose up early in the morning, and took bread and a bottle of water, and gave it unto Haggar, putting it on her shoulder, and the child, and sent her away….and she departed

….and she cast the child under one of the shrubs…… and she sat over against him, and lift up her voice, and wept. And God heard the voice of the lad." 21: 14- 17.)

C. ~ Now (gentle reader!) Look at the crooked doings of this Christian God! First he unjustly sided with Sarah (vide 21:12)

PAGE 603

and had Haggar driven out of the house. Then it is Haggar that lifted up her voice and wept whilst it was the lad's voice that God heard. How wonderful! Is not it? Can such a being ever be God! Can such a thing ever be found in the word of God? Excepting a few (ordinary) truths that could have been written by a man of ordinary intelligence, the whole book abounds n absurdities.

26. "And it came to pass after these things, that God did tempt Abraham, and said unto him, Take now thy son, thine only son Isaac, whom thou lovest,, and get into the land of Moriah; and offer him there for a burnt offering upon one of the mountains which I will tell thee of…….and bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar upon the wood. And Abraham stretched forth his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. And the angel of the Lord called unto him out of the heaven, and said, Abraham, Abraham: lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou any thing unto him; for now I know that thou fearest God." (22:1, 2.)

C. ~ Now it is quite clear that the Biblical God possesses finite knowledge and that He is not Omniscient. Abraham too was simpleton, else he would not have acted in the way he did. Had the Biblical God been an Omniscient Being, He would have been able to find out all about the firmness of Abraham's faith through His Omniscience. It is certain then that the God of the Christians is not an All-knowing God.

27. "In the choice of our sepulchers bury thy dead….. but that thou mayest bury the dead." (23:6.)

C. ~ The burial of the dead is highly injurious to the (health of the inhabitants of the) world, because decomposition of dead bodies sets in the pollutes the air which in its turn gives rise to disease.

Christian. - It is not good to cremate those whom we love, while the burial of the dead is like laying them down to sleep; hence this mode of the disposal of the dead is good.

C. ~ If you love your dead, why don't you keep them in the house? Why do you even bury them? The soul you love leaves the body after death, what is the good of loving the dead decomposing body? But since you love it, why do you bury it under the ground? It pleases no one to be addressed "Let us bury your

PAGE 604

under the ground." Besides, how can it be and act of love on your part to throw earth, bricks, stones, lime, etc. on his eyes, mouth chest and other parts of the body? If the dead body be place in a coffin before it is buried, foul smell issues forth from the ground. Ti then pollutes the air which int run gives rise to terrible diseases. Again, a piece measuring at least 3 yards long, and 2 yards broad is required for burying one dead body. At this rate one can imagine how much ground is required for the burial of hundreds of thousands of dead bodies and rendered useless. That ground can neither be tilled, nor used for gardening, nor can it be fit for human habitation. Hence burial is the worst of all methods in vogue for the disposal of the dead.

A little better than this is to throw the dead body into (flowing) water, because crocodiles and other creatures living in water soon tear it into pieces and at it up, but still the bones and other matter that will remain behind will decompose and pollute the water and air and thereby injure the (health of the inhabitants of the0 world. A little less injurious method (of disposing of the dead) is to leave the body in a jungle. Carnivorous animals and birds will devour it but sill the extent to which the marrow of bones and other refuse behind, will pollute the air, the same will be the measure of its being injurious to public health. The cremation is the best of all (methods for the disposal of the dead) because the fire breaks up the dead body into its component elements which are carried away by air.

Ch. - Even cremation gives rise to foul smell.

C. ~ Yes a little, if cremation be not conducted properly, but nothing compared with what takes place in other methods, such as the burial. But if cremation be conducted in accordance with what has been prescribed in the Vedas, not pollution of the air results. The Vedic method of cremation is, in brief, as follows:-

Let a Vedi, 7' 6" feet long, 5' 3" broad and 4' 6" deep, be dug in the ground. The walls should slope in such a manner that breadth of the Vedi at the bottom is one-half of that at the top, and let sufficient quantity of wood of such trees, as Butea Fondoea as well as sandal wood (at least 40lbs.) be piled in the Vedi and the dead body placed on it. Let the same kind of wood be put on its top till it is one foot short of the mouth of Vedi. Let sufficient amount of camphor, agar, tagar be also scattered here and there in the pile of wood. Not, let fire be st to the pile and oblations of clarified butter, whole amount of which should weigh as much as

PAGE 605

the weight of the dead body, and to which musk, at the rate of I grain, and saffron, at the rate of 8 grains, per pound of ghee, has been added, be poured over it. This mode of cremation causes no foul smell. Even this is called **Antyeshthi, Narmedha, Purushmedha Yajna**. however poor the deceased be, in no case should less than 40 lbs. of ghee be used in cremating the body, whether that quantity of ghee be obtained by begging or as a gift from his caste-people or from the Government, if need be, but the body should always be cremated only in the above-described manner.

But if the Ghee and other materials (mentioned above) could not be procured in any way, mere cremation with wood alone is far better than burial. Millions of dead bodies can be cremated on a piece of ground having an area of 201/4 sq. yards or even in one Vedi, nor is the soil polluted as in burial. The sight of graves is also the cause of fear to the timid. Hence, burial and other methods of disposal of the dead are altogether reprehensible.

28. "Blessed be the Lord God of my Master Abraham, who hath not left destitute my master of his mercy and his truth; I being in the way, the Lord led me to the house of my master's brethren." (24: 27.)

C. ~ Was He God of Abraham alone? God acted in the same way as a fore-runner or guide walks in front of his master in order to show him the way. Why does He not do the same now-a-days? Why does He not now talk with men in the same way as He did in the past? Such things can never be true of God or of His Word. They can only be true of savages.

29. "And these are the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names, according to their generations: the first-born of Ishmael, Nebajoth: and Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam. And Mishma, and Dumah,a nd Massa, Hadar, and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah." (25: 13, 15.)

C. ~ This Ishmael was Abraham's son born of Haggar, his handmaid.

"I will make them savory meat for thy father, such as he loveth: and thou shall bring it to thy father, that he may eat and that he may bless thee before his death. And Rebekah took goodly raiment of her eldest son Essau, which were with her in the

PAGE 606

house, and put them upon Jacob, her younger son: and she put the skins of the kids of the goats upon his hands, and upon he smooth of his neck: and Jacob said unto his father, I am Esau, thy first-born; I have done according as thou badest me, arise, I pray thee, sit and eat of my venison, that thy soul may bless me." 27:9, 10, 15, 17, 19.)

C. ~ Now, look at this man, first he gets the blessing (of his father) fraudulently and, then, poses as a great saint and a prophet. Is it not very strange? Such having been the teachers of the Christian religion, there is nothing to wonder at if it is so full of absurdities.

31. "And Jacob rose up early in the morning, and took the stone that he had put for his pillows, and set it up for a pillar, and poured oil upon the top of it. And he called the name of that place Beth-el: and this stone , which I have set for a pillar, shall be God's house." (28:18, 19, 22.)

C. ~ Now mark! Did not they act like savages in worshipping stones and causing others to do the same. Now this place is called Holy Bathel by the Mohammedans. Is that stone alone the house of God and does He reside in that stone alone? Bravo Christians! You are indeed great idolators!

32 "And God remembered Rachel, and God hearkened to her, and opened her womb. And she conceived, and bore a son; and God hath taken away my reproach." (30. 24, 30.)

C. ~ Well done! O Christian God! You are indeed a great surgeon! What were the instruments or medicines with which you opened women's wombs, or was all this done blindly?

33. "And God came to Laban the Syrian in a dream by night and said unto him. Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad. Because thou sore longest after thy father's house, yet wherefore hast thou stolen my gods?" (31:24, 30.)

C. ~ This is one instance out of a thousand that are recorded in the Bible, in which God is said to have come to people in dreams and conversed with them, visited them in wakeful state, eaten and drank come and gone, but one cannot say whether He exists now or not, as he visits no one either in dreams or in the wakeful condition. It also appears that these savages regarded stones as their gods and worshipped them, but even the Christian God believes stones to be gods else how could He have used the words stealing of gods.

PAGE 607

34. "And as Jacob went on his way the angels of God met him. And when Jacob saw them, he said, this is God's host: and he called the name of that place Mahanain." (32:1, 2.)

C.~ Now there can be no doubt that the Christian God is a man as He also deeps an army (host). He must, therefore, also have war implements (arms and ammunition), and be in the habit of attacking others and fighting with them; otherwise it would be of no use to keep an army.

35. " And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day. And when he saw that he prevailed not against him, he touched the hollow of his thigh; and the

hollow of Jacob's thigh was out of joint, as he wrestled with him. And he said, Let me go for the day breaketh. And he said, I will not let thee go, except thou bless me. And he said unto him, What is thy name? And he said, Jacob. And he said thy name shall be called no more Jacob, but Israel: for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men and hast prevailed. And Jacob asked him, and said, Tell me, I pray thee thy name. And he said, wherefore is it that thou dost ask after my name? And he blessed him there. And Jacob called the name of the place Paniel: for I have see God face to face and my life is preserved. And as he passed over Paniel, the sun rose upon him, and he halted upon his thigh. Therefore, children of Israel eat not of the sinew which shrank which is upon the hollow of the thing, unto this day: because he touched the hollow of Jacob's thigh in the sinew that shrank." (32:24 -32.)

C. ~ It is only because the Christian God is a regular wrestler that He blessed Sarah and Rachel with sons!! Can such a Being ever be God? Again, look at His behavior! The fellow, Jacob asked Him His name and He won't tell it. No doubt (the Christian) God put the hollow of Jacob's thigh out of joint and prevailed upon him but had He been a doctor He would also have got his thigh right, By devotion to such a God, other devotees, like Jacob must also be limping. Now Jacob saw God face to face and wrestled with Him, it could only be true of one who possessed a physical body. Away with this childish prattle.

36. "And Er, Judah's first-born, was wicked in the sight of the Lord; and the Lord slew him. And Judah said unto Onan, Go in unto thy brother's wife, and marry her, and raise up seed to thy

PAGE 608

brother. And Onan knew that the seed should not be his; and it came to pass, when he went in unto his brother's wife, that be spilled it on the ground, lest that he should give seed to his brother, and the ting which he did displeased the Lord: wherefore, he slew him also." (37:7 - 10.)

C. Now, it must be clear to al that these are the doings of man, not of God. Onan entered into Niyoga* with Er's wife why did God slay him? Why did not He guide his understanding?

EXODUS

37. "And it came to pass in those days, when Moses was grown that he went out unto his brethren, and looked on their burdens: and he spied an Egyptian smiting an Hebrew, one of his brethren. And he looked this way and that way, and when he saw that there was no man, he slew the Egyptian, and hid him in the sand. And when he went out the second day, behold, two men of the Hebrews strove together: and he said to him that did the wrong, wherefore smitest thou thy fellow? And he said, who made thee a prince and a judge over us? Intendest thou to kill me, as thou killedest the Egyptian? And Moses feared, and said, Surely this thing is known." (1: 11 - 14.)

C. ~ Now mark, reader. This Moses - chief prophet of the Bible, the founder of its religion - was a slave to such passions as anger, was a homicide who wanted to escape his punishment like an ordinary thief. As he concealed his crime, he must have been in the habit of telling lies. Even such a man (as Moses) met God, became a great prophet and founded the Jewish religion - a religion the reflected the character of its founder. Hence all the chief prophets of the Christians from Moses downwards were all uncivilized…and devoid of culture.

38. "…..kill the Passover. And ye shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it into the blood that is in the bason, and strike the lintel and the two side-posts with the blood that is in the bason; and none of you shall go out at the door of his house until the morning. For the Lord will pass through to smite the Egyptians: and when

*This also conclusively proves that Niyoga waa in vogue in all countries in ancient time.

PAGE 609

He seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two-posts, the Lord will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you.")12:21 - 23.)

C. ~ This looks more kike making a charm. Can such a God ever be All-knowing who could not know the houses of the children of Israel but by seeing blood prints)on their lintels and side-posts). This is more like a man with a poor understanding. It shows that these things were written by some savage.

39. "And it came to pass, that at midnight the Lord smote all the first-born in the land of Egypt, from the first-born of Pharaoh that sat on his throne unto the first-born of the captive that was in the dungeon; and all the first-born of cattle. And Pharaoh rose up in the night, he, and all his servants, and all the Egyptians; and there was a great cry in Egypt; for there was not a house where there was not one dead." (12:29, 30.)

C. ~ Bravo! What a fine thing did this God of the Christians do! How like a burglar, at midnight He mercilessly killed children., infants and the aged and even cattle that were all innocent! He had not had the least pity on them. 'There was a great cry in Egypt' and yet the heart of this Christian God would not melt. Let alone God, even an ordinary man would not do such a thing and yet there is nothing strange in it as it has been said "A flesh-eater knows no pity." When the God of the Christian is a flesh-eater, what can He have to do with pity and compassion?

40. "The Lord shalt fight for you….speak unto the children of Israel; that they go forward. But lift thou up thy rod, and stretch out thine hand over the sea , and divide it: and the children of Israel shall go on dry ground through the midst of the sea." (14:14 - 16.)

C. ~ Well Sir! In ancient times God used to follow the children of Israel as does a shepherd his flock of sheep. We wonder where has He hidden himself now? Had he been in evidence now, He would have helped the Christians to make rail-roads throughout the sea which would have been a great boon to the world. They would also have been saved the trouble of constructing boats and ships. But what is to be done. None knows where this Christian God had hidden himself. The Biblical God had done many an impossible thing in his dealings with Moss. But it appears that like

PAGE 610

God like devotee and His Book is but too true in this case. May such a God and such a book remain far form us. In this alone lies our good.

41."….for I the Lord thy God, am a jealous God visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;……" (20:5.)

C. ~ Now what kind of justice is this to consider it good to visit the sins of fathers upon children unto the fourth generation. Does not a good father even have wicked children or vice versa? If this be true how could (the Christian) God be justified in inflicting punishment on children onto the fourth generation for the sins of their fathers? It is unjust to inflict punishment on the innocent.

42. "Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labor…but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God…the Lord blessed the Sabbath day." 20:9 -11.)

C. ~ Is Sunday alone the holy day? Are the other six days (of the week) unholy? Had God worked so hared for six days that he got tired and went to sleep on the seventh? If he blessed Sunday, what did He do unto the other six days? He must have cursed them. Leave alone God, even a enlightened man would not do such a thing. What good did He see in the Sabbath day and what wrong had the other six days done that He blessed and hallowed the one and without any cause pronounced the others unholy?

43. "Thou shalt bear false witness against thy neighbor. Thou shall not cover thy neighbor's house, thu shalt not covet thy neighbors wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's." (20:16, 17.)

C. ~ Bravo! No wonder that the Christians covet the wealth and possessions of the foreigners as assiduously as a thirst man thirsts for water or a hungry man hungers after food. The Christian God would be as selfish and partial as is the author of this (so-called) commandment. If a Christian were to say that the word neighbor here includes all men, it cannot be true because none will be left out whose wife and servants one could covet. Hence these are the inventions of selfish men and not the commandments of God.

PAGE 611

44. "Now therefore dill every male among the little ones, and kill every woman that hath known man by lying with him. But all the women children that have not known a man by lying with him keep alive for yourselves." (31:17, 18.)

C. ~ Well done (Christians)! How good is your prophet Moses as well as your God, who could ot keep aloof form taking even the lives of women children, the aged and the cattle. It also conclusively proves that Moses was voluptuous, since had he not been sensual, he would not have spared virgin girls for himself as well as for his followers, nor would he have issued such cruel order (as encouraged sensualism).

45. "He that smiteth a man, so that he die, shall be surely put to death. And if a man lie not in wait, but God deliver him into his had; then I will appoint thee a place wither he shall flee." (21:12, 13.)

C. ~ If this act of God be just, why was not the same punishment meted out to Moses who slew a man, buried him and then ran away? He stands guilty of partiality to Moses or else why did He not let Moses be judged by the ruler of the country.

46. "….and sacrificed peace offerings of oxen unto the Lord. And Moses took half of the blood and put it in basons; and half of the blood he sprinkled on the altar, and Moses took the blood, and sprinkled it on the people, and said, Behold the blood fo the covenant which the Lord hath made with you concerning all these words." 24:5, 6, 8, 12.)

C. ~ Now reader, judge for yourself whether the authors of all these acts were savages or not. How like a savages. How like a savage and a barbarian to think that the God Almighty accepts burnt offerings of oxen and sanctions the sprinkling of blood on the altar. Such being their God, why should not His votaries fill their stomachs with the meat of oxen and cows and thereby cause a great loss to the world.

The evil influence that the Christians try to bring the same sort of false charge against the Vedas, but there is absolutely not mention of animal sacrifice and the like practices in them. Further this conclusively proves that the God of the Christians was a hill-man who lived on a mountain. He could neither make nor procure paper, ink and pen and therefore was compelled to write on tablets of

PAGE 612

stones which He gave t o Moses, He might have passed for God before those savages.

47. "And he said, Thou canst not see my face; for there shall no man see me, and live. And the Lord said, Behold, there is a place by me, and thou shalt stand upon a rock: and it shall come tp pass, while my glory passeth by, that I will put these in a cliff of rock, and will cover thee with my hand while I pass by: and I will take away mine hand, and thou shalt see my back parts but my face shall not be seen." (33:20 - 23.)

C. ~ Now reader! Is there any doubt left in your mind as to the God of the Christian having a body like that of a man? (Mark) How He played tricks with Moses and posed as God!

LEVITICUS

48. "And the Lord called unto Moses, and spake unto him out of the tabernacle of the congregation, saying. Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them. If any man of you bring an offering unto the Lord, ye shall bring your offering of the cattle, even of the herd and of the flock." (1:1,2.)

C. ~ Now does not the God of the Christians, Who accepts the offerings of oxen and cows, etc., and enjoins upon His votaries to bring such offerings to Him, thirst for the blood and hunger after the flesh of such animals? Such a being can never be considered as God or even as a man of a tender-hearted nature, on the other hand, he looks more like a flesh-eating trickster.

49. "And he shall kill the bullock before the Lord: and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall bring the blood, and sprinkle the blood round about upon the altar that is by the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. And he shall flay the burnt offering, and cut it into pieces. And the sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire upon the altar, and lay the wood in order upon the fire! And the priests, Aaron's sons, shall lay the parts, he head and the fat, in order upon the wood that is on the fire which is upon the altar: But his inwards and his legs shall he wash in water: and the priest shall burn on the altar, to be a burnt sacrifice, and offering made by fire, of a sweet savor unto the Lord." (1:5 - 9.)

C. ~ A little consideration will show that the place, where a bullock is killed by His votaries before the Lord (who sanctions

PAGE 613

that act) his blood is sprinkled on all sides of the altar and the flesh of the animals offered as a burnt offering on the altar when the Lord smells a sweet savor, is not better than a slaughter-house. These things serve to show that the Bible can never be the Word of God nor can its God be any better than a savage trickster.

50. ~ And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying. If the priest that is anointed do sin according to the sin of the people; then let him bring for his sin, which he hath sinned, a young bullock without blemish unto the Lord for a sin offering. And he shall bring the bullock unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the Lord; and shall lay his hand upon the bullock's head, and kill the bullock before the Lord." (4:1, 3, 4.)

C. ~ Now look at his atonement for sins! A man commits a sin and in order to atone for its kills useful animals and the (Christian) God sanctions such an act. Well done, Christians! Even such a Being s this you hold to be God and hope to be saved through His Grace.

51. "When a ruler hath sinned….he shall bring his offering a kid of the goats, a male without blemish:…..they kill the burnt offering before the Lord: it is sin offering." (4:22 - 24.)

C. ~ Bravo, ye Christians! Such being the case why should the Christian rulers, judges and commanders (of the army) and the like officials fear sin. It is strange that these people should sin for their gratification and by way of atonement for their sins take the lives of cows, calves and other (useful) animals. This is why Christians have no scruples, in taking the life of any bird or animal. Come ye Christian, renounce this barbarous religion and embrace the Vedic faith - the religion of light, culture and righteousness. That alone will give you true happiness.

52. "And if he be not able to bring a lamb, en he shall bring for his trespass, which he hath committed, two turtledoves, or tow your pigeons, unto the Lord; and wring off his head from his neck…..but shall not divide it asunder….shall make an atonement for him for his sin which he hath sinned, and it shall be forgiven him. But if he be not able to bring two turtledoves or tow your pigeons, then he that sinned shall bring for his

PAGE 614

offering the tenth part of an ephah of fine flour for a sin offering: he shall put no oil upon it." (5:7, 8, 10, 11, 13,)*

C. ~ Neither the rich nor the poor among the Christians can have any fear in the commission of sins, because their God has made the atonement for sins so easy. Now this is one of the oddest things in the Christian Bible that it teaches that one can escape the consequences of one's sins without any great effort merely by committing other sins. A Christian commits a sin and in order to ward off its consequences kills other (animals), enjoys their flesh and gets his sins forgiven.

When the head of a pigeon is wrung off from its neck, it is sure to writhe for some time, do not the Christians even then feel any pity for the poor creature. But (we forget) why should they have any such feelings when their God teaches them to ill (other creatures to offer them as an atonement for their sins)? Besides, when all sins can thus be expiated, why have they set up this big fraud of forgiveness of sins through faith in Christ?

53. "Even the priest shall have to himself the skin of the burnt offering which he hath offered. And all the meat offering that is baken in the oven, and ll that is dressed in the frying pan and in the pan, shall be the priest's that offereth it." (7:8, 9.)

C. ~ We were under the impression that the trickery of the priests of the temple of the goddess Bhairava - the Indian Bacchus and other temples were mighty wonderful indeed, but we find that the trickery of the Christian God and his priests is a thousand-fold greater. The Christians must have greatly enjoyed themselves and ((perhaps ever enjoy now) when hey got money by selling the

---

*A thousand thanks to this God who has made a covenant of accepting calves, sheep, lambs and pigeons and even flour. Very strange that he accepted pigeons whose head had been wrung off from their necks. The mention of such things in the Bible compels one to infer that among those savages there was one cleverer than the rest, he took to living on a mountain and declared himself God. Those ignorant savages accepted him as such. Through his cunning devices, he managed to get animals, birds and flour and other articles for his food on the mountain and enjoyed himself. He has touts called angels to work for him. Let the good reader compare this God of the Bible who eats calves, sheep, lambs, pigeons and fine flour with, God, of the such, Who is Omnipresent, Omniscient, Unborn, Formless, Omnipotent and Just and possessed of other good attributes.

PAGE 615

skin of the animals offered as sacrifice and had their flesh to eat. Now will a father kill one of his two children and offer his flesh to the other, to eat? Is such a thing ever possible? How could then God unto Whom all living creatures - men, animals, birds, etc., - are like children, do such a thing? It is clear then that the Bible can never be the Word of God, nor can the God of the Bible be the true God, nor can its followers know that truth and righteousness are. This book is simply full of absurdities too numerous to mention.

NUMBERS

54. "And the ass saw the angel of the Lord standing in the way and his sword drawn in his hand; and the ass turned aside out of the way, and went into the field: and Balaam smote the ass, to turn her into the way. And the Lord opened the mouth of the ass, and she said unto Balaam, What have I done unto thee, that thou has smitten me these three times?" (22:23, 28.)

C. ~ In olden times even an ass could see the angels of God, but now-a-days, even bishop, clergymen and other men - good or bad - cannot see God or His messengers. Do God and His messengers exist now-a-days? If the do, what has become of them that they are not visible?

Are they sleeping a very heavy sleep or are they ill, or have they gone away to some other world or busied themselves with some thing else, or are they now offended with the Christians or have died? One does not know what has happened to them, but one can very well infer that they do not exist now nor are visible, never existed before nor were ever visible. The author (or authors) of the Bible has spun all these yarns.

II SAMUEL

55. "And it came to pass that night, that the word of the Lord came unto Nathan, saying, God and tell my servant David, Thus saith the Lord,, Shalt thou build me an house for me to dwell in? Whereas I have not dwelt in? Whereas I have not dwelt in any house since the time that I brought up the children of Israel out of Egypt even to this day, but have walked in a tent and in a tabernacle." (6:4 - 6.)

C. ~ There is no doubt now that the Christian God is embodied like a man. He complains that He worked very hared, walked hither and thither in tents and tabernacles but never had a house to dwell in. Now if David would make him a house, he would

PAGE 616

rest in it. Are not the Christians ashamed of believing in such a God and in such a book as the Word of God? But they are to be pitied,. Poor Christians! They were caught in the trap (of the Christian religion). They should now make a great effort to get out of it?

II KINGS

56. "And in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month which is the nineteenth year of king Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came Nebuzar-adan captain of the guard, a servant of the kind of Babylon unto Jerusalem: And he burnt the house of the Lord, and the king's house and all the houses of Jerusalem, and every great men's house burnt he with fire. And all the army of the Chaldees, that were with the captain of the guard broke down the walls of Jerusalem and round about." (25:8 - 10.)

C. ~ The God of the Christians is indeed to be pitied. He had a house built for him by David to dwell in. he must have been living comfortably in it but Nebuzar-adan burnt it to ashes. God and his army of angels could not do anything against him. This God used to fight and win great battles before, but now He let Nebuxar-adan completely destroy His house.

One wonders why He sat quietly (and did nothing to defend His house) and where His angels ran away. At such a critical moment no one was of any use (to him). Besides what became of the Omnipotence of God? Did it take wings and fly away? If what is stated here is true, all that has been said before in the Bible about the victories of God will have no meaning. Did His bravery and valor consist in killing Egyptian children only? By such a behavior the Christian God brought disgrace and dishonor on Himself. The book is simply full of thousands of such silly stories.

I CHRONICLES

57. "So the lord sent pestilence upon Israel and there fell of Israel seventy thousand men." (21:14.)

C. ~ Look at the strange doings of this Christian God! On the house of Israel that He blessed so often and for whose welfare He has been exerting Himself day and night He sends pestilence in a fit of rage and destroys 70,000 men. Some poet has said, "He

PAGE 617

that is pleased in one moment and displeased in the next, in other words, whose pleasure and displeasure are momentary, is to be feared even when pleased." This is but too true of the Christian God.

THE BOOK OF JOB

58. "Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the Lord, and Satan came also among them to present himself before the Lord. And the Lord said unto Satan, From whence comest thou? And Satan answered the Lord, and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and from walking up and down in it. And the Lord said unto Satan, Hast thou considered my servant job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and escheweth evil? And still he holdeth fast his integrity, although thou movedst me against him, to destroy him without cause. And Satan answered the Lord and said, Skin for skin, yea, all that a man hath will he give for his lif. But put forth thine hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh and he will curse thee to thy face. And the Lord said unto Satan, behold, he is in thine hand; but save his life. So went forth from the presence of the Lord, an smote Job with sore boils from the sole of his feet unto his crown." (2:1 - 7.)

C. ~ Now behold! How great is the might of the God of the Christians! Satan smites His devotee in His very presence and yet He neither punishes him, nor protects His votaries, nor can any one of His (so any) angels face him. One Satan has stricken them with fear. It also seems that the Christian God is not Omniscient, otherwise why should He have tested Job through Satan?

ECCLESIASTES

59. "….yes, my heart had great experience of wisdom and knowledge and I gave my heart to know wisdom, and to know madness and folly: I perceived that this also is vexation of spirit. For in much wisdom is much grief and he that increaseth knowledge increaseth sorrow."

C. ~ Now mark reader! Wisdom and knowledge, that are synonymous terms, are believed by them to be two different things. Who but an ignorant man will say that increase in knowledge is the cause of grief and sorrow? Leave alone the idea that God is the author of the Bible, even an enlightened man could not have written it.

PAGE 618

So far we have firefly discussed the Old Testament. Next we shall write a little about the New Testament that comprises Gospels according to St. Mathew, etc., and is held in great reverence by the Christians who call it the Bible. We should not examine it and see what kind of book it is.

GOSPEL OF ST. MATHEW

60. "Now the birth of Jesus Christ was this wise: When as his mother Mary espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost…..behold the angel of the lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto the Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost." (1:18:20)

C. ~ No educated man can ever believe in such things as are oppose to all kinds of evidence (such as direct Cognition. Inference, etc.) and to the laws of nature. Only people in a state of barbarism can believe them. It does not become educated and civilized men to do so. Breathes there a man who could violate the laws of God? Should anyone succeed in subverting His law, no one will ever obey His commandments, nor would God Himself break His own laws as He is Omniscient and infallible.

If this story of the birth of the Christ were held to be true, an unmarried girl that happens to conceive could say that she was with child of the Holy Ghost. She could also falsely say that the angel of the Lord told her in a dream "that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost"! This story is as possible as that recorded in the Puraanas about Kunti being conceived of the Sun. only those who have 'more money than brains' can believe in such things and fall an easy prey to superstition. It must have happened like this that Mary co-habited with someone and thereby became enceinte. She or someone else gave out (such an impossible thing) that she had conceived of the Holy Ghost.

61. "Then was Jesus led up of the spirit into the wilderness to be tempted of the devil. And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward an hungered. And when the tempter came to him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread." (4: 1 - 3.)

C. ~ This conclusively proves that the Christian God was not Omniscient, otherwise, why should He have had Jesus tempted of

PAGE 619

the devil? He would have known all about him by his Omniscience. Will a Christian live of he be kept without food for 40 days and 40 nights? It also proves that Jesus was neither the son of God nor did he possess any miraculous power or why would he not have turned stones into bread. Why would he have himself suffered from the pangs of hunger? The truth is that what God ahs created as stones no one could ever turn into bread, or could God Himself subvert His laws ordained by Himself since He is Omniscient and, all His works are free from error.

62. "And he saith unto them, follow me, and I will make you fishers of men. And they straightway left their nets, and followed him."

C. ~ It seems that it was in consequences of this sin alone, viz., breaking the fifth Commandment which says: "Honor thy father and thy mother that thy days may be long upon the land….", that he did not live long, since he neither served his father and mother, nor let others do it. It also shows that Jesus founded his religion in order to entrap others.

He wanted to accomplish his object by ensnaring others into his net like a fisherman. Is there any wonder then if Christian missionaries follow their Master in ensnaring other men into their religion? Just as a man who catches a large number of big fish, makes a name for himself as a good fisherman and also makes a good living by it, in like manner, a missionary who ensnares a large number of converts into the net of Christianity gets a good salary and makes a name for himself.

These people (missionaries) ensnare such simple men into their nets as are ignorant of the teachings of the Vedas and Shastras and separate them from their parents and other members of the family. It, therefore, behoves all enlightened Aryas to escape their net of superstition and error and exert themselves to save their ignorant brethren from the same.

63. "And Jesus went about all Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease among the people. and his fame went throughout all Syria; and they brought unto him all sick people that were taken with diverse diseases and torments, and those which were possessed with devils, and those which were lunatic, and those that had the palsy: and he healed them." (4:23, 24.)

PAGE 620

C. ~ We would have believed all this about Jesus that is written in the Bible, had the claims of the (popes and magicians), who in our day pretend to drive out devils and cure disease through charms and incantations, blessings or a pinch of ash, been true. All these things are meant, for ensnaring poor, ignorant, guileless people into superstition. If the Christians believe that Jesus really worked miracles, why do not they believe all that is claimed by the popes of the goddess (in India) to be true, because their claims are very much like those of Jesus.

64. "Blessed are the poor in spirit; for there is the kingdom of heaven. For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one title shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled. Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven." (5:3, 18, 19)

C. ~ If the heaven is one, there can be only one king there. If all those who are 'poor in spirit' will go to heaven, who will be the king among them? Very likely there will be a great row over this matter and all order will be set at nought. If by the term poor in spirit are meant all those who are penniless, it could never be right, but if this term means free from conceit then, too it could not be true as poor in spirit and free from conceit, can never be synonymous.

He that is poor in spirit can never be contended. To say that the law will hold good only so long as heaven and earth last can only be true of man-made laws, since they are not eternal. But this cannot be spoken of the eternal laws of the Omniscient God. "Whosoever shall break one of these commandments shall be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven" has been said merely to tempt men and inspire them with fear.

65. "Give us this day our daily bread. Lay not up for yourselves in treasures upon earth." (6:11, 19.)

C. ~ This shows that in the age when Jesus Christ lived, people were mere savages in a state of poverty, and Christ was also poor like the rest of them, therefore, it is that he prays to God for his

daily breads and teaches others to do the same. Why do the Christians lay up treasures when their Bible teaches to the contrary. They should act on their Master's advice and give away all that they possess in charity and become poor.

PAGE 621

66. "Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven." (7:21.)

C. ~ Now if all the great Bishops, Missionaries and other Christians, hold what Christ has said (in this verse) to be true, they should never all Christ Lord (or God). Should they refuse to do so, they will be sinners.

67. "Many will say to me in that day. And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity." (7:22, 23.)

C. ~ Mark reader! How Christ in order to convince the savages pretended to be the Judge who will sit on the seat of justice on the day of judgment. This was meant simply to tempt simple guileless men.

68. "And, behold, there came a leper and worshipped him, saying Lord if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean. And Jesus put forth his hand, and touched him, saying, I will; be thou clean. And immediately his leprosy was cleansed." (8:2, 3.)

C. ~ All these things are meant to ensnare ignorant men. If the Christians hold all these things, that are opposed to the dictum of knowledge and the laws of nature, to be true, why do they say that the stories about *Shukracharya, Dhanvantri, Kashyap* in the *Puraanaas* are false? For instance, it is recorded in the *Mahabhaarat* and the *Puraanaas* that the whole dead army of daityas fiends was made alive. Kach the son of Vrilhaspat was cut into pieces that were eaten by fish and yet *Shukracharya* brought him back to life.

Again, the same sage killed Kach and gave it to be eaten and then made him alive in the stomach and brought him out as such. *Shukracharya* himself died and Kach brought him to life. The sage *Kashyapa* brought a tree and a man back to life that had been burnt to ashes

Dhanvantri made hundreds of thousands of dead persons alive, cured millions of lepers, granted sight to hundreds and thousands of blind men and gave hearing to millions of deaf men. If these stories be false, why is not the story of Christ's having performed miracles also false? Why should a man not be called obstinate and unjust who calls whatever another person says, to be wrong and declares himself to be right, however wrong he may be? In like manner, all that the Christians say about the

PAGE 622

miracles of Christ is based on wrong-headed ness and injustice. It is a mere childish prattle.

69. "There met him two possessed with devils, coming out of the tombs. And, behold, they cried out, saying, What have we to do with thee, Jesus, htou Son of God are thou come hither to torment us before the time? And there was a good way off from them as herd of many swine feeding. So the devils besought him. Saying, If thou cast us out, suffer us to go away into the herd of swine. And he said unto them, Go and when they were come out, they went into the herd of swine: and, behold, the whole herd of swine ran violently down a steep place into the sea, and perished in the waters." (8:28, 33.)

C. ~ A little consideration will show that all these things are false. Dead persons can never come out of their graves, nor can they go to any one speak to him. Only the most ignorant savages can believe in such things. Christ was the cause of the death of that herd of swine, and he therefore stands guilty of the sin of having inflicted (pecuniary) loss on the owner of the swine.

The Christians hold that Christ could forgive sins and purify the impure, why could not he cleanse the devils of their impurities? Why did he not recompense the owner for the loss he had sustained? Do the cultured Christians, such as the Europeans, also believe in these yarns? If they do, they are indeed immersed in superstition.

70. "And, behold, they brought to him a man sick of the palsy, lying on a bed: and Jesus seeing their faith said unto the sick of the palsy: Son, be of good cheer; thy sins be forgiven thee. For I am not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance." (9:2, 13.)

C. ~ Now this thing is as impossible as others that have been mentioned before. As regards the forgiveness of sins it is only a bait thrown to the simpletons to ensnare them. Just as alcohol, Indian hemp, or opium taken by one person cannot intoxicate another, likewise, a sin committed by one cannot affect another.

On the other hand, it is he alone who suffers sins. Verily this is Divine Justice! God would indeed be unjust if good or bad deeds done by one man should affect another, or if the judge should take on himself the consequences of the crimes of the criminal. Remember righteousness alone is the cause of felicity (happiness), not Christ or any other saint or prophet. The righteous do not at all stand in need of Christ, etc., nor do the sinners as their sins can never be forgiven.

PAGE 623

71."And when he had called unto him his twelve disciples, he gave them power against unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease. For it is not ye that speak, but the Spirit of your Father which speaketh in you. Think not that I am come to send peace on earth: I came not to send peace, but a sword. For I come to set a man at variance against his father, and the daughter against her mother, and the daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law. And a man's foes shall be they of his own household." (10, 20, 34 - 36)

C. ~ These are the very disciples one of whom betrayed Christ for 30 rupees, all others also forsook him and fled. All such things as one's being possessed of devils or casting them out, curing of disease without proper medicine and diet are impossible as they are opposed to the dictum of knowledge and contrary to the laws of nature.

Only the ignorant people can believe in them. If it be the spirit of God that speaks in man not the human soul what does the latter do? It must be God then Who enjoys or suffers the consequences of virtuous or sinful acts done by man. This is altogether wrong. Christ came to set men against each other and cause them to fight and he succeeded.

The same strife is raging among men to this day. How wicked it is to sow discord among men as it inflicts great suffering on them, but it seems that the Christians regard it as the highest doctrine, since when Christ thought it good to run men against each other, why should not they - his followers? Yes it becomes Christ alone to turn the members of one's own household into his foes; no good man will ever do such a thing.

72. "And Jesus saith unto them. How many loaves have ye? And they said, seven, and a few little fishes. And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the ground. And he took the seven loaves and the fishes, and gave thanks, and broke them, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude. And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken

meat that was left seven baskets full. And they that did eat were four thousand men beside women and children." (15:34 - 39.)

C. ~ Are these things any better than the tricks of a wonder-worker or of a juggler of today? Where did all these loaves come from (to feed the multitude)? Had Christ possessed such miraculous powers, why would he have hankered after the fruit of a

PAGE 624624

fig tree when he was hungry? Why did he not turn stones, earth and water into loaves and delicious sweets? These things look more like children's play. Many a *Vairaagee* and other mendicants defraud guileless, ignorant men of their money by such tricks (as these).

73. "And then he shall reward everyman according to his works." (16:27)

C. ~ When all men shall be rewarded according to their works, it is useless for the Christians to preach the doctrine of the forgiveness of sins. If the latter be true, the former must be false. If the Christians say that those that deserve to be forgiven shall be forgiven, while those that do not deserve it shall not be forgiven, it cannot be right, since justice and mercy consist only in awarding punishment and for all works.

74. "O ye faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? How long shall I suffer you? Bring him hither to me. For verily I say unto you, If ye have faith as a grain of mustard see, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place: and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you." (17:17, 20)

C. ~ The Christians go about preaching: "Come, embrace our religion, get your sins forgiven and be saved." All this is untrue, since had Christ possessed the power of having sins remitted, instilling faith in others and purifying them, why would he have not freed his disciples from sin, made them faithful and pure. When he could not make those who went about him pure, faithful and sinless, how could he now, that no one knows where he is, purify anyone?

Now disciples of Christ were destitute of as much as faith as a grain of mustard seed and it is they that wrote the Bible, how could then such a book be held as an authority. Those who seek happiness should not believe in the works of the faithless, impure (at heart) and the unrighteous. It also proves that if the word of Christ be held to be true, not Christian possesses as much faith as a grain of mustard. If a Christian should say that he possessed it more or less, let him then be asked to remove a mountain from one place to another. Even if he succeeded in doing it, he could not be said to possess perfect faith but only about as much as a grain of mustard. On the contrary, if he did not succeed, he was then destitute even of an atom of faith or

PAGE 625

righteousness. If anyone were to say that all this is allegorical and the word mountain stands for pride and other evil qualities of the mind, it cannot be right, as raising the dead, curing the blind, and lepers and those possessed of devils could also be allegorical. Christ raising of the dead, etc., may mean curing the lazy of their laziness, curing the blind, dispelling the ignorance of the mentally blind, the licentious of licentiousness and the superstitions of those who were superstitious.

Even this interpretation would not hold water, since had this been the case, why would he have not been able to cure his disciples of their faithfulness, ignorance, etc.? Hence Christ betrays his

ignorance by saying such impossible things. Had Christ possessed even a little knowledge, why would he have talked such nonsense like a savage.

However as it has been said, "In a country where no trees are seen to grow, even the castor oil plant is considered to be the biggest and the best tree" in like manner in a country where none but the most ignorant lived, Christ was rightly considered a great man but Christ can be of no count among the learned and wise men of the present day.

75. "Verily I say unto you, Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven." (18:3.)

C. ~ If the conversion of a man by the offering of his will be the cause of his entering into heaven and his not doing so the cause of his going to hell, it is clear then that no one can take upon himself the sins or virtues of another,. And the use of the expression "except ye…..become as little children." Etc., shows that most of the teachings of Christ were opposed to the dictum of knowledge and contrary to the laws of nature, and he also wished that the people should accept them like children without questioning their validity, in other words, accept them with their eyes closed.

Plenty of Christians have blind faith like children, otherwise why should they believe in such things as are opposed to reason and science. It is also clear that had not Christ himself been destitute of knowledge and understanding like children, he would not have taught other to become as children, since a man always wants to make others like himself.

PAGE 626

76. "Verily I say unto you, That a rich man shall hardly enter into the kingdom of heaven. And again I say unto you, It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God." (19:23, 24.)

C. ~ It appears from this that Christ was a poor man. The rich very likely did not respect him, hence he taught the above; but this teaching is not true, because there are good and bad people among the rich as well as among the poor. A man may be rich or poor, but he always reaps the fruits of his deeds - good or bad - as the case may be.

It is also clear that Christ believed that the kingdom of God was in some particular locality and not everywhere. Such being the case, He cannot be god, since God's kingdom must be everywhere and it is foolish to speak of it as one shall or shall not enter into it. Again, will all the Christians that are rich go to hell and those that are poor enter into heaven?

A little reflection would have made it clear to Jesus Christ that the poor do not possess so many means (to do good) as the rich. If the rich, after due deliberation, spend their wealth in furthering the cause of righteousness, they could attain the highest state, whilst the poor without any means for their improvement would remain in wretched plight.

77. "And Jesus said unto them: Verily, I say unto you, That ye which have followed me in the regeneration when the Son of man shall sit on the throne of his glory, ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel. And everyone that hath forsaken houses, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for my name's sake shall receive and hundredfold, and shall inherit everlasting life. But many that are first shall be last; and the last shall be first." (19:28. 29.)

C. ~ Now, behold! The cat is out of the bag. The real motive of Jesus is saying this to his followers was that they should not get out of his net even after he was dead. Even that rascal who

betrayed his Master and helped him to be crucified for a paltry sum 30 Rupees would sit on a throne by him. It is said that they (his 12 disciples) will sit on judgment on the twelve tribes of Israel, but it seems they will judge people of tribes other than those of Israel, since all the sins of the children of Israel will be forgiven. It seems that this is the reason that the Christians are so very

PAGE 627

partial to their co-religionists. It is very often seen that if a white-man kills a dark man the judge and the jurors being white-men sometimes give the verdict of not guilty against the accuse and let him go unpunished. Very likely the same kind of justice is done in the heaven of Christ. Besides, there is one great objection against all being judged on one special day, called the day of judgment, one man for instance died in the beginning of the world while another on the eve of the judgment day.

One is kept waiting all this time from the beginning to the end of Creation for the hour when he is judged, while the other is judged at once,, he has not had to wait at all. How very unjust it is! Again, he who goes to hell or heaven will have to stay there forever. Now this is very unjust, since the powers and actions (of the soul) are finite.

Besides, the good and bad deeds of two souls can never be equal, consequently the result, i.e., the pleasure or pain being unequal there ought to be millions of heavens or hells, so that each soul may enjoy or suffer the just amount of pleasure or pain. But there is no mention of such an arrangement in the (holy) book of the Christians, hence it can never be the Word of God, nor can Jesus be the Son of God.

It is most absurd to say that anyone can have a hundred fathers and mothers. One can have only one father and one mother. Yet the Bible says, "Everyone that hath forsaken…an hundredfold." It seems what the Qoran says about everyone of the faithful getting houri in heaven must have been borrowed from this verse in the Bible.

78. "Now in the morning as he returned into the city he hungered. And when he saw a fig tree in the way, he came to it, and found nothing thereon, but leaves only, and said unto it, Let no fruit grow on thee henceforward for ever, And presently the fig tree withered away." (21:18, 19)

C. ~ Now the missionaries always tell us that Christ was very calm, kind-hearted and free from anger and other such passions but these verses show that he was hot-tempered and ignorant of the laws that govern the phenomena of seasons and that he altogether behaved like a savage. Now a tree is not an intelligent being (that it could be held responsible foe bearing fruit). He cursed the (fig) tree for no cause; and if it be really true that the tree did wither away, it could not be due to his curse. We should not wonder if it had withered away by the use of some poison.

PAGE 528

79. "Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall nor give her light, and the stars shall fall, the heavens shall be shaken." (24:29.)

C. ~ Well done Jesus! With aid of which science did you know about the falling of the stars from heaven? Had Christ read a little (of science), he would have certainly known that all these stars are spheres like our earth, and, therefore, could not fall. All this shows that he was the son of a carpenter, must have years worked as a carpenter sawing, peeling or cutting wood or joining together different pieces of wood. When it entered his head that he could also pass for a prophet in that savage country, he began to preach.

He uttered a few good thoughts but many bad ones. The natives of that country (i.e., his countrymen) were mostly savages and consequently believed in him. Had Europe been as enlightened and civilized then as it is at the present day, he could not have all passed for a prophet. It is one of the shortcomings of the Europeans that though they are not enlightened do some extent , yet through expediency or contumacy they do not renounce this hollow religion and instead incline towards and embrace the absolutely true religion of the Vedas.

80. "Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away, but of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only." (24:35.)

C. ~ This also betrays the ignorance and foolishness of Christ. Where will Akasha (heaven) go after it had moved? Akasha (matter) being very subtle is not visible to the eye, who can see it move? Besides, it does not do for a good man to praise himself with his own lips.

81. "Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, depart form me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels. For I was an hungered, and ye gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink." (25:41.)

C. ~ How very unjust to send his own followers to heaven while others to everlasting fire! Where it is said that there will be no Akasha (space) wherein will the heaven and everlasting fire or hell exist? Had not good made the devil and his angels He would not have been obliged to make all these preparations for hell. We

PAGE 629

wonder what kind of God he is Who could not even inspire the Devil with fear since he was one of His angels and yet revolted against him, but why could not he get hold of Him in the beginning and put him in a prison or kill him. What should he think of the power of God when the devil was kept without food for 40 days. It was Christ, even the son of God, who could not do anything. It follows, therefore, that neither Christ was the son of God, nor could the Biblical God be the true God.

82. "Then one of the twelve, called Judas Iscariot, went unto the chief priests. And said unto them, What will ye give me, and I will deliver him unto you? And they convenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver." (26: 14, 15.)

C. ~ Behold! All the Godhead and miraculous powers of Christ stand exposed! When he could not purify even the heart of his chief disciple who was in his constant company how could he purify others now that he is dead.

Oh! How many people, who put their faith and trust in him, are taken in since how could he who could not do any good to those who constantly associated with him while he was alive, benefit anyone after his death?

83. "And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it an broke it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body. And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it. For this is my blood of the new testament." (26:26 - 28.)

C. ~ Can a cultured man ever do such a thing? Only an ignorant savage would do it. No enlightened man would ever call the food of his disciples his flesh nor their drink his blood. This is called Lord's Supper by the Christians of the present day. They eat and drink imagining all the time that their bread was the flesh of Christ and their drink his blood. Is not it an awful thing? How

could those, who could not even keep aloof from the idea that their food and drink were the flesh and blood of their savior, abstain from the flesh and blood of others?

84. "And he took with him Peter and two sons of Zebedee, and began to be sorrowful and very heavy. Then saith he unto

PAGE 630

them, My soul is exceedingly by sorrowful, even unto death: tarry ye here, and watch with me. And he went a little further, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt." (26:37 - 39.)

C. ~ Now had he been the son of God and not an ordinary man and cognizant of the three periods of time or even a learned man, he would not have acted in the way he did. This clearly shows that all this fraud that Christ was the son of God, had knowledge of the future and could procure remission of sins was set up by Christ or his disciples. It is certain therefore that he was only an ordinary man, simple and honest but ignorant. He was neither a learned man nor a Yogi, nor one possessed of miraculous powers.

85, "And while he yet spake, lo, Judas, one of the twelve, came and with him a great multitude with swords and staves, from the chief priests and elders of the people. not he that betrayed him gave them a sign, saying, Whosoever I shall kiss, that same is he: hold him fast, and forthwith he came to Jesus, and said, Hail Master; and kissed him…Then came they and laid hands on Jesus, and took him. Tlhen all the disciples forsook him, and fled…At the last came two false witnesses. And said, this fellow said, I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to build it in three days. And the high priest arose, and said unto him, Answerst thou nothing what is it which these witness against thee? But Jesus held his pace. And the high priest answered and said unto him, I adjure thee by the living God, that thou tell us whether thou be the Christ, and Son of God. Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven. Then the high priest rent his clothes, saying, He hath spoken blasphemy; what further need have we of witnesses? Behold, now ye have heard his blasphemy. What think ye? They answered and said, He is guilty of death, Then did they spit in his face, and buffeted him: and others smote him with the palms of their hands. Saying, Prophesy unto us, thou Christ, Who is he that smote thee? Now Peter sat without in the palace; and a damsel came unto him, saying, Thou also wast with Jesus of Galilee. But he denied before them all,

PAGE 631

saying, I know not what thou sayest. And when he was gone out into the porch, another maid saw him, and said unto them that were there, This fellow was also was with Jesus of Nazareth. And again he denied with an oath I do not know the man.' (26: 47, - 50, 56, 60 - 72, 74.)

C. ~ Now what can you think of Christ who had even the power or influence to instill firm faith into the minds of his disciples who ought to have laid down their lives rather than betrayed their master through greed, or denied him, or told an untruth or sworn falsely. Nor did Christ possess any miraculous power. It is written in Genesis (19:11) that all the people of Sodom attacked the house of Lot to kill his guests who were two angels of God. They (two angels) smote them with blindness.

Through this is an impossible story but anyhow it shows that Christ did not possess even so much power as the two angels did, yet the Christians now-a-days make no end of fuss over the powers of Christ. He ought to have preferred suicide with a weapon or by stopping his respiration

with the help of Yoga or in some other manner to death with such ignominy. But how could he have this sense when he was so destitute of knowledge.

86. "Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels?" (26:53.)

C. ~ He boasts and brags of the greatness of his father and himself and yet cannot do anything. When the high priest said to him, "Answerest thou nothing which is it which these witness against thee?" But Jesus held his peace. It was not right on his part to do so, he ought to have spoken out the truth. It was not good of him, to have boasted of this greatness nor was it right on the part of those who put him to death on a false charge. What they accused him of was not his offence but they too were savages, what could they know of justice? It would have been good for both parties had not Christ pretended to be the Son of God and they (the Jews) so ill-treated him, but where from could they get the requisite sense, righteousness and justice to know these things and feel and act the truth?

PAGE 632

87. "And Jesus stood before the governor: and the governor asked him, saying, Art thou the King of Jews? And Jesus said unto him, Thou sayest. And when he was accused of the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing. Then said Pilate unto him, Hearest thou not how many things they witness against thee? And he answered to never a word: in so much that the governor marveled greatly. Pilate saith unto them, What shall I do then with Jesus which is called Christ? They all say unto him, Let him be called. When he had scourged Jesus, he delivered him to be crucified. Then the soldiers of the governor took Jesus into the common hall, and gathered unto him the whole band of soldiers. And they stripped him, and put on him a scarlet robe. And when they stripped him, and put on him a scarlet robe. And when they had platted a crown of thorns, they put it upon his head, and a reed in his right hand: and they bowed the knee before him, saying, Hail King of Jews! And they spit upon him and took the reed, and smote him on the head."

"And after that they had mocked him, they took the robe off from him, and led him away to crucify him. And when they were come unto a place called Golgotha, that is to say, a place of a skull. They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall: and when he had tasted thereof, he would not drink. And they crucified him. And set up over his head his accusation written…Then were there two thieves crucified with him, one on the right hand, and another on the left. And they that passed by reviled him, wagging their heads. And saying, Thou that destroyest the temple and buildest it in three days, save thyself. If thou be the son of God come down from the cross. Likewise also the Chief priests mocking him, with the scribes and elders said. He saved others; himself he cannot save. If he be the King of Israel, let him now come down from the cross and we will believe him. He trusted in God; let him deliver him now, if he will have him: for he said, I am the Son of God. The thieves also, which were crucified with him, cast the same in his teeth. Now from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land unto the ninth hour. And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, ELI, ELI, I AM A SABACHTHANI? That is to say, My God, My God, why hast thou forsaken me? Some of them that stood there, when they heard that said, This man calleth for Elias. And

PAGE 633

straightway one of them ran, and took a sponge, and filled it with vinegar, and put it on a reed, and gave him to drink, Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost." (26:11-14, 22, 26 - 31, 33- 35, 37 - 48, 50.)

C. ~ Those wicked people treated Jesus very badly indeed. But Jesus was also to be blame, since he pretended to be the son of God. Now God has no son, nor is He the father of anyone, because if this be the case, He would also be the father-in-law, brother-in-law, etc., of some one. Besides, when the governor asked him, "Art thou the King of the Jews, etc., he ought to have told him what he knew to be the truth. Had the miracles supposed to have been worked by him been true, he would have then come down form the cross and thereby converted them all.

Again had he been the Son of God, He too would have saved him. Had he been a seer, he would have refused to take the drink of vinegar and gall that was offered without tasting it. He would have known its composition before-hand. Had he possessed any miraculous power, he would not have cried so much before he yielded up the ghost. This shows that a man may be ever so clever the truth will be out. It is also clear that Jesus was a little better than other men of his time who were all savages. He did not possess any miraculous power nor was he the Son of God, nor was he an enlightened man else he would not have suffered from mental anguish at the time of his death.

88. "And, behold, there was a great earthquake: for the angel of the Lord descended from heaven, and came, and rolled back the stone from the door, and sat upon it. He is not here: for he is risen as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay. And as the went to tell his disciples, behold, Jesus met them, saying, AH hail. And they came and held him by the feet, and worshipped him. Then said Jesus unto them, Be not afraid, go tell my brethren that they go into Galilee, and there shall they see me. Then the eleven disciples went away into Galilee, into a mountain where Jesus had appointed them. And when they saw him, the worshipped him but some doubted. And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. I am with you always, even up to the end of the world." (28:2, 6, 9, 10, 16 - 18, 20.)

PAGE 634

C. ~ Even these things being opposes to the dictum of knowledge and the laws of nature are not worthy of being believed in. Have not the Christians made God like a Tahsildar or a Collector when they believe that he had peons or messengers called angels who descended from heaven and were sent on an errands hither and thither. Did Christ rise from the dead with the same body that had been buried. The Bible say that women held his feet and worshipped him. Was it the same body which had been buried? Now that body had been buried for three days, we should like to know why did it not decompose? To say with his won lips that "all power is given unto me in heaven and earth" was a mere hoax (on the part of Christ). It is impossible that he could have met his disciples and talked with them, because if these things be true, why cannot anyone rise from the dead now-a days and go to heaven with the same body.

We have so far briefly discussed the Gospel according to St. Matthew, next we shall discuss the Gospel according to St. Mark.

THE GOSPEL OF ST. MARK

89. "Is not this the carpenter." (6:19)

C. ~ Joseph was really a carpenter, and, therefore, Jesus (being his son) was also a carpenter, and for years together he worked as such then he began to aspire to be a prophet. By and by he pretended to be the son of God and those savages (around him believed him to be such. No wonder then that he was so clever in dividing people, and in causing discord and dissensions among them.

THE GOSPEL OF ST. LUKE

90. "And Jesus said unto him, Why callest thou me good? None is good, save one that is God." (18:19.)

C. ~ Whence have he Christians got this Trinity - the Father, the Son and the Holy Ghost when Christ himself declares that none is good, save one that is God.

91. "he sent him to Herod. And when Herod saw Jesus, he was exceeding glad: for he was desirous to see him of a long season, because he had heard many things of him: and he hoped to have seen some miracle done by him. Then he questioned with him in many words; but he answered him nothing

PAGE 635

C. ~ Now this is not to be found in the Gospel of St. Mathew, hence the witnesses (St. Mathew, St. Luke, etc.). disagree on this point, but all the witnesses ought to say the same thing (before their evidence can be trusted). Had Jesus been possessed of intelligence and miraculous power, hw would have answered Herod (when he questioned him) and also shown him some miracles. This sows that Jesus was neither an enlightened man, nor was he possessed of any miraculous power.

THE GOSPEL OF ST. JOHN

92. "In the beginning was the Word, and Word ea with God, and the Word was God. The same was in the beginning with God. All things were made by Him: and without him was not anything made that was made. In him was life: and the life was the light of men." 1:1 - 4.)

C. ~ The word could not have existed in the beginning without the speaker: and therefore to say that the Word was with God, is useless. The Word can never be God. Since the Word was with God in the beginning, neither of the two can be said to have existed prior to the other. The world could ot have been made by the help of the Word unless the material cause (of the universe) also existed.

The maker could create the universe even without the Word by keeping quiet. What was life and where was it? This verse (In him was life, etc.,) would make the souls eternal (beginningless), and if they be eternal the statement of Genesis which says "The Lord God breathed the breadth of life into the nostrils of man" would be wrong. Is life the light of men alone and not of the animals and other living creatures?

93. "And supper being ended, the devil having now put into he heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon's son, to betray him." 8:.)

C. ~ Now this cannot be true, since if the Christians were asked, "(You hold) that the devil tempts himself, men can also be tempted by themselves; what has the devil to do with this (business) then? But if God be the tempter of the devil, the Christian God then is the greatest devil and He stands guilty of the having tempted all men through him. Can God even do such things? Truth to tell, we should not wonder if those, wrote this book

PAGE 636

(The Bible) and called Christ the Son of God, were devils, but neither this (book) can be the Word of God, nor its God the true God, nor Christ the Son of God.

94. "Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me. In my father's house are many mansions: If it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. And I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me. Ye had known me, ye house have known my Father also." (14:4, 6, 7.)

C. Now reader mark the words of Christ! Are they a bit better than what the popes say to their dupes? Had he not set up this fraud, who would have been caught into his net? Has Christ got the monopoly of his Father? If He be under his control, he will no longer remain independent and consequently could never be God.

To say that no man cometh unto the Father but by me can never be true as God does not stand in need of any mediator? Had no one attained God before Christ? All this boasting about his Father's mansions and about his going to prepare a place for his followers and speaking with his own lips about his being the way, the truth and the life were nothing, but a hoax and hence can never be true.

95. "Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do because I go unto my father." (14:12.)

C. ~ Now if the Christians believe in Christ, why cannot they raise the dead and work other miracles? But if even with their faith in Christ they cannot work any miracles it is certain that Christ too had wrought no miracles, since he himself says: "He that believeth on me…..shall he do also." Has one lost his mental vision that he should believe in the miracles of Christ when not a single Christian can work a miracle?

96. "The only true God." (17:3.)

C. ~ When He is the only true God, it i absurd for the Christians, to talk about three Gods. (The Father, the Son and the Holy Ghost).

PAGE 637

THE BOOK OF REVELATION

Now reader mark! What wonderful thing St. John tells us.

97. "And they had on their heads, crowns of gold…And there were seven lamps of fire burning before the throne which are the seven Spirits of God. And before the throne there was a sea of glass like unto crystal……and round about the throne, were four beasts full of eyes before and behind." (4:4 - 6.)

C. ~ Now, is not the Christian heaven like a city and their God like a lamp of fire. Wearing of crowns of gold and other jewelry as well as the existence of such beasts as had 'eyes before and behind' is impossible. Besides, these beasts are said to have been lions, etc., now who can believe such things?

98. "And I saw in the right hand of him that sat on the throne a book written within and n the backside, sealed with seven seals…Who is worthy to open the book, and loose the seals thereof? And no man in heaven, nor in earth, neither under the earth, was able to open the book, neither

to look thereon. And I wept much because no man was found worthy to open and read the book neither to look thereon." (5:1 - 4)

C. ~ What a fine picture of the Christian heaven! There are thrones, and throngs of men and a book sealed with many seals whom no man in heaven or on earth could open or look on; then, there was John who began to weep because 'no man was found worthy to open and to read the book'. Upon this an elder tells him that Christ is able to open it. As the proverb runs 'men's songs are sung in praise of one whose marriage it is,' all these mighty things are told of Christ, in order to magnify him. But they have no legs to stand on.

99. "And I beheld, and , lo, in the midst of the throne and of the four beasts, and in the midst of the elders, stood a Lamb as it had been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent forth into all the earth." (5:6.)

C. ~ Now, look at the imaginary character of St. John's dream! In that heaven there are only Christians, four beasts and Christ, but none else. It is very strange that while on earth Christ had

PAGE 638

only two eyes and no trace of horns, but in the heaven he got seven eyes and seven horns, which are really the seven spirits of God! What a pity, the Christians have accepted such nonsense (as revelation). They ought to have used a little sense anyhow.

100. "And when he had taken the book, the four beast and four and twenty elders ell down before the Lamb, having everyone of them harps, and golden vials full of odors, which are the prayers of saints." (5:8.)

C. ~ We wonder when Christ was not in heaven whom did these four beasts and twenty-four elders, etc., worship by burning incense and lighting lamps and offering food (eatable) performing arti.*Now the Protestant Christians condemn idol-worship, whilst their heaven is the veritable home of idolatry.

101. "And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals, and I heard, as it were the noise of thunder, one of the four beasts saying come and see. And I saw, and behold a white hors; and he that sat on him had a bow: and a crown was given unto him; and he went forth conquering, and to conquer. And when he had opened the second seal, I heard the second, beast say, come and see. And there went out another horse that was red; and power was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth….and when he had opened the third seal,…..and to a black horse,…and when he had opened the fourth seal, …and behold a pale horse, and his name that sat on him was Death.."(6:1 - 5, 7 - 8.)

C. ~ Now, are not these tales more absurd than those of the Puraanaa (Hinduism)? How could horses and riders be contained in the seals of a book? Those who have accepted even the delirious mutterings of John as truth are the very embodiment of ignorance.

102. "And they cried wit a loud voice, saying, How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth? And white robes were given unto everyone of them; and it was said unto them, that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellow servants also and their

---

**It is the name of a ceremony performed by Indian idolators in adoration with a lamp.*

PAGE 639

brethren, that should be killed as they were, should be fulfilled." (6:10, 11.)

C. ~ Christians, being handed over to a Judge who is absent from the station and is in on tour, will no doubt cry aloud for justice, but he that accepts the Vedic faith shall not have to wait at all for Justice. Will the Christians tell us if the court of God is closed now-a-days and no justice is being done. Are the judges sitting idle not?

The Christian God can also be easily led, since on their request, He begins to avenge them on their enemies. They are of a very vindictive nature because even after death they avenge themselves on their enemies. It seems they have not the least forbearance and where there is not forbearance, misery and sorrow know no bounds.

103. "And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth he untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind. And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places." (6:13, 14.)

C. ~ It is because, St. John the Divine was an ignorant man that he talked such nonsense. The stars are planets and spheres, how can they all fall on our earth, and why will the solar attraction let them shift hither and thither out of their orbits? Did he think that the heaven was like a mat (that it could be rolled).*It is formless thing hence it can neither be rolled nor gathered together. This shows that John and the like were all savages what could they know about these things?

104 "And I heard the number of them which were sealed: and there were sealed an hundred and forty and four thousand of all tribes of the children of Israel. Of the tribe of Juda were sealed twelve thousand." (7:4, 5.)

C. ~ Is the Biblical God the Lord of tribes of Israel alone or is He the Lord of the whole Universe? Had He not been only their Lord He would not have sided with those savages alone. He always helped them only , did not even take the name of any other

---

*It is that the word akaasha has been rendered by the translators of the bible into A'kaa'sha, which is formless substance.

PAGE 640

tribe or nation. Hence He is not God. His sealing men of the tribes of Israel, betrays the finitude of his knowledge and power. Or it (may be) was all John's false conception.

105. "Therefore are they before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple." (7:15.)

C. ~ Is not this the crudest form of Idolatry. Does not it show that the Biblical God is localized and embodied like a man? It seems that the Christian God does not at all sleep during the night because had it not bee so, He would not have been worshipped during the night, or if He did sleep His sleep must have been very much disturbed during the night but if he worked day and night He must be very miserable and afflicted with diverse diseases.

106. "And another angel came and stood at the altar, having a golden censer: and there was a given unto him much incense. And the smoke of the incense, which came with the prayers of the

saints, ascended up before God out of the altar, and cast it into the earth: and there were voices, and thunderings, and lightenings, and earthquake." (8:3 - 5.)

C. ~ Now even in (the Christian heaven) there is an altar, incense is burnt, lamps lighted, eatables offered, and trumpets sounded before the altar. Is their heaven in any way less ostentatious than a temple of Vairagees? If anything, there is more pomp and show there.

107. "And the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up." (8:7.)

C. ~ Well don, ye Christian seer! This God, his angels, the sound of trumpets and final dissolution of the world - all this looks more like children's play.

108. "And the fifth angel sounded, and I saw a star fall from heaven into the earth: and to him was given the key of the bottomless pit. And he opened the bottomless pit; and there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace: and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have

PAGE 641

power. And it was commanded them"…only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads…..they should be tormented five months." (9:1 - 5.)

C. ~ Did the stars, as soon as they heard the sound of the trumpet, fall on these very angels and into the very heaven since they have not fallen on the earth? Had God kept that pit and reared those locusts for the day of dissolution? Those locusts must be able to see, to read the seals, in order to find out whether those men were to be hurt or not.

All this is meant to deceive the poor simpletons and frighten them into accepting the Christian religion, in other words, they are led to think that if they did not embrace Christianity they will be tormented by locusts. Such things can flourish in an unenlightened country but not in Aryavarta (India). Can it be anything like dissolution?

109."…Were two hundred thousand thousand:" (9:16.)

C. ~ Now where does such a vast number of horses graze and stay in heaven? What a large amount of dung there would be and what an amount of foul gas it must give rise to? We **Aryas** say good-bye to such a heaven, such a God and such a religion. It will be a very good thing if the Christians will also, through the grace of the Almighty God, be freed from the shackles (of the Christian religion).

110. "…And he set his right foot upon the sea, and his left foot on the earth." (10:1 - 3.)

C. ~Now are not these tales of the Biblical angels even more fanciful than those of the Puraanaas and story-tellers?

111. "And there was given me a reed like unto a rod: and the angle stood, saying, Rise, and measure the temple of God, and the altar, and them that worship therein." (11:1.)

C. ~ Let alone the earthly temples, even in the heaven of the Christians, temples of God are built and measured. Their teachings are as absurd as their heaven. Take for instance the Lord's supper. Iin it the Christians eat bread and drink wine imagining them to be Christ's flesh and blood. Again, to keep images of the Cross in the Church is nothing short of Idol-worship.

112. "And the temple of God was opened in heaven, and there was seen in his temple the ark of his testament." (11:19.)

PAGE 642

C. ~ The temple (of God) in (the Christian) heaven perhaps remains generally closed. It is but occasionally opened. Can there even be a temple of God? The All-pervading Supreme Spirit as described in the Vedas can have no temple, but the God of the Christian, who is embodied can have a temple be it on this earth or in heaven. Just as the trumpets are sounded and tintinabulatory noise made in the temples here, the same is true of the Christian heaven. It must be only very occasionally that the Christians see the ark of testament. No one knows what the object of keeping it there is. The fact is that all these things are done to tempt men.

113. "And there appeared a great wonder in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet , and upon her head a crown of twelve stars. And she being with child cried, travailing in birth, and pained to deliver. And there appeared another wonder in heave; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads. And his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth." (12:1 - 4.)

C. ~ Oh! What big yarns (St. John has spun)! The poor woman cries even in the Christian heaven but no one takes pity on he or does anything to relieve her pain. What a long tail that dragon must have had that cast one-third of the stars of the heaven on the earth? Not this earth is very small compared with the stars that are very big spheres. Our earth could not support even one of them. We can, therefore, rightly infer that one-third of the stars of the heaven must have fallen on the house of the writer of this book and that dragon also, that had such a long tail that it drew one-third of the stars of the heaven and did cast them to the earth, must have lived in the house of the same.

114. "And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels." (12:7.)

C. ~ Whoever goes to the Christian heaven must greatly suffer on account of wars going on here. Let us bid farewell to such a heaven. This earth is as good as the Christian heaven? The place where wars are constantly raging and peace is conspicuous by its absence, suits the Christians nicely.

PAGE 643

115. "And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called that Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world." (12:9.)

C. ~ Did not Satan, when he was in heaven, deceive men? Why did not (God) imprison him for life or put him to death? Why was he cast down on the earth? If the devil deceives the whole world, who is his tempter? If he has tempted himself then men can also be tempted by themselves, without his help. But if God be his tempter, such a being can never God. It seems that even the Christian God feared the Devil, since if God be more powerful than he why didn't He punish him as soon as he sinned.

The power of the Christian God in this world is not even a thousandth part of the power of the Devil hence, it is very likely that the Christian God was quite helpless to prevent him from making mischief. He is not like the present-day Christian rulers who punish criminals such as dacoits and burglars as soon as possible. Who is then so foolish as to renounce the Vedic religion and accept, instead, the false religion of the Christians?

116. "Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea for the devil is come down unto you." 12:12.)

C. ~ Is the Christian God the Lord and the Protector of that place (heaven) alone? Is not he the Lord and Protector of the earth and men and other living creatures thereon as well: If he be the King of the Earth also why has he not been able to kill the Devil? That Devil goes and deceives everyone and yet He dos not prevent him form doing so. The fact seems to be that there is one good God and another (more) powerful and wicked God.

117. "….And power was given into him to continue forty and two moths. And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme His name and His tabernacle and them that dwell in heaven. And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations." (13:5, 6, 7.)

C. ~ Is not He, that sends the Devil and a beast, etc., to tempt the inhabitants of the earth and gives him power to make war with the saints, more like the ringleader of a party of robbers? Such a thing can never be one by God or His devotees.

PAGE 644

118. "And I looked, and, lo, a Lamb stood on the mount Sion, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand having his Father's name written on their foreheads." (14:1.)

C. ~ Now, reader mark! God lives on the mount Son and so does Jesus Christ, His son, with his Father. How were 4,000 men counted? Are there only 144,000 inhabitants of the heavens: what about millions of the Christians who had not God's seal on their foreheads? Have they all gone to hell? The Christians ought to go to the mount Sion and see if Christ's Father and His army are there? If they be there, what is written in the Bible regarding them is true, otherwise it is all false.<> If they came there from some other place, one should like to know why they came. If it be said that they all came down form heaven, were they birds that flew up and down? If God does go up and down, He is more like a magistrate who has very often to go on tour. He cannot, in that case, be one, two or (at the most) three. His number ought to be innumerable, since there ought to be at least one God for one such planet as our earth; one, two or three Gods would not suffice to administer justice to the inmates of the innumerable (solar systems) or be able to be present in all places at the same time.

119. "Yea, said the Spirit, that they may rest from their labors; and their works do follow them." (14:13.)

C. ~ Now, reader mark! The Christian God does say that the works of men will follow them; in other words, they shall reap the fruits of their deeds, but they (the Christians) say that Christ will take on himself the sins of all the therefore they shall be forgiven. Now the wise can decide whether what God say is right or what the Christians tell us. Both can never be right (when their statements are contradictory). One of them ought to be wrong, be it the Christians or their God? We don't care which.

120. "…And cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God. And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs.' (24:19, 20.)

C. ~ Now, are not their yarns even bigger than those of the Puraanaas? The Christian God must suffer terribly when he is in a fit of anger. Is his wrath water or some other fluid that winepresses

PAGE 645

are full of it. It is impossible for blood to flow, for "the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs," as it coagulates at once on coming in contact with air. How can it, then, flow. Hence such things are false.

121. "And after that I looked, and, behold, the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven was opened." (15:5.)

C. ~ If the Christian God was an All-knowing , what was the business of the witnesses there, since He would have known everything by his Omniscience. It makes it positively clear that the Christian God is not Omniscient. Can such a being as man who is possessed of finite knowledge do the works of God? No, never, never. Many impossible things are told of angels in this book. No one can believe them to be true the book is so full of such absurdities that it is useless to dwell any longer on the subject.

122. "…God hath remembered her iniquities. Reward her even as she rewarded you, and double unto her double according to her works." (18:5, 6.)

C. ~ Now, clearly the Christian God is unjust, for justice consists in awarding reward or punishment in accordance with the nature or extent on one's deeds, virtues or sins; it is unjust to inflict punishment or bestow happiness out of proportion to one's deeds. Why should not they who worship an unjust God, be themselves unjust?

123. "For the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready." (19:7.)

C. ~ Now, behold! Even in marriages are celebrated in the Christian heaven, since God Himself celebrated the marriage of Christ there. Will the Christians please tell us who are His father-in-law, mother-in-law, brother-in-law, etc How many children were born of that marriage, since the loss of the reproductive element causes loss of strength and energy which, in its turn, causes decay of mental faculties, and shortness of life. Hence Christ must have died by this time. Anything that is the result of combination of different substances must disintegrate into its component parts. The Christians having put their faith in Christ, have deluded themselves, and who knows how long they will continue to do so.

PAGE 646

124. "…Serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan and bound him a thousand years. And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled…." (20:2, 3.)

C. ~ It was with the utmost difficulty that the Devil was caught and kept imprisoned for 1,000 years. Will he not again deceive the people when he is set free again! Such a wicked individual ought to have been imprisoned for life or put to death. But the fact is that this is a mere delusion of the Christians. There is not such thing as the Devil.

They simply devised this method to frighten people, and thereby ensnare them in their net. Just as a scoundrel said to some simple people: "Come with me, and I shall show you the God Narayana," He had previously placed a man in some lonely spot in a bush, in such a position that he appeared to have four arms. He told them that when the asked them to open or to close their eyes they should do so. Whosoever disobeyed him will lose his eyesight.

Then he proceeded with them towards the place. When he came to the spot where that four-armed man could be seen he ordered them to look in front, and in the next moment told them to shut their eyes. When the four-armed man had hid himself in the bush, he asked them to open their eyes again and said, behold! You have all seen Narayana. The same is true of the quackery of the religionists. Hence one should do his best not to fall in there trap.

125. "From whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened; and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged which were out of those things written in the books, according to their works." (20:11, 12.)

C. ~ Now, don't all these things look childish! How can the heaven and the earth fly away? Form whose face did they fly away? What did God and his throne rest on? God must be sitting or standing when the dead were made to stand before Him. Does God conduct His business in the same way as is done in a Court of Law or in a shop where books or other documents are required to settle disputes or accounts. Were entries made into the

PAGE 647

books concerning the works of souls by God or His agents? Through belief in such (absurd) things the Christians have called a being God who is not God, and refused to acknowledge the true God, as God.

128. "And there shall in no wise enter into it anything that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination or maketh a lie…." (21:27)

C. ~ If this be the cause, why dot he Christians say that even sinners can go to heaven by turning Christians. This not true. But if this be true, St. John, the Divine, shall never be able to enter heaven since he has told such lies in this book and even Christ count not have gone to heaven, since how can one burdened with the sins of innumerable sinners enter heaven where even a single sinner is not allowed to get in?

129. "And there shall be not more curse: but the throne of God and the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him: and they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads. And the shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; of the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever." (12:3 - 5.)

C. ~ What a fine picture, this, of the Christian heaven? Will God and the Lamb be always sitting on their respective thrones? Will the servants be always looking at his face? Now will you, pray, tell us, if your God has a face white like that of a European or black like that of Negro or of some other color like that of a Native of some other country? Even your heaven is like a prison, since all its inmates are not equal, there is inequality in rank, and one is bound to live in that place, consequently they must also suffer (from various sorts of inconveniences). Besides, he that has a face can never be an Omniscient God the Lord of all.

139 "And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be." (22:12.)

C. ~ If it be true that every man shall be rewarded according to his works, sins can never be remitted, but if they are remitted this statement of the Bible is false. If it be said that remission of

PAGE 648

sins is also recorded in the Bible the two statements are self-contradictory. You should therefore cease to believe in it. How much shall we write? The Christian Bible contains hundreds of thousands of things that are condemnable. We have only shown here a few absurdities; they will suffice to convince the wise of the untruth of it. Except a few things, all other are false. Truth adulterated with untruth can never remain pure and hence the works that contain it can never be acceptable. Besides in the acceptance of the Vedas the whole truth is accepted.

THE END OF CHAPTER 13

CHAPTER 14

AN EXAMINATION OF THE DOCTRINE OF ISLAM.

INTRODUCTION

PAGE 649

In the fourteenth chapter of this book we have discussed the Mohammedan (Islam) religion. Our criticism against the Qoran is based directly on the teachings of the Qoran itself and not on those of any other book. Thought differences of opinion with regard to the interpretation of certain words and verses do exist among he Mohammedans - they being split up into so many sects -, yet all are agreed as regards the revealed character of the Qoran.

The Qoran, which is written in the Arabic language, has been translated into Urdu by distinguished Mohammedan scholars. This translation was rendered into **bhasha** and transcribed in **Devanagari** character and was then corrected by eminent Arabic scholars. Anyone questioning the accuracy of our translation should first prove the translation done by those Mohammedan scholars to be incorrect before sitting down to find faulty with us.

The object aims at by this criticism is to contribute to the elevation of the human race and enable all men to sift truth from falsehood by giving them some idea of the teachings of various prevalent religions, as this will afford them opportunities for friendly discussions - so useful in helping men to point out their defects and to appreciate their merits.

It is not our purpose to falsely condemn this or any other religion. On the contrary what we aim at is that whatever is true should be recognized as such and whatever is false should be condemned as such, so that no one should be in a position to palm off untruth for truth or hinder the progress of truth. One is, of course, free to accept truth or for the matter of that even refuse to do so after it has been published; compulsion being impossible in such matters. Good men will, as a rule, after they have realized their merits and demerits, imbibe good qualities

PAGE 650

and reject bad ones and eradicate bigotry and prejudice and wherever found. Who does not know something of the prodigious amount of evil that has been wrought by bigotry? The truth is that it is unworthy of a human being to injure others and throw away his own chance of happiness in this uncertain and transient life.

In case the good reader comes across, in this criticism, anything contrary to facts, it is hoped he will point it out and we shall make the suggested changes if called for, since this criticism is designed to diminish bigotry, obstinacy, jealously, malice, hatred, and (love of) useless wrangling and not to promote them.

It is our first and foremost duty to avoid injuring others and to further the well-being of each other. We lay this criticism on the Mohammedan religion before all lovers of truth in the hope that they, after having gone carefully through it, accept what appeals to their reason and common sense and discard what is repugnant to them.

A WORD TO THE SEEKER OF TRUTH

Now we shall examine (the doctrines of) the Mohammedan religion.

1. "(I begin this book) In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful." (1:1.)*

C. ~ The Mohammedans claim that this Q'uran is the Word of God, but it appears from the above passage that the author of this book was some person other than God, since had it been God himself, He would not have said: "(I begin this book) in the name of God etc." He would have, instead, said: "I write this book for the instruction of mankind." If it be said that by beginning His book in this fashion He means to teach men as to what they should say when about to do a thing, it cannot be true, since some men will do even sinful deeds in the name of God and thereby bring disgrace on Him.

If (the Mohammedan) God be merciful, why has He sanctioned that men should inflict great suffering on other creatures by killing them for their food? Are not these animals innocent? Are they not His creatures? He should have also advised men to begin only good deeds in His name and not evil ones. Thus the passage (under discussion) is quite ambiguous. Should even such sinful acts, as theft, adultery, untruthfulness in speech, begun in God's name? Very likely it is on account of this ambiguity that the (Mohammedan) butchers etc., mutter "In the name of God, the compassionate, the most Merciful as the moment of cutting the throats of cows and other animals."

It is clear then that the Mohammedans do begin even evil deeds in the name of God. The Mohammedan God can never be called Merciful, because He shows no mercy towards those animals (whose slaughter He sanctions). If the Mohammedans do not know the true meaning of this passage, its revelation is of no use

---

* This number refers to Sura or Chapter. - Tr.

PAGE 652

to mankind. But if the Mohammedans interpret it differently, we should like to know what its plain meaning is.

INTOLERANCE TOWARDS NON-MUSLIMS

2. Praise be to God, the Lord of all creatures, the Compassionate, the Merciful." (1: 1, 2.)

C. ~ Had the God of the Qoran been the Lord of all creatures, and been Merciful and kind to all, He would never have commanded the Mohammedans to slaughter men of other faiths, and animals, etc. If He is Merciful, will He show mercy even to the sinners? If the answer be given in

the affirmative, it cannot be true, because further on it is said in the Qoran "Put Infidels to sword," in other words, he that does not believe in the Qoran and the Prophet Mohammad is an infidel (he should, therefore, be put to death). (Since the Qoran sanctions such cruelty to non-Mohammedans and innocent creatures such as cows) it can never be the Word of God.

DAY OF JUDGMENT

3. "The King of the day of judgment. Thee only do we worship and of Thee do we beg assistance. Direct thou us on the right path. "(1:2, 4, and 5.)

C. ~ Does not God always administer justice. If He administers justice only on one particular day, He does wrong. It is right to worship Him and beg assistance of Him, but is this equally right to invoke His assistance in doing even evil deeds? Is the right path that of the Mohammedans alone and not of others? Why do not the Mohammedans tread the path which is really the right one? (We hope) they do not regard the path that leads to evil as the right one. If good is the same in all religions, the Mohammedan religion can have no superiority over others. If the Mohammedans do not believe that other religions are just as good as their own, they are prejudiced.

FAVOR AND DISFAVOR OF ALLAH

4. "The path of those whom Thou art incensed, nor of those who go astray." (1:6, 7.)

C. ~ Since the Mohammedans do not believe in the previous existence of the soul, nor that it ever did any deeds before, their God will be open to the charge of being partial by showing favor to some and disfavor to others inasmuch as it is quite unjust to bestow happiness on men or subject them to pain and suffering

PAGE 653

without paying any regard to their merits and demerits. It is also against the nature (of God) to unreasonably look at some with mercy and others with disdain and anger. Indeed He cannot act arbitrarily. When the souls have done no good or bad action in their previous lives, is it not unfair that some should receive blessings while the others not?

The commentary on this verse says: "God Himself made the people repeat this verse with their own lips so that they should ever do so in future." If this be the case, God Himself must have taught them even the alphabet. Besides, how could they read this verse without knowing the alphabet? Or were they made to learn it by rote? If so, the whole of the Qoran must have been taught orally.

Now this book, which is so full of partiality and favoritism (to some). Cannot be the Word of God. For instance, the Qoran having been revealed in Arabic, it was easier for the Arabs to learn it, than for others. The Qoran would have been free from this defect, had it been revealed like the Veda in a language which is altogether distinct from all other languages and is not the mother-tongue of any people, just as God, through His justice vouchsafed into us all His Word, the Veda in Sanskrit which requires the same amount of exertion from persons of all nationalities to be mastered.

THE ARROGANCE OF ALLAH PRAISING HIS OWN BOOK

5. "There is no doubt in this book,; it is a direction to the pious who believed in the mysteries of faith, who observe the appointed times of prayer, and distribute alms out of what we have bestowed on them; and who believed in that revelation, which hath been sent down unto thee,

and hat which hath been sent down unto the prophets before thee, and have firm assurance in the life to come: these are directed by their Lord and they shall prosper. As for the unbelievers it will be equal to them whether thou admonish them, or do not admonish them; they will not believe - God hat sealed up their hearts and their hearing; a dimness covereth their sight and they shall suffer a grievous punishment." (2: 1 - 6)

C. ~ Is it not arrogance on the part of God to praise His own book? The revelation of the Qoran is of no use, since the pious are already treading the right path without extrinsic aid, while the wicked are not directed by it. Does God provide (the Mohammedans) with necessary cash to defray all their

PAGE 654

expenses out of His own treasury without any exertion on their part or paying heed to their merits and demerits? If He does, why does He not do the same for all? If it is permissible to have faith also in the Bible, why do not the Mohammedans believe in that book in the same way as they do in the Qoran? But if they do, where is then the necessity for the Qoran to be revealed?

If it be argued that the Qoran is more comprehensive than the Bible, it might be asked if God had forgotten to write anything in the latter book. If He had not, it was useless for Him to reveal the Qoran. Besides we find that the bible and the Qoran differ so little, in other words, they are at one with each other in most things, it is, therefore, reasonable to ask why the revelation was not sent down (once for all) in one (complete) book such as the **Veda**?

Thus the human soul cannot be held responsible for its sinful or virtuous deeds since it cannot be said to be a free agent.

Allah actions more devilish than godly.

6. "There is an infirmity in their hearts and God hath increased that infirmity." (2: 9.)

C. ~ Well did God increase their infirmity, while they were innocent? Did He not have pity on them? They must have suffered terribly indeed. Is not this act more devilish than that of the Devil? To seal their hearts and increase their infirmity could never be the work of God inasmuch as the increase of infirmity is the result of one's own sinful actions.

7."Who hath spread the earth as a bed for you and the heaven as a covering." (2: 20.)

C. ~ Well! Can the heaven a covering for anything? Now does it not show ignorance (of the author of the Qoran)?

PAGE 655

It is absurd to believe in the sky being a covering. If the Mohammedans believe some kind of planet to be the heaven, it can only be the work of their own imagination.

STONES FOR UNBELIEVERS

8. "If ye be in doubt concerning the revelation which we have send down into our servant, produce a chapter like unto it and call your witnesses, beside God, if ye say truth. But if ye do it not, nor shall ever be able to do it, justly fear the fire whose fuel is men, and stones prepared for the unbelievers." (2:21, 22)

C. ~ Well! Is it impossible to produce a chapter like unto it? Did not Maulvi Fiazi in the time of king Akbar compile a Qoran without making use of any dotted letters in it? What kind of fire is the hell fire? Is not the fire (of this world) to be feared? The fire of this world also consumes anything that may be put into it.

Just as it is stated in the Qoran that stones have been prepared for the non-believers, likewise it is said in the **Puraanaas** that **Malechhas*** are doomed to hell. Now, which of these two statements should be accepted as correct? According to each of these, the adherents of one sect go to hell and those of the other to heaven. Both of these statements are therefore false. The truth is that only the good and the virtuous will enjoy happiness, while the wicked will be subjected to pain and suffering which faith they may belong to.

THE PARADISE OF ISLAM IS NO BETTER THAN THIS WORLD

9. "But bear good tidings unto those who believe and do good works that they shall have gardens watered by rivers; so oft as they eat of the fruit thereof for sustenance, they shall say, this is what we have formerly eaten of; and they shall be supplied with several sorts of fruit having a mutual resemblance to one another. There shall they enjoy wives subject to no impurity, and there shall they continue for ever." (2: 24.)

C. ~ The paradise as described in the Qoran is in no respect better than this world, because the same sort of things that are obtainable here are to be had there. The only exception being that men here die and are born again, whereas this is not the case with them in paradise, te women also here do not continue to live for ever, whereas in paradise they do so. We should like to know how these poor women pass their days till the day of judgment?

---

* Men of faiths other than that of the Pauranic (Hindu). _Tr.

PAGE 656

Of course it will be alright if the Mohammaden God extends His helping hand to them and thereby they manage to pass their days with comfort. Tut Tut! Tut! But this goes to show that the paradise of the Mohammedans justly resembles the Golak and the temple of the Gosaeens of Gokal wherein women are valued more than men. Similarly in the temple of God (paradise) women are valued and loved more than men by God. They live forever in heaven but not men. How can this arrangement last unless God desires it? The Mohammedan God is surely in danger of falling in love with these women!!!

Deceiving angels to impress them of his (Allah.s) greatness.

10. "And he taught Adam the names of all things, and then propose them to the angels, and said, "Declare unto me the names of these things if ye say truth." God said, "O Adam, tell them their names" and when he had told them their names, God said, "Did I not tell you that I know the secrets of heaven and earth and know that which ye discover, and that which ye conceal."

C. ~ Could God ever deceive His angels in this way in order to impress them with His Greatness? It was an act of sheer imposture on His part. No enlightened man could ever believe such a thing of God, nor would he display such hauteur. Was it by these means that God wanted to display His supernatural powers? Such quackery can only flourish among the savages but not among the civilized.

ALLAH WAS NOT OMNISCIENT.

11. "And when we said unto the angels, worship Adam, they all worshipped him except Eblis (Satan), who refused, and was puffed up with pride and became of the number of the unbelievers." 2: 32.)

C. ~ This indicates that the Mohammedan God was not Omniscient i.e., He was not cognizant of the three periods of time - the past, the present, and future. Had he been Omniscient, He would not have created Satan. Nor was God All-powerful, since when Satan deliberately refuse to obey Him he could do nothing against him. Now if only one infidel (Satan), could trouble God so much as to render Him helpless what will He and His votaries do when they will have to cope with millions (according to their own belief) of infidels? God increased infirmity in some and let others astray. He must have learnt such things from Satan and Satan from God.

12. "And we said, O Adam, dwell thou and thy wife in the garden, and eat of the fruit thereof plentifully wherever ye will; but approach not this tee, lest ye become of the number of the

PAGE 657

transgressors. But Satan caused them to forfeit paradise, and turned them out of the state of happiness wherein they had been, whereupon we said, Get down, one of you shall be an enemy unto the other; and there shall be a dwelling place for you on earth, a provision for a season. And Adam learned words of prayer for His Lord and then came down to earth." (2: 33 - 35.)

C. ~ This indicates that God was not omniscient inasmuch as He one moment blesses Adam saying "Dwell thou…. In the garden" and in the next turns them out. Had He been cognizant of the future, He would not have blessed him at all? It also appears that God was powerless to punish Satan, the tempter.

Did God plant that tree for Himself or for others? If it was for others He should not have prevented them (Adam and his wife) from tasting the fruit thereof. God could never do such things, nor could they be ever found in His book. What were the words Adam leant from God and how did Adam come down on earth? Is the paradise somewhere in the sky or on some hill? Did Adam fly sown like a bird or fall down like a stone?

It appears that there is dust in paradise since Adam was made of dust. Angels too like Adam must also have been made of dust inasmuch as bodily organs cannot be made without dust (earthly material) but the body made of dust, must perish. Hence if the angels are also subject to death, one should like to know where they go after death. On the other hand if they do not die, they could not have been born, but if they were born, they would surely die. If this be the case, the statement of the Qoran that women in paradise live for ever cannot be valid inasmuch as they must also die. It follows, therefore, that all those who go to heaven will also die.

ALLAH NOT FREE FROM PREJUDICE.

13. "Dread the day wherein one soul shall not make satisfaction for another soul, neither shall any intercession be accepted from them, nor shall any compensation be received, neither shall they be helped." (2: 48)

C. ~ Should we not dread the present? One should dread evil doing on all days. If it be true that no intercession will be accepted, how can this statement be reconciled with the belief of

PAGE 658

the Mohammedan that they will go to paradise through the intercession of the Prophet? Does God help only those who are in paradise and not those who are in hell? If it is so, God is not free from prejudice.

The Q'uran is meaningless if the book was already given to Moses.

14. "We gave Moses the book and the miracles. We said unto them, be ye changed into scouted apes. And we made them an example unto those who were contemporary with them and unto those who came after them, and a warning to the pious." (2:53.)

C. ~ if the book was given to Moses, the revelation of the Qoran becomes meaningless. Both Qoran and the Bible assert that Moses was endowed with miraculous powers, but it is absolutely incredible, inasmuch as no man can work miracles now-a-days, and what cannot be done in our day, could never have been done in the past.

Moses must have resorted to hypocrisy in the same way as the selfish impose upon the credulity of the ignorant at the present time. Now why does not God endow anyone with miraculous powers when both He and His devotees exist in our day. Where was the necessity of sending down the Qoran when God had already given Moses a book? If the teachings about dong good and abstaining from evil are the same in the Bible and Qoran, the sending down of two different books was nothing but a mere repetition of the same. Again, did God forget to record something in the book given to Moses that He had to send down another book later on?

Now either what God said regarding their (transgressors') being changed into scouted apes in order to make an example for others never came to pass or He must have resorted to trickery.

Whoever does such things cannot be God, nor can the book containing them be divine in origin.

IF THE DEAD WERE RAISED IN THE PAST, WHY NOT NOW.

15. "So God raiseth the dead to life, and shows you his signs, that per adventure ye may understand." (2: 67.)

C. ~ If God raised the dead to life (in the past), why does He not do so now? Will they all remain lying in their graves till the day of judgment? Is your God on tour in these days (that He cannot find time to administer justice)? Are these (raising the

PAGE 659

dead etc.) the only proofs (of the existence) of God? Are not the earth, the sun, and the moon, etc., His signs? Is the wonderful design so manifestly seen existing in the world of no significance?

WAS ALLAH SITTING IDLE BEFORE CREATION?

16. "They shall never continue to be the companions of paradise. (2:75)

C. ~ As the soul is finite, its deeds - good or bad - cannot be infinite. It cannot, therefore be sent to an everlasting hell or heaven. Should God do so, His justice will be destroyed, or would He be considered and an enlightened Being. If there is one judgment day for all souls, their virtuous and sinful acts must be equal. Human deeds being finite their fruits - reward or punishment - cannot be infinite.

The Mohammedans believe that the world had been in existence for less than or eight thousand years. One should like to know if God was sitting idle before Creation and will do the same after the day of judgment. These are all childish things, because God is ever active and awards every soul reward or punishment in proportion to the nature and amount of its virtuous and sinful feeds. Hence what the Qoran teaches (on the subject) is not right.

THE Q'URAN, A MERE ECHO OF THE BIBLE

17. " And when we made a covenant with you that ye should not you're your own blood, nor expel one another from your abodes, then ye ratified it and yourselves were witnesses. Then were ye the very persons who slew one another; and ye drove out a part of your own people form their abodes.")2: 78, 79.)

C. ~ Is the making of covenants the work of man, possessed of finite powers, or of God? God being Omniscient cannot behave like an ordinary man. Now what kind of virtue is this to consider it wrong to shed the blood of one's brethren or to dispossess them of their houses, but to regard it commendable to shed the blood of others and dispossess them of their houses? It is merely the result of folly and prejudice to believe in such things. Did not God know it before hand that men would act against their covenant? It appears from this that the Mohammedan God has many attributes in common with the God of the Christians and that the Qoran is not an independent book in itself, and with a few exceptions it is a mere echo of the Bible.

ALLAH JEALOUS AND MALEVOLENT?

18. "These are they who purchase this present life at the price of that which is to come: their torment shall not be lightened, neither shall be helped." (2: 80.)

PAGE 670

C. ~ Can God ever act so jealously and malevolently? Who are those whose sins will be remitted or who will helped? If they are sinners whose sins will be remitted without any punishment being inflicted on them, then God's justice will be destroyed. If their sins will be remitted after they have undergone punishment for them, the men referred to in the verse will have also to suffer punishment for their sins.

but if the remission of sins refers to those men who are pious, they by virtue of their pious life have no sins to be remitted, what will God remit then? One naturally infers from this that whoever uttered these words was not an enlightened person. In fact, the righteous and the unrighteous should be awarded reward - happiness or punishment - sorrow and suffering - according to the nature of their deeds - virtuous or sinful.

All things that are a breach to the laws of nature are false.

19. "Moreover, to Moses gave we "The Book" and we, raised up apostles after him; and to Jesus, son of Mary, gave we clear proofs of his mission, and strengthened him by the Holy Spirit. So oft then as an apostle cometh to you with that which your souls desire not, swell ye with pride, and treat some as imposters, and slay others." (2: 81)

C. ~ When the Qoran bears witness to this that God gave the book of law to Moses, it is incumbent on Mohammedans to believe it. All the defects found therein, will therefore, be regarded as those of the Muslim religion itself. The story of miracles seems to have been connocted with a view to play upon the credulity of simple and ignorant people. All things which

are against the **laws of nature** are false. If miracles could be wrought in those days, why can't they be done now-a-days? If miracles cannot be worked now, it is certain that none were wrought in days gone by.

20. "Although they had before prayed for victory over those who prayed not - yet when that Qoran came to them, of which they had knowledge, they did not recognize it. The curse of God is on the infidels!" (2: 83.)

C. ~ You call men professing other religions infidels, while they do the same to you, and their God curses you in the same way. Now will you please tell us which of the two should be considered right and which wrong? On reflection it is clear that there are errors in all creeds.

PAGE 661

What kind of God would have enemies?

21. "Whoso is an enemy to God or his angels or to Gabriel, or to Michael, shall have God for his enemy, for verily God is an enemy to infidels." (2: 92.)

C. ~ Where does this host of partners come from, if, as the Mohammedans say, God is one without a partner? Is he who is an enemy to others also an enemy to God? This can never be true, since God is an enemy to none.

22. "And say forgiveness; and we will pardon you your sins, give an increase to the doers of good." (2:55)

C. ~ Does not this (so-called) Divine teaching encourage people to live sinful lives? Why should one fear sin when he is given the promise of redemption? He that gives such a promise cannot be God, nor can a book that inculcates such a doctrine be the Word of God. God can never do injustice, but if He pardons the sinners, He renders Himself unjust.

23. "And when Moses asked drink for his people, we said "strike the rock with thy rod;" and from it there gushed twelve fountains." (2:57)

C. ~ Now can anyone (except the Mohammedan God) utter such impossibilities? It is absolutely impossible to believe that twelve springs could gush forth on striking a rock with a rod, unless it had been hollowed out in the center and filled with water and twelve holes bored therein.

24. "But God will show his special mercy to whom He will." (2:99.)

C. ~ Does God show His special mercy to those who do not deserve it? If He does, He works great mischief, for all men will become indifferent to the practice of virtue. No one will then lead a virtuous life and hate sin, since His mercy depends upon His (arbitrary) will and not upon one's deeds.

25. "People may not, out of malice, try to turn you away from your religion, for there are among them many a friend of the faithful." (2:101.)

C. ~ Now behold! God Himself put them on their guard lest the infidels should turn them away from their faith. Is not God omniscient? Such things cannot be true of God.

PAGE 662

If Allah is in every direction why Muslims face only Mecca?

26. "Whichever way ye turn, there is the face of God." (2:109.)

c. ~ If this is true, why do the Mohammedans turn their face towards Qibla (i.e., the sacred Mosque at Mecca)? If it be argued that they have been commanded to do so, to answer that they have also been permitted to turn their face in whatever direction they choose. Not which of these two (contradictory statements) should be held to be true. If God has a face, it can only be in one direction and not in all directions at one and the same time.

Out of nothing, nothing can come.

27. "Sole Maker of the Heavens and the Earth! And when He decreeth a thing, He only saith to it, "Be" it is." (2:111.)

C. ~ Now who heard God when He said "Be"? whom did He address that word and what came into being? Where from did this world come into existence when it is written in the Qoran that nothing but God existed before Creation? No effect can be produced without cause. How could He have then created this vast universe without (material) cause. You cannot even make one leg of a fly, how can you then believe that God create this world by the flat of His Will.

Mohammedan: - God is Almighty. He can do whatever He wills

C. ~ What does the word Almighty mean?

M.- It means that He can do whatever He likes.

C. ~ Can He create another God? Can He die? Can He become ill, ignorant or destitute of knowledge?

M.-No, He cannot.

C. ~ It is proved then that God cannot do any thing against His Own nature, attributes and characteristics or against those of others (matter and the soul). Three things are essential for the production of an effect:-

1. The (Efficient Cause) Maker, such as the potter in the case of the pot.
2. The Material Cause, such as clay.
3. The instruments where with to make an object like a pot.

Now just as the potter, clay and the necessary instruments must exist before the pot can be manufactured, likewise, God, and **prakrati** - the material cause of the Universe - with their inherent

PAGE 663

nature, attributes and characteristics must have existed before this Universe came into being. Hence what the Qoran says on Creation is altogether absurd.

Were there no places sacred before Kaaba?

28. "When we decreed that the Kaba is sacred, you should go to Abraham's place for prayers." (2: 117.)

C.~ Had not God appointed sacred place before He sanctified Kaba? If he had, where was the necessity for consecrating Kaba? But if He had not it is indeed a pity that those who were born before that period had to go without a holy place. Perhaps it had not struck God to consecrate a place like Kaba before that.

29." And who but he that hath debased his soul to folly will dislike the faith of Abraham, when we have chosen him in this world, and in the world to come he shall be of the Just." (2:124.)

C. ~ Now can it ever be true that he who does not like the faith of Abraham is a fool? Why did God choose Abraham alone (as the founder of the true faith)? If he did so on account of his being very religious, there were many others who were as religious as he, why did He not choose them as (His prophets)? But if he chose him because he was irreligious, He acted unjustly. It is quite true that is only the righteous who are loved by God and not others.

Muslims, idol-worshippers?

"We have seen thee turning towards every part of Heaven; but we will have thee turn to Kibla which shall please thee. Turn then thy face towards the sacred Mosque, and wherever ye be, turn your face, towards that part." 2: 139.)

C. ~ Now is this trivial idolatry? We should think, it is the crudest form of idolatry.

Mohammedan. - We Mohammedans are not image-worshippers but image-breakers, because we do not believe that Kibla is God.

C. ~ They too, whom you call image-worshippers, do not regard the image as God. They profess to worship God behind the image. If you are image-breakers, why do you not break that big image called Kibla (the sacred Mosque).

M. - Good! We have the authority of the Qoran in turning our faces towards the Kibla, while the image-worshippers have none in their Veda to worship images. We most obey God anyhow.

PAGE 664

C. ~ Just as you have the authority of the Qoran, the image-worshippers have that of the **Puraanaas**. As you believe the Qoran to be the Word of God, even so do they believe the **Puraanaas** to be the Word of God's incarnation, **Vyas.** The difference between the Pauranics and yourselves is this that you worship a big image, while they bow down before the smaller ones. Your case is just the same as that of a man who strains at a gnat but swallows a camel.

Your Mohammad expunged the worship of small images from the Muslim faith, but introduced into it the worship of the sacred Mosque (at Mecca) which is as big as a hill. Is this idol worship on a small scale? You could be free yourselves from image-worship and the like evil practices only by embracing the Vedic religion and not otherwise. Unless you give up the worship of your big image, you should feel ashamed of yourselves and abstain from condemning the worship of small images found in other faiths and purify your hearts by avoiding idolatry.

Slaying non-muslims and innocent animals to be on Allah’s path.

31. "And say not of those who are slain on God's path that they are dead, nay, they are living! But ye understand not." (2:149)

C. ~ Where is the necessity of slaying other and of being slain on God's path? Why do you not say plainly that all this is meant for accomplishing your selfish ends. You hold out this inducement to people that they may fight well and help you to gain victory you're your enemies and acquire wealth and power by looting other and thereby enable you to live in luxury and enjoy sensual pleasures.

32. "God is severe in chastising. Follow not the steps of Satan, He only enjoineth upon you evil and wickedness and that ye should aver of God that which ye know not." (2: 164, 165.)

C. ~ You're your God punish the wicked and reward the virtuous, or does He show mercy to the Mohammedans and torture others? If the latter, He is not God. But if your God is not partial (to your), He will reward the virtuous and punish the wicked whatever religion they may profess. This being the case, the belief in the Qoran and in Mohammad (as the prophet of God) becomes unnecessary. Why did God create Satan - the enemy of the human race who has been tempting all mankind. Is He not cognizant of the future? If you say, He has created Satan just to try man, it cannot be right, because only one who is possessed of finite knowledge would do such a thing; while One who is Omniscient is

PAGE 665

already aware of the good or evil deeds of the soul. Now if Satan tempts all mankind, who tempted Satan? If it be said that Satan tempts himself, why could not others tempt themselves? Where is then the necessity of supposing Satan to be the tempter of al mankind? If God was the tempter of the Devil, He was more devilish than the Devil. But such a thing could not be said of God. Whosoever goes astray from the right path does so through evil company and ignorance.

33. "But that which dieth of itself, and blood, and swine's flesh, and that over which any other name than that of God hath been invoked is forbidden you." (2: 168.)

C. ~ Now one should pause to think and realize that an animal whether it dies a natural death or is put to death, is a dead body all the same; of course there is a little difference but that difference counts for nothing so far as death is concerned. Swine's flesh is forbidden (but not human flesh), shall we then conclude that is right to eat human flesh? Can it ever be commendable to torture animals to death in God's name? This casts a blot on the good name of God.

Why does He suffer the animals to be tortured by the Mohammedans in the absence of sins committed in their previous lives (by those animals)? Is He not Merciful to them? Does He not love them as a father loves his children? God did not forbid the slaughter of such animals as are useful to man, and by failing to do it has proved Himself to be an enemy of the human race, and brought disgrace on Him by being guilty of having sanctioned the slaughter of (useful) animals. Such things can never be true of God or of His word.

Fasting copied from Hinduism.

34. "You are allowed on the night of the fast to approach your wives, they are your garment and ye are their garment. God knoweth that ye defraud yourself therein, so He turneth unto you and forgiveth you! Now, therefore, go in unto them with full desire for that which God hath ordained for you; and eat and drink until ye can discern a white thread from a black thread by the daybreak." 2 183.)

C. ~ It seems that at the time the Mohammedan religion came into being or before that period some (Arab) must have asked a follower of the Puraanics as to what was the mode of observing the **Chandrayana** fast, the latter being ignorant of the true method of

PAGE 666

observing this fast, which consists in decreasing or increasing one mouthful of food at a time in accordance with the increase or decrease in the digits of the moon and taking one's food in the middle of the day, might have told him that one should take his food on seeing the moon. The Mohammedans have thus adopted the **Chandrayana** fast in a corrupted form.

But there is one great difference between the two fast; sexual intercourse is forbidden in the **Chandryana** but is permitted in the Mohammedan fast since it is said (in the Qoran) "go in unto them with full desire." Again, the Mohammedans are allowed to eat at night time as often as they like. Now what kind of fast is it to eat during the night and abstain from food during the day? It is contrary to the laws of nature to take one's food during the night and abstain from it during the day.

Losing political supremacy in their fight for cause for Allah.

35. "And fight for the cause of God against those who fight against you. And kill them wherever ye shall find them; and eject them from whatever place they ejected you! For civil discord is worse than courage. Fight therefore against them until there be no more civil discord." (2: 186, 187, 189.)

C. ~ Had no such teachings existed in the Qoran, the Mohammedans would not have been so cruel to the non-Mohammedans. They have greatly sinned by slaughtering the innocent. They hold that one who does not believe in the Mohammedan religion is an infidel, and that it is better to out the infidels to the sword. They have always lived up to their professions in this respect. They have lost their political supremacy while "fighting" for the cause of their God.

This religion does indeed teach cruelty towards the non- Mohammedans. Should theft be punished with theft.* Should we also break into ht house of a person because he has stolen our property: surely this is not right. If an ignorant man abuses us, shall we also abuse him in return? Such things can never be taught by God nor by one of His enlightened votaries, nor could they be found in His word. They can only be the utterances of an ignorant and selfish man.

36. "But God loveth not disorder. O believer! Enter completely into the true religion." (2: 202, 204

---

* The translation here is rather too literal but is unavoidable. The author here questions the truth of the Mosaic law "Tooth for tooth and an eye for an eye." _Tr

PAGE 667

Had not God loved disorder, why would He have prompted them (the Muslims) to fight and befriended the quarrelsome Mohammedans? Is God pleased with one only when he embraces the Mohammedan religion? If so, He is partial to the Mohammedans, He cannot therefore, be the Lord of the Universe. This clearly shows that neither the Qoran is the Word of God, nor is the God described therein the true God.

37. "God is Bounteous without measure to whom He will." (2:208.)

C. ~ Does He show His bounty without paying any regard to our good or evil deeds? If so, sin and virtue are alike, since pleasure or pain (depends not upon our deeds, but) on the (arbitrary) will of God. Now it is such teachings that have encouraged the Mohammedans to deviate from the path of rectitude and live free lives. Of course those of the Mohammedans who do not believe in such things live virtuous lives.

Women are pollution?

38. "They will also question thee as to the courses of women, say: they are a pollution, separate yourself, therefore, from women, and approach them not, until they be cleansed. But when they are cleansed, go in unto them as God hath ordained for you. Your wives are your field, go in, therefore, to your field as ye will. God will not punish you for taking your oaths falsely." (2:246.)

Prohibition of sexual intercourse during menstruation is commendable, but likening women to a field and giving permission to approach them whenever (the faithful) desired will make (them) lascivious. If God does not punish one for swearing falsely, all men would become liars God will thus stand guilty of encouraging untruthfulness in speech.

39. "Who is he that will lend to God a goodly loan? He will double it to him again and again." (2: 246.)

C. ~ Now why should God take a loan?* Does He, who has created the whole universe, stand in need of taking a loan from

---

* Hussain comments on this verse thus:- " A man went to Mohammad and said, 'O Prophet of God! What does God contract debts for? Mohammad replied, 'In order to take you to paradise.' The man added 'Should you stand surety for Him I would lend Him money.' Thereupon Mohammad stood surety for God and he fellow lent Him money.' Is it not strange that the fellow did not trust God but trusted Mohammad His, prophet?

Page 668

Men? No, never. Only an ignorant man can say such things of God. Was his treasury exhausted or had He become bankrupt by engaging in trade and banking? Did he act like a businessman when He promised to pay double of what was lent to him? Such things are done only by one who is bankrupt, or by one whose expenses exceed his income, but not by God.

40. "Some of them believed, and some were infidels; yet if God had pleased, they would not have thus wrangled, but God doth what He will." (2: 254.)

C. ~ Do all quarrels that arise in the world proceed from Divine will? Could God commit a sin if He willed? If He could, He is no God, because no good person, let alone God, will ever do such a thing, in other words, he would never cause breach of peace or foment quarrels.

41. "Whatever exists on the earth or in the sky is for Him; His chair has, as it were, occupied all earth and space." (2: 150.)

C. ~ God has created whatever exists on the earth or in the sky for the good of the soul and not for His own use, because He is called **Purnakama** (i.e., one whose desires are fulfilled.) He does not stand in need of anything. He must be localized indeed when He has got a chair, but such a Being can never be God as he is All-pervading.

The author of the Q'uran knew neither Astronomy nor Geography.

42. "Since God bringeth the sun from the East, do thou, then, bring it from the West." The infidel was confounded; for, God guideth not eh evil doers." (2: 260).

/C, ~ O what ignorance! The sun does not rise in the East and set in the West, nor does it rise in the West and set in the East. It moves on its own axis. Now it is positively certain that the author of the Qoran knew neither Astronomy nor Geography. If (the Mohammedan) God does not guide the evil doers, He is not needed at all, for the righteous always walk in the path or rectitude. It is only those who have gone astray that need guidance. It is a great mistake on the part of the God of the Qoran that He has neglected His duty.

43. "He said, "take thou, four birds and draw them towards thee, and cut them in pieces; then place apart of them on every mountain; the call them and they shall come swiftly to thee." (2: 262.)

PAGE 669

C.~ Now is not the Mohammedan God more like a juggler showing his tricks? Does His God head rest on such things/ the wise will keep aloof from such a God, it is the ignorant alone who will be caught in His trap. (The Mohammedan) God will thus, instead of enhancing His reputation, bring disgrace on Himself.

44. "But God guideth whom he pleaseth." (2: 274.

C. ~ If God guides whom He pleases, He might be misleading other with whom He is not pleased. He alone can be called God and **apta** (true teacher) who impartially guides all.

Allah is nothing else but a tyrant

45. "Whom He pleaseth will He forgive; and whom He pleaseth will he punish; for God is All-powerful." (2:266.)

C. ~ Does not God act like a tyrant when He does not forgive those who deserve forgiveness and forgives those who are not worthy of being forgiven? The soul should not be held responsible for its actions, if God makes one virtuous or wicked just as He pleases, nor should the soul, therefore, be endowed with happiness or afflicted with pain and suffering just as soldier if he kills a person under the direction of his superior officer is not held responsible for his act.

Paradise a brothel?

46. "Say: shall I tell you of better things than those prepared for those who fear God in His presence: There shall be gardens, beneath whose pavilion the river flow, and in which shall they continue to show for ever, and women of stainless purity, and acceptance with God; for God regardeth His servants." (3: 12.)

C. ~ Now is it paradise or a brothel? Should we call such Being (as described in the Qoran) God or a libertine? No enlightened man can ever believe such a book to be the Word of God. Why does God show favoritism? Where the women that live in paradise born here (in this world) and then went there, or were they never born at all? If they went there from here, why were they allowed to enter paradise before their husbands? Why did God violate His law of judging all persons on the last day for the sake of women? On the other hand, if they were born there, how

can they control their passions? But if they have got their husbands with them, how will God manage to provide the faithful with women when the enter paradise? Why does He not

PAGE 670

keep also men for ever there in paradise just s He keeps women? This goes to show the Mohammedan God is unjust and ignorant.

Islam, true religion?

47."The true religion with God is Islam." (3: 17)

C. ~ Is God the Lord of the Mohammedans alone? Did not Divine religion exist at all thirteen hundred years back? It shows that the Qoran is not the word of God, but of some bigot.

Muslims are embodiments of bigotry and ignorance.

48. "Every soul shall be paid what it hath earned, and they shall not be wronged. Say ! O God, possessor of all power, thou givest power to whom thou wild, and from whom thou wilt, thou takest it away! Thou raisest up whom thou wilt, thou dost abase! In thy hand is good, for thou art overall things potent. Thou consentest the night to pass into the day and thou consentest the day to pass into the night. Thou bringest the living out of the dead, and thou bringest the dead out of the living: and thou givest sustenance to whom thou wilt, without measure. Let not believers take infidels for their friends, rather believers. Whoso shall do this, hath nothing to hope from God. Say; If ye love God, then follow me, God will love you, and forgive your sins, for God is Forgiving. Merciful." (3:21-24, 27.)

C. ~ Is it not sheer prejudice to call those, who do not profess Islam, infidels? That Being cannot be God who teaches that the Mohammedans should not associate even with good people of other faiths, while they may take even the wicked Mohammedans for their friends. One is therefore fully justified in inferring that this Qoran, its God and the Mohammedans are embodiments of bigotry and ignorance. The Mohammedans are, therefore, groping in the dark, now reader mark! How clever Mohammad is! He makes his God says in this verse that God will love those who follow Mohammad and even their sins will be forgiven. This shows that the heart of Mohammad was not pure. It appears that the heart of Mohammad was not pure. It appears that Mohammad (made or) had the Qoran made in order to serve his selfish interests.

PAGE 671

49, "O Mary! Verily hath God chosen thee and purified thee an chosen thee above the women of the world!" (3: 33)

C. ~ Now how can we believe that God and His angels came down to talk to men in ancient times when they do not do so now-a-days? If it be argued that then the people were very virtuous, it cannot be true. The fact of the matter is that at that time the majority of the people were uncivilized and ignorant, hence it was that such religions as the Christian and the Mohammedan, which are so opposed to the dictates of knowledge, took root and flourished. But now the people are enlightened, these hollow faiths cannot flourish; on the other hand, they are on the decline.

Allah, the great deceiver.

50. "He that said to him "Be" and he was. The infidels played a trick with God and He played a trick with them, for, verily God is a great trickster." (3: 50, 52.)

C. ~ Whom did God order, since the Mohammedans do not believe that anything but God existed before Creation and what came into being? The Mohammedans could never answer these questions even if they were to be born seven times, because no effect can come into being without a material cause. To believe otherwise is to deny that one's parents were the cause of his body.

He who cheats and plays tricks with others can never be God, he cannot even be called a gentleman.

51. "Is it not enough for you you're your Lord aideth you with three thousand angels sent down from on high?' (3:120.)

C. ~ If God really aided the Mohammedans with three thousand angels in the past, why does He not help them now that their rule (in India and other countries) has greatly declined and is still declining? The real object of this verse is to tempt the ignorant and thereby ensnare them into the Mohammedan religion.

52. "And help us against the unbelieving people. But God is your real Lord, and He is the best of helpers. And if ye shall be slain or die on the path of God." (3: 111, 141, 142, 151.)

C. ~ Now reader mark the error of the Mohammedans! They pray for the destruction of those who differ from them in religious opinions. Is God such a simpleton that He will grant their prayer? If God is the best helper of the Mohammedans only, why should

PAGE 672

They fail in their undertakings? Besides, He seems to be passionately fond of them. If He is so partial (to the Mohammedans),He is not worthy of being worshipped by the righteous.

53. "Nor is God minded to lay open the secret thing to you but God chooseth what he will of his apostles to know them. Believe therefore, in God and his apostles." (3:174)

C. ~ Why does this verse inculcate faith in Mohammad along with that in God, when the Mohammedans process to believe in none but God, and hold that none is worthy of sharing homage with Him? Hence they cannot call God Incomparable. If it be argued that this verse only teaches that people should have faith in Mohammad as a Prophet, we should like to know where is the necessity of Mohammad (being regarded as a Prophet). If God cannot accomplish His desired object without making him His Prophet, He is certainly powerless.

Muhammad and Allah were both pugnacious.

54. "O ye believers! Be patient, keep everything in its proper place and keep on fighting. Fear God that you may attain salvation." (3:178.)

C. ~ The God of the Qoran and His Prophet were both pugnacious. He who orders (his followers) to wage war is the real disturber of peace. Can one attain salvation by having nominal fear of God or by abstaining from fighting in an unrighteous cause? If the former, it cannot be true, but if the latter, it is perfectly right.

55. "These are the frontiers of God's Empire, He who will believe in God and His apostle will go to paradise which has canals in it and this indeed is the one great aim of man. He who goes against the orders of God and His Prophet, will be turned out of His frontiers. He will burn in everlasting fire and constant suffering shall increase his misery." (3: 4: 12, 13.)

C. ~ Now (the Mohammedan) God Himself has made Mohammad His partner (in Divine honors, etc.) and has Himself declared this fact in the Qoran. God is so much attached to Mohammad that He has made him His partner even in paradise. It is useless to call the Mohammedan God Independent when He is dependent upon Mohammad for every little thing. Such things can never be found in a revealed book.

PAGE 673

56. "God truly will not do any one injustice even of the weight of a mote, and if there be any good deed, he will repay it doubly." (4:45.)

C. ~ Why does God repay good deeds doubly if he would not do injustice even of the weight of a mote? Why is He so partial to the Mohammedans? He would be unjust indeed if He were to award the soul reward or punishment out of proportion to its deeds.

Allah's omnisciency in doubt, keeps a memorandum.

57."When they come forth from Thy presence, a party of them broods by night over other than thy words; but God writeth down what they brood over. Desire ye to guide those whom God hath led astray? But for him whom God leadeth astray, thou shalt by no means find a pathway." (4:90.)

C. ~ Now God cannot be Omniscient, since He keeps a Daybook and a Ledger. But if He be Omniscient, why would He keep a memorandum. The Mohammedans hold that the devil is wicked, since he tempts all. One should kike to know the difference between God and the Devil considering that God Himself leads the people astray. Of course, there is this much difference that God is the greater Devil of the two, because the Mohammedans themselves aver that he that enticeth is the devil. Verily their own affirmation makes out their God a veritable Devil.

The height of prejudice.

5. "If they do not withhold their hands, seize them, and slay them, wherever you find them. A believer killeth not a believer but by mischance, and whoso killeth a believer by mischance shall be bound to free a believer from slavery; and the blood money shall be made o the family of the slain believer unless they convert it into alms. But if the slain believer be of a hostile people, let him confer freedom on a slave who is a believer. But whoever shall kill a believer of a set purpose, his recompense shall be hell, for ever shall he abide in it, God shall be wrathful with him." (4: 94-96.)

C. ~ This is the height of prejudice. The Qoran enjoins on its believers to kill the non-Mohammedans but to spare the Mohammedans. If they dill heir co-religionists by mischance, they shall have to make aments for it by freeing a believer from slavery, but if they kill non-Mohammedans, even though it be through a mistake, they shall inherit Heaven.

PAGE 674

Such teachings deserve to be utterly discarded. Such a book, such a Prophet and such a religion do nothing but harm. The world would be better off without them. Wise men would do well to discard a religion so absurd and accept the Vedic faith which is absolutely free from error. The Mohammedans say that one who kills a Mohammedan shall be condemned to a residence in hell; on the other hand, believers in other religions contend that a man attains to heaven by killing a Mohammedan, now which of the two should one believe to be true and which false?

The fact is that all false creeds begotten of ignorance should be renounced, the Vedic religion alone deserving the allegiance of all - a religion which directs every human being to follow in the footsteps of the righteous and shun the path of the wicked.

59. "But whosoever shall sever himself from the Prophet after that " the guidance" has been manifested to him, shall follow any other path than that of the faithful, we will cast him into hell." (4: 135.)

C. ~ Now mark the prejudice of God and of His Prophet! Mohammad like other men of his stamp, was well aware that if he did not stamp his religion with divine authority it would never flourish, or would he or his followers be able to obtain help and power which might help them to live a life of ease and luxury. All this goes to show that Mohammad knew only too well how to compass his selfish ends and to deprive others of their due - a fact which proves that he was no well-wisher of humanity. Such a man can never command the trust and confidence of good and enlightened men.

60. "Verily, they who believed, then become unbelievers, then believed and again became unbelievers, and then increased their unbelief - it is not God who will forgive them, or guide them into the way." (4: 134.)
"Whoever believed, not in God and His Angels and His Book and His Apostles, and the last day, he verily hath erred." (4: 135.)

C. ~ Can you ever now assert that God is one without a second? Is it not self-contradictory to call God Incomparable and yet at the same time believe that there are others who share Divine privileges with Him? Does not God forgive sins after

PAGE 675

He has done so three times? Does not God guide men after they have denied Him and His Prophet more than three times? Even if all were to take advantage of the teachings of this verse, unbelief will multiply immensely.

"Birds of a feather flock together."

61."Verily, God will gather the hypocrites and the infidels all together in hell." (4: 139.)
"The hypocrites would deceive God, but He will deceive them!" (4: 141.)
"Take not infidels for friends rather than believers!" (4: 148.)

C. ~ What proof is there that the Mohammedans will go to heaven and the non-Mohammedans will go to hell? He is indeed a fine God! May such a God as deceives other and is deceived by them always keep away from us. Let him associate with those that are hypocrites and cheats, because "Birds of a feather flock together." Why should not they whose God deceives others be themselves cheated. Can it be right for anyone to associate with a wicked Mohammedan and hate a good man who is other than a Mohammedan?

62. "God is a sufficient guardian." (4: 162.)
" O men! Now hath an apostle come to you with truth from your Lord. Believe them." (4:168.)

C. ~Now does not the Prophet share with God homage due to Him when men have been directed by the Qoran to have faith in the Prophets. It is only because God is localized and not all-pervading that apostles come down from Him. Such a being can never be God. In one place it is written (in the Qoran) that God is All-pervading, while in another it is said that He is localized. This goes to show that the Qoran is the work of more than one person.

63. "That which dieth of itself, and blood, and swine's flesh, and all that hath been sacrificed under the invocation of any other name than that of God, and the strangled, and the killed by a blow, or by a fall, or by goring and that which hath been eaten by beasts of prey is forbidden you." (5:4.)

C. ~ Are those the only animals and things that are forbidden? May be, it is permissible to the Mohammedans to eat other animals, creeping insects and ants, etc. From this it is clear that the Qoran is not the Word of God. It is a human work. Hence it cannot be believed in.

PAGE 676

64. "I will surely put away from you your evil deeds, I will bring you into gardens, beneath which the rivers flow! And lend God a liberal loan, and I will send you to paradise."

C. ~ It seems that the Mohammedan God must have been reduced to poverty, otherwise why would He have asked for a loan and tempted them by saying that He would free them from their sins and send them to Heaven. It appears that Mohammad gained his selfish ends by defrauding others in the name of God.

65. "He will pardon whom he pleaseth and chastise whom he pleaseth. He gave you what never before had been given to any human being." (5: 21, 23.)

C. ~ Just as Satan leads whoever he likes into sin, even so does the Mohammedan God. This being the case, it is God alone who should go to heaven or hell, for (according to the Mohammedan scriptures) He is the doer of all deeds - good or evil. The soul is not a free-agent (and hence it is not responsible for its actions), just as it is the commander of an army who is responsible for whatever it does, in the matter of protecting some and killing others, under his orders and not the army.

66. "Obey God and obey the apostle." (5:93.)

C. ~ This goes to show that God is not "One without a second," hence it is absurd for the Mohammedans to believe that it is otherwise.

The Q'uran promotes sinful conduct.

67. God forgiveth what is past; but whoever doth it again, God will take vengeance on him." (5: 96.)

C. ~ The forgiveness of sin is almost as bad as the sanction of its commission which encourages its further growth. A book whose teachings tend to encourage the commission of sin can neither be the Word of God, nor the work of an enlightened author. It is, on the contrary, on that promotes sinful conduct. It is true though that the prevention of the further commission of sin can be secured by one's praying to God, repenting of his past conduct and by exerting himself to his utmost (to lead a virtuous life.)

Muhammad an imposter.

68. "And is there anyone more wicked than he who deviseth a life of God, or saith "I have had a revelation" when nothing

PAGE 677

revealed to him? And who saith I can bring down a book like that which God hath sent down." (5:93.)

C. ~ This shows that when Mohammad pretended to have had a revelation from God, some other imposter also declared that he too had received heavenly messages, and claimed to be a Prophet. Mohammad must have resorted to his device (i.e., the publication of the above verse) in order to defeat his opponent and increase his reputation.

69. "We created you; then fashioned you; then said we to the angels. "Prostrate yourselves unto Adam," and they prostrated them all in worship, save Eblis! He was not among those who prostrated themselves. To him said God: "What hath hindered the from prostrating thyself in worship at my bidding?" He said, "Nobler am I than he: me hast thou created of fire; of clay has thou created him." He said, 'Get thee gone hence; paradise is no place for thy pride; get thee then, one of the despised shalt thou be." He said, "Respite me till the day when mankind shall be raised from the dead." He said, "Now, for that thou hast cursed me to err, surely in thy straight path will I lay wait for them: then will I surely come upon them from before, and from behind, and from their right hand, and from their left, and thou shalt not find the greater part of them to be thankful. "He said, "Go forth from it, a scorned, a banished one! Whoever of them shall follow thee, I will surely fill hell with you, one and all." (10: 10 - 17.)

C. ~ Now reader, follow attentively this dispute between God and the Devil. This Devil was an angel who was no better than a menial servant, even he could not be kept under control by God, not could the Almighty purify his heart. On the top of this, God let the rebel who tempted all to commit sin go unpunished. God did indeed commit a great blunder (in doing so). Now the Devil being the tempter of all and God being his tempter, it is clear that God is the greater Devil of the two, because the latter clearly says (to God) that he had led him astray. This goes to show that God is even destitute of purity and is at the root of all evils. Only the Mohammedans could believe in such a God but no other enlightened men. The Mohammedan God is proved to be (finite, unjust) and embodied, since He talked (with angels, etc.) just like a man. This is the reason that the educated people do not approve of the faith of Islam.

PAGE 678

Allah is also not omnipresent.

70. "Your Lord is God, who in six days created the Heaven and the Earth, and then mounted the throne. Call upon your God with lowliness and in secret." (7:52, 53.)

C. ~ Can He, who creates the world in six days and rests on His throne in heaven, ever be an Omnipotent, and Omnipresent God? Being destitute of such attributes (as Omnipresence) He cannot even be called God? Is your God deaf that He can hear you only when He is spoken to (aloud)? All these things cannot be from God. Hence the Qoran cannot be the Word of God. He must have indeed got fatigued when He had to rest on the seventh day after having created the world in six days. We wonder if He is still asleep for has awakened. If He is awake, is He there doing some thing or just strolling about and enjoying Himself.

72. "Lay not earth waste with deeds of license." (7:52.)

C. ~ This is indeed good advice, but in other places (in the Qoran) the faithful have been directed to wage war against infidels and even to slaughter them. Does not the Qoran now contradict itself? Ti appears that Mohammad must have adopted the first course when he was weak and the second one when he had gained power. These two teachings being self-contradictory cannot be true.

72. "So he threw down his rod, and lo! It distinctly became a serpent." (5. 105.)

C. ~ This goes to indicate that even God and Mohammad believed in such false things. If so, both of them were ignorant. The laws of nature can never be subverted just as no man can make the eyes and the ears do the work of other senses. This is more jugglery.

73. "And we sent upon them the flood and the locusts and the lice and the frog and the blood. Therefore, we took vengeance on them and drowned then in the seal and we brought the children of Israel across the sea. For the worship they practice in vain." (7: 130, 132, 134.)

C. ~ Now behold! Is it not just like what an imposter does when he frightens a man by saying that he will send snakes to kill him? Why is not God, who is bigoted that He drowns one nation in the sea in order to help the other to cross it, a sinner?

PAGE 679

Can there be any religion more false than one that daubs all religions (other than itself), whose followers can be counted by millions, false and calls itself the only true one, since no religion can boast that all of its followers are good. It becomes only idiots to give an exparte decree. Has the religion founded n the Old Testament become false or was it some other faith, we should like to know what it was and by which name it is mentioned in the Qoran.

74. "Thou shalt not see me. And when God manifested Himself to the mountain He turned it do dust! And Moses fell in a swoon." (7: 139.)*

C. ~ What is perceptible to the eye can never be All-pervading. If He really worked such miracles (in the past) why does He not do so at the present time? Being altogether opposed (to reason) it is not worthy of being believed.

Allah should be spoken to aloud or not?

75. "And think within thine ownself of God, with lowliness and with fear and without loud spoken words, at even and at morn." (7:204.)

C. ~ At one place the Qoran says that God should be spoken to aloud, while at another place it says that He should be addressed " without loud spoken words". Now which of the two shall we believe to be true and which false? Self-contradictory statements can only be made by one who is demented. Of course it does not matter much if one contradicts himself through mistake and then owns it

76. "They will question thee about THE SPOILS, say: The spoils are God's and the apostle's. therefore, fear God." (8: 1.)

C. ~ It is very strange that those who plunder others and live by dacoity and teach others to do the same should still profess to be God, prophet and the faithful. These people with one breath plunder others and with the other talk of fearing God, and yet do not feel the least shame in declaring that their religions faith in the best. Can here be a man worse than one who through sheer obstinacy does not embrace the true Vedic religion?

---

* There has been some misprint in the Bha'sha translation of this verse since the word "not" is not there. -Tr.

PAGE 670

Allah destitute of compassion?

77. "Cut off the uppermost part of the infidels. "I will verily aid you with a thousand angels, rank on rank." "I will cast a dread into the hearts of the infidels." Strike off their heads then, and strike off from them every finger-tip." (8: 7, 9, 12.)

C. ~ How destitute of compassion are God and his Prophets who order that the heads of the infidels should be cut off. Is such a God, as commands the faithful to put the infidels to sword, and sever there limbs (from their bodies) and aids them in this work, any better than *Ravan*, the cruel king of Ceylon? This command is te invention of the author of the Qoran and is not from God, but if it be from Him, our earnest prayer is that such a God may remain at a respectable distance from us.

78. "God is with the faithful. O ye faithful! Obey God and His apostle, O true believes, deceive not God and His apostle, neither violate your faith against your own knowledge. God laid a plot against them, and God is the best layer of plots." (8: 19, 23, 26, 29.)

C. ~ Does God favor the Mohammedans? If so, He is unjust because He is the Lord of all (and not of the Mohammedans only). Is your God deaf that He cannot hear you unless He is spoken n (aloud)? Is it not wrong to couple the name of the Prophet with His name? Where is God's treasure that He should be so afraid of its being stolen? Is it right to steal (the wealth of) others barring that of God and His Prophet?

Only the ignorant and the wicked can teach such things. Why is not that God, who deceives others and associates with the deceitful, hypocritical, cunning and wicked? These things lead one to infer that the Qoran is not the Word of God. Its author must have been a hypocritical and deceitful person, otherwise such objectionable things would not have been found in it.

79. "Therefore fight against them until there be no opposition in favor of idolatry and the religion be wholly God's. and know that whenever ye gain any spoils, a fifth part therefore belongeth unto God, and to the apostle." 8: 40, 42.)

C. ~ Who but the Mohammedan God would be so unjust in fighting and helping other to do the same and so active in causing breaches of peace? Now look at this religion, which sanctions wholesale robbery for the benefit of the Prophet! Are

PAGE 680

these people any better than thugs? God participates in the crime of robbery when He takes His share of the loot. He brings disgrace on Himself by favoring such dacoits (thieves). We are at a loss to understand whence came such a book, such a God and such a Prophet in order to disturb the happy relations between different nations of the world and thereby inflict great suffering on them. Has not such faiths flourished in the world, all would have lived in peace with each other.

80. "And if thou didst behold when the angels cause the unbelievers to die! They strike their faces and their backs, and unto say them, "Taste ye the pain of burning." Wherefore we destroyed them in their sins, and we drowned the people of Pharaoh. Therefore prepare against them what force ye are able." (8: 52, 56, 62.)

C. ~ Now-a-days Russia has trampled Trudy and England has taken possession of Egypt, and yet God and His angels have done nothing to help them! Have they gone to sleep? In the past

God used to kill and drown the enemies of His votaries, but He does not help them now. This shoes that He did nothing of the sort even in ancient times.

How evil is the command which say s that the faithful should do, as much as, lies in their power, to inflict pain and suffering upon the non-Mohammedans. Leave alone God, even a learned, righteous and tender-hearted man would not give such an order, and yet they (the Mohammedans) have the impudence to say that their God is Merciful and Just. It is on this account that the Mohammedan God is destitute of justice and mercy and the like good attributes.

81. "O Prophet! God is thy support and of such of the true believers who followeth thee. O Prophet, lead the faithful to war; if twenty of you persevere with constancy, they shall overcome two hundred. Eat therefore of what ye have acquired, that which is lawful and good; and fear God: for God is Gracious and Merciful." (8:65, 66, 70.)

C. ~ Now what kind of justice, wisdom or righteousness is it that one should support one's followers even though they perpetrate injustice? He, who causes breach of peace and himself fights as well as helps others to do so, loots other people and yet calls the loot lawful, can never be Merciful and Compassionate.

PAGE 682

Leave alone God, such a thing can never be true even of a good man. Such things make it impossible for us to believe that the Qoran is the Word of God.

Is Allah all-pervading?

*82. "They shall continue therein forever: for God is a great reward. O true believers, take not your fathers or your brethren for friends, if they love infidelity above faith. Afterwards God sent down his security upon his apostle and upon the faithful, and sent down troops of angels, which ye saw not; and he punished them who disbelieved; and this was reward of the unbelievers. Nevertheless God will hereafter be turned unto whom He pleaseth. Fight against them who believe not in God." *: 10, 12, 24, 25, 27.)*

C. ~ Now how can God be All-pervading if He lives near those who are in paradise? But if He is not All-pervading, He can neither be the Creator nor the Judge of the world. It is wrong to advise men to forsake their parents of course, one should not obey them if the advise one to do wrong, but all the same one should always serve them.

If God was kind to the Mohammedans and sent down troops of angels to help them in the past, why does He not do so now? If He punished the unbelievers and "turned unto whom He pleased," why does He not do the same at the present time? Could not God advance His faith without commanding His votaries to fight? We say good-bye to such a God! He is more of a showman than a God.

83. "We await for you the infliction of a chastisement by God, from Himself, or at our hands." (8:53.)

C. ~ Do the Mohammedans constitute God's police that He seizes non-Muslims either with His own hands or has been seized by the hands of the Mohammedans? Are millions of other people displeasing unto God, and are Mohammedans, though they might be sinners, pleasing unto Him? If such is the case, the Mohammedan God resembles a veritable tyrant. It is strange that even sensible Mohammedans should believe in a religion which has no foundation to rest upon, and is opposed to reason.

Muhammad holding out baits for the ignorant.

84. "To the faithful, both men and women, God promiseth gardens, beneath which the rivers flow, in which they shall abide, and goodly mansions in the gardens of Eden. But best of all will be God's good pleasure in them. This will be the great bliss. Those who scoff at them, will be scoffed at by God." (8:75,80.) **PAGE 683**

C. ~ Here Mohammad holds out a bait to men and women, in the name of God, to compass his own selfish ends. Had not Mohammad held out such a bait, nobody would have suffered himself to be entrapped by him. So do believers in other creeds also talk. Men scoff at one another, but does not behove God to scoff at anyone. This Qoran is a mass of veritable funny tales.

85."But the apostle and those who share his faith, contend for the faith with purse and person: and these! All good things await them. And God hat set a seal upon their hearts; they have no knowledge." (8:89, 94.)

C. ~ Mark this selfishness! Only those alone are good who believed in Mohammad, and those who did not believe in him are condemnable. Does not this argue bigotry and ignorance out and out? When God Himself hath set a seal on their hearts, they are not to blame for sinning. On the contrary, all the blame rests with God, for He sealed all their noble impulses by setting a seal upon their hearts. This verily the height of injustice!

A terrible blot on Godhead?

86. "Take alms of their substance, that thou mayest clean and purify them thereby, and pray for them: for thy prayers shall assure their minds. Verily, of the faithful hath God bought their persons and their substance on condition of Paradise for them, in return on the path of God shall they fight, and slay and be slain." (10: 106, 113.)

C. ~ This is really fine! Mohammad here figures out as the very prototype of Popish priest who cleanse or grants absolution only to those who grease his palm. This Muslim God is a wonderful trader, who thins He drives a roaring trade by taking the lives of the poor and helpless through the Mohammedans! By condemning the orphans to destruction and awarding paradise to the oppressors, the Mohammedan God becomes chargeable with cruelty and injustice and this is a blot on His Godhead. He has rightly come to be looked down upon with contempt by the wise ad the noble minded.

87."Believers! Wage war against such of the infidels as are your neighbors, and let them find you rigorous. Do they not see that they are afflicted with suffering every year once or twice? Yet they turn not, neither are they warned." (10:124, 127)

PAGE 684

C. ~ Mark the teaching, which, in defiance of all noble instinct, advocates the destruction of one's very friends! God here teaches the Mohammedans to fight with their neighbors and slaves, to wage war against them and to slaughter them whenever they get a chance to the Mohammedans have materially helped in spreading such ideas, taking their inspiration from this very book - the Qoran. They should, iin the present enlightened age, realize the evil nature of such a teaching and give it up. They would be gainers by doing so.

Allah ignorant of physics?

88. "Verily, your Lord is God Who hath made the Heavens and the Earth in six days - then mounted His throne to rule all things." (15:3.)

C. ~ Space is not the result of combination or a compound substratum. It is uncreated, eternal. The assertion, that it was created, furnishes a positive proof of the fact that the author of the Qoran was ignorant of physics. Had God to spend full six days on the creation of the world? When it is written in the Qoran "Be'} and "it was," it follows that this assertion about the creation of the world in six days is baseless. Were the Muslim God All-pervading, why would He establish Himself in the heavens or the sky? And if God has to thing of His administration, He is nothing but a prototype of a human being. Were He Omniscient, why would He cogitate seated passively? This shows that the Qoran is he production of minds steeped in savagery and destitute of all knowledge of God.

89. "And guidance and a mercy to the faithful." (10: 55)

C. ~Is God the monopoly of the Muslims only, and have others no claim on Him? And is He partial, that He reserves His mercy only for the Muslims, and denies it to others. If by Muslims He meant "the faithful" they do not stand in need of guidance. If God does not furnish guidance to people other than the Mohammedans, His knowledge is of no use.

90. "That he might make proof which of you will excel in work - And if thou say "After death ye shall surely be raised again." The infidels will certainly exclaim, "This is nothing but pure sorcery." (11: 8, 10.)

C. ~ When God has to examine works, He is not Omniscient. And if He does raise people after death, are we to think that those who are raised are condemned for an indefinite period to wait for

PAGE 685

a settlement of their date? Again, is it not opposed to His own Divine law to raise the dead? Is it possible that God should compromise His Godhead by infringing His own law?

91. "And it was said, "O Earth! Swallow up thy water" and "Cease, O Heaven." And the water abated. O my people! this is the she-camel of God and a sign unto you; let her go at large, and feed on God's Earth." (11: 43, 66.)

C. ~ What childish talk is this? Can the earth or the heavens ever hear? And if God possesses a she-camel, He must also possess a he-camel further He must own elephants, horses, donkeys, etc.! and does it reflect any credit on God to get His she-camel to feed in the field of the others? Does God ever ride the she-camel? If such is the Muslim God, His house must be distinguished for all the pomp and splendor to be found in the house of a mundane potentate.

92. "Therein shall they abide while the heavens and the earth shall last. And as for the blessed ones - their place the Garden! Therein shall they abide while the heavens and the earth endure." (11: 109, 110.)

C. ~ If, after the Day of Judgment, all people must repair either to heaven or hell, why should the earth or the sky then continue to exist? And if heaven and hell or to endure as long as the earth and the sky endure, then it follows that the assertion "that they shall abide in heaven or hell for ever" is baseless. It is the ignorant that talk in this vain, and not the wise, or God.

93. "When Joseph said to his father, "O my father! Verily I beheld eleven stars and the sun and the moon." (12: 4.)

C. ~ This verse contains a dialogue between a father and his son, which shows that the Qoran is not from God but is the production of some man who has embodied in it the biographies of human beings.

94. "It is God who hath reared the heavens without pillars thou canst behold: then mounted His throne and imposed laws on the sun and the moon. And He it is who hath outstretched the earth. He sendeth down the rain from heaven; then flow the torrents in their due measure." ((13: 15)

PAGE 686

"God is open-handed with supplies to whom He will, or is sparing." (13: 2, 3, 15, 22.)

C. ~ The Muslim God is entirely innocent of all knowledge of Physical Science. Were He conversant with Physical Science, He would not have talked of rearing heavens on pillars. If God dwells in a particular locality or in the heavens, He cannot be Almighty or all-Encompassing. Had the Muslim God known aught of the Science of the clouds, He would have coupled the words, "He made the water go up to the sky," with the words, "he sendeth down the rain from the heaven."

This shows that the author of the Qoran was ignorant of the science of clouds. If God confers happiness on some or condemns others to misery without paying any regard to their merits or demerits, He is partial, unjust and utterly ignorant.

Allah beguiles people?

95. "God truly will mislead whom He will; and He will guide to Himself him who turneth to Him." (13: 23)

C. ~ When God beguiles people, what is there to distinguish Him from Satan? If Satan is condemned for beguiling people, why should not God be regarded as a greater Satan for doing the same thing, and why should He not be condemned to a residence in hell for the sin of beguiling others?

96 "Thus then, as a code in the Arabic tongue, have we sent down the Qoran; and truly, if after the knowledge that hath reached thee thou follow their desires, thou shalt have no guardian nor protector against God."(13: 38.)

C. How did God send down the Qoran? Does God live high up in the skies? If this be true, He cannot be God, being confined to a particular locality, for God is All-pervading. To carry or deliver messages is the function of a courier, and since God is confined to a particular locality, he must needs have one. And to keep an account (in dealings with others) becomes a man but no God who is Omniscient. If follows from such statements of the Qoran that it is the work of a human being, possessed of limited intelligence.

97. "And he ordained that the sun and moon shall always wander. Verily, man is an oppressor, and a heretic." (14: 27.)

C. ~ Do the sun and moon only keep always wandering? Does not the earth wander too? It the earth did not revolve, each day

PAGE 687

and night would extend over many years. If man is disposed by nature to be cruel, and a heretic, it becomes useless to send him a warning through the Qoran. For, those, who are inherently disposed to do evil, will never be disposed to do good. As a matter of fact, there are both good and wicked men in this world. Hence it is evident from all this that no book which contains such preposterous teaching can be from God.

98. "And when I shall have fashioned him and breathed of my spirit into him; then fall ye down and worship him." "O my Lord; because, thou hast beguiled me, I will surely make all fair seeming to them on the earth; I will surely beguile them all." (15: 29, 39.)

C. ~ If God breathed His spirit into Adam, then Adam also became God. If Adam was not God, then why did God let him share the homage due to Him only? When God is the beguiler of Satan, why should not He, being His preceptor, be regarded as a greater Devil than Satan, for, while the Muslims look upon Satan as the beguiler it is really God who beguiles Satan. Again when Satan said in the presence of God, "I shall beguile then all," why did not God inflict upon him punishment and throw him into a dungeon, yea, why did not He kill him?

Why are there infidels when he sent apostles to all people?

99. "And to every people have we sent an apostle. Our word to a thing when we will it is but to say "BE" and it is." (16:38, 42.)

C. ~ If God sent apostles to very people, then why should those who follow these apostles be set down as infidels? Is not prophet to be honored other than your own? This is sheer bigotry. If God sent apostles to every country, why did not He send one to Aryavarta (India)? Hence this assertion of the Qoran does not deserve to be given credence to.

When God makes up His mind and says, "Earth be," how can the inanimate earth hear His command? And how can the mere command of God create the universe? And when the Mohammedans do not believe in the existence of anything other than God before creation, what was it that heard God's order, and what did the same become? Those who are destitute of all knowledge of science talk in this fashion, and it is only the ignorant that believe in such things.

PAGE 688

100 "And they ascribe daughters unto God! Glory be to Him! By God we have sent apostles to nations before this." (16: 59, 65.)

C. ~ What will God do with daughters, because daughters are needed only for men? And why are not sons appointed unto God? Why are daughters only appointed unto him? Swearing is resorted to by liars, hence God should not swear. For, we frequently see in the world that it is as a rule liars that swear. Why should they, who sonly speak the truth, swear?

What an injustice of Allah!

101. "These are they whose hearts and ears and eyes God hath sealed up; these the careless ones. And every soul shall be repaid according to its deeds, and they shall not wronged." (16: 110, 112.)

C. ~ When God Himself had sealed up their hearts, etc., the unfortunate ones are condemned to destruction without any fault on their part. They are denied the privilege of being free-agents. How

unjust it is! And yet we are told by the Qoran that everyone shall be repaid according to his deeds, and shall have neither more or less than what he is entitled to.

When the sinners were not free-agents in committing sin, but did it yielding to a stern necessity, having been compelled to do so by God, why are they to blame? They should not suffer for their deeds, on the contrary it is God who ought to suffer punishment. And if everyone is repaid according to the full measure of his deeds, wherein does God's forgiveness consist? And if God does forgive sins, He destroys justice. God never act in this reckless fashion; only an erring mortal can act like this.

102 "And we have appointed hell the portion of infidels.
And every man's fate have we fastened about his neck. And on the day of resurrection will we bring forth to him a book which shall be proffered to him wide open. And since Noah, how many nations have we exterminated." (17: 8, 14, 18.)

C. ~ If those who do not believe in the Qoran, the Prophet and the God of whom the Qoran speaks, and have no faith in the seven heavens or in the Muslim prayer, etc., are infidels, and if it is they who are destined for hell, we can then say without the least hesitation that all this is nothing but sheer partiality. Is it possible that those who believe in the Qoran are all good, whole others are

PAGE 689

wicked? It is childish to assert that everyone has his fate fastened about his neck. As a matter of fact we don't see it fastened round the neck of a single person. If by this is meant that men shall have the just reward of their deeds, it sounds preposterous to assert that their hearts, eyes, etc., have been sealed up. We are told that God will bring forth His book on the day of judgment; if so where is that book now? Does God make daily entries in His book after the fashion of the shopkeepers?

There is another thing which should be considered in this connection. If there is not previous birth, where did the deeds of men come from and how could the book of deeds be made out? If it has bee prepared in the absence of deeds, God has wronged the parties concerned. Why did He bestow happiness upon some and subject others to misery in the absence of the good or bad works? If it be said that He did it, because it pleased Him to do so, in that case too He wronged them.

To add to or take away from the felicity or suffering of any person with out any regard to his merits or demerits is termed injustice. And will it be God who will read the book at the time specified or will He have a reader by? If God dooms to destruction souls that have been waiting for an indefinite period without any fault on their part, He is a tyrant. But he who is a tyrant, cannot be God.

There can be no delay in the administration of Justice.

103. "We gave to The mood the She-camel before their very eyes.
And entice such of them as thou canst by thy voice.
One day we will summon all men with their leaders: they whose book shall be given into their right hand." (17: 61, 66, 73.)

C. ~ Verily, one of the most convincing proofs which God can advance in favor of His God-head is the possession of the she-camel! If God ordered Satan to beguile human beings then He Himself is a greater Satan. But to call one, who leads people to commit sin, God is a most foolish thing. If God will call the Prophet and all his followers on the day of judgment in order to decide

the fate of the dead, all of them will have to remain in custody till that period. But custody without any trial is extremely irksome and it is, therefore, the duty of every good judge to decide cases

PAGE 690

promptly. It is like the justice administered by Popan Bai. What will you think of a judge who would say that he would not administer justice till all the criminals and the law-abiding citizens of fifty years back had been gathered together in one place. What sort of justice will this be? He will keep one man in custody for this cannot be called justice.

If you want to see what justice is, read the Vedas and Manusmriti, which declare that there is not a moment's delay in the administration of justice and that all souls are judged according to their deeds. Again, to hold that God summons the prophets as witnesses is to question His Omniscience. Can such a book ever be the Word of God and can its author ever be an Almighty God?

Rebirth of souls constitutes true doctrine.

104. "For them/! The gardens of Eden, under whose shades shall rivers flow: decked shall they be therein with bracelets of gold, and green robes of silk and rich brocade shall they wear, reclining them therein on thrones. Blissful the reward! And a pleasant couch!" (18: 30.)

C. ~ Indeed! What a fine place is the paradise described in the Qoran! It has gardens, ornaments, clothes, cushions, pillows for affording pleasure to those who live therein. A wise man will, on reflection, find that the Mohammedan paradise excels in nothing except injustice which lies in the fact that the soul will have infinite enjoyment or infinite suffering for actions which are finite. Besides, infinite happiness will appear to them infinite misery, even as if a person goes on eating sweet things for a long time, they begin to taste like poison to him. Therefore, the belief that the soul is reborn after having enjoyed the bliss of salvation till the Grand Dissolution (of the universe) alone constitutes the true doctrine.

105. "And these cities did we destroy when they became impious; and of their coming destruction we gave them warning." (18: 58.)

C. ~ Can all the inhabitants of a place be ever sinful? The fact that God formed His resolution (of destroying those cities) afterwards proves that He is not All-knowing, for, He did so after He had seen injustice being perpetrated. He had no knowledge of it before. (His destroying so many cities) also proves that he is destitute of all Mercy.

PAGE 691

Believers of the Q'uran must be illiterate.

106. "As to the youth his parents were believers, and we feared lest he should trouble them by error and infidelity. Until when he reached the setting of the sun, he found it to set in a mire fount; and hardly he found a people. They said, "O Dhoulkarnain!" Verily, Gog, and Magog waste their land, shall we then pay thee tribute, so thou build a rampart between us and them." (18: 79, 84, 93.)

C. ~ How unwise of God! He feared lest the parents of the boy might be led to rebel against His authority. This cannot be compatible with the nature of God. Again mark the ignorance of the author of the Qoran! He thinks that the sun sinks into a lake at night, and comes out of it again at

day-break. As a matter of fact, the sun is very much larger than the earth. How can be then set it in a river or lake or an ocean?

This proves that the author of the Qoran was ignorant of Physical Geography and Astronomy. Had he known these Sciences, why would he have written such things as are oppose to the dictum of knowledge? The believers in this book are also illiterate; other wise they would not have believed in a book which is do full of error. Now mark God's injustice? Though He is Himself the Creator of this earth and is its King and Judge, yet He allows Gog and Mogog wage constant war with exh other. This is also incompatible with the nature of God. Such a book can only be believed in by savages and not by enlightened men.

107.) "And remember in the book of the Qoran the story of Mary: when she retired from her family to a place towards the east, and took veil to conceal herself form them: and we sent our spirit Gabriel unto her, and he appeared unto her in the space of a perfect man. She said, fly for refuge unto the Merciful God, that He may defend me from thee, if thou fearest Him, then do not approach me. He answered, verily I am the messenger of thy Lord, and am sent to give thee a holy son. She said, how shall I have a son, seeing a man hath not touched me and I am no harlot. Gabriel replied, so hall it be: thy Lord saith, this is easy with me; and we will perform it, that we may ordain him for a sign unto men, and a mercy from us: for it is a thing which is decreed. Wherefore she conceived him and she retired aside with him in her womb to a distant place." (19: 12 - 16, 18.)

PAGE 692

C. ~ It is a thing for the wise to consider that if all the angels are the spirit of God, they could not exist as separate entities from Him. Moreover, Mary while she was a Virgin, gave birth to a son, although she did not like to co-habit with any man, yet contrary to her wishes she was conceived by the angel at the Lord's command. Now how wrong it was of God to have done so! There are many other objectionable things recorded in the Qoran which we do not think advisable to mention here.

Did Allah, himself send the devil to incite the innocent?

108. " Dost thou not see that we send devils against the infidels to incite them to sin." (19: 78.)

C. ~ As God Himself sends devils to incite the infidels, the devils are innocent, neither the devils nor the people tempted by them could, therefore, be liable to punishment. Since all sins are committed at the bidding of the Lord, He alone should suffer the consequences thereof. If He is really the dispenser of justice, He Himself should suffer in hell the consequences of His evil deeds. But if He sets justice at naught, He becomes a sinner, since it is a sin to perpetrate injustice.

109. "It will be gracious unto him, who shall repent and believe and shall do that which is right and who shall be rightly directed." (20: 76.)

C. ~ It is written in the Qoran that one's sins are forgiven by mere repentance. This encourages sin, since here is nothing to deter men from its commission. This gook and its author, therefore, place a premium upon sin.
Hence it is cleaar that this book cannot be the Word of God, nor can the Being described therein be Divine.

110. "And we placed stable mountains on the earth, lest it should move with them." (21: 31.)

C. ~ If the author of the Qoran had been acquainted with the phenomenon of the revolution of the earth, he would never have taught that the earth was immovable, because mountains were fixed in it. It could be argued that if there were no mountains, it would be shaken. Why does it quake when there is a seismic disturbance?

PAGE 693

11. "And remember her who preserved her virginity, and into whom we breathed our spirit." (21: 88.)

C. ~ It is impossible that such obscene statements should have been recorded in Divine revelation or even in a book written by a decent man. When even human beings do not relish such writings, how can God do so? It is such statements as bring the Qoran into disrepute. If its teachings had been good, it would have commanded admiration like the **Vedas**.

Can the inanimate adore God?

112. "Seest thou not that all creatures both in the heavens and on the earth adore God? The sun, and the moon, and the stars, the mountains and the trees, and the beasts, and many men? They shall be adorned therein with bracelets of gold, and pearls, and their vestures therein shall be silk. And cleanse my House for those who compass it and who stand up." Afterwards let them put an end to the neglect of other persons; and let them pay their vows, and compass the ancient House. And may commemorate the name of God." (22: 18, 23,28,30, 32.)

C. ~ When it is clear that inanimate objects cannot even know God, how can they then worship Him? This book cannot be of Divine origin. It seems to have been written by some ignorant man. How funny! How beautiful is the paradise where the inmates get gold ornaments studded with pearls and silken garments. This sort of paradise can in no way be better than the palaces of Kings; and if heaven is the house of God, he must be living in that very house, how can it then be said that the Qoran does not teach idol-worship? (The Mohammedan) God is like gods and goddesses such as Bhairva (Indian Bacchus) and Durga (Puranas), because He accepts presents, commands people to circumembulate His house and to offer animal sacrifices; He is the originator of idol-worship in its most objectionable form, because the Mosque is a huge idol than the images of the gods. The Mohammedan God and His followers are, therefore, worse idol-worshippers than the Pauranics and the Jainees.

This mode of meting out justice is as bad as doing injustice.

113. "Then shall ye be waked up on the day of Resurrection." (23: 16.)

PAGE 694

C. ~ Will the dead dwell in the tombs or in some other place till doom's Day? If they will dwell in the tombs, even the virtuous souls will suffer pain on account of their bodily tenements being foul-smelling and decomposed. This mode of meting out justice is as bad as doing injustice. Moreover, the Mohammedan God and His followers are guilty of the sin of spreading disease.

114. "One day their own tongues shall bear witness against them the their hands, and their feet, concerning that which they have done. God is the Light of the Heaven and Earth: the similitude of his light is as niche in a wall, wherein a lamp is placed, and the lamp enclosed in a case of glass; the glass appears as it were a shining star. It is lighted with the oil of a blessed tree, an olive neither of the east nor of the west, it wanteth little but that the oil thereof would give light, although

no fire touched it. This is light added unto light. God will direct unto His light whom he pleaseth." (24: 24, 35.)

C. ~ The hands and feet being inanimate cannot give evidence. The second statement being opposed to Laws of Nature is false. Is God fire or electricity? The illustration given in the Qoran cannot apply to God. Such illustrations can only apply to embodied objects.

115, "And God hath created every animal of water. Some go on upon the belly. And whoso shall obey God and His Apostle….Say: Obey God and obey the Apostle. And obey the Apostle that happily ye may find mercy." 24: 45, 51, 53, 55.)

C. ~ What kind of philosophy is this that the creatures in the composition of whose body all elements have entered are said to have generated from water alone. This is a foolish statement. If t is necessary that the commands of the Prophet should be obeyed along with those of God, He may be said to have a partner. If it is so, why is it written in the Qoran that God is without a second, and why do you preach this?

The Qoran disturbs the peace of the world and fosters discord.

116. "On that day the heaven shall be cloven asunder by the clouds and the angels shall be sent down, descending visibly therein. Wherefore do not thou obey the unbelievers; but oppose them here with a strong opposition. Unto them will God change

PAGE 695

their former evils into good; and whoever repenteth, and doth that which is right; verily he turneth unto God with an acceptable conversion." (25: 25, 50, 68, 69)

C. ~ It can never be true that the sky has been split up by the clouds. It could be split up only if it had material existence. The teaching of the Qoran disturbs the peace of the world and fosters discord. It is for this reason that righteous and learned men do not believe in it. It is unjust that sins and virtues should be balanced against one another. Sin and virtue cannot be compared to oil seeds and lentils. If repentance absolves one from sin and brings him nearer to God, no body would be afraid of committing sins. All this is opposed to science.

Other books sent down by Allah before the Q'uran.

117. "And we spake by revelation unto Moses, saying, "March forth with my servants by night; for ye will be pursued." And Pharaoh sent an officer through the cities to assemble forces. Who has created me and directeth me; and who giveth me to eat and to drink. And who, I hope, will forgive my sins on the day of Judgment." (25: 50, 51, 76, 77, 80.)

C. ~ When God first sent down His book to Moses what need was there for sending down books to David, Christ and Mohammad? God's knowledge must be Unchangeable and Infallible but sending down later books would show that the knowledge contained in the first book was fallible and imperfect. If these first three works contained true knowledge, the Qoran must be false.

It is impossible for all the four books to teach true knowledge because their teachings contradict each other. If God has created souls, they must need cease to exist some day or the other. If it is God Who gives sustenance to man and other creatures, why do people suffer from disease and why does not each man get an equal amount of food? Why do some people, such as kings, get sumptuous food and others like the paupers get poor food?

If it is God Who feeds people and makes them observe the laws of health, there should be no disease. But we see that even the Mohammedans do suffer from disease. If it is God who cures people of disease the Mohammedans should always recover, but as they do not, it is clear that the Mohammedan God is not a skilful doctor, for if He were so, the Mohammedans would always come round. Again, if it is God Who kills people and brings

PAGE 696

them to life, then He alone should take the consequences. On the contrary if it be believed that punishment or reward is awarded according to deeds done (by the soul) in many births, He cannot be held blameworthy. If God forgives sins and dispenses justice on the last day, He will be a sinner and a promoter of sin. It he does not forgive sins, it cannot but he said that this teaching of the Qoran is false.

118. "Thou art only a man like unto us: produce now some sign, if thou speakest the truth. Said, the she-camel shall be a sign unto you: she shall have her portion of water." (26: 154,)

C. ~ Who would believe that the camel came out of stone. Those who pinned faith to it were savages. The sign of the camel was something which looks boorish, not Divine. If this book had been revealed, ti would not contain such senseless things.

119. "O Moses! Verily I am God, Mighty, the Wise: cast down thy rod. And when he saw it, that it moved, as though it had been a serpent, he retreated and fled. And God said O Moses, fear not, for my messengers are not disturbed with fear in my sight."
"Rise not up against me: and surrender yourself unto me." (27: 9, 10, 27, 32.)

C. ~ Now mark! God calls Himself Might, even a good man would not indulge in self-commendation, why should God do so? He became the Lord of the savages by tempting them with a sort of jugglery. Such things cannot be written in the Word of God. If He is the Lord of the seventh heaven, He cannot be God being localized. If it is a bad thing to rebel, why did God and Mohammad write a book to extol themselves, even though the Prophet at the instigation of God killed many which was worse than rebellion. The Qoran is full of repetitions and self-contradictory statements.

120. "And thou shalt see the mountains, and shalt think them firmly fixed; they shall pass away, even as the clouds pass away. This will be the work of God, who rightly disposes all things: and he is well acquainted with that which ye do." (27: 90.)

C. ~ Perhaps in the country where the author of the Qoran lived, the mountains moved on like clouds, for nowhere else it is

PAGE 697

so. The vigilance of God can be judged by the fact that He could not catch the rebel Satan and punish him. Who can be more careless than one who could not. apprehend one rebel and punish him.

Does God create by the caprice of His Will?

121. "And Moses struck him with his fist and slew him: and he said, O Lord, verily I have injured my own soul, wherefore forgive me. So God forgave him; for He is ready to forgive, and Merciful. The Lord createth what He pleaseth; and chooseth freely." 28: 14, 15, 66.)

C. ~ Now mark again! Are not God and Moses the Prophet of the Mohammedans and the Christians, both unjust because the latter killed people and God forgave him his sins. Does God create by the caprice of His Will? Was it due to mere caprice that one was born a king and anther a pauper; one a scholar, and another a fool. If it is so, the Qoran dos not inculcate truth, and the Mohammedan God being unjust is no God at all.

122. "We have commanded man to show kindness towards his parents: but if they endeavor to prevail with thee to associate with me that concerning which thou hast no knowledge, obey them not. We hereafter sent Noah unto his people, and he tarried among them not. We hereafter sent Noah unto his people, and he tarried among them one thousand years, save fifty years." (29: 7, 13.)

C. ~ Of course, it is good thing to serve one's parents and it is also right not to obey them when they ask one to believe that God shares His homage with some other being. But they should not be believed if they command one to tell lies, hence this injunction is only a half truth. If He sent only Noah and other prophets to the world who sent the other creatures? If it be said that he sent all, then why not believe that all are prophets. If formerly people lived for 950 years, why do they not attain that age now? This statement is also wrong.

123. "God produceth creatures, and will hereafter restore them to life: then shall ye return unto Him. And on the day whereon the hour shall come, the wicked shall be struck dumb for despair. And they who shall have believed, and wrought righteousness, shall take their pleasure in a delightful meadow: Yet if

PAGE 698

we should send a blasting wind, and they should see their corn yellow and burnt up. This hath God sealed up the hearts of those who believe not." (30: 10, 11, 14, 50, 58.)

C. ~ If God ordains Creation twice and not thrice, He must be sitting idle before the first Creation and after the second, and will lose all vitality after creating the world twice. If the sinners are struck dumb with despair on the day of judgment, so much so good, but we hope that this verse does not mean that all except the Mohammedans will be branded as sinners and struck dumb with despair, for at many places in the Qoran by the word of sinner is meant a non-Mohammedan.

If the Mohammedan paradise consists of residence in a garden and adornment of the body, it is just lie this world. In that case it is necessary y that gardeners and goldsmiths should be there or God should do their work. Again, if some denizen of paradise gets a smaller number of ornaments, he might commit theft and be hurled down into hell. If it be so the doctrine of eternal heaven would be falsified.

If God superintends agriculture operations, He must needs have gained some experience in the agricultural art! Even if it be believed that God being Omniscient knew all this, He cannot escape from the charge of having bullied and blustered. If God sealed the hearts of men and caused them to commit sin, He must be held answerable for the offence and not men; even as the Commanders are held responsible for defeat or victory, so God must be regarded answerable for sins.

124. "These are the signs of the wise book. He hath created the heavens without visible pillars to sustain them, and hath thrown on the earth mountains firmly rooted, lest it should move with you. Dost thou not see that the God causeth the night to succeed the day, and causeth the day to succeed the night? Dost thou not see that the ships run in the sea, through the favor of God, that He may show you of his signs?" (31: 1, 9, 28, 30.)

C. ~ How funny! That a book like this should be regarded full of wisdom even though it teaches things opposed to science, such as the creation of the heavens without visible pillars to sustain them and the fixing of the mountains in the earth with a view to keep them immovable. Even persons who are a little bit educated cannot write such nonsense or believe in such balderdash. Again,

PAGE 699

how wise is the statement that the day is entangle with the night and night with day! Every body knows that day and night co-exist. The Qoran cannot be a book of true knowledge, for this statement is absolutely foolish. It is not opposed to true knowledge to say that the ships run into the sea through the favor of God when in reality they are propelled by machinery and by sailors? Would not the sign of God (a ship) sink if it was made of iron or stone? Verily this book cannot have been written either by God or by a learned man.

Is Allah limited by space like man?

125. "He governeth all things from heaven even to the earth, hereafter they shall return unto Him, on the day whose length shall be a thousand years, of those which ye compute. This He who knoweth the future and the present; the Mighty, the Merciful. And then formed him into proper shape, and breathed of His Spirit into him; say; the angel of death, who is set over you, shall cause you to die…If we had pleased, we had certainly given unto every soul its direction: but the word which hath proceeded from me must necessarily be fulfilled, when I said, verily I will fill hell with both genii and men." (32: 4, 5, 8,10, 12.)

C. ~ Now it is quite clear that the God of the Mohammedans is limited by space like man, for if He were Omnipresent, it could not be said of Him that He is stationed at a particular place for the purpose of carrying on administrative work and that He descends and ascends. He cannot but be regarded as limited by space if He sends down angels and Himself remains hung up in the sky, while His emissaries are sent about on errands. How could God know it, if His angels were bribed into perverting the facts of a case or sparing the life of a doomed person.

He could find out only if He were Omniscient and Omnipresent, but that He is not. If He had been so, where was the need of sending angels and testing people in any way? Again, He cannot be said to be Omnipotent, because it takes a thousand years to arrange for the return of His emissaries. If there is an angel of death, what is there that will bring about his death? If it be said that that angel is eternal, then it will have to be believe that God is not Incomparable at least so far as eternity is concerned. One angel cannot ask many people to repair to hell simultaneously, and if God looks at the fun after filling hell with innocent people who have been doomed to torture, he is

PAGE 700

unrighteous, unjust and merciless. A book teaching such things cannot be the work of God or of a learned man, while a being devoid of justice and mercy cannot be Divine.

126. "Say, light shall not profit you, if ye fly from death or from slaughter: O wives of the Prophet, whosever of you shall commit a manifest wickedness, the punishment thereof shall be doubled unto her twofold, and this is easy with God." 33: 16, 30.)

C. ~ Mohammad wrote or dictated this verse to keep people from running away from the field of battle so that victory might be assured to his army, his soldiers might not dread death, his wealth might increase and his religion might spread. If the wife of the prophet is not to appear in public

shamelessly (without a veil), why should the prophet do so. It is just that the wife should suffer for this offence and the prophet escape scot free.

A father-in-law lusting after his daughter-in-law.

127. "And abide still in you houses; … and obey God and his apostle: But when Zaid had determined the matter concerning her, we joined her in marriage unto thee; lest a crime should be charge on the true believers in marrying the wives of their adopted sons, when they have determined the matter concerning them: and the command of God is to be performed. No crime is to be charged on the prophet ad to what God hath allowed him. Mohammad is not the father of any man among you:.. and any other believing woman if she hath given herself unto the prophet; Thou mayest postpone the urn of such of they wives as thou shalt please in being called to thy bed, and thou mayest take unot thee her whom thou shalt please and her whom thou shalt desire: and it shall be no crime in thee. O true believers! Enter not the houses of the prophet." (33: 32, 37, 38, 40, 49, 51, 53.)

C. ~ It is extremely unjust that the women should be immured within the four walls of the house like prisoners and men permitted to roam about freely. Do not women feel a desire to breathe fresh air, to walk about in open space, and to view the phenomena of nature. This invidious distinction accounts for the fact that Mohammedan youths are peculiarly vagrant and licentious. Do God and His prophet issue one and the same command or do they

PAGE 701

promulgate different and contradictory injunctions? If the former is the case, it is useless to say that the command of both should be obeyed, but if the latter is the case, then one injunction should be true, and the other false. Thus one of these beings would be like God and he other like the Devil and the latter will share homage with the former. What to say about the God of the Qoran and the prophet who wrote a book permitting the attainment of selfish ends at the sacrifice of the good of others! It is also clear that Mohammad was lascivious, for if he had not been so, he would not have taken his daughter-in-law as wife.

Again, God also proved Himself to be biased by ruling an unjust act to be just. Even a savage considers his daughter-in-law, sacred. How unjust it is that the prophet did not fell the least compunction in obeying a wild and sinful impulse. If the prophet was father to no body, who was hen the father of Zaid (the slave). One might ask that if the prophet could not keep himself from a connection even with his own daughter-in-law, how could he restrain his passions where other women were concerned?

Even sophistical reasoning cannot mitigate the enormity of an offence like this. Would it have been right if some other married woman had of here own free will desired to lead the prophet to the hymeneal altar? How cruel that the prophet was at liberty to divorce a wife whenever he chose to do so, while his wife was deprived of the right of obtaining a divorce even if he wad guilty of misconduct! If it was necessary that no body should enter the house of the prophet with adulterous intent, it was likewise necessary that the latter should also not do an act like this.

How could it be right for the prophet to act as if he had a license in this matter and still to exact admiration? He would indeed be a perfect idiot who would believe the Qoran to be revealed, Mohammad to be a prophet and Mohammedan God to be an Omnipotent Lord. It is passing strange that the Arabs believed in such idiotic and unrighteous statements.

Is Allah subject to pain?

128. "Neither is it fit for you to give any uneasiness to the Apostle of God nor to marry his wives, after him, for ever: for this would be a grave offence in the sight of God. As to those who offend God and His Apostle, God shall curse them in this world. And they who shall injure the true believers of either sex, without their deserving it, shall surely bear the fruit of calumny

PAGE 702

and a manifest injustice. And being accused, wherever they are found they shall be taken, and killed with a general slaughter. O Lord give them the double of our punishment, and curse them with a heavy curse." (33: 53, 57, 58, 62, 68.)

C. ~ Now mark! Is the Mohammedan God asserting His Omnipotence in an equitable manner? If it was right to command people not to inflict pain on the prophet, it was also, proper to adjure the prophet not cause suffering to others. Why did he not do so? Is God subject to pain? If He is, then He cannot be God. Does not the injunction to abstain from causing suffering to God and His prophet imply that they both are free to inflict pain? If it is not a good thing to injure Mohammedans and their wives, it is equally bad to torment others. If this view of the question be not accepted, then God and His prophet should be believed to be biased and anxious to sow discord.

There are very few people in the world who are so merciless as these two. Would not the Mohammedans feel aggrieved if some body ordained that they should be pinioned and killed, as, the Qoran has done in the case of non-Muslims. The prophet was very hardhearted, for he prayed to God that Non-Muslims should receive double the punishment awarded to Mohammedans. This statement also is selfish and unrighteous. Perhaps those are scapegraces among the Mohammedans who do things like that. Truly has it been said that an untutored man is like unto a beast.

129. "It is God who sendeth the winds, and raiseth a cloud; and we drive the same unto a country, dead (from drought) and thereby quicken the earth after it hath been dead; so shall the resurrection be. Who hath caused us to take up our rest in a dwelling of eternal stability, through His Bounty, wherein, no labor shall touch us, nor shall any weariness affect us." (35: 9, 35.)

C. ~ What a strange philosophy does God preach? He sends the winds and raiseth a cloud, and by means of these brings the dead into life. This cannot be predicated of the true God, for He always acts in a consistent manner. A house cannot stand unless it has been made, and whatever had been made cannot last

PAGE 703

for ever. Whoever has got a body would feel miserable if he had nothing to do and is subject to disease. If this is true in the case of a person holding sexual intercourse with one man, how much more so it in the case of him who cohabits with many wives. His lot would indeed be pitiable. Hence Mohammedans cannot enjoy genuine happiness evening paradise.

If the Qoran were the work of God, how could He swear by it?

130. " I swear by the instructive Qoran, that thou art one of the messengers of God, sent to show the right way. This is revelation of the most Mighty, the Merciful God." (34: 1 - 4.)

C. ~ If the Qoran were the work of God, how could He swear by it? If the prophet had been a messenger of God, he would not have fallen in love with his daughter-in-law. It is foolish to assert

that the believers in the Qoran are on the straight path, for he alone is said to tread that path who believes in truth, utters truth, acts in conformity with truth and shapes his conduct in accordance with the dictates of Dharma (duty) which consists of justice and freedom from prejudice and forsakes all that is opposed to them. Neither the Qoran nor the Mohammedans nor their God satisfies these conditions. If Mohammad had been the greatest prophet, he would have been the most learned and the most virtuous among men. The praise of Mohammedanism by Mohammad is like the praise by a coaster-monger of his own plums.

131. "And the trumpet shall be sounded again, and behold they shall come forth from their graves, and hasten unto their Lord.
And their hands shall speak unto us, and their feet shall bear witness of that which they have committed. His command, when He willeth a thing, is only that he saith unto it "Be!" and it is." (36: 50, 63, 80.)

C. ~ How absurd! Can the feet ever give evidence? When there was none else except God, to whom did be issue the command and who heard it and what came into existence? If there was nothing else at that time, this statement is false and if there was something else, then the statement that there was nothing else except God must be thought to be false.

Drinking of alcohol forbidden on earth, but not in Paradise.

132. "A cup shall be carried round unto them, filled from a unruffled fountain, for the delight of those who drink; and near

PAGE 703

them shall lie the virgins of paradise, refraining their looks from beholding any besides their spouses, having large black eyes, and resembling the egg of an ostrich covered with feathers from the dust. And Lot was also one those who were sent by us. We delivered him and his whole family, except an old woman, his wife, who perished among those that remained behind; afterwards we destroyed the others."43:,44, 45, 48, 57, 131, 133, 134.)

C. ~ Well! The Mohammedans cry that it is a sin to drink wine on this earth but in their paradise streams of wine flow. It is good that Mohammedans have rendered some service to the cause of temperance here, but they have been more than compensated for this abstinence in paradise. So many women have been allotted to each man there, he would find it difficult to fix his affections on one. The place must be afflicted with maladies. If the dwellers have go t bodies, they must die and if they have go no bodies, they cannot gratify their lust.

What then is the use of paradise? If you believe that Lot was a prophet, do you also believe what is recorded in the Bible that he begot children of his own daughters. If you do, it is foolish to regard such a person a prophet. If your God grants salvation to such persons and their associates He must also be like them. A being who recites old wives' tales and kills other people through prejudice cannot be God, for such a God can only live in a Mohammedan house and nowhere else.

What is not eternal, must perish.

133. "Gardens of perpetual abode, the gates whereof shall stand open unto them. As they lie down therein, they shall there ask for many sorts of fruits, and for drink; and near them shall sit virgins of paradise, refraining their look from beholding any besides their spouses, and of equal age with them."
"And all the angels worshipped him, except Eblis, who was puffed up with pride and became an

unbeliever. God said unto him, "O Eblis, what hindereth the from worshipping that which I have created with my hands? Art thou elated with vain pride? Or art thou really one of the exalted ones?" He answered, " I am more excellent than he; thou hast created me of fire and hast created him of clay." God said unto him, "Get thee hence therefore, for thou shalt be driven away from mercy: and my curse shall be upon thee, until the day judgment." He replied, "O Lord, respite me therefore, until the day of resurrection,. God

PAGE 705

said, "Verily thou shalt be one of those who are respited until the day of the determined time." Eblis said, "By the might do I swear I will surely seduce them all." (38: 49, 50, 51, 70 - 78.)

C. ~ If there are gardens an orchards in paradise as stated in the Qoran, they neither have existed from eternity nor can they remain there for ever, for the things which result form the combination of elements, did not exist before that combination and will surely cease to exist after Dissolution. When these things will disappear form paradise, how can the dwellers live there for ever? The very fact that the Arabs have been promised cushions, cushioned seats, pillows, fruits and drinks, proves that Arabia was not in affluent circumstances at the time the Mohammedan religion was founded. It was for this reason that Mohammad entrapped the poor people into his net by holding out to them temptations.

Perpetual happiness cannot reign where women are to be found. Where did these women come from? Are the dwellers of paradise or have they been imported? If they have been imported, they will surely go back and if they permanently dwell there, what were they doing before the day of resurrection? Were they idling away their lives? Not look at the resplendence of God whom all the angels except Satan obeyed by paying homage to Adam; Satan alone held aloof. God said to Satan, "I have made him with both my hands, do thou, therefore, not be proud."

This shows that the God of the Qoran was a two-handed person. He cannot, therefore, be Omnipresent and Omnipotent. Satan was right in saying that he was better than Adam. Why was the resentment of God excited at this? Is the house of God in the sky and not on earth? Why was Kaba at first called the house of God? How can God separate Himself from His Creation? All this creation belongs to the true God.

This shows that the God of the Qoran was a landlord in paradise. God curse and rebuked Satan and sent him to jail. Satan said, "O Lord! Release me till the day of judgment." God being not insensible to flattery complied with his request. When Satan was free, he said, "Now I will tempt people and raise the standard of rebellion." God retorted, "Whoever is tempted by you will be hurled into hell by me along with thee." Gentle reader! Just consider whether God tempted him

PAGE 706

Or he was tempted of his own accord. If God did it, He was greater Devil of the two, and if Satan was tempted on his own accord, other people can also be tempted likewise. Where then is the need of Satan? In so far as God let the rebel Satan loose, He also was responsible for the mischief wrought by the fiend. Who can be more unjust than the being who instigates theft and then sits in judgment over the thief?

It is unjust to forgive sins.

134. "God forgiveth all sins: for He is Gracious and Merciful. Since the whole earth shall be but His handful on the day of resurrection; and heavens shall be rolled together in His right hand. And the earth shall shine by the light of its Lord: and the books shall be laid open, and the Prophets and the martyrs shall be brought as witnesses; and judgment shall be given." (39: 53, 67, 69.)

C. ~ If God forgives all sins, He leads the entire world to unrighteousness. He is also merciless, for if a wicked man is shown mercy and forgiven, he will commit more mischief and cause suffering to many a good man. Even if the slightest offence is left unpunished, the world will become full of sin. Is God Resplendent like fire? Where is the page of destiny and who writes it? If God dispenses justice with the aid of prophets and witnesses, he must be of limited knowledge and power. If he is not unjust and dispenses uniform justice, he must be dealing with all people according to their past deserts. Deeds must have been done either in the past birth or in the present one. It is, then, clearly unjust to forgive sins, to seal the hearts, to keep people in ignorance to let the Devil tempt them, and subject them to torture.

135. "The Revelation (sending down of the Book) is from God, the Almighty, all-Knowing, forgiver of sin and receiver of penitence." (40: 1, 2.)

C. ~ This has no other object than that the credulous and unwary should accept this book as one form God - a book - which along with few truths it contains, choked with untruths, which only tend to markedly detract from the value of the former. Hence the Qoran and the God of the Qoran, as well as those who are believers in this book, only lend their support to wickedness and iniquity , and not only commit sin themselves but lead others

PAGE 707

to do it. For it is most sinful to overlook or connive at iniquity. It is such Qoranic teaching that emboldens the Mohammedans to commit sin and to delight in war and bloodshed.

Is this your almight Allah?

136. " And He made the seven heavens in two days, and in each heaven made known its office. Until when they reach it, their ears, their eyes and their skins shall bear witness against them of their deeds. And they shall say to their skins, "Why witness ye against us?" they shall say, "God Who giveth a voice to everything, hath given us a voice." 40: 11, 19, 20, 38.)

C. ~ Well done! Ye Mohammedans. Is this your Almighty God? It took Him two whole days to fashion the seven heavens. The real Almighty God can fashion the whole universe in the twinkling of an eye. When God has made the ears, the eyes and the skin lifeless and destitute of consciousness, how can they bear witness against anyone? If you ere to assert that He could endow these with consciousness (on the day of judgment), would not you be virtually asserting that He would infringe His own law?

What is utterly, incredibly baseless (in the foregoing quotation) is the assertion that when the organs and limbs bore witness against the souls, the latter began to ask their respective organs and limbs why they had borne witness against them. This is an astounding assertion like that of a man who would affirm that he saw the face of the son of a woman affected to sterility. And if she is really barren, it is simply impossible for her to have an offspring.

If God brings the dead to life, why does He smite them first? Can he die Himself? If the answer be in the affirmative, why does He consider dying a bad thing? And in which Muslim's house shall the souls stay till the arrival of the day of judgment, and why has God postponed indefinitely the decision of their cases without any fault on their part? Why did not He pronounce His judgment in respect of each without delay? Things like these are a blot on Godhead.

Condemning some women to life of sterility.

137. "His, the keys of the Heavens and of the Earth! He giveth with open hand or sparingly, to whom He will.

PAGE 708

He createth what He will, and He giveth daughters to whom He will, and sons to whom He will,
Or He giveth them children of both sexes, and He maketh who He will childless.
*It is not for man that God should speak with Him, but by vision, or from behind a veil.**
Or, He sendeth a messenger to reveal what He will." (40: 48, 49, 50, 51.)

C. ~ God must be possessed of an inexhaustible stock of keys considering that he must unlock each and all places. Again it argues childishness on His part to bless with plenty and super-abundance whosoever He pleases regardless of his merits, or to take away the same from any without weighing his demerits. If God is such a creature of mere whim, He is unjust. Mark the extraordinary cleverness of the author of the Qoran!

It is expressly designed to captivate and entrap the females also. If the Mohammedan God can create whatever He pleases, can He then create another God? If He cannot, are we to understand that His Omnipotence here has come to a dead halt? And if it is God that grants offspring unto men, who is it that grants the same unto fowls, fishes, pigs, etc., that have a more numerous progeny? And why cannot He grant offspring (to mortals) unless men and women cohabit?

Why does He condemn some women to a life of sterility and thereby afflict them? He must indeed be a glorious God, considering that no one can talk in His presence! But has not He already declared in a certain place that He can be talked to from behind a curtain, and that the angels as well as the prophet

---

* Hussain comments thus on this verse in his Tafsir Hussaini, "Mohammad was between two curtains, one made of God and the other made of white pearls and the distance between them was such as could be covered by a traveler in seventy years." Let the enlightened reader decide whether it was God or a purda lady who speaks from behind a curtain. These people (Mohammedans) have indeed degraded the very idea of God head, Oh! What a difference between the All-holy Supreme spirit spoken of by the Upanishads and other true books, and the God of the Qoran who speaks from behind a purda. The fact is that the Arabians were quite illiterate, they could not have talked sense.

PAGE 709

can speak to Him? If this assertion about the angels and the prophet be true, they must be taking good care to make God thoroughly play into their hands. Should you argue that God is All-knowing and All-pervading (as He really is), this assertion about His talking from behind a curtain and obtaining news as if it were by post would be utterly meaningless. If He stands in need of such agencies, He could not be God. He must be rather come shrewd piece of humanity. Hence the Qoran can never be of Divine origin.

He sent Jesus whose teachings oppose the Q'uran.

138. "And when Jesus came with manifest proofs." (442: 59.)

C. ~ If Jesus too was sent by God, why did He then send down the Qoran whose teaching is opposed to that of Christ? Again, since the Biblical teaching is opposed to that of the Qoran, neither of these is a Divine revelation.

139. "Seize ye him and drag him into the midfire (where they shall stay)….and we will wed them to the virgins with large black eyes."" (44: 43, 50.)

C. ~ This is indeed strange that a Just God should have men caught and dragged! When such is the Muslim God, can there be any wonder if His Mohammedan worshippers pounce upon the weak and the helpless and upon orphans, and drag them? Again, does He help in the celebration of marriages? If so, He is a match -maker to the Muslims, something resembling their own Qazis.

140. "When ye encounter the infidels, strike off their heads, till ye have made a great slaughter among them, and of the rest make fast the fetters." (47: 4.)
"And how many cities were mightier in strength than the city, which hath thrust thee forth! We destroyed them, and there was none to help them." (47: 14.)
"A picture of the paradise which is promised to the Godfearing! There in are rivers of water, which corrupt not, rivers of milk whose taste changeth not: and rivers of wine, delicious to those who quaff it." (47: 16.)
"And rivers of honey clarified: and therein are all kinds of fruit for them from their Lord." (47: 17.)

PAGE 710

C. ~This shows that the Qoran, its God, and the Mohammedans are guilty of having disturbed the peace of the world, inflicted great suffering on the human race and of being selfish and altogether destitute of fellow-feeling. Would not the Mohammedans also suffer, if the non-Mohammedans were to pay them in their own coin? It was indeed very unjust of God to have destroyed cities that turned out Mohammad.

Can (the Mohammedan) paradise, in which rivers of pure water, milk and clarified honey flow, be any better than this mortal world. Rivers of milk, whose taste changeth not, cannot exist, because it turns sour in a short time. The enlightened people do not believe in the Mohammedan faith since it inculcates such incredible and inhuman teachings.

Is the earth stationary?

142."When the earth shall be shaken with a shock, and the mountains shall crumble with a crumbling and shall become scattered dust." (55: 4, 6.)
"Then the people of the right hand, what shall be the people of the right hand! And the people of the left hand, what shall be the people of the left hand." (56:8,9>)
"On coaches in wrought with gold and studded with stars reclining on them face to face: aye - blooming youths go round about to them, with goblets and ewers and a cup of flowing wine, their brows ache not from it nor fails the sense: and will such fruits as shall please them best, and with flesh of such birds, as they shall long for and theirs shall be the Houris, with large dark eyes, like pearls hidden in their shell." (56: 15 -22)
"And on lofty beds. Of a rare creation have we created the Houris and we have ever made them virgins, dear to their spouses, of equal age with them." (56: 31, 33.)
"And fill your bellies with it. I swear by the falling stars." (56: 54, 74.)

C. ~ Now mark the strange assertions of the author of the Qoran! As it is, the earth is always in motion and will therefore be moving also at the time referred to by Him. It proves, however, one thing, namely, that the author of the Qoran believed the earth to stationary. Will He make the mountains fly as if they were so many birds?

PAGE 711

Even if they are transformed into insects and moths, they shall retain minutest bodies. Why then deny that they may be born again?

Indeed! Were not the Muslim God corporeal, how could anyone stand on His right or left (as asserted in the Qoran)?

Do the inmates of paradise always keep sitting idle, reclining on their pillows, or do they ever do anything? If they keep sitting idle, they could not properly digest their food, which must produce disease and thus carry them early to their graves. But it they do any work, they must be earning their livelihood in paradise after the fashion of mortals here. What is there then to distinguish paradise from this world? Of course nothing.

If those boys always live in paradise, their parents as well as their fathers - and mothers-in-law must also do the same. This means that it must be a big colony there wherein diverse kinds of disease are bound to prevail on account of the accumulation of the night soil and other kinds of filth.

If (as asserted) they eat fruits, drink water out of tumblers and quaff wine out of wine-cups, why would not they be subjected to head-aches, and indulge in unbecoming expressions? If it be a fact that they surfeit themselves there with fruits and with the flesh of birds and beasts, they are sure to be afflicted with various kinds of disease and suffering.

There must also be slaughter-houses as well as butchers' shop in paradise and bones must be scattered here and there. Verily, it is hard to sufficiently praise the Muslim Paradise! It seems as if it is even superior to Arabia! Of course when they become inebriate by free indulgences in meat and wine in paradise, they must stand in need of beautiful girls and handsome youths, otherwise the potations might affect their brains, and thereby transform them into raving maniacs! It is

PAGE 712

right that there should be a sufficient number of beds to accommodate so many people in paradise.

Of course it stands to reason that there should be youths in paradise when God had created virgins there. But we are told that the virgins in paradise are destined to be united to those male mortals who repair to paradise from this world. What about those male youths then who perpetually swell in paradise? God has kept reticent as regards their marriage, will they also along with the virgins be surrendered to their candidate-mortals from this world?

God has thrown no light on this point, and it must be regarded as a great omission on His part. If women in paradise are united to men of the same age, it is not, since the male should always be twice as old as the female or even older. So much regarding the Mohammedan paradise, as regards the Mohammedan hell, its inmates will have to feed on (thohar) Euphorbia nereifolia [This means that there are thorny trees in hell baring thorns], and drink hot water. Such then are the sufferings they will be afflicted with in hell.

Allah a servant of Muhammad?

143. "Why, O Prophet dost thou hold that to be forbidden, which God hath made lawful to thee, from a desire to please thy wives, since God is lenient, and merciful. Verily God is his protector. Happily if he put you both away, his Lord in exchange will give him wives better than you, Muslims, believers, devoutly penitent, obedient, observant of fasting, both known of men and virgins." (50: 1, 5)

C. ~ If we reflect a little on the above, we shall see that God is but a servant of Mohammad to manage his affairs - internal as well as external! Two stories are told in connection with the first verse. One is that Mohammad was excessively fond honey and

PAGE 713

water. He had many wives, and one day he was delayed while taking this drink in a house of one of them. The delay rather irritated his other wives. Mohammad then swore that he would never again drink honey and water. The second story is that one night Mohammad was to go to a particular wife of his. She was not there - in fact she was gone to her father's house; Mohammad, therefore, sanctified a female slave of his! When the wife referred to came to know of this, she became angry with the prophet and made him swear that he would never do such a thing again, while he asked her to bind herself to observe the secrecy, she promised not do disclose the matter to anyone. But then he went to another wife of his and narrated the story to her. God then inspired Mohammad with this verse:-

"Why dos thou consider that to be forbidden which God hath made lawful?" etc. Le the wise declare if ever God acts as an arbitrator in the household affairs of any man. And as regards Mohammad's character, sufficient light is thrown on it by the aforementioned stories, for how can a man, who is the husband of many wives, be either a pious man or a prophet? Again, is he not partial, and therefore, sinful who, actuated by partiality, disgraces one wife and honors another. And how can he, who, not being content with many wives, co-habits with his slaves, be moral, God-fearing and pious? Some one has well said:-

"The debauchee is not afraid or ashamed (or his turpitude)"!
Even the God of these people acted as judge deciding disputes between the prophet and his wives. Let the wise now say whether the Qoran is written by God or is it the work of some ignorant, and selfish fellow. Again, from the second verse it appears that when a wife or Mohammad God angry with him, God threatened her by saying that if she continued recalcitrant and Mohammad divorced her on that account, He would give him better wives, who had not had any sexual connection with any man before. Any person, with a grain of sense in him, can understand whether these are the doings of God or of a being who is bent upon gaining his own selfish ends. These things clearly show that God said nothing of the sort, and that it was Mohammad, and not God who

PAGE 714

said anything suited to the occasion to serve his selfish purpose and attributed all these things to God. Not only we but all thoughtful men will say that (the Mohammedan) God was a mere procurer of wives for Mohammad.

144 " O Prophet, make war on the infidels and hypocrites and deal rigorously with them." (66: 9.)

C. ~ Again, mark the wonders wrought by the Mohammedan God! He incites the Prophet and the Mohammedans to fight with persons professing other religions. This is why Mohammedans are always engaged in war. May God have pity on the Muslims, so that they may give up fighting and live on friendly terms with all.

What a ‘remarkable’ sense of justice!

145. "And the heaven shall be rent asunder, for on that day it will be fragile." (69: 16)
"And the angels shall be on its sides, and over them on that day eight shall bear up the throne of thy Lord." (69: 17.)
"And he who shall bear his book given to him in his right hand shall say to friends, "Take ye it;

read ye my book"."69: 19.)
"But he who shall have his book given to him in his left hand will say, "O, that the book had never been given!" (69:25.)

C. ~ What a deep philosophy, and what a remarkable sense of justice! Can the heaven be ever divided? It is like a piece of cloth that it can be rent? If you call the sky above heaven, it is against the dictum of science. There is no doubt now as to the God of the Qoran being corporeal, since none who has not a body can sit on a throne and order it to be borne by eight men on their shoulders. Besides, front and behind can only be predicated of one that has a physical body.

When God is corporeal, He is necessarily limited to a certain place and, therefore, cannot be Omniscient, Omnipresent, Almighty, nor can He be cognizant of the deeds of all souls. To place books (of their deeds) in the right hand of the virtuous and have it read out and then send them to heaven, while to place books (of their deeds) in the left hand of the wicked and send them to hell, and to dispense justice with the help of books are very strange doings for an Omniscient God! Can an All-knowing Being ever act like this? It is mere childish prattle.

A day whose length is fifty thousand years?

146 "By which the angels and the spirits ascend to him, in a day whose length fifty thousand years."

PAGE 715

"The day on which they shall flock up out of their graves in haste, like men who rally to a standard." (70:4, 42.)

C. ~ If the day equals fifty thousand years in length, the night is bound to be the same. But if this is not the case, the day can never be fifty thousand years in length. Will God, His angels, and those who hold the books of destiny in their hands keep sitting, standing, or walking during all these fifty thousand years? If so, then all these will fall ill and die again. Will the dead rise from their graves and run towards the court of God? And how will summons be sent to them in their graves?

Again, why are those poor people, some of whom are virtuous while others wicked, kept confined to their graves during all this time? Is the court of God closed in these days and are He and His angels sitting idle? What could they be possibly doing? They might (for aught we know) be sitting in their places, wandering about hither and thither, sleeping, or enjoying theatrical performances and dances, and living a life of ease and luxury. Let alone he Kingdom of God, such thing would never happen under the rule of an earthly potentate. Who but savages can believe all these things?

147. " For He it is who formed you by successive steps.
See ye not how God has created the seven heavens one over the other.
And He has placed therein the moon as a light, and has placed there the sun as a torch." (71:14, 16)

C. If God created the soul, it can never be eternal or immortal. How can it then live for ever in paradise when what is created must perish? How can God place one heaven over another, since it is formless and all-pervading? If you give the name of heaven to some thing other than **Akaash** (ether), it would serve no useful purpose. If heavens are placed one over the other, the sun and the moon cannot be placed between them. If they are placed in their middle, then only those that are immediately above and below will be in light; all others, beginning form the second heaven will be in darkness. But such is not the case, hence all this is wrong.

148. "It is into God that the temples are set apart: Call not then therein any other with God." (72:18.)

PAGE 716

C. ~ If this is true, why do the Mohammedans mention the name of Mohammad in the formula, "There is no God but Allah and Mohammad is His prophet." This is clearly against the teachings of the Qoran, but if it is not so, the verse of the Qoran referred to must be false. If the mosques are the houses of God, then Mohammedans are very idolatrous, since, it the Pauranics (Hindus) and the Jainees are idolatrous, because they call idols the houses of God, why are not Muslims not the same?

The sun and moon together?

149. "And the sun and the moon shall be together." (75: 8.)

C. ~Can the sun and moon ever join together? Mark! What senseless talk is this! What purpose is served by joining the sun and the moon, and why should not all worlds be joined together? Can these impossible statements have ever proceeded from God? Surely they cannot be the inventions of any but the unenlightened.

Sexual intercourse in Paradise?

150. "Aye, blooming youths round among them, when thou lookest at them: thou wouldst deem them scattered pearls.
With silver bracelets shall they be adorned and drink of a pure beverage shall the Lord give them." (76: 19, 21.)

C. ~ Well Sir, why are boys of pearly complexion kept there? Cannot those in paradise be satisfied with being served by grown up men, and their desires being ministered to by women? It would not be at all surprising of the unnatural crime, which some of the most wicked people commit with boys, had had its origin in this verse of the Qoran.

And why is in paradise partiality shown to some of the inmates by providing them with servants? This must afford pleasure to the served and be of a source of misery to the servants? And if God fills their cups with wine for them, He is more like one of their servants. What does His greatness and glory then consist in?

And do women become pregnant in paradise as the result of sexual intercourse with men and do they give birth to children? If they do not, the sexual connection is useless, and if they do, whence do those souls come from? And why are they born in paradise without having worshipped God ((on the earth)? If they are born there without believing in the true religion, they enter paradise without having deserved it. What can be more unjust than that some should enjoy happiness by being religious and others without it?

PAGE 717

151. "They shall have meet recompense.
And the cups are full.
Ruh and the angels shall be ranged in order." (78: 25, 32, 36)

C. ~ If the dead are judged according to their deeds, what did Houris, angels, and boys of pearly complexion do to deserve perpetual residence in paradise? When they will drain whole cupful of

wine, will they not become intoxicated, and fight with each other? Ruh is here name of an angel who is stronger than the rest. Will God make Ruh and other angels stand in a line and form them into a regiment? Will He invest it with power to punish all (erring) souls? Will He himself at that time be sitting or standing? If God were to gather all His forces before the judgment day and thereby capture Satan, His rule would become secure. Well! This is indeed God-head!

Can the sun be folded up?

152. "When the sun shall be folded up.
And when the stars shall fall.
And when the mountains shall be set in motion.
And when the Heaven shall be stripped away." (80: 1 -3, 11.)

C. ~ It is extremely foolish to say that the sun, which is a sphere, will be folded up/ not how will the stars fall, and how will the mountains, which are lifeless, be set in motion? Again, is the sky a beast that it will be stripped away? Only the most ignorant people such as savages can talk like this.

153. "When the Heaven shall cleave asunder.
And when the stars shall disperse.
And when the seas shall be commingled.
And when the graves shall be turned upside down and raised." (80: 1 - 4)

C. ~ Bravo! Thou philosophic author of the Qoran! How wilt thou be able to cleave asunder the Heaven and disperse the stars? Are rivers logs of wood that they can be sawn into pieces? Are graves dead bodies that they will be raised? All these things are no better than childish prattle.

PAGE 718

154. "By the star be-spangled heaven!
Yet it is a glorious Qoran written on the preserved table." (85:1, 21.)

C. ~ It is clear that the author of the Qoran had not at all studied Geography and Astronomy, otherwise why would he have compared the sky to a castle having towers? If he calls Aries and the like constellations towers, why does he not give the same name to other stars? There are not towers but suns. If God was the author of this Qoran, He too must indeed be destitute of knowledge and reason, and sunk in the greatest depths of ignorance.

155. "They practice deceit against thee.
And I will practice deceit against them." (86: 46.)

C. ~ Deceitfulness is synonymous with cheating. Is God, too, deceitful? Is theft to answered by theft and a lie by another lie? If a thief were to break into an honest man's house, should the latter resort by robbing the former? Bravo! Thou author of the Qoran!

Does Allah ride a camel?

156. "And thy Lord shall come and the angels rank on rank.
And hell on that day shall be brought there." 89: 23, 24.)

C. Does the God of these people, like a police inspector or a commander, parade his forces? Is hell like an earthen pitcher that it can be carried somewhere? If it is so small, how will it be able to contain countless prisoners?

157. "And said the apostle of God to them - "Look after the camel of God and let her drink water. But they treated him as an impostor and hamstrung her. So their Lord destroyed them for their crime, and visited all alike." (101:15; 15, 18.)

C. ~ Does God also go out for a ride on the camel? If not, why does He keep that animal, and why did He break His own law by afflicting these people with plague before the day of judgment? If He afflicted them with this disease, He must have done it by way of punishment, then the day of Judgment and the judging of people on that day cannot but be false. This verse about the camel leads to infer that in Arabia there were but few animals other than

PAGE 719

the came for people to ride on. This also proves that he Qoran was written by a native of Arabia.

158. " Nay, verily if he desist not, we shall seize him by the forelock, the sinful, lying forelock! We too will summon the guards of hell. (126: 15, 16, 18.)

C. ~ God did not escape performing the duties of a menial servant - that of dragging a person. Can the forelock be ever guilty and lying? It is only the soul that can be so. Can He be God Who summons the guards of Hell just as the governor)of a jail) sends for his warders?

Was the Q'uran revealed in one night?

159. "Verily, we have caused it to descend on the night of power. And who shall teach thee what the night of power is? Therein descend the angels and the spirit by permission of their Lord for every matter." (127: 1, 2, 4.)

C. ~ If the whole of the Qoran was revealed in one night, how can the assertion that a particular verse was revealed at a particular time be true? When the night is dark, everybody knows it to be so without being told. We have already said that there is not up and down in space, but it is said that the angels and the Holy Ghost, at the command of God, come here to manage the affairs of this world. This clearly proves that God, like men, is confined to a certain place. So far the Qoran has talked about a God, the angels and the prophet, now we have got the mention of a fourth being, named, the Holy Ghost. The fourth is an addition to the three personages believed in by the Christians, namely, God, the Son and the Holy Ghost. If you (Mohammedans) argue that you do not believe these three to be God, let it be so, but if the Holy Ghost is quite different from others, should the other three be called holy spirits? If they too are Holy spirits, why is only one particular person called Holy Ghost. Again, God swears by night and day , by horses and other animals, and by the Qoran, surely, swearing is not resorted to by the good.

The Q'uran is neither the worked of God nor an intelligent person.

We lay this criticism on the teachings of the Qoran before all thinking people. let them decide for themselves as to what sort of book it is. As for your opinion, we think that this book can

PAGE 720

neither be the work of God nor that of an enlightened person, nor does it contain knowledge. We have pointed out some of its many faults so that people may not be taken in and thereby waste their lives. Whatever little truth it contains being in harmony with the teachings of the Vedas and other scientific works, is acceptable to us as it is to other wise and enlightened men who are free from bigotry and religious prejudices.

The rest is superstition and error. It increases the sufferings of the human race by making man a beast, and disturbs the peace of the world by promoting war and by sowing the seeds of discord. Besides, the Qoran is simply replete with useless repetitions. May God be Merciful unto all men so that they may love one another, live together in peace and a promote each other's happiness.

If all enlightened men were, like us, to point out, in an impartial spirit, various defects found in different religions, it is not at all impossible that all quarrels should cease, that people should live together in peace all following one religion, and that truth should thus triumph. The wise and the good, it is hoped, will understand the motives which actuated the writer of these lines and profit by what little has been said her about the Qoran. They are requested to correct any mistakes that might have crept into the book through error of judgment.

Is the Muhammad prophesied in the Vedas?

Now there is only one thing left (before we are done with this subject.) the Mohammedans, not often, say, write or publish that the Mohammedan religion is spoken of in the Atharva Veda. It will suffice to say that there is not a word about this faith in the Veda in question.

M. -*Have you read the whole of the Atharva Veda? If you have refer to Allopanishad. It is given there in plain words. Why do you then say that nothing is said in the Atharva Veda about the Mohammedan religion? Here is a passage from the Allopanishad: -*

Asmallam ille Mitra Varuna……allorasul Mohammad Akbarasya Allo Allam……..etc.

That Mohammad is here spoken of as the prophet in unequivocal terms, is a sufficient proof of the fact that the Muslim faith has its origin in the Veda.

PAGE 721

A. ~ If you have not read the Atharva Veda, come to us and look through its pages from beginning to end, or you may go to any person who knows that book and read with him all the verses given in its twenty chapters. You will never find the name of your Prophet in it. And as regards Allopanishad it is not given in the Atharva Veda or in its ancient commentary, called the Gopath Braahama or in any of its Shaakhaas (branches). We surmise that some one wrote it in the reign of the Emperor Akbar. Its author appears to have been a man who knew a little of Sanskrit and Arabic, because in its text both Sanskrit and Arabic words occur. For example, the Arabic words *Asmallam Ille* and the Sanskrit words Mitra and Varuna occur in the above passage and the same is seen throughout the whole book.

If we look to its meaning, it is altogether artificial, unsound and opposed to the teachings of the Veda (while the construction of words and sentences, is quite ungrammatical). The followers of other creeds who are blinded by bigotry have also likewise forged Upanishads such as Swarop Upanishad, Narsinhatapni, Ramtapni, Gopal tapni.

M. - No one ever expounded this theory (as regards the Allopanishad) before; how can we then believe you?

A. ~ Our statement cannot be wrong whether you believe it or not.

PAGE 722

Your contention can be accepted as true only when you, in a manner similar to that in which we have shown it to be wrong, point it (Allopnishad) out in the Veda, the Gopath, or in any of its

ancient Shakhaas and show satisfactorily that the interpretation you put upon it is in harmony with context.

M. - What a good religion is ours. By embracing it one can enjoy all the pleasures of this world as well as attain salvation hereafter.

A. ~ Other sectaries also say "Our creed is the best, all other are bad. No one can attain salvation without accepting our faith." All that we believe is that truthfulness in speech, love, fellow-feeling and the like virtues, in whatever creed they may be found, are commendable, while wrangling, and harboring of jealousy and hatred, dissimulation and the like evil practices, advocated by whatsoever creed they may, are condemnable. If you are sincerely desirous of getting hold of truth, embrace the Vedic religion.

THE END OF CHAPTER 14

A STATEMENT OF MY BELIEF

A BELIEF IN HARMONY WITH REASONING.

"I believe in a religion based on universal and all-embracing principles which have always been accepted as true by mankind and will continue to command the allegiance of mankind in the ages to come. Hence it is that the religion in question is called the *primeval eternal religion*, which means that it is above the hostility of all human creeds whatsoever.

Whatever is believed in by those who are steeped in ignorance or have been led astray by sectaries is not worthy of being accepted by the wise. That faith alone is really true and worthy of acceptance which is followed by *Aptas* i.e., those who are true in word, deed and thought, promote public good and are impartial and learned; but all that is discarded by such men must be considered as unworthy of belief and false.

My conception of God and all other objects in the universe is founded on the teachings of *Veda* and other true *Shastras*, and is in conformity with, the beliefs of all the sages, from *Brahma*down to *Jaimini*. I offer a statement of these beliefs for the acceptance fo all good men. That alone I hold to be acceptable which is worthy of being believed by all men of all ages.

I do not entertain the least idea of founding a new religion or sect. My sole aim is to believe in truth and help others to believe in it, to reject falsehood and help others to do the same.

Had I been biased, I would have championed any one of the religions prevailing in India. But I have not done so. On the contrary, I do no approve of what is objectionable and false in the institutions of this or any other country, nor do I reject what is good and in harmony with the dictates of true religion, nor have I any desire to do so, since a contrary conduct is wholly unworthy of man. He alone is entitled to be called a man who possesses a thoughtful

* A translation of this portion of the book was published by Bawa Chhajju Singh years ago. With his kind permission I have utilized it in my translation. _Tr.

PAGE 724

nature and feels for other in the same way as he does for his own self, does not fear the unjust however powerful but fears the truly virtuous, however weak. Moreover, he should always exert

himself to his utmost to protect the righteous, and advance their good, and conduct himself worthily towards them even though they be extremely poor and weak and destitute of material resources.

On the other hand, he should constantly strive to destroy, humble, and oppose the wicked sovereign rulers of the whole earth and men of great influence and power though they be. In other words, a man should, as far as it ies in his power, constantly endeavor to undermine the power of the unjust and to strengthen that of the just. He may have to bear any amount of terrible suffering, he may have even to quaff the bitter cup of death in the performance of this duty, which devolves on him on account of being a man, but he should not shirk it."

King Bhatri Hari and other wise men have composed verses on the subject which I subjoin with the hope that they will prove useful:-

1. "The worldly-wise may praise one or censure him; fortune may smile on him or frown on him; death may overtake him immediately or he may live for ages, but a wise man, does not swerve from the path of justice." BHARTRI HARI.
2. "Let a man never renounce **Dharma** (righteousness) either through lust or through fear, or through greed or even to save his life, since **Dharma** is imperishable, while pleasure or pain is perishable, the soul is immortal, while the body is mortal." MAHAABHARAAT.

PAGE 725

3. "There is only one true friend that accompanies one ever after death. All others desert one as soon as death has overtaken him." MANU.
4. "It is truth that conquers, not error. It is the path of rectitude alone that men of learning and piety have trodden, and it is by following this path that the great sages of righteous desires have reached the highest citadel of truth - God." UPANISHAD.

   "Verily there is no virtue higher than truth; no sin blacker than falsehood. Verily there is no Knowledge higher than truth; let a man therefore, always follow truth." UPANISHAD.

Let all men have the same kind of firm faith (in the power of truth and justice) as has been expressed by great souls (in the above verses).

Now I give below a brief summary of my beliefs. Their detailed exposition has been given in this book in its proper place.

1. He, Who is called **Brahmaa** or the most High; who is **Paramaatmaa** or the Supreme Spirit Who permeates the whole universe; Who is a true personification of Existence, Consciousness and Bliss; Whose nature, attributes and characteristics are Holy; Who is Omniscient, Formless, All-pervading, Unborn, Infinite, Almighty, Just and Merciful; Who is the author of the universe and sustains and dissolves it: Who awards all souls the fruits of their deeds in strict accordance with the requirements of absolute justice andi possessed of the like attributes, even Him I believe to be the Great God.
2. I hold that the four **Vedaas** - the repository of Knowledge and Religious Truths - are the Word of God. They comprise what is known as the **Sanhita-Mantra** portion only. They are absolutely free from error, and are an authority unto themselves.

PAGE 726

In other words, they do not stand in need of any other book to uphold their authority. Just as the sun (or a lamp) by its light, reveals its own nature as well as that of other objects of the universe, such as the earth - even so are the **Vedas**.

The commentaries on the four Vedas, viz., the **Braahmanaas**, the six **Angaas**, the six **Upangas**, the four **Up-Vedas**, and the eleven hundred and twenty-seven **Shaakhaas**, which are expositions of the **Vedic** texts by **Brahmaa** and other great **Rishis** - I look upon as works of a dependent character. In other words, they are held to be authoritative in so far as they conform to the teachings of the **Vedas**. Whatever passages in these works are opposed to the Vedic injunctions I reject them entirely.

3. The practice of equitable justice together with that of truthfulness in word, deed and thought and the like (virtues) - in a word, that which is in conformity with the Will of God, as embodied in the **Vedas** - even that I call **Dharma** (right). But the practice of that which is not free from partiality and injustice as well as that of untruthfulness in word, deed and thought, - in a word, that which is opposed to the Will of God, as embodied in the **Vedas** - even that I term **Adharma** (wrong).
4. The immortal, eternal **Principle** which is endowed with attraction and repulsion, feelings of pleasure and pain, and consciousness, and whose capacity for knowledge is limited - even that I believe to be the **soul**.
5. "**God** and the **soul**are two distinct entities by virtue of being different in nature and of being possessed of dissimilar attributes and characteristics. They are, however, inseparable one from the other, being related to each other as the **pervader** and the **pervaded** and have certain attributes in common. Just as a material object has always been and shall always be, distinct from the space in which it exists and as the two have never been, nor shall ever be one and the same, even so are God and the soul to each other. Their mutual relation is that of the pervader and the pervaded, of father and son and the like.
6. I hold three tings to be beginningless, namely, **God** the **sould** and **prakriti** - the material cause of the universe. These are

PAGE 727

also known as the **eternal substrata**. Being eternal, their essential nature, their attributes and their characteristics, are also eternal.

7. Substances, properties, and characteristics, which result from combination, cease to exist on the dissolution of that compound. But the power or force, by virtue of which one substance unites with another, or separates from it, is eternally inherent in that substance, and this power will compel it to seek similar unions and disunions in the future. **Unions and disunions, creation and dissolution** (of the world) **[and birth and death** of the soul] have **eternally** followed each other in succession.
8. That which results from the combination of different elementary substances in an intelligent manner and in the right proportion and order, - even that, in all its infinite variety, is called **Creation**
9. The **Purpose of Creation** is the essential and natural exercise of the creative energy of the Deity. A person once asked another "What is the use of the eyes?" "To see with, to be sure," was the reply. The same is the case here. God's creative energy can be exercised and the souls can reap the fruits of their deeds only when the world is **created**.
10. The world is **created**. Its creator is the aforesaid God. The existence of design in the universe as well as the fact that the dead inert matter is incapable of molding itself into different ordered forms, such as seeds, proves that I must have a **Creator**.
11. "The earthly bondage (of the soul) has a cause. This cause is ignorance which is the source of sin, as among other things it leads man to worship objects other than God,

obscures his intellectual faculties, whereof pain and suffering is the result. **Bondage** is so, termed no one desires it but has to undergo it."

12. The emancipation of the soul from pain and suffering of every description and a subsequent career of freedom in the All-pervading God and His immense Creation for a fixed period of time and its resumption of earthly life after the expiration of that period constitute **Salvation**.
13. The **means** of salvation are the worship of God, in other words, the practice of **yoga**, the performance of righteous deeds, the acquisition of true knowledge by the practice of **Brahmacharya**, the society of the wise and the learned, love of true knowledge, purity of thought, a life of activity and so on.

PAGE 728

14. The righteously acquired wealth alone constitutes **Artha**, while that which is acquired by foul means is called **Anarth**.
15. The enjoyment of legitimate desires with the help of honestly-acquire wealth constitutes **Kaama**.
16. The **Class**and **Order** of an individual should be determined by his merits.
17. He alone deserves the title of a **king** who is endowed with excellent qualities and a noble disposition, and bears an exalted character, who follows the dictates of equitable justice, who loves and treats his subjects as a father does his own offspring and is ever engaged in promoting their happiness and furthering their advancement.
18. He alone deserves to be called a **subject** who is possessed of excellent qualities, a noble disposition and a good character, is free from partiality, follows the behests of justice, righteousness, and is ever engaged in furthering the happiness of his fellow-subjects as well as that of his sovereign, whom he regards in the light of parent, and is ever loyal.
19. He who always thinks well (before he acts), is ever ready to embrace truth and reject falsehood, who puts down the unjust and helps the just, feels for others in the same way as he does for his own self - even **him** I call just.
20. **Devaas** are those who are wise and learned: **asuras**, are those who are foolish and ignorant; **raakshaas** are those who are wicked and love sin; and **pishaachaas** are those who are filthy in their habits.
21. **Devapujaa** consists in showing honor to the wise and the learned, to one's father , mother and preceptor, to the itinerant preachers of truth, to a just ruler, to those who lead righteous lives, to women who are chaste and faithful to their husbands, to men who are devoted and loyal to their wives. The opposite of this is called **Adeyapujaa**. The worship of the above named persons I hold to be right, while the worship of the dead, inert objects I hold to be wrong.
22. **Education** (Shikshaa) is that which helps one to acquire knowledge, culture, righteousness, self-control and the like virtues; eradicates ignorance and evil havits.

PAGE 729

23. The **Puraanaas** are the **Braahmana** books, such as **Aitreya Braahmana** written by the great **Rishis** like **Brahmaa**. They are also called **Itihaas, Kalpa, Gaathaa, and Narashansi**. The **Bhaagavat** and other books of that sort are not true (real) **Puraanaas**
24. **Tirtha** is that by means of which the 'ocean of misery' is crossed. It consists in the practice of truthfulness in speech in the acquisition of true knowledge, in cultivating the society of the wise and the good, in the practice of **yamas** and (other stages) of **yoga** in leading a life of activity, in the diffusion of knowledge and in the performance of the like good works, So-called sacred places on land and water are not **tirthas**(pilgrimage).
25. **Activity** is superior to **destiny**, since the former begets the latter, and also because of the activity is well directed, ends well; but if it is wrongly directed, all goes wrong.

26. I hold that it is commendable for a man to feel for others in the same way as he does for own self, to sympathize with them in their sorrows and losses, and to rejoice in their joys and gains; and that it is reprehensible to do otherwise.
27. **Sanskaar** is that which contributes to the physical, mental and spiritual improvement of man. Form **Conception to Cremation** there are sixteen **saanskaars** altogether. I hold that their due and proper observance is obligatory on all. Nothing should be done for the departed after the remains have been created.
28. I hold that the performance of **yajna** is most commendable. It consists in showing due respect to the wise, and the learned, in the proper application of the principles of chemistry and physical and mechanical sciences to the affairs of life, in the dissemination of knowledge and culture, in the performance of **Agnihotra** which, by contributing to the purification of air and water, rain and vegetables, directly promotes the well-being of all sentient creatures.
29. Gentlemen are called **Aryas**, while rogues are called **Dasyus**
30. This country is called **Aryavarta** because it has been the abode of the **Aryas** from the very dawn of creation. It is bounded on the north by the **Himalayas**, on the south by the **Vindhyachala**mountains, on the west by the **Attok** (Indus), and on the east by the **Brahmaputra**. The land included within these limits is **Aryavarta** and those that have been living in it from times immemorial are also called **Aryas**.

PAGE 730

31. An **Achaarya** is one who teaches the sciences of the **Vedas** as well as their **Angas** and **Upangaas**, who helps (his pupils) to live righteous lives and keep aloof from bad habits and vices.
32. He alone is a **Shishya** (pupil) who has the capacity for acquiring knowledge and true culture, whose moral character is unimpeachable, who is eager to learn, and is devoted to his teacher.
33. By the term **Guru** is meant father or mother. It also applies to one through whose instrumentality one's mind is grounded in truth and weaned from falsehood.
34. He is a **Prohita** who wishes well to his **Yajamaan**, and always preaches truth to him.
35. An **Upaadhyaya** (Professor) is one who can teach certain portions of the **Vedas** or of the **Angaas**.
36. **Shishtaachaar** consists in leading a virtuous life, in acquiring knowledge during the period of **Brahmacharya** in sifting truth from error by the help of (eight kinds of) evidence, such as **direct cognition** and then embracing truth and rejecting error. He who practices **Shishtaachaar** is called a **Shista** (gentleman).
37. I believe in the eight kinds of evidence such as **direct cognition**
38. I call him alone an **Apt** who always speaks the truth, is just and upright and labors for the good of all.
39. There are five tests:-
    „Y The nature, attributes and characteristics of God, and the teachings of the Veda.
    „Y Eight kinds of evidence such as **Direct cognition**.
    „Y Laws of nature
    „Y The practice of **Aptas**.
    „Y The purity and conviction of one's own soul.

    It behoves all men to sift truth from error with the help of these five tests and to embrace truth and reject error.

40. **Propkar** (philanthropy) is that which helps to wean all men from their vices and alleviate their sufferings, promote the practice of virtue among them and increase their happiness.
41. The **Soul** is a free agent to do deeds, but is subservient to God for reaping the fruits thereof. Likewise, God is free to do His good works.

PAGE 731

42. **Swarga** (Heaven) is the enjoyment of extreme happiness and the attainment of the means thereof.
43. **Narka** (Hell) is another name for undergoing extreme suffering and possession of the means thereof.
44. **Janma** (birth), which consists in the **soul's** assumption of the gross, visible body, viewed in relation to time is three-fold, viz., **past, present and future**.
45. **Birth** is another name for the **union** of the **soul** with the body, and **death** is the dissolution of the link.
46. The acceptance of the hand, through mutual consent, of a person of the opposite sex in a public manner and in accordance with the laws (laid down by the **Vedaas** and **Shaastraas**) is called **marriage**.
47. **Niyoga** is the temporary union of a person with another of the opposite sex, both parties may belong to the same **Class** or the male may belong to a **Class** higher, for the raising of issue, when marriage has failed to fulfil its legitimate purpose. It is resorted to In **extreme cases**, either on the death of one's consort, or when protracted disease has destroyed reproductive power in the husband or in the wife.
48. **Stuti** (Glorification) consists in praising Divine attributes and powers or in hearing them being praised, with the view to fix them in our mind and realize their meaning. Among other things it inspires us with love towards God.
49. **Praarthanaa** (Prayer) is praying to God, after one has done his utmost, for the gift of highest knowledge and similar (other blessings) which result from union with Him. It creates humility, etc., (in the mind of the devotee).
50. **Upaasanaa** (Communion) consists in conforming ourselves, as far as possible, in purity and holiness to the Divine Spirit, and in feeling the presence of the Deity in our heart by the realization of His All-pervading nature through the practice of **Yoga** which enables one to have **Direct cognition** of God. **Upaasanaa** serves to extend the bounds of our knowledge.
51. **Sagun Stuti** consists in praising God as possessed of specific attributes which are inherent in Him; while **Nirgun Stuti** consists in praising God as devoid of attributes which are foreign to His nature.

Sagun Praarthanaa consists in praying to God for the attainment of virtuous qualities; while **Nirgun Praathanaa** consists in imploring the Deity to rid us of all our faults.

PAGE 732

Sagun Upaasanaa consists in resigning oneself to God and His Will realizing Him as possessed of attributes that are in harmony with His nature; while **Nirgun Upaasanaa** consists in resigning oneself to God and His Will realizing Him as devoid of attributes that are foreign to his nature.

In other words I believe what is worthy of belief in the eyes of all, such as veracity I speech; while I do not believe what is considered wrong by all, such as untruthfulness. I do not approve of the mutual wrangling of the sectaries, since they have by propagating their creeds, let the people astray and turned them each other's enemy.

The sole aim of my life, which I have also endeavored to achieve, is thi help to put an end to this mutual wrangling, preach universal truths, bring all men into the fold of one religion whereby they may cease to hate each other and, instead, may firmly love one another, live in peace and work for their common weal.

May this doctrine, through the grace and help of God, and with the support of all truthful, honest and learned men who are devoted to the cause of humanity (Aptas) reach every nook and corner

of this earth so that all may acquire righteousness, wealth, gratify legitimate desires and attain salvation and thereby elevate themselves and live in happiness. This alone is the chief object (of my life).

A WORD TO THE WISE

["Mayest Thou (AUM) O God, Who art (Mitra), Friend of all, (Varun)Holiest of all, and (Aryama) Controller of the Universe, be merciful unto us. Mayest Thou (Indra) O God Almighty, (Vrihaspati) Lord of the Universe, Support of all, endow us with knowledge and power, Mayest Thou (Vishnu) O Omnipresent and (Kurukrama) Omnipotent Being, shower Thy blessings all around us."]